



LONDON, NEW YORK, MELBOURNE, MUNICH AND DELHI

SENIOR EDITOR David John EDITORS Philip Parker, Sam Atkinson, Andrew Campbell, Andrew Szudek EDITORIAL ASSISTANCE Miezan van Zyl

SENIOR ART EDITOR Mabel Chan DESIGNERS Maxine Lea, Victoria Clark, Francis Wong, Paul Drislane, Steve Woosnam-Savage, Colin Brown DESIGN ASSISTANCE Clare Joyce, Jane Tetzlaff, Vikram Pattwal DTP DESIGNER John Goldsmid

PICTURE RESEARCH Anne-Marie Ehrlich and Alison Walker at The Picture Desk DK PICTURE LIBRARY Claire Bowers SPECIAL PHOTOGRAPHY Gary Ombler CARTOGRAPHY Advanced Illustration Ltd PRODUCTION Melanie Dowland

MANAGING ART EDITOR Philip Ormerod ART DIRECTOR Bryn Walls MANAGING EDITOR Debra Wolter PUBLISHING MANAGER Liz Wheeler PUBLISHER Jonathan Metcalf

#### ADDITIONAL TEXT CONTRIBUTIONS

Jake Field (pages 88–89; 120–121; 154–155) Phillip Williams (pages 136-137; 242-243; 150-163) Neil Grant (pages 184-195; 234-245; 260-263) Rob Colson (pages 216-223; 246-253) Simon Adams (pages 332-333; 338-339; 344-345; 350-353)

**EDITORIAL CONSULTANTS** Dr Hugh Bowden, Dr Guy Halsall, Dr David Parrott, Professor Alan Forrest, Matthew Parker PROOFREADER Alan Heal INDEXER John Noble

> First published in Great Britain in 2005 by Dorling Kindersley Limited 80 Strand, London WC2R 0RL

> > A Penguin company

Copyright © 2005 Dorling Kindersley Limited Text copyright © 2005 R.G. Grant

2 4 6 8 10 9 7 5 3 1

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-74033-593-5 (paperback) ISBN 978-1-4053-1639-2 (hardcover)

Colour reproduction by GRB, Italy Printed and bound in Singapore by Star Standard

See our complete catalogue at www.dk.com

# CONTENTS

**FOREWORD** 



WARFARE IN THE ANCIENT WORLD

A GOST	
BETWEEN HISTORY AND LEGEND	12
THE MIGHT OF MESOPOTAMIA	16
GREEK TRIUMPHS GREEK-PERSIAN WARS GREEK VERSUS GREEK THE CONQUESTS OF ALEXANDER AFTER ALEXANDER	20 22 24 26 30
THE CONQUESTS OF THE LEGIONS  EARLY ROME THE PUNIC WARS	34 36 38
IMPERIAL ROME THE SHIFT TO THE EAST	42 50
ASIAN EMPIRES CHINESE WARFARE INDIAN WARFARE	52 54 56



WARFARE IN The MIDDLE AGES 5

INVADERS AND FEUDAL LORDS	62
BYZANTIUM SURVIVES	64
FRANKISH POWER	66
VIKINGS AND NORTHMEN	68
WARRIORS OF ISLAM	72
ARAB ADVANCE	74
ISLAMIC IMPACT	76
THE CRUSADES	78
THE FIRST AND SECOND CRUSADES	80
DECLINE OF THE CRUSADES	86
THE SPANISH RECONQUISTA	88

MONGOL POWER	10
CONQUESTS IN ASIA AND EUROPE	92
CONQUESTS OF TIMUR	94
EAST ASIAN WARFARE	96
KUBLAI AND THE MING	98
SOUTHEAST ASIA	100
SAMURAI WARFARE	101
KNIGHTS, CASTLES, AND BOWMEN	106
POPES AND EMPERORS	108
HERESY AND REVOLT	110
THE HUNDRED YEARS WAR	112
TRIUMPH OF THE INFANTRY	118
NORTHERN WARS	120
RISE OF THE OTTOMANS	122



EARLY MODERN

ISLAMIC EMPIRES	128
OTTOMAN GLORY AND DECLINE	129
MOGUL INDIA	136
AFRICAN EMPIRES	140

POWER AND RELIGION	142
FRANCE'S ITALIAN WARS	144
WARS OF RELIGION	146
THE THIRTY YEARS WAR	150
THE ENGLISH CIVIL WAR	154
DYNASTIC WARS	158
THE GREAT NORTHERN WAR	162
WARFARE IN THE AMERICAS  CONQUEST OF THE AZTECS AND INCA	164
CONFLICTS IN NORTH AMERICA	170
JAPAN, KOREA, AND CHINA	172
PACIFYING JAPAN	174
KOREA RESISTS JAPAN	176
MANCHU CONQUEST	178
EMPIRES AN	ID
REVOLUTIO	NS
WWW AND BELLEVILLE OF THE SECOND BELLEVILLE OF	180
THE SEVEN VEADS WAD	184



THE AMERICAN WAR	
OF INDEPENDENCE	19
FRANCE: REVOLUTION TO EMPIRE	19
FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS	19
NAPOLEON TAKES OVER	20
FRENCH SUPREMACY	20
THE PENINSULAR WAR	20
NAPOLEON VANQUISHED	21

142	WARS IN THE AMERICAS	216
144	AMERICA FIGHTS BRITAIN	217
146	FIGHTING AMERICAN INDIANS	218
150	WAR IN SOUTH AMERICA	220
154	MEXICO AT WAR	222
158	THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR	224
162	IMPERIAL CONFLICTS	234
164	BRITISH INDIA	236
166	THE CONQUEST OF AFRICA	240
170	ZULU WARS	242
172	THE SECOND BOER WAR	244
174	WARS OF IMPERIAL EXPANSION	246
176	CHINA, JAPAN, AND EUROPE	248
178	CHINA IN TURMOIL	249
	THE RISE OF JAPANESE POWER	252
D	NATIONALISM AND MODERNIZATION	254
18	ITALIAN UNIFICATION	256
180	RISE OF THE GERMAN EMPIRE	258
	THE CRIMEAN WAR AND RUSSIA IN ASIA	260
184	OTTOMAN DECLINE AND THE BALKANS	262
185		
186	ERA OF	



186

#### WORLD WARS 264

VORLD WAR I	268
1914	270
THE WESTERN FRONT 1915	273

1916-1917	276
OTTOMANS IN WORLD WAR I	282
THE FASTERN FRONT	284
1918	286
BETWEEN THE WARS	290
RUSSIA AND CHINA AT WAR	292
SPANISH CIVIL WAR	294
HITLER'S WAR	296
BLITZKRIEG	298
WAR IN THE MEDITERRANEAN	302
WAR AT SEA	304
invasion of the soviet union	306
BOMBER OFFENSIVE	310
GERMANY DEFEATED IN THE WEST	316
GERMANY DEFEATED IN THE EAST	318
THE PACIFIC WAR	320
JAPAN'S HIGH TIDE	322
FIGHT BACK	326
CONFLICTS SINCE 1945	330
THE CHINESE CIVIL WAR	332
THE KOREAN WAR	334
POST-COLONIAL WARS	338
THE VIETNAM WAR	340
ISRAEL'S WARS	344
GUERRILLAS AND TERRORISTS	348
WARS SINCE 1980	350
INDEX	354
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	360





# -FOREWORD -

It has become fashionable to denigrate the importance of battles in human affairs. Many no longer see the great clashes of history as being decisive. Yet the ultimate survival of every civilization has depended on its ability to wage war and, all importantly, win battles. If the Greeks had lost at Salamis our universities might now be teaching ancient Persian as a means to understanding the foundation of our civilization. If Charles Martel and his army at Poitiers had been defeated by the Moors the cathedrals of Europe could well have been mosques. If a warrior named Muhammad had died of his wounds during fighting between two small Arabian cities the world would have been a very different place. Battles, as Winston Churchill said, are the "punctuation marks" of history. Carthage, Cordova, and Zhao were once powerful and successful states but they failed the sudden test of battle and were consigned to history, while nations such as Britain, France, China, and the United States were literally created by war; their borders, languages, and systems of government were forged, then tested by conflict.

Yet today only a handful of us in the developed world are directly touched by the horror of warfare. We think of it as an aberration, a danger that our leaders should have avoided. What this book so vividly illustrates is that throughout history war has been the norm. Periods of peace are in fact exceptional, always fragile and seldom lasting longer than a generation. When groups of humans come into contact, conflicts arise. These can be resolved peacefully or violently. As Mao Zedong said, "politics is war without bloodshed, while war is politics with bloodshed".

Warfare is older than civilization; in fact it is older than the human race itself as clues from our hominid ancestors show. Violence is as central to human nature as rearing our young. Archaeology has shown that warfare was endemic even in the very first tribal groupings. Later societies have been little different. The Spartans ensured that they lived in a perpetual state of conflict by declaring war on their class of slave labourers, the helots, every year. At Aztec naming rituals it was said that a boy "belonged to the battlefield." For millennia, every society on earth has been marked by war, from the Maoris to the Meso-Americans, from the highlanders of Scotland to the horsemen of the Asian steppe.

Much of this has gone unrecorded. This book aims to take the battles, warriors, and technologies for which we do have a record and draw them together to provide a coherent overview. In doing so it charts one of the most important factors in the development of the human race over the five millennia of recorded history.

The huge chronological and geographical spread of this book reveals illuminating similarities between battles in entirely different periods. Outstanding generals have qualities that are timeless. The effect of Genghis Khan's columns of fast-moving horsemen was remarkably similar to that of the German panzers that carved through France in the spring of 1940. Age-old tactics for enveloping enemy forces were as effective in the Roman world as they were in World War II, as this book's battle plans show. Time and again successful armies have gained a decisive edge by embracing new technology. Leafing through the pages you will be amazed at the ingenuity and creativity that war induces. The Chinese developed the first gunpowder explosives, while Hussite wagon forts and iron-plated Korean turtle ships were seemingly impregnable.

But military history is not simply the story of weapons, commanders, and maps. No history of warfare can ignore the experience of the men, women, and children who fought and died in these conflicts. This book reinforces the human impact of war with testimony from the front line, some of it thousands of years old. It reminds us that war is above all human, with all the frailties and contradictions that implies: full of courage, fear, savagery, and compassion. Above all, war is chaotic, changeable, and subject to chance, with factors such as lost or garbled orders, blind luck, and instinct often proving decisive.

In the following pages you will see the face of war as it is, neither romanticized nor glamourised, the leaders shown "warts and all", and the voice of the common soldier audible throughout. War is one of the motive forces of history. Without a knowledge of war, it is impossible to understand how the modern world came to be. This book makes us realize why even the most advanced societies must occasionally fight. We should be thankful that today's world sees war as an exception, but it does not follow that war is always pointless. As Aristotle observed, "We make war that we may live in peace."

Dar ( SE

Dan Snow SEPTEMBER 2005





WARFARE HAS BEEN CENTRAL TO the development of civilization. From earliest times, civilized states have flourished or fallen through their performance on the battlefield. The history of warfare begins with conflicts between different groups within limited areas of settled civilization - Persians against Greeks, for example, or Carthaginians against Romans - and between these settled civilizations and their "barbarian" neighbours, nomadic or otherwise.



PALAFOLITHIC AXE This 250,000-year-old hand axe could have been an early tool or weapon.

The nature and extent of primitive warfare - in other words, warfare in pre-state societies - asks a fundamental question about human nature: were humans once peaceful, living in harmony with each other, or is warfare and all the horrors that accompany it "natural"? Those who take an optimistic view of uncorrupted human nature argue that, even when hunter-gatherers or simple agricultural societies entered into conflicts, these were fought in a ritualized manner designed to minimize casualties. Individuals engaged in ritual displays of aggression in the face of the enemy, after which there might be single combat between warriors or an exchange of missiles - arrows, spears, or stones - at a distance. Both sides would then go home with little harm done. More pessimistic historians and anthropologists, while accepting the existence of such ritualized encounters, paint a far darker picture. They point to evidence that "primitive" societies engaged in constant raiding against their neighbours - a state of permanent warfare. What is more, these raids could conclude

with the virtual extermination of the losing side, massacre or enslavement of the defeated being the rule rather than the exception. The Maori of New Zealand provide a historical example of primitive warfare. Living in fortified settlements, Maori groups fought one another every summer, often on a point of honour or to avenge an insult. Maori warfare included ritualized displays such as war dances and individual combat between warriors, but it also involved ambushes and raids that could lead to slaughter. The victors burned the villages and crops of the defeated and enslaved the survivors. They also feasted on their dead enemies and delighted in making fishhooks out of their bones.

#### "CIVILIZED" WARFARE

The history of "civilized" warfare, if such a term can be allowed, begins with the development of complex societies, made possible by the production of agricultural surpluses, mostly through irrigated farming. Such societies emerged over time in Mesopotamia, the Nile valley, the eastern

Mediterranean, the Indus valley, China, and parts of the Americas. Because of the scale of their resources and their organizational ability, these states were capable of deploying large-scale armies that allowed kings or emperors to extend their dominion over subject peoples and to fight other empires in struggles for supremacy.

#### TECHNOLOGY OF WARFARE

Technology developed alongside the growth of armies. The introduction of bronze from the third millennium BCE, followed by iron from around 1200 BCE, created more effective weapons, replacing including giant catapults, first used by Greeks in stone and bone in the production of spearheads, axeheads, and arrowheads, as well as providing metal armour. To defend settlements and provide bases for military operations, armies began to build fortifications, as well as methods for attacking them in sieges. The most spectacular early battlefield technology, dating from around 1700 BCE, was the war chariot, made possible by the domestication of the horse. The riding of horses as cavalry - probably initiated by the nomadic peoples of the central-Asian steppes - did not become a major factor in armies until later, around the 8th century BCE, in Mesopotamia. Warfare also spread to the sea, with the development of oared warships. The first true warships came into existence around 1000 BCE, when the Greeks began to build galleys with wooden rams at the bow, capable of sinking enemy craft.

#### ORGANIZING ARMIES

By the 1st millennium BCE all the major elements of warfare as it would be practised up to the gunpowder age were already in position. There were footsoldiers armed with weapons for slashing and stabbing, as well as missile

weaponry such as bows, javelins, and slingshots. There were cavalry, who also used bows or lances. And there was a variety of siege machinery, Sicily in the 4th century BCE. The great question was how to organize and motivate armies to use these technologies. The Assyrians were the first to create a force of regularly paid fighters supported by a properly organized system of supply. But this model of the professional army, replicated with impressive effect by the Roman empire from the 1st century BCE, did not have a monopoly of success. In the 5th century BCE, for example, the Greek citystates showed that part-time citizen-soldiers could be formidable fighters, too. And nomadic horsemen such as the Huns, fighting as bands of mounted archers, frequently proved devastatingly effective against even the best armies of settled civilizations. The one constant factor revealed at this early stage in the history of warfare was that discipline and leadership could give the edge to any fighting force.

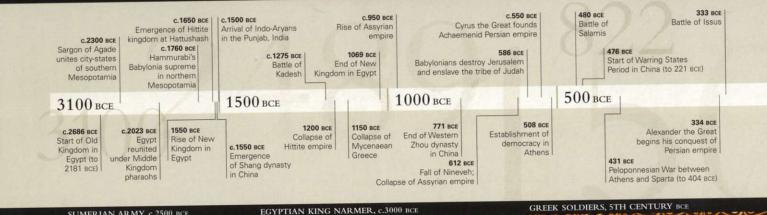


CAVALRY WARFARE This 4th-century BCE marble relief depicts Alexander the Great in battle against the was the driving force behind

many of his victories.



ROMAN ARMOUR, 1ST CENTURY CE ROMAN EMPEROR CONSTANTINE I (c.280-337 CE) CHINESE TERRACOTTA SOLDIERS, 3RD CENTURY BCE



### THE EARLIEST ARMIES

The first armies we know about existed from about 2500 BCE, in the city-states of Sumeria in southern Mesopotamia. Most battles between these cities involved infantry who wielded spears, axes, or daggers. There were also battlewagons, or primitive chariots - vehicles with four solid wooden wheels, pulled by asses. Each vehicle had a crew of two: a driver and an elite soldier, probably armed with a javelin. Among the deadliest weapons in use by early armies was the composite bow. Made of strips of wood, bone, and tendon, it was far more powerful than a self bow, which was a simple bow made out of a single piece of wood.

BETWEEN HISTORY Anatolia

Composite bows may have been rare, however; there is only one contemporary Sumerian depiction of them in battle. But the limited technological resources and small armies of the early city-states belied their potential: dominant cities such as Agade and Babylon succeeded in carrying out operations across Mesopotamia, as well as conquering other cities far from their home bases.

in a two-wheeled chariot,



Black Sea

CAPPADOCIA Malazori

#### THE RISE OF THE CHARIOT

Horses were introduced into warfare sometime in the 2nd millennium BCE and gave rise to a major technological innovation: the lightweight, two-wheeled horse-drawn chariot. Used mostly as a platform for an

archer, horse-drawn chariots dominated warfare for about a thousand years. The cost of breeding and stabling the horses, building and maintaining the chariots, and training the chariot crews was very high, but the Egyptians, the Hittites, and the Assyrians were able to field chariot forces in their thousands. The Egyptian New Kingdom (1550-1069 BCE) demonstrated how much power a state could wield with the military resources of the time, carrying out campaigns as far south as Nubia (present-day Sudan) and as far north as Syria.

Persian



#### FARLY WARRIORS This 3rd-millennium BCE Sumerian inlaid box, the

Standard of Ur, shows ass-drawn

chariots and infantry with spear



## THE BIRTH OF THE ARMY

THE FIRST RECORDED ACCOUNTS of warfare, between the citystates of Mesopotamia in the 3rd millennium BCE, depict warfare on a relatively small scale, fought by armies of a few thousand men. The only vehicles used in these conflicts were chariots drawn by asses. The growth of larger empires during the 2nd and 1st millennia BCE inevitably gave rise to bigger armies and

costlier battles. By the second half of the 2nd millennium BCE, the Egyptians and the Hittites were vying for control of the countries of the eastern Mediterranean, with forces numbering anything up to 20,000 on either side. These powerful empires deployed thousands of two-wheeled horse-drawn war chariots. the most expensive military technology of its day.

#### SUMERIAN CITY-STATES

#### Lagash defeats Umma



Sumeria, southern

C.2450 BCE FORCES Lagash's army: unknown; Umma's army: unknown

Mesopotamia

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

The best surviving information about warfare in early Sumeria comes from an inscribed pillar known as the Stele of Vultures. which the city-state of Lagash erected to commemorate the victory over its

#### WAR HELMET

This Sumerian battle helmet, made of a silver and gold alloy, was probably worn by a ruler.

#### LAGASH INFANTRY

The Stele of Vultures shows the army of Lagash advancing into battle agains Imma. The foot-soldiers carry spears and wear helmets of leather or copper.

neighbour Umma, After a border dispute arose between the states, Eanatum, the ruler of Lagash, inspired by Ningirsu, the god of his city, led an army to attack Umma. The Stele shows him advancing in a chariot, followed by his infantry. When the two sides meet, Eanatum dismounts to lead his men on foot. They lower their spears and press forward in a dense phalanx, treading on the

bodies of their fallen enemies. Although struck in the eye by an arrow, Eanatum survived to enjoy h army's triumph - the Stele shows vultures picking his enemy's bones. Further records from Eanatum' time suggest that he led forces as far east as Elam (present-day western Iran).



#### SARGON'S CONQUESTS

#### Conquests of Sargon of Agade



c.2340-2284 BCE FORCES Sargon: a standing CASUALTIES

LOCATION Mesopotamia eastern Syria)

adventurer to carve out an empire by conquest. According to legend, Sargon was of humble origins. discovered as a baby in a basket by a gardener. He founded his own city at Agade, the exact site of which remains unknown. From there he conquered the powerful city of Uruk and all the other Mesopotamian citystates, from Ur in Sumeria to Ebla in Syria, creating an empire covering roughly the area of modern-day Iraq. But Sargon's campaigns probably extended farther, perhaps to the Mediterranean and Anatolia. One inscription tells us that he won 34 battles; another suggests that he had a standing army, recording that "5,400 soldiers eat bread before him each day." Sargon's infantry probably used bronze weapons and composite bows,

Sargon of Agade was the first military



#### VICTORY MONUMENT

A fragment from the Victory Stele of Sargon of Agade, erected to celebrate Sargon's military triumphs. His fame as a conqueror is reflected in the name given to the Assyrian king Sargon II (d. 705 BCE).

and he would also have possessed four-wheeled chariots pulled by asses. This army could cope with siege warfare, since records tell of Sargon destroying the walls of the cities he captured. Sargon died about 2284 BCE and his empire survived for 125 more years. Later Mesopotamians regarded him as the founder of the region's tradition of expansion by military conquest, as exemplified by the Assyrians, Babylonians, and Persians.

#### RISE OF BABYLON

#### Campaigns of Hammurabi



CASHALTIES LOCATION No reliable estimates Northern and southern Mesopotamia

Hammurabi came to the throne of the small city-state of Babylon early in the 18th century BCE. He was initially part of an alliance led by the relatively powerful kingdom of Assyria. Correspondence exists to show that Babylon and Assyria agreed to support each other with troops if needed. In about 1763 BCE.

#### HAMMURABI

This diorite sculpture of Hammurabi, the self-proclaimed "ruler of the four worlds" was found in Shush in southwestern Iran

however, Hammurabi moved away from this alliance. He led a coalition of forces from Babylon and the allied cities of Eshnunna and Mari to defeat King Rim-Sin of Larsa, another of Hammurabi's former allies, who controlled the most important cities in southern Mesopotamia, including Uruk and Ur. Archaeological evidence suggests that Hammurabi dammed up a main watercourse that supplied Larsa, achieving victory either by suddenly releasing the water and flooding the city or by withholding water from its desperate inhabitants. He then turned upon his newer allies, defeating Eshnunna

in 1761 and conquering Mari in 1760. The latter revolted against its conqueror in 1758. but Hammurabi again defeated it and ordered the destruction of its walls. These victories gave Hammurabi control of an area that extended from the Syrian desert to the Persian Gulf. He

built fortifications to defend this territory but following his death the empire disintegrated.

NEW KINGDOM EGYPT

NEW KINGDOM EGYPT

c.1468 BCE

Egyptians

CASUALTIES

340 captured

c.1275 BCE

CASUALTIES

The battle at Kadesh is the most

famous encounter from the era of

chariot warfare, with thousands of

the two-wheeled vehicles engaged

on either side. Its origins lay in the

and 2.000 chariots;

Hittites: 15,000 men

and 3.500 chariots

No reliable estimates

FORCES Egyptians: 20,000 men

10.000-20.000:

Palestinians: unknown

Palestinians: 83 killed;

FORCES

Megiddo

Near Haifa,

northern Israel

Kadesh

Along the Orontes

river, western Syria

contest between the

Egyptians and the Hittites

Svria, which lav between

their two empires. In the

first year of the war,

Pharaoh Ramesses II

carried out a successful

Mediterranean coast,

apparently catching the

year, the Hittite king

of four divisions, with

Hittites off guard. But when

Muwatalli had assembled an

army from all his domains

to confront the Egyptians.

Ramesses's forces consisted

chariots at the core of each.

Drawn by two horses, the chariots

of very sharp turns on their widely

KEY

he returned the following

campaign up the eastern

for control of Lebanon and

Pharaoh Thutmosis III (ruled 1479-

1425 BCE) led an army out of Egypt

to suppress an alliance of the princes

of Megiddo and Kadesh in Palestine.

The army took 10 days to march to

been dug along the desert roads. After

halting to rest and scout the ground

ahead. Thutmosis took a huge gamble.

marched his men through the narrow

Instead of proceeding around the

mountains that lay to the north, he

Aruna Pass, thus exposing them to

Gaza, drinking from wells that had

RAMESSES' WAR CHARIOT were light and fast, travelling at speeds An Egyptian relief depicting Ramesses II of up to 38kph (24mph), and capable have had a driver in his chariot, too.

at the battle of Kadesh. In reality, he would

easy attack if caught. But the gamble Megiddo. The town's gate was firmly closed, but those inside hauled the paid off; the Egyptians' swift advance surprised the king of Kadesh, who escaping soldiers over the walls with ropes made of clothing. The Egyptians had expected Thutmosis to take the longer route around collected plunder from the battlefield, and then began a siege of the the mountains Thutmosis, leading

fortress. Those inside surrendered his forces in a chariot after seven months. of electrum (an alloy COMBAT MEDALS of gold and silver), Gold medals in the shape of overawed the forces of ting flies were awarded to Egyptian Kadesh, who fled towards the safety of the fortress of diers in return for "stinging" the enemy.

"His majesty [Ramesses II] drove his horse at a gallop and charged the forces of the Hittite foe...and found 2,500

Egyptian inscription at Thebes, 13th century BCE

chariots attacking him, all the fast army of the foe."

spaced wheels. Each vehicle had a played in the Egyptian force by specially trained soldiers who ran crew of two, one to steer and one to fight, the charioteers' main weapon alongside the chariots. If the Egyptian being the composite bow. The Hittites charioteers had a shield, the driver probably held it as well as the reins. also depended on chariots, although theirs were heavier and slower, with On the day of the battle, Ramesses's a crew of three. The extra crew divisions advanced towards Kadesh, a city on the Orontes river. Ramesses member may have acted as shieldand his lead division, believing the bearer or may have jumped off the chariot and onto the battlefield to Hittites to be further north in the city of Aleppo, set up camp near Kadesh. provide infantry support - a role

Muwatalli had set a trap, however: his men were concealed on the other side of the Orontes, from where 2,500 Hittite chariots emerged to attack the Egyptian divisions that were still approaching Kadesh. The Hittites routed one of the divisions, then swung around to advance on the pharaoh's camp, at the same time that Muwatalli unleashed a thousand more chariots across the Orontes. According to the Egyptian version of events, Ramesses mounted his chariot and

single-handedly cut down thousands of his enemies, forcing them to flee into the river. It certainly seems that an Egyptian

Kingdom rulers, Ramesses II inherited the throne in 1279 BCE and held it for 67 years. He strove to project an image of himself as a successful war leader: in his many monuments and temples, he often had himself represented as a charioteer trampling upon his enemies or smiting captives with a mace. Besides the Hittites. Ramesses waged wars against the ancient kingdoms of Moab, Edom, and Negeb, as well as the Libyans. STONE CARVING OF

chariot speed and archery power, the clear-cut victory the Egyptians proclaimed. Ramesses withdrew his forces after the engagement, and, when both sides agreed to what was The Hittites had thwarted the renewal of Egyptian power in Syria.

### EGYPTIAN WEAPONRY One of the most effective weapons

in the armies of Ancient Egypt was the composite bow. Consisting of a wooden core with horn glued on the front and sinew on the back, this was a powerful device that could shoot an arrow a distance of 175m (574ft). In Egypt's New Kingdom period (1550-1069 BCE), the arrowheads were mostly bronze, although iron or bone were also used. Soldiers also employed a range of axes, hatchets, and swords, most made of bronze. Distinctive epsilon-style axes (so called because they resembled the Greek letter) were much in use in the earlier Middle Kingdom period (2023-1720 BCE).



## c.1304-c.1212 BCE

#### RAMESSES II

The most famous of Egypt's New

R AMESSES II ABU SIMBEL,

counterattack, demonstrating superior carried the day, but the battle was not effectively the world's first peace treaty, Kadesh remained a Hittite possession.

TROJAN WARS

#### Troy



c.1250 BCE FORCES CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

Hisarlik. northwest Turkey

LOCATION

The siege of Troy is narrated in the Iliad, attributed by the Ancient Greeks to the poet Homer. It tells of a conflict between Trojans and Greeks that starts when Paris, prince of Troy, abducts Helen, the wife of King

Agamemnon, king of Mycenae, takes an army in "a thousand" ships to besiege Troy. The siege lasts 10 years, during which time many heroic combats are fought by heroes such as the Greek Achilles and the Trojan Hector, Eventually, the Greeks take the city by a trick. Pretending to abandon the siege, they leave behind a wooden horse with a force of men hidden inside. A further Greek left behind, Sinon, tells the Trojans that the horse is an offering to the goddess Athena, and persuades them to drag it into their city, enabling the men inside to emerge at night and open the city gates to the rest of the Greek force. The Greeks had no doubt that

Menelaus of Sparta. Menelaus's brother this story represented a historical event. Alexander the Great (356-323 BCE) made a pilgrimage to the site traditionally identified as Troy -Hisarlik in modern Turkey - before embarking on his conquest of the Persian empire. Archaeologists have discovered Bronze Age settlements at this site, one of which seems to have been destroyed in the 13th century BCE. There is speculation that the Iliad represents a folk memory of a real event - a war between the Mycenaeans and an enemy tentatively identified as TROJAN HORSE

Greek soldiers emerge from the horse that the Trojans unwisely dragged inside their city walls, on this 7th-century BCE amphora.



#### MYCENAEAN ARMOUR

This bronze suit of armour, dating from around 1450 BCE, was probably more suited to a charioteer than a footsoldier.

the Hittites. Mycenae was certainly a flourishing, warlike power in Greece in the 13th century BCE. It was ruled by a king with the support of a warrior aristocracy, who rode chariots and used bronze weapons and armour. Mycenae exercised influence over a wide area and had trade contacts with the city we can, for convenience, call Troy. A plausible case has been made for the Mycenaeans raiding Troy, either for plunder or with the aim of establishing permanent control over a key point in its regional trading network. It is a large leap, however, from plausibility to fact. The Trojan War remains a legend, even if one

#### NEW KINGDOM EGYPT

### Sea Peoples' Raids



DATE 1176 BCE FORCES Sea Peoples: unknown; Egyptians: unknown CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

Nile delta. northern Egypt

During the reign of Pharaoh Ramesses III (1184-1150 BCE), Egypt came under pressure from raiders known as the Sea Peoples. Little is known for certain about their origins, although they may have come from Anatolia. They fought on land as well as on sea, occupying parts of Syria and Palestine (one of the Sea Peoples were the Philistines), but it was the impact of their ships that made the greatest impression on the Egyptians. Their sea raids along Egypt's Mediterranean coast required Ramesses to assemble a fleet of his own and fight back. The result was history's first recorded sea battle. Since

the Egyptian vessels were designed for use on the Nile, not at sea, they confronted the raiders at the Nile delta at the mouth of the river. Both sides' ships had sails, but they almost certainly used oars for greater manoeuvrability when closing for battle. The Egyptians aimed to draw close to their enemy and then unleash missile fire - arrows, javelins, and stones - from soldiers on the deck or up in the masts. As the Sea Peoples' fleet was drawn into the narrow waterways of the delta, Egyptian

SEA BATTLE

This Egyptian relief shows the battle against the Sea Peoples in the Nile delta. It

bowmen also shot at them from the

vessels, and may even have capsized

Peoples were heavily defeated. In the

words of an Egyptian inscription, the

enemy was "slain and made [into] heaps

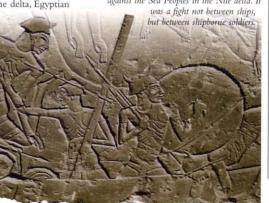
from stern to bow of their galleys".

some ships by hauling on grapnels

hooked into the rigging. The Sea

shore. In some cases Egyptians armed

with swords and shields boarded enemy



#### RISE OF ISRAEL Mount Gilboa

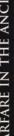


c.1100 BCE FORCES Israelites: unknown; Philistines: unknown

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

Plain of Esdraelon northern Israel

According to the Bible, Saul, the king of the Israelites, went to war against the Philistines, who were attacking his kingdom. Facing a more numerous and sophisticated enemy, Saul used guerrilla tactics, but was eventually forced to confront a Philistine army. Sure to be defeated on level ground, where the Philistines could use their chariots, the Israelites withdrew to the steep, rocky ridge of Mount Gilboa. Yet the Philistines were not deterred by the terrain: they stormed the ridge, taking a heavy toll from the Israelites. As his army fell around him, including his three sons, Saul took his own life rather than fall into enemy hands.



# WARFARE IN THE ANCIENT WORLD

FOR MOST OF THE PERIOD from the 9th to the 5th century BCE, successive single states were dominant in the Near East - first Assyria, then Babylonia, and finally Persia. These powerful empires used

large, well-organized armies to extend and enforce their rule. Weapons were now mostly of iron, while cavalry and siege engines joined the mix of the empires' forces.

RISE AND FALL From the 10th century BCE the Assyrians developed a vast empire that remained unchecked until the 7th century.





#### ASSYRIAN CHARIOT An 8th-century BCE Assyrian

WARFARE IN THE ANCIENT WORLD

relief depicting a two-horse chariot. Around this time three- and four-horse chariots also came into use.

heavier, four-man vehicles, but by the end of in importance. Steppe horsemen such as the enemies and subject them to arrow fire from powerful composite bows. By the late years of the Assyrian empire, mounted archers were a vital component of its army, which also of cavalry brought a new flexibility of manoeuvre to

the battlefield.

SCYTHIAN GOLD

gold Scythian comb shows a horseman in battle - a fitting object for a member of one of the first people to demonstrate the effectiveness of cavalry.



Assyria carried the practice of warfare to a new level of efficiency. Its army was an instrument of terror, using torture, massacre, and mass deportation to wreak vengeance on any people that resisted Assyrian rule. At its peak under King Tiglath-pileser III (reigned 745-727 BCE), Assyria had a large army hierarchically organized into units led by professional generals. Tiglath-pileser's army was ethnically mixed, with foreign mercenaries and prisoners of war constituting major elements in the ranks. These soldiers were paid regularly and supplied with weapons and other materiel from centralized arms depots.

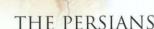
PERSIAN KING The conquests of Darius the Great (548-486 BCE) the frontiers of the Achaemenia

Persian empire.

## HORSEMEN

The Assyrians still used chariots, introducing the 8th century cavalry was overtaking chariots Scythians had shown the effectiveness of lightly armoured mounted archers, who could outrun equipped its horsemen with spears. The advent

This 2,400-year-old



The Achaemenids, who took their name from the founder kings of the Persian empire, also

made cavalry a central element of their armies. Like the Assyrians they assembled multi-ethnic forces, composed of conscripts and mercenaries from across their empire. Different peoples provided different specialities - Greek mercenaries served as infantry, Phoenicians as sailors, Medes and Scythians as horsemen. Strict training welded these forces into disciplined armies that, when needed, could move swiftly along Persia's excellent network of



New Babylonian Empire (625–539 scs)

walled city of Lachish. The siege of

Lachish is especially well known

Assyrian army was its ability at sieges. Instead of sitting out long blockades, the Assyrians preferred to take cities by assault. Engineers were skilled at undermining walls pushed siege engines combining a ram with a tower manned by archers. When a besieged city fell, the Assyrians either killed or deported its inhabitants.

SOLDIERS ON THE WALLS



which would result in a battle on a scale greater than any previously recorded He

FORCES Assyrians: up to 100,000; Syrian-led alliance: c.70.000 CASUALTIES Assyria claimed it killed 14,000 of its opponents

By the 9th century BCE Assyria was the most powerful state in western Asia, using military might to dominate and extend its large empire. But in 853, 12 states in the eastern-Mediterranean region, led by Hadadezer of Damascus and including King Ahab of Israel, formed an alliance to resist further Assyrian conquest. The Assyrian king

ASSYRIAN CONQUESTS

Qargar

LOCATION

western Syria

Northwest of Hamath.

ASSYRIAN CONQUESTS

Siege of Lachish

Shalmaneser III led a huge force against this alliance. advanced across the Tigris and Euphrates and into Syria. brushing aside resistance along the

way. After sacking the city of Qargar, he met the forces of the Syrian-led alliance near the Orontes river. The Assyrian army was a mix of chariots, cavalry, and footsoldiers. Assyrian reliefs suggest that horsemen fought in pairs, side by side, with one man holding the reins of both horses while the other fired his composite bow.

The infantry, by far the most numerous element, were mostly archers and spearmen. They probably fought in pairs, too, the spearman defending the bowman with his weapon and shield. Like the Assyrians. the Syrian-led alliance had several thousand chariots, many of them provided by King Ahab, but



Assyrian hauberk (armoured tunic).

considerably fewer horsemen. Oddly their forces included a contingent of camels, provided by the king of Arabia, although it is not known how they were used. Indeed, nothing is recorded about the course of the battle. Shalmaneser claimed a victory, boasting of inflicting 14,000 casualties and capturing numberless chariots and horses. Yet none of his enemies lost their thrones - Hadadezer, for example, ruled Damascus for another 12 years, fighting the Assyrians on

half a dozen more occasions. It was

III in the following century that

not until the reign of Tiglath-pileser

Assyria conquered Syria and Palestine

#### RAMMING ENGINE This detail from the reliefs

in Sennacherib's palace shows the Assyrians' siege engine mounting the ramp to hit the wall with its ram, while archers exchange fire. Assyrians: unknown

LOCATION Present-day No reliable estimates Tel Lakhish, southern In 701 BCE Assyria's King Sennacherib led an army into Palestine to punish subject peoples who - probably with the encouragement of Egypt - had revolted against Assyrian rule. One of these rebels was the Judaean people. Sennacherib's forces laid siege to the Judaean capital, Jerusalem, and to the

FORCES

Judaeans: unknown

SIEGE WARFARE The most formidable aspect of the and building ramps, up which they

because it was depicted on reliefs with which Sennacherib subsequently decorated his palace in Nineveh, Arriving in front of the city, the Assyrians called upon the inhabitants to surrender, offering them leniency if they opened their gates. The Judaeans, however, chose to resist and the siege began. The Assyrians encircled Lachish with troops, but, instead of waiting for a blockade to take effect, they prepared to assault the city. First they sent archers forward on foot, each accompanied by a shield-bearer. Protected from enemy arrows by large shields with curved-over tops, the archers shot at defenders on the ramparts, using their powerful composite bows. Their arrows provided cover for engineers to advance towards the walls. From the Nineveh reliefs it appears that

engineers hacked at the base of the walls and tried mining under the foundations. But their main work was the construction of a ramp, made from earth piled up in a steep slope to a point part-way up the walls. When complete, the engineers paved it with stone slabs to smooth the surface. The Assyrians' idea was to propel a siege engine up this slope and attack the top of the wall. The siege engine was a wooden tower mounted on four wheels. Archers manned the top of the tower, while one or two battering rams protruded below. The whole structure was covered with dampened leather hides to protect it from flaming arrows - an incendiary weapon apparently used by both sides. Soldiers pushed the siege engine up the slope so that the ram

could batter the wall while the archers shot their arrows into the fortified town. At the same time.

Assyrian infantry assaulted another section of the walls with scaling ladders, while being covered by shots from still more archers and stone-slingers. We do not know how long the assault on Lachish lasted or what the casualties were on either side, but the fighting was probably very fierce.

"I captured 46 towns ...by consolidating ramps to bring up battering rams, by infantry attacks,

siege engines." Sennacherib in the Old Testament (1 Kings, 18)

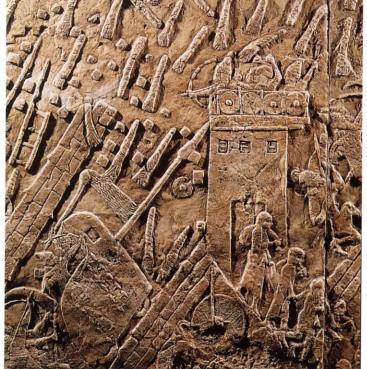
mines, breaches, and

Once the Assyrians had broken into the town, slaughter followed. The Nineveh reliefs show some Judaeans

impaled on stakes and others pleading for their lives. Archaeological evidence confirms that hundreds of men, women, and

children were indeed massacred. In contrast to Lachish. the siege of Jerusalem was not a success for the Assyrians. They failed to take the city by assault and, after a lengthy blockade, raised the siege, probably because illness had broken out in their camp. By the end of

Sennacherib's reign, however, the Assyrians returned and incorporated Judaea into their empire.



WARFARE IN THE ANCIENT WORLD

55



C.693 BCE FORCES Assyrians: unknown: Elamites: unknown

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates LOCATION Divala river.

In 694 BCE, to impose his rule on the troublesome Elamites at the southern edge of his empire, the Assyrian king Sennacherib invaded Elam and sacked its cities. The Elamites remained uncowed: the following year, with their allies from Chaldea in southern Babylonia, they mounted a counter-invasion. Both sides met at the Diyala river. In the words of Sennacherib's court chronicler, the king "cut [the Elamites'] throats like sheep ... [filling] the plain with the corpses of their warriors like herbage". No Elamite account of the battle survives, but the Assyrian army may have suffered many fatalities itself since, unusually, it did not campaign the next year.

BABYLONIAN-EGYPTIAN WARS

Fall of Ierusalem

Jerusalem

(present-day Israel)

586 BCE

FORCES

Babylonians:

CASUALTIES

The states of Palestine were caught

between Babylon and Egypt in the

early 6th century BCE. Zedekiah, the

king of Judah, sided with Egypt, so

Jerusalem, Judah's capital. Many of

punishment of captivity in Babylon.

Ten years later, when the Egyptian

pharaoh Hophra invaded Palestine,

forcing out Babylonian garrisons,

Zedekiah again allied himself with

Egypt. Nebuchadnezzar responded

by dispatching a powerful army to

withdraw and leaving Judah exposed

to Babylonian revenge. Jerusalem was

blockaded for 18 months until, in the

but met the pursuing Babylonians on

the plains of Jericho, where Zedekiah

had to watch as his sons were killed

in front of him. He was then blinded

a large part of Judah's population.

Palestine, forcing the Egyptians to

words of the Bible, "there was no

bread for the people of the land".

The lesson was not learned, however.

the city's inhabitants suffered the

in 597 Nebuchadnezzar, ruler of

Babylon, besieged and captured

in the middle of a confrontation

army: unknown

unknown: Zedekiah's

No reliable estimates

#### ASSYRIAN CONQUESTS Fall of Nineveh



Babylonians and Medes: unknown

LOCATION CASUALTIES Near modern-day No reliable estimates In 626 BCE Nabopolassar, whose

throne of Babylon, then subject to the

background is unknown, took the

Assyrian empire. By 616 he had

evicted the Assyrian garrisons in the region, and then began probing attacks into Assyrian territory along the middle section of the Euphrates river, plundering and sacking cities. The Assyrians' ineffective response encouraged Nabopolassar to push

> HORSE POWER A terracotta model of an Assyrian warrior.

armed with a shield,

astride his horse.

further north, and in 615 his forces penetrated the Assyrian heartlands as far as the city of Ashur. There he suffered a serious defeat, however, and was forced to take refuge in the citadel of Tikrit. But the Assyrians, now under fire from another enemy, the Medes, were unable to follow up their success. Led by Cyaxares, the Medes formed an alliance with the Babylonians that sealed Assvria's fate. In 612 Cyaxares and Nabopolassar's armies joined up in Babylonia and marched north to the Assyrian capital, Nineveh, which fell

The spoked wheels on the chariot in this Assyrian relief were a development from earlier solid wheels, but during the 1st

after a three-month siege. The Assyrian king Sin-shar-ishkun was probably killed, and the city was certainly looted and sacked. With Egyptian support, the Assyrians continued to fight, and moved their capital further west to Harran, but in 608 Harran itself fell. The Assyrian empire was crumbling.

#### SPEAR, ARROW, AND CHARIOT

millennium BCE cavalry superceded chariots.

# It appears that Zedekiah and his army abandoned the city to its besiegers, A CHRISTIAN PERSPECTIVE This early-modern tapestry of the Fall of Jerusalem portrays the combatants wearing the dress and carrying the weapons of Ottoman Turks. and carried off to Babylon, along with

#### EGYPT VERSUS ISRAEL

#### Megiddo



Near Haifa, northern Israel

In 605 BCE the Egyptian pharaoh Necho II advanced through Palestine to aid the Assyrian forces still resisting Babylonian leader Nabopolassar in western Assyria (see the Fall of Ninevah). King Josiah of Judah, who

outnumbered the

No reliable estimates



an army to harass Necho on his way north. According to the Bible, Necho urged Josiah to let him pass, pointing out that he had no quarrel with Judah. Josiah, however, "did not turn away from him ... but went to the valley of Megiddo to fight". No details of the battle are known. although there were presumably many chariots on both sides. An Egyptian victory was secured when Josiah died, falling to an arrow. Yet the triumph brought Necho no lasting advantage. He advanced into Svria, joining up with the remnants of the once-great Assyrian army, but was then attacked by forces led by Nabopolassar's son, Nebuchadnezzar, at Carchemish, on the west bank of the Euphrates river. The Egyptians

and Assyrians got the worst of a hard-fought battle and Necho fled back to Egypt, his prestige ruined. The prophet Jeremiah commented sardonically. "Pharaoh king of Egypt is but a noise." The Assyrian cause was lost.

#### STRATEGIC SITE

The site of the ancient city of Megiddo, where battles were fought in 1468 BCE, 609 BCE, and 1918 CE.

#### An Egyptian chariot was a lightweight vehicle designed for maximum speed and manoeuvrability. Its main function was as a mobile missile platform from which a warrior - who trained by using a rocking stool - shot arrows or threw javelins. It could also be used for shock effect in a high-speed charge, to move equipment around the battlefield, or to rescue the wounded. leather straps Rent wood Horses 2 Wheel rims

WAR CHARIOT



#### PERSIAN CONQUESTS

#### Sardis



546 BCE FORCES Persians: c 50 000 Lydian alliance: unknown (but greater)

No reliable estimates

CASHAITIES

LOCATION The plain of Thymbra, outside Sardis, Anatolia

In 550 BCE the Persian ruler Cyrus established a power base that would grow into an empire when he took control of the kingdom of Media in ancient Iran. This takeover led to conflict with neighbouring Lydia, a major power in western Anatolia. After an indecisive battle at Pteria in 547, Cyrus invaded Lydia and advanced on its capital, Sardis. The Lydian ruler, Croesus, confronted the Persian with a large army formed with the help of his Egyptian, Babylonian, and Spartan allies. Outnumbered, Cyrus formed his forces into a defensive square with his baggage camels in front and his archers in the middle. The smell of the camels disturbed the Lydian horses, disrupting their charge, while high-trajectory fire from the Persian bowmen inside the square caused the Lydians and their allies to flow around it in some disorder. A Persian counterattack swiftly turned into a rout, and Sardis fell soon afterwards.

#### ROYAL WARRIOR

One of the "Immortals", an elite Persian guard. If one Immortal died he was immediately replaced - hence the name

#### PERSIAN CONQUESTS Fall of Babylon



southern Mesopotamia

modern-day Iraq) After his conquest of Lydia in 546 BCE, Cyrus went on to confront the Babylonian king Nabonidus. In 539 Cyrus invaded Babylonia with, as an ancient text tells us, "massive troops, whose number was immeasurable, like the water of a river". At the city of Opis, east of the Tigris, Cyrus defeated a Babylonian army, plundering the city's wealth and massacring its people afterwards. But this is only one version of events, written down in a Babylonian chronicle. According to texts written in praise of Cyrus, the Persian ruler's progress was peaceful and unopposed. His army "marched with their arms at their side", and entered Babylon "without battle [or] fighting". The truth appears to be that Cyrus sent his general Gobryas ahead to besiege Babylon. When the siege had succeeded, Gobryas having taken the city and made Nabonidu a prisoner, Cyrus led a peaceful, riumphal procession into Babylon, posing as a liberator of the city's nhabitants. There was some justification to this posture: the people of Babylon, including its priests, had

oeen unhappy under Nabonidus's rule.

#### c.590/580-529 BCE

#### CYRUS THE GREAT

Cyrus, the founder of the Persian



Achaemenid empire, began his remarkable career of conquest by taking over the kingdom of the Medes from its ruler, Astyages. By 546 BCE, when he defeated Croesus of Lydia, Cyrus controlled western Iran, northern Mesopotamia, and most of Anatolia. His capture of Babylon and subsequent campaigns extended Persian rule over a vast area from the Mediterranean to the borders of India. Cyrus's military success resulted from an unmatched ability to organize and supply large-scale forces, drawn from all parts of his empire. In addition, he won the support of many of his conquered peoples



THE CITY-STATES THAT FLOURISHED in Greece from around the 7th century BCE were small and apparently weak entities compared to the mighty empires of the Assyrians and the Persians. But their citizen armies, fighting shoulder to shoulder as spear-bearing infantry, proved more than a match for the subject soldiers of Persia. In the 4th century the Macedonian Greeks created an empire that stretched from the Mediterranean to India. FORTIFIED HEIGHTS

The acropolis at Athens, like those in other Greek cities, was a walled fortress to be defended when an enemy laid siege to the city

Black Sea MACEDONIA

# SPARTA AND ATHENS

The two most powerful city-states were Sparta and Athens, Sparta created the most formidable army in ancient Greece by training its citizen elite for war from the age of seven. The Spartans prized hardihood and fitness above all else, and group exercises were performed each day. In adulthood, male citizens were assigned to a mess

where they were obliged to eat communally, and each belonged to a band of 40 soldiers who were sworn to obey their commanders. These bands were the basic units of the Spartan army, which alone among the city-state forces had a clear hierarchy of command. The army of Athens, on the other hand, was made up of citizens who had no particular training but shared the belief that a citizen's first duty was to fight. If Sparta excelled on land, the Athenian warships dominated at sea.

In the early 5th century BCE, faced with almost impossible odds, the Greek city-states united to repulse successive waves of Persian attack.

Cyprus

GREECE VERSUS PERSIA

Persian Royal Road

## THE ADVENT OF MACEDONIAN POWER

The citizen army of hoplites fighting in phalanxes represented the ancient Greek ideal of warfare. In reality, however, armies were a mixture of citizens, non-citizens, and mercenaries. Poorer men generally fought as skirmishers, harassing phalanxes with stones and arrows, while peltasts were specially trained javelin-throwers. who proved capable on occasion of inflicting defeat even on the hardy Spartan hoplites. The Greeks eventually lost their independence to their northern neighbours, the

Macedonians (also Greek in culture), who had perfected their own form of warfare: a mixed force of professional infantry fighting in a phalanx, skirmishers on foot and on horseback, and an elite cavalry accompanying their chief.



FACING THE ENEMY

A Greek hoplite (right) confronts a war chariot, probably manned by Persians, in this ancient vase painting.

#### MACEDONIAN CONQUEST

Under Philip of Macedon and Alexander the Great the Greek phalanx was reinvented and cavalry armed with lances became a crucial force on the battlefield. Hoplites were organized in a tighter formation of greater depth than before, and each carried a two-handed 6-7m- (20-23ft-) long spear, the sarissa. Under Alexander's inspired generalship, the cavalry, infantry phalanx, and light skirmishers were combined to maximum effect, achieving conquest on an unprecedented scale by seizing the Persian empire and Asia as far as northern India. The impact of this encounter with Asia was already visible before Alexander's death, with Persians taking important positions in the Macedonian forces.

The Asian influence continued in the successor states to Alexander's empire in Persia, Egypt, and Greece - which would in turn eventually prove vulnerable to the rising power of Rome. stirrups, battling the Macedonians.

The Alexander Sarcophagus dramatically depicts a Persian horseman, riding without saddle or

#### **PHALANX**

Ancient Greek infantry fought in a phalanx, a close formation typically eight ranks deep. Each hoplite had a shield (the hoplon) on his left side and in his right hand a thrusting spear around 2n (6.5ft) long. When opposing phalanxes confronted one another they advanced until shield butted against shield and then they pushed with all their weight. while those in the PHALANX CLASH front ranks, wielding spears overarm,

stabbed at the enemy. spear, and sword.



# WARFARE IN THE ANCIENT WORLD

## GREEK ARMOUR

The city-states of ancient Greece based their armed forces upon the

obligation of free citizens to fight when required, usually as hoplites

(heavily-armed footsoldiers). Since the city-states were quarrelsome and fought one another repeatedly, citizens were frequently called upon to fulfil this military requirement. The citizen armies were not large and could not campaign for long - most hoplites were farmers who needed

CITY-STATE WARFARE

The Greeks adopted bronze armour in the 8th century BCE. The full panoply consisted of a helmet, a cuirass for the upper body, and greaves for the knees and hins. Along with the spear, sword, and, above all, shield, this armour was considered the distinguishing equipment of the hoplite. Yet not all city-state soldiers wore it. The

to be at home at key points in the year but their battles were ruthless and bloody, fought at close quarters with spears.

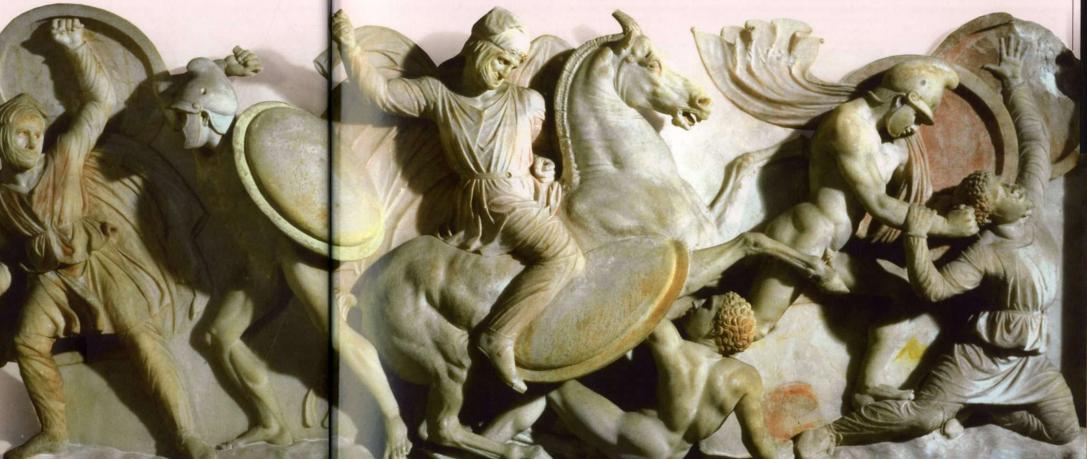
> hoplite was expected to provide his own armour and many could afford only a helmet, or possibly a helmet and greaves. A full set of bronze armour was thus a status symbol and provided an opportunity for a conspicuous display of wealth.

> > Bronze cuirass made of two plates held together at the sides by leather straps

Moulding idealizes

#### BRONZE PANOPLY

The armour of a Greek hoplite was designed both to protect and to impress. Polished bright it made a dazzling display.



## GREEK-PERSIAN WARS

AT THE BEGINNING OF THE 5th century BCE, Greeks in Anatolia revolted against the rule of the expanding Persian empire. Despite support from two Greek cities, Athens and Eretria, the Persian emperor Darius the Great crushed the uprising. He then decided to punish the Greek cities that had aided the rebels. The first Persian invasion was repulsed at

Marathon in 490, but 10 years later Darius's successor, Xerxes, made a more determined effort at conquest. The Greeks rose to the challenge once more, holding up the Persians at Thermopylae and defeating them at Salamis and Plataea. An Athenian-led alliance continued to fight the Persians in the Mediterranean until 448, but Greece was not invaded again.

GREEK-PERSIAN WARS

#### Marathon



FORCES Persians: 20 000-25 000-Greeks: 10 000

LOCATION 42km (26 miles) northeast of Athens

CASUALTIES Persians: 6,400 killed; Greeks: 192 killed

The invasion force sent to Greece by Darius in 490 BCF was commanded by a Median general, Datis. A fleet of 600 triremes (see p31) carried the Persian army across the Aegean to land at Marathon, close to their main target, Athens. The Athenians, meanwhile, mustered their hoplites and marched north, joined only by a small force from Plataea. When they arrived at Marathon, the Athenian commanders hotly debated whether they should fight the Persians at once or wait for their allies, the Spartans. Miltiades, the most aggressive of the Athenians, won the argument, and

#### TREASURY OF TRIUMPH

The Athenians' treasury at Delphi celebrated their triumph at Marathon. They filled it with the spoils of war as an offering to the god Apollo.



of their opposite numbers and

enveloping the Persian centre from

both sides. The battle disintegrated

beach as the defeated Persians sought

to re-embark on their triremes. About

runner Pheidippedes was sent to carry

into a disorganized melée on the

two-thirds of their force escaped.

According to Athenian legend, the

the news of the victory back to

Athens - the original "marathon"

the Greeks immediately advanced to confront the Persian host. The hoplites arranged themselves in a broad phalanx between two streams. In order to avoid being outflanked by the larger Persian army. Miltiades had to stretch his line. which was left thin at the centre. One source also suggests that he protected his flanks with ramparts of felled trees. To the amazement of the Persians, the outnumbered Greek footsoldiers advanced aggressively, in close formation, straight at the enemy On the flanks the Persian line collapsed under the charge, but in the centre it was the Greek phalanx that broke under a hail of arrows and the axes of Persian auxiliaries.

"The Persians...when they saw the Greeks coming on at speed made ready to receive them, although it seemed to them that the Athenians were bereft of their senses and bent upon their own destruction. for they saw a mere handful of men coming on at a run The hoplites on the flanks responded without ... horsemen by turning back from the hot pursuit or archers."

#### WITNESS TO WAR HERODOTUS

The Greek historian Herodotus (c.485-425 BCE) is our main source of information about the Greek-Persian Wars. Although he was born too late to have seen the events he describes at first hand, his accounts are full of vivid details that may have been told

him by evewitnesses

POLOTO

GREEK-PERSIAN WARS

#### Thermopylae



Thessaly, northern Greece

August 480 BCE Greeks: 7,000; Persians: 200,000 CASUALTIES Greeks: 2,500; Persians: 20 000

The Persian emperor Xerxes succeeded his father Darius in 486 BCE. Determined to expand his empire and avenge the defeat at Marathon, he set in motion meticulous preparations for the conquest of Greece. Faced with this new threat, most Greek cities chose to give in and accept Persian suzerainty. But Athens and the cities of the Peloponnese, including Sparta, remained defiant. In 480

Xerxes' preparations were complete and he led his army across the Hellespont (the straits between mainland Asia and Europe) and down through northern Greece, accompanied by his fleet. sailing down the coast.

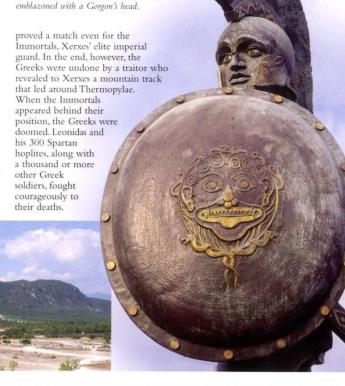
#### BATTLE SITE

In 480 BCE Thermopylae was a narrow pass between the mountain and the sea, but silting has turned it into a broader coastal plain.

The Athenian leader Themistocles persuaded his Peloponnesian allies to confront the Persians by land and sea well to the north of Athens. A force of hoplites and skirmishers led by Spartan king Leonidas took up position at Thermopylae - a narrow defile between Mount Kallidromon and the sea - while a predominantly Athenian fleet of triremes was stationed off the island of Euboea. The Persian naval force was battered by storms on its way down the coast and, severely weakened, fought cautiously in an indecisive battle with the Greeks at Artemisium. On land. however, the Greeks faced the full might of the Persian army. For three days Leonidas's vastly outnumbered army held the pass, the narrowness of the battlefield preventing the Persians from taking advantage of their numbers. Man for man, the Greeks

A statue of Leonidas, hero of Thermopylae, with a horsehair helmet crest and a shield

CRESTED HERO



had sailed south to CORINTHIAN HELMET This style of hoplite helmet, giving

September 480 BCF FORCES Greeks: 300-500 ships; Persians: 500-700 ships

Salamis

GREEK-PERSIAN WARS

Off the Greek island of Salamis

200-300 ships After the battle of Thermopylae the Peloponnesian cities withdrew their forces south of the Isthmus of Corinth, leaving Athens indefensible. The Athenian leader Themistocles

CASUALTIES Greeks:

40 shins: Persians:

Piraeus, and ferried them to the relative safety of the island of Salamis. The Persian army seized the acropolis in Athens after a short siege, plundering or burning everything inside. In the face of this disaster, Themistocles remained convinced that a victory at sea could turn the tables on the invaders. The Greek fleet was sheltered in the channel between Salamis and the mainland. Hoping

maximum facial protection, was common in the 5th century BCE. narrow waters, Themistocles sent Xerxes a message saving that, if the Persian fleet attacked, his Athenians would change sides and the rest of the Greeks would flee. This message had credibility since many Greeks had already joined the Persian forces. The following day, Xerxes watched from a hilltop as most of his fleet rowed into the eastern end of the Salamis channel. As the channel narrowed, the triremes bunched together, creating confusion and limiting movement. At that point, the Greek fleet attacked, the ranks of oarsmen rowing with all their strength to ram into the enemy warships. Much of the battle was fought with arrows, spears, and axes

as marine infantry and archers clashed, fighting on ships locked together. The conflict lasted seven hours, before the Persian fleet was decisively put to flight. With winter approaching and resupply by sea no longer possible, Xerxes withdrew his army to the north.

#### OARED WARFARE

At Salamis, as in all naval battles of this period, the aim was to sink the enemy by ramming or to get shipborne soldiers onto enemy vessels.

#### GREEK-PERSIAN WARS Battle of Plataea



FORCES Persians: 100,000; Greeks: 80,000 CASHALTIES

July 479 BCE

Persians: 50,000: South of Thebes Greeks: 1 500 Greek mainland

In 479 BCE the Persians, commanded by Mardonius, once more marched south into Greece. Sparta, Athens, and their allies assembled a substantial army and faced the Persians in front of Thebes. After an eight-day standoff, the Greeks decided on a night withdrawal to Plataea. This manoeuvre went chaotically wrong. By daybreak the centre had successfully withdrawn, but the Spartans on the right and Athenians on the left were still close to the enemy. Sensing an opportunity to crush the Spartans, Mardonius launched his infantry against them. But the Spartans, unsurpassed in close combat, took out many of the Persian footsoldiers. By luck, the withdrawn Greek centre returned just in time to intercept an encirclement of the Athenians by Persian cavalry. Mardonius was killed fighting the Spartans and the battle turned into a rout as Persian soldiers were hacked down while attempting to flee. A further Greek victory at Mycale the following month brought the Persian invasion to an end.



# GREEK VERSUS GREEK

THE PELOPONNESIAN WAR, between 431 and 404 BCE, was started by Sparta in an attempt to reduce Athenian power. In search of a decisive result, Athens was forced to challenge Spartan superiority on land; in turn, Sparta had to contest Athenian control of the sea. When

the Spartan navy achieved victory at Aegospotami, the Athenians lost the war. Yet Athens remained a player in the complex wars of the first half of the 4th century, in which the city-state of Thebes proved more than a match for the Spartan hoplites.



#### PELOPONNESIAN WAR Siege of Syracuse



Syracuse, east

WARFARE IN THE ANCIENT WORLD

DATE 415-413 BCE FORCES Athenians 30.000 Spartans: 3.000: Syracusans: unknown

CASUALTIES Entire Athenian force killed or captured

The aim was to starve the defenders to death. In 414, however, the arrival of a 3,000-strong Spartan expedition, led by Gylippus, interrupted this slow labour. The Spartan commander blocked the Athenians from completing their wall by building a counter-wall across its path. The arrival of further reinforcements from Athens led by Demosthenes only fed more men into an increasingly desperate situation. Disease broke out in the Athenian

camp and the Syracusans blockaded the Athenian fleet in harbour. After a break-out attempt by the fleet failed, the trapped Athenians tried to escape overland. Caught in mountainous terrain under constant harassment from light forces with bows, javelins, and slingshots, the remaining 7,000 Athenians finally surrendered. Their generals were executed and the rest sent to die as slave workers in the stone quarries of Sicily.



PELOPONNESIAN WAR

#### Pylos



425 BCE FORCES Athenians: 800 hoplites, 2,000 other troops;

West coast of the Peloponnese

Spartans: 420 hoplites CASUALTIES Spartans: 128 killed, the rest captured

After war broke out between Athens and Sparta in 431 BCE, the Athenians could not prevent the Spartans from raiding up to the walls of Athens. They hit back by landing a garrison, led by Demosthenes, on the Peloponnesian coast at Pylos and using this base to launch raids into Sparta. In 425 the Spartans failed to retake Pylos with a combined land and sea operation. Even worse, hoplites they had placed on the nearby island of Sphacteria were cut off by the arrival of an Athenian fleet. Demosthenes himself then landed on the island with 800 hoplites and a large number of skirmishers. Driven back by the arrows of these troops, the Spartans were unable to engage in battle. Those that the Athenians did not kill they took prisoner.

#### PELOPONNESIAN WAR

#### Delium



November 424 BCE FORCES Athenians: 7 000 honlites: Boeotians: 7,000 hoplites, 1,000 cavalry,

CASUALTIES Athenians: east-central Greece

Led by the general Hippocrates, an Athenian army returning from a foray into Boeotia, northwest of Athens, was caught by an army from that region. The Boeotian general Pagondas drew up his phalanxes on ground hidden by a hill. When the shalanxes came over the hill to attack, the Athenians had to respond swiftly. They charged uphill to meet the enemy, and, in the words of historian Thucydides, the opposing phalanxes 'crashed into one another on the run" and then "stood pushing against each other with their shields in a brutal battle". On the right the Theban phalanx was 25 ranks deep and pressed back the 8-deep Athenian ranks. But on the left the Athenians got the upper hand and butchered many of their enemies when the Boeotian phalanx collapsed. Pagondas ordered his cavalry to attack in support of his weakest wing. Luckily for him, when the horsemen appeared over a hill, the Athenians mistakenly believed a new army was joining the battle. As panic spread, the Athenian force turned and ran back towards the city of Delium, pursued by the Boeotians. Almost 1,000 Athenians were killed, including Hippocrates.

#### PELOPONNESIAN WAR

#### Aegospotami



DATE 405 BCE FORCES Athenians: 200 warships: Spartans: CASUALTIES

Athenians: more than

190 ships captured or

destroyed

On the Hellespont, off the coast of Thrace

After its defeat at Syracuse, Athens was seriously weakened. The Spartans put the city under almost permanent siege by land; all that they needed for

a complete victory was to overcome Athenian domination at sea, Athens survived by importing shiploads of that if the Spartans cut that lifeline it was doomed. Under the direction their new fleet ready for battle in 406 BCE. Results were at first mixed. Lysander was victorious at Ephesus. only to be removed from his post because Spartan law limited an admiral's command to one year. The Athenians then crushingly defeated the Spartans under Callicratidas at Arginusae. In return for funding more shipbuilding in the wake of this defeat.

"The Peloponnesians fell upon the rest of the ships, some of which they took entirely empty and others they disabled while their crews were still getting aboard. And the men, coming up unarmed and in straggling fashion, perished at their ships, or if they fled by land, their enemies, who had disembarked, slew them. Lysander took three thousand men prisoners...[and] sailed back...to the sound of pipes and hymns of victory."

#### WITNESS TO WAR PLUTARCH

The Greek biographer Plutarch (46-c.119 CE) wrote about the battle of Aegospotami in his biography of the Spartan general Lysander. Plutarch was writing about five centuries after the Peloponnesian War, but he was a meticulous researcher - this description is based on contemporary sources.

grain from the Black Sea, recognizing of admiral Lysander, the Spartans had

at Aegospotami on the Hellespont. Lysander, shadowing their movements but avoiding battle. positioned himself on the opposite shore. He observed that the Athenian sailors had fixed habits: they set sail each morning, paraded on the sea, then returned to shore for lunch. Lysander saw an opportunity not to be missed. A single scout vessel was sent to watch the Athenian base. When a signal flashed from the spy

ship, informing Lysander that the

held up the Theban manoeuvre and

RAM ATTACK

The heavy ram on

designed to crash through an enemy

a Greek warship was

the Persian prince

Cyrus insisted on

Lysander's return.

In 405 the

Athenian fleet

established itself

Athenians were ashore, the Spartan fleet descended on the enemy, seizing empty triremes and landing marines to butcher the Athenians on the beach. Only eight Athenian warships escaped. The following year, facing starvation. Athens surrendered.

"The Athenians, panic-stricken at the unexpected move. held out for a short while and then gave way, and at once. some deserting the ships, others the camp, they took flight in whatever direction each man hoped to find safety."

Diodorus Siculus, Library of History, 1st century BCE

#### THEBAN WARS

# Leuctra



LOCATION central Greece

In 379 BCE the Boeotian city-state of Thebes revolted against the Spartans, who had achieved dominance over Greece through their victory in the Peloponnesian War. In 371 the Spartans advanced into Boeotia. On the plain of Leuctra the Spartans spread their hoplites evenly across the battlefield with - as was traditional their commander and best infantry on the right. Sparta's experienced. larger force had every expectation of crushing the Thebans. But the Theban leader Epaminondas adopted an unprecedented battle formation. He concentrated his hoplites in a column 48 ranks deep on the left of his line, where he also placed his elite infantry, the Sacred Band. This left only a thin line of hoplites in the centre and on his right, screened by skirmishers on foot and horseback. The skirmishers held the Spartans off while Epaminondas's column crashed into the enemy's right, causing it to scatter. Epaminondas now attacked the Spartans' exposed flank and put the superior Spartan force to flight.

Thebans: negligible

#### THEBAN WARS

LOCATION The Peloponnes north of Sparta

The victory at Leuctra initiated a period of Theban dominance in Greece, guaranteed by the military genius of Epaminondas. Sparta and Athens allied to challenge Thebes, but it was only in 362 BCE that enough other states joined the alliance to pose a serious threat. Epaminondas responded by seizing the strategic initiative, sending his army deep into the Peloponnese. When a direct advance on Sparta was blocked by the Spartan army, the Thebans turned to threaten the city of Mantinea, one of Sparta's allies. The arrival of an Athenian force

# Mantinea

#### DATE 362 BCE FORCES

CASUALTIES

his line, while Theban horsemen were deployed on both flanks, supported 25,000 on each side by hamippoi (runners trained to keep up with cavalry on foot). When battle Athenian-Spartan was joined, Epaminondas led his hoplite alliance: 1 000 killed 2.000 captured: elite in a crushing charge against the Thebans: similar Mantineans, who held the right of the enemy line, while the Theban cavalry swept Athenian horsemen from the field. The Mantinean infantry broke into flight, but in the moment of

#### CONFLICT ZONE

Mantinea in the Peloponnese was the site of three battles. The first, between Sparta and Athens in 418 BCE, occurred during the Peloponnesian War. The second brought a victory for Thebes in 362. The third, and least, was a defeat for Sparta in 207.

the pursuit and, without their leader,

Thebes quickly fell from pre-eminence.

Athenians, Spartans, and Mantineans were able to join up to confront PERICLES Epaminondas, As usual, Epaminondas laced his elite infantry on the left of The Athenian statesman Pericles led the city in its golden age. Identifying the interests of his city with the development of trade their ties with Greece. its seaport at Piraeus behind long walls, forcing the city to trade by sea. As victory Epaminondas himself was slain. a result the city's The Thebans failed to follow through

C.490-429 BCE

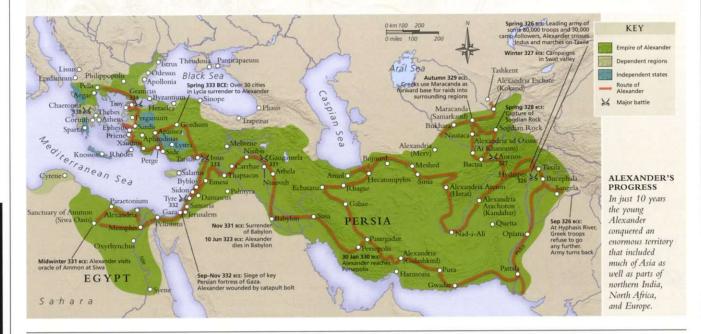
around the Mediterranean, he encouraged Athenians to sever He enclosed Athens and economy flourished. but Pericles's policies failed to prevent war with Sparta in 431 BCE. After falling from grace, he died during the plague of 429.



# THE CONQUESTS OF ALEXANDER

THE TRIUMPH OF ALEXANDER of Macedon over the mighty Persians between 334 and 323 BCE was an exploit of unparalleled audacity, creating an empire stretching from Greece to India. He achieved this feat with the army he had inherited from his father, Philip, with its irresistible cavalry, hardened infantry, and light forces

of auxiliaries. The make-up of this force reflected Alexander's proclaimed desire to wage war on behalf of all Greeks: it included Macedonians, Thessalians, and Thracians, as well as Cretans and Balkans. He himself was an indomitable leader, seizing the initiative on all occasions and pursuing the destruction of his enemies in battle.



#### WARS OF PHILIP OF MACEDON

DATE 338 BCE

CASUALTIES

Athenians and

Macedonians:

Thehans: 20 000

FORCES Athenians and

Macedonians: 32 000

No reliable estimates

Thebans: 50,000;

#### Chaeronea



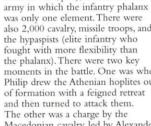
50km (30 miles) north of Thebes, Boeotia

In the spring of 338 BCE, an army fielded by Athens and Thebes confronted Philip's Macedonians outside the Boeotian town of Chaeronea. The Athenian-Theban force outnumbered their enemy, but they were far less diversified, consisting

#### PHILIP II OF MACEDON

When Philip secured the throne in 359 BCE, Macedonia was a backward state on the periphery of Greece. His energetic rule transformed Macedonia into a great power, through diplomacy and military innovations. Philip was a born warrior (he lost an eye in battle) who insisted on toughness and discipline in the large standing army he created. Victory at Chaeronea in 338 won him control of Greece, which he intended to use as a springboard for an ambitious campaign against the Persians, but his assassination in 336 meant that the task fell nstead to his son, Alexander.

mainly of hoplites. In contrast, Philip, influenced by Epaminondas (see Theban Wars, p25), had created an also 2,000 cavalry, missile troops, and moments in the battle. One was when Philip drew the Athenian hoplites out



The other was a charge by the Macedonian cavalry, led by Alexander, which shattered the Theban forces. Thebes' elite infantry, the Sacred Band, fought on until only 46 of their 300 men were

secure enough to embark on the campaign against Persia that his father had planned. Alexander's army sailed across the Hellespont into Anatolia, in itself a complex operation involving thousands of troops as well as siege equipment. It then marched east into Persian-ruled territory, Alexander intending to follow the coastline since his army would depend on esupply by sea. Mounted scouts rode n front of the main body, and it was they who reported the presence of Persian forces drawn up on the far bank of the Granicus river. The army assembled by local Persian commanders included a large

osition. The river ran fast and its

CONQUESTS OF ALEXANDER

DATE May 334 BCE

Persians: 35,000

CASUALTIES

than 15 000

Succeeding his murdered father in

336 BCE, Alexander first consolidated

a rebellion by Thebes. By 334 he felt

his hold on Greece, brutally suppressing

Persians: more

Macedonians: 40,000;

lincluding up to 8,000

Greek mercenaries)

FORCES

Granicus



#### MEDIEVAL VIEW

Under a shower of javelins, Alexander's shock cavalry cross the Granicus river in this 15th-century CE French illustration.

banks were steep: an opposed crossing would be a risky venture. Reaching the river in the late afternoon, Alexander led across a cavalry attack. Battle was joined on the far bank as the Persian cavalry attempted to push the Macedonians back into the river, horse pressing against horse. In the thick of the fighting, Alexander lost his spear and almost his life. But the Persian horsemen soon broke before the ferocious Macedonian onslaught and Alexander's infantry were able to wade across to join in. They quickly surrounded the Persian forces, massacring more than 15,000 of them. Those whom the Macedonians took prisoner they sent to work as slaves.

CONQUESTS OF ALEXANDER

#### Gaugamela (Arbela)



LOCATION West of Arbela (present-day Irbil in north Iraq)

CASUALTIES Macedonians: 500 killed, 3,000 wounded Persians: 50,000 killed

After his victory at Issus (see pp28-29), Alexander spent a year subduing the cities of Syria and Palestine and occupying Egypt, where he founded Alexandria. In the spring of 331 BCE. hearing that the Persian king Darius III was assembling a vast army in Mesopotamia, Alexander ordered his army to march east towards Persia itself. Darius, determined to defeat Alexander this time, waited for him on the Plain of Gaugamela. The Persian army was different from the

one at Issus. Most Greek mercenaries were gone, leaving the infantry weaker. but other forces had been summoned from Darius's Asian empire. including elephants from India and hosts of Scythian and Afghan horsemen to augment the Persian cavalry. Darius also deployed 200 chariots with

scythed wheels, flattening the ground in advance so that the vehicles could operate. Coming within sight of the Persian army in late September, Alexander pitched camp and considered how to take on forces

outnumbering his own by four to one. He rejected a night attack and instead planned a variant on

MACEDONIAN This metal breastplate

was recovered from the tomb of Philip of Macedon in Vergina. it was impossible to avoid being outflanked on the open plain, he ssigned cavalry and light infantry to defend the flanks and stationed a reserve force of infantry behind the front

line. The Macedonians advanced towards the Persians with Alexander and the elite Companion cavalry leading on the right and the phalanx infantry and other cavalry wing in echelon behind. Darius's charioteers charged the Macedonian phalanx, but proved hopelessly vulnerable to its light skirmishers, who struck most his usual tactics. Since of them down with javelins. On

the left, Alexander's flank guards fought desperately to hold the enveloping Scythian horsemen, but on the right the Macedonian cavalry and hypaspists (elite infantry) broke through, driving a path towards Darius in the Persian centre. Once again, the Persian emperor was obliged to flee the field. Alexander gave chase but gave up when he discovered that his army was getting the worst of fierce fighting behind him, where Persian infantry and cavalry had fought through to the rear of the Macedonian army. The arrival of Alexander's cavalry soon ended this melée around the baggage train. The Persians had once more been routed. In the aftermath of the battle, Darius was murdered by his own nobles and Alexander advanced to take the Persian capital, Babylon.

#### DELAYED REVENGE

Persepolis was the ceremonial centre of the Persian empire. In 330 BCE Alexander plundered it and burned the palace of Xerxes, probably as revenge for the



#### CONQUESTS OF ALEXANDER

#### Hydaspes



CASUALTIES Alexander: 310 killed; Hydasnes river King Porus: 23,000 northwest India killed (allegedly)

DATE May 326 BCE

Alexander: 6,000

King Porus: 30,000

infantry, 5,000 cavalry;

FORCES

In 326 BCE, with the Persian empire conquered, Alexander led a campaign into northern India. This brought him into confrontation with Parvataka (usually referred to as King Porus), the leading rajah of the Punjab. The two sides faced each other across the unfordable Hydaspes (now Jhelum) river. Alexander split his forces, leaving one part opposite Porus's position while marching the rest upstream, crossing the river in boats under cover of darkness. When Porus,

on his side of the river, he drew up his army, with its left wing by the water's edge. More than 100 war elephants were spaced out across the entire breadth of his line in front of his troops, with archers and javelin throwers on their backs, making a kind of movable fortification. Alexander ordered part of his cavalry to make a wide circuit around the right of Porus's line to attack from the rear. At the same time, javelin throwers were sent forward to harass the elephants, causing many of the beasts to panic and trample the troops behind them. As Porus's army wavered, Alexander led the Companion cavalry in a charge along the river bank, while his infantry phalanx also moved inexorably forward with shields locked. The fighting was fierce, but, attacked from all sides, Porus's men finally took flight and Porus himself was captured. It was Alexander's last major battle.

to his surprise, discovered Alexander

#### **ELEPHANTS AT WAR**

By the time Alexander encountered war elephants at Gaugamela and Hydaspes, they had been in use in Indian armies for about 700 years. Apart from inspiring terror, elephants were fast on the charge and hard to stop, and could carry several archers or spearmen in a howdah. or canopied saddle, on their backs. On the downside, wounded elephants were liable to panic, trampling friend and foe alike. It was said that elephants were scared of pigs, and porcine countermeasures were allegedly used successfully against them on at least one occasion. Nonetheless, war elephants became a common feature of armies in the Mediterranean region in the centuries after Alexander.



number of Greek mercenaries. It was outnumbered by Alexander's forces out had taken up a strong defensive

Rhodes and Pergamum

65 heavy warshins

Ipsus

AFTER HIS DEATH in 323 BCE, Alexander's empire was divided between his generals. Ptolemy took Egypt, Seleucus gained Syria and Iran, and Antigonus controlled Anatolia. These powers fought numerous battles throughout the 3rd century, and while their armies were

AFTER ALEXANDER

large, their style of warfare remained static a repetition of Alexander's tactics without his genius. When they faced the growing might of Rome in the 2nd century, the Ptolemies, Seleucids, and Antigonids had no answer to its innovative strategies and ruthless aggression.

ANTIGONIDS VERSUS SELEUCIDS The most notable imbalance between the forces was their respective numbers

DATE 301 BCF Demetrius opened with a cavalry FORCES Antigonus: 70.000 infantry, 10.000 cavalry, 75 elephants: Seleucus: 64,000 chain of elephants to cover the

infantry, 10,500

CASUALTIES

cavalry, 400 elephants

LOCATION Phrygia, west-central

More than 20 years after Alexander's death, his former general Antigonus the One-Eyed still aspired to defeat Seleucus and Ptolemy and win control of the Hellenistic world. Antigonus, who was more than 80 years old, called on his son Demetrius for support in a decisive trial of strength in Anatolia. Ptolemy was campaigning in Syria, but Seleucus, aided by Lysimachus, the ruler of Thrace, brought Antigonus to battle at Ipsus. The huge armies

#### SELEUCID RUINS

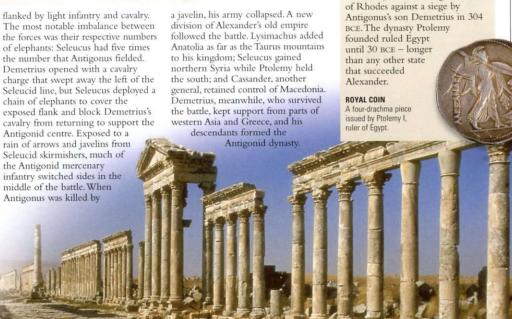
formed up conventionally,

phalanxes in the centre,

with spear-wielding infantry

flanked by light infantry and cavalry.

a javelin, his army collapsed. A new division of Alexander's old empire to his kingdom; Seleucus gained northern Syria while Ptolemy held the south; and Cassander, another western Asia and Greece, and his



c.367-283 BCE

PTOLEMY I

The Macedonian soldier Ptolemy

He was quick to seize control of

Egypt after Alexander's death, but

had to fight hard to preserve the

realm from other claimants. He

earned the name Soter (Greek for

"saviour") for defending the island

was one of Alexander's closest aides.

Cities such as Apamea in Anatolia, founded by Seleucus's son, Antiochus I, promoted Hellenistic culture in the century following Alexander's death.

#### SELEUCIDS VERSUS PTOLEMIES Raphia

DATE 22 June 217 BCE

No reliable estimates



FORCES Antiochus III: 62,000 infantry, 6,000 cavalry, 102 elephants; Ptolemy IV: 70,000 infantry, 5,000 cavalry, 73 elephants CASUALTIES

LOCATION Southwest of Gaza, southern Palestine

The battle at Raphia, one of the largest between the successor states of Alexander's empire, involved the Seleucid ruler Antiochus III and Ptolemy IV of Egypt. Antiochus was the aggressor, challenging Ptolemy for control of Coele Syria - roughly the area of modern-day Israel, Lebanon, Syria, and Jordan. Although Antiochus successfully invaded Coele Syria in 219, he failed to follow up with a decisive attack on Egypt. His delay allowed Ptolemy to strengthen his forces, training 30,000 Egyptian hoplites. When Antiochus marched towards Egypt in 217, his forces were matched by those of Ptolemy in number and quality. Each side had a

substantial force of elephants, although the Egyptians' African elephants were smaller than the Seleucids' Indian beasts. Early in the battle the Indian elephants advanced on the African elephants and put them to flight,

Antigonid centre. Exposed to a

rain of arrows and javelins from

Seleucid skirmishers, much of

infantry switched sides in the

middle of the battle. When

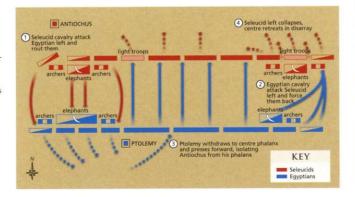
Antigonus was killed by

the Antigonid mercenary

broke up the cavalry on Ptolemy's left. The battle turned, however, when both sides' phalanxes clashed. Superior in numbers, well trained and officered. and inspired by Ptolemy himself in their midst, the Macedonian-Egyptian while a cavalry charge led by Antiochus infantry carried the day.

"Showing himself to his troops, [Ptolemy] inspired his own men with increased alacrity and spirit."

Polybius, The Histories, c.200-c.118 BCE



"With their tusks firmly interlocked [the elephants] shove with all their might. each trying to force the other to give ground, until the one who proves the strongest pushes aside the other's trunk; and then, once he has made him turn and has him in the flank, he gores him with his tusks as a bull does with his horns."

#### WITNESS TO WAR POLYBIUS

This account of an elephant fight at Raphia was written by the Roman historian Polybius. The use of massed elephants - inspired by Indian armies' use of the animals was one of the most striking features of Hellenistic warfare.

#### TRIREME

unexpectedly ran into a Roman army ROME VERSUS MACEDONIA

> 197 BCE 26,000 on either side CASUALTIES

Macedonians: 8 000

Romans: 700 killed

killed, 5,000 captured;

DATE December 190 or

January 189 BCE

FORCES Rome and

Pergamum: 40,000;

CASUALTIES Rome and

Syria: 72,000

Pergamum: 350; Syria: 53.000

Thessalv.

Magnesia

**LOCATION** East of

Izmir), Anatolia

Smyrna (present-day

Cynoscephalae

In 200 BCE Rhodes, Pergamum, and Athens appealed to Rome for help

against the expansionism of Philip V of Macedonia. In 197 Philip, leading his army south through Thessaly,

ROME VERSUS THE SELEUCIDS

In 192 BCE an expansionist Rome

declared war on the Seleucid ruler

of Syria, Antiochus III, the loser at

Lucius Cornelius Scipio and his

famous brother Scipio Africanus led an army of Romans and their allies from Pergamum into Anatolia. Antiochus advanced to meet them with a much larger force that included elephants and scythed chariots. The chariots' attack proved useless, but Antiochus led a cavalry charge that broke through the Roma left. However, while he wasted time attacking the Roman camp to the rear, his infantry phalanx showed its vulnerability - just as it had done at Raphia. Disrupted by panicking elephants and attacked from the flank by Roman cavalry, the tight Syrian Raphia. In the winter of 190-189 BCE, formation broke apart. The Romans slaughtered tens of thousands of men.



Near Mount Olympus, northern Greece

give battle. At first the Macedonian

advancing with sarissas lowered and shields interlocked and preventing the Roman legionaries from closing to hand-to-hand combat. As the Macedonians advanced, however, they began to lose formation. Paullus seized the initiative, ordering small units to infiltrate the enemy ranks and strike at their unprotected sides and backs. In close combat the Macedonians' unwieldy sarissas were useless. Many threw them away and drew daggers instead, but these were no match for the Romans' brutally efficient short swords. Whether the Macedonians stood and fought or turned and ran, the legionaries cut them down. The Romans' victory was total.

The ruins at Corinth hear witness the 2nd century BCE. Rome razed



#### In the Greek and Hellenistic periods oared warships ROWING TIERS were classified by the number of banks of oars they This cross-section shows two different ways of had - triremes three, biremes two, quinqueremes five. The trireme, the most successful warship, was stangering the parsmen's Zvoite (sat at a fairly light vessel that usually carried 14 fighting seating arrangement men - 10 armoured infantry and four archers - as Thalamite well as its 200 crew. Even so, a trireme fleet was immensely expensive to run. A fleet of 100 triremes wer level) required 20,000 sailors, which, even at the low pay accepted by the poorest classes, still meant a heavy wage bill. The preferred method of attack with a trireme was to ram an enemy vessel and pierce the side of its hull, after which it would either sink or be boarded. at upper level) OAR POWER A trireme was typically propelled by 170 rowers. with a helmsman to steer and a lookout at the prow. Sail not used Length 35m (115ft) Weight 36 tonnes Width 6m (20ft) Speed Up to 9 knots Crew 200 Pointed ram, Tivo oars at stern act

marching north under consul Titus

Quinctius Flamininus. Both armies

turned sideways to form a hasty battle

line. The Macedonian infantry formed

its traditional dense phalanx, bristling

with sarissas, while the Romans

positioned themselves in maniples

units of 120 men) spaced out in a

chessboard pattern, three lines deep.

The Macedonian phalanx was almost

invulnerable from the front, but at a

more flexible Roman infantry moved

Macedonian infantry were slaughtered

crucial moment in the battle the

around to attack from the flank

As the phalanx broke up, the

or forced to surrender.

Chios

DATE 201 BCE FORCES Macedonians 53 heavy warships:

MACEDONIANS VERSUS GREEKS

CASUALTIES INCATION The Appear Macedonians: 9 000-Sea, just off the coast Rhodes and of western Turkey

Philip V, king of Macedonia (ruled 221-179 BCE), was an aggressive ruler who created a large fleet as part of his expansionist policy in the Aegean and the eastern Mediterranean. His ambitions brought him into conflict with two small but doughty states: the island of Rhodes and the fortress city of Pergamum in western Anatolia, In 201 BCE Philip used his fleet to attack the island of Chios (now Khios), which lies between Pergamum and Rhodes. The

Rhodian admiral Theophiliscus and Pergamum's king Attalus mounted a combined naval operation to relieve the island. The battle, which took place in the strait between Chios and the Asian coast, went badly for Philip from the start. He lost his flagship in the opening encounter and despite his enemies' caution in the face of Philip's larger vessels, packed with marines - his losses mounted steadily. The Macedonians succeeded

in capturing Attalus's flagship, but overall suffered a costly defeat.

#### ROME VERSUS THE GREEKS Pvdna



Macedonians: 42,000 CASUALTIES Romans: fewer than 1,000 killed:

killed, 11,000 captured Pydna was the battle that sealed Rome's domination of Greece. It involved a Roman force led by Lucius Aemilius Paullus Macedonicus and the Macedonian army under King Perseus. The two forces camped on either side of a stream; following initial clashes. Perseus marched his whole army across the water to

ROMAN DESTRUCTION



# CELTIC BRONZE AND IRON WEAPONS

THE CELTS SPREAD THROUGHOUT western Europe in the 1st millennium BCE; they were the Gauls who stormed Rome in 390 BCE and the Britons that Caesar fought in 55 BCE. Their warfare was noisy and flamboyant, with warriors crying out challenges to single combat while the whole army shouted war cries and clashed weapons on shields, to the accompaniment of hornblowers and trumpeters. It took the icy efficiency of the Roman legions to defeat the Celts' wild rage for battle.

#### WEAPONS OF WAR

The Celts used chariots long after most other peoples had abandoned them. Julius Caesar describes Celts as "driving all over the field, hurling javelins" and then "jumping down from the chariots to fight on foot". Celtic metalworking skills were highly developed and the quality of their swords, both in bronze and in iron, was often outstanding. Swords were costly, however, and not available to all Celtic soldiers; many warriors had to make do with a spear for stabbing or throwing, or a slingshot.



AXEHEADS

lower two from

750-650 BCE.

Attached to wooden

hafts, they could have

been tools or weapons.

The top axehead

dates from the 2nd millennium BCE, the

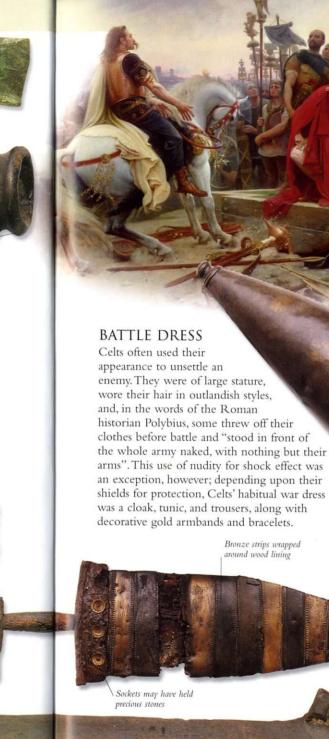
Spears, often thrown as javelins, vere the standard weapon of Celtic warriors, from the Bronze Age through to the Iron Age.

Sharp point, even though sword used more for slashing than stabbing

#### SWORDS

The Celts were renowned for their swords, from bronze blades such as these to the famous Hallstatt longswords (750-400 BCE), with their hard iron cores and soft iron cutting edges.

Double-edged blade



BRONZE HELMET

DEFEATED GAUL

Vercingetorix Before Caesar is a 19th-century representation of the

> armies. The Romans' organization and discipline

was superior, and their body

CEREMONIAL SHIELD

This beautifully decorated shield.

consisting of a bronze sheet set

recovered from London's Thames

river. Dating from about the 2nd century BCE, it was probably for ceremonial use.

with coloured glass studs, was

armour was more effective.

Gaulish leader's surrender to the Romans at Alesia (see p46). By the 1st century BCE the Romans consistently defeated Celtic

Like the bronze shield (right), this Celtic helmet was found in the Thames. It is uncertain whether this type of horned helmet would have provided much protection in battle; it too may have been ceremonial.

DAGGER AND SHEATH

This iron dagger, protruding from its wood and bronze sheath, is from 6th-century BCE Britain. It probably belonged to a tribal chieftain.

Surface of metal shiny gold colour

Grip would have been



# EARLY ROME

A SERIES OF WARS FOUGHT between the 5th and 3rd centuries BCE enabled the Romans - originally just one of many Italian peoples - to dominate the whole of Italy south of the Po river, Etruscans, Latins, Samnites, Celts, and Greeks all fought the Romans, occasionally beating them, but Rome always recovered and, in the process of conquering Italy, created an army that would build one of the world's mightiest empires.

TEMPLE OF THANKSGIVING

twins at the battle of Lake Regillus.

The Temple of Castor and Pollux in the

Roman Forum is said to have been built

in gratitude for the support of the heavenly

#### FIRST LATIN WAR Lake Regillus



FORCES

Romans: unknown: Latins: unknown CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

DATE Retween 509

LOCATION Possibly north of Rome

WARFARE IN THE ANCIENT

According to the Roman historian Livy, at the battle of Lake Regillus the Romans under Appius Postumius and Titus Aebutius fought a force of Latins - Rome's immediate neighbours, in revolt against the rising power of the Roman republic led by Octavius Mamilius. The two sides almost certainly fought in a style learned from the Greeks, with armoured infantry in a phalanx stabbing with spears, and lighter skirmishers using javelins or slingshots. The battle reached its climax when the Roman horsemen dismounted to join in the hand-tohand fighting. This secured a Roman victory and a further step towards Rome's control of Latium, the ancient region of west-central Italy.

PLUMED

WARRIOR

The distinctive style

of Samnite armour

shown in this 4th-

century BCE fresco,

Roman gladiators.

was adopted by

#### GALLIC INVASIONS OF ITALY Allia



18 July 390 BCE FORCES Celts: 30,000; Romans: 10 000-15 000 CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

LOCATION

In the first decade of the 4th century BCE. Roman confidence was high. The capture of the fortified Etruscan city of Veii in 396, after a struggle lasting nine years, constituted a major victory and sealed the reputation of Rome's first great general, Marcus Furius Camillus. This success made the Romans' defeat at Allia - at the hands of a Celtic tribe, the Senones - all the more shocking. The Celts (also known as Gauls) had been migrating across the Alps into northern Italy for some years, seeking land to settle and towns to plunder. In 390, led ov their chief Bran Brennus to the

Romans), the Senones pushed further south, crossing the nountains and besieging the Etruscan city of Clusium

#### CELTIC HEADGEAR

This 4th-century BCE iron, bronze, and gold Celtic chieftain's helmet belies the Roman view of the Celts barbarians and savages.

In response to an appeal for aid, the Romans sent envoys to Clusium. Their mission was to negotiate with the Celts, but their arrogance so enraged the tribesmen that the Celts abandoned the siege to march on Rome instead. A hastily assembled army advanced along the Tiber river to block the Celts' path, neglecting it was later said - to make the proper sacrifices. The battle was fought with the river on one side and the other flank open, allowing the Celts to use their superior numbers to outflank the Roman line. The Roman phalanx was ineffective against tribesmen who fought in a looser formation. Intimidated by the Celts' wild appearance and unnerving war cries, the Romans fought with less than their usual resolve and were put to flight. Many sought safety by crossing

the river, but drowned under the weight of their armour. Many more were cut down as they ran. When Brennus's army reached Rome it found the city gates open and the earth-andwood walls undefended.

The fortified capitol held out, but the Celts occupied the rest of the city. They agreed to

leave only after payment of a large tribute in gold. Rome never forgot its humiliation Under Camillus's

guidance, the city erected new walls of stone, while military reforms moved the army away from dependence on the phalanx towards the more flexible legion.

#### EARLY ROME



321 BCE

Apennine mountains

Caudine Forks

FORCES Romans: unknown; Samnites: unknown

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

The battle of the Caudine Forks took place during the Second Samnite War (327-304 BCE), A Roman army led by consuls Spurius Postumius and Titus Veturius Calvinus was ambushed in a mountain pass in the Apennines. Samnite general Gavius Pontius blocked both ends of the pass with felled trees, while his men occupied the heights on each side, from where they rained down missiles. In a hopeless position, the Romans surrendered. The Samnites released them only after the Romans had accepted peace terms and succumbed to the humiliation of "passing under the voke" (an arch formed by Samnite spears). The Roman Senate rejected the terms once the men had been freed.

#### the Romans' dominion over SECOND LATIN WAR

#### Trifanum



southern Italy

The battle of Trifanum involved an alliance of Romans and Samnites hardy tribespeople of the Apennine mountains - against the Latins and the Campanians of southern Italy.

338 BCE

FORCES Romans and Samnites:

Campanians: unknown

No reliable estimates

This was a turnaround: in 343 BCE the Campanians had asked for and received Rome's support against Samnite raids. The resulting First Samnite War (343-341) failed to subdue the Samnites, but extended

Campania. The Campanians were unhappy with this outcome. At the same time, Rome's Latin allies were discontented with their role in the alliance. In 340 the Latins and Campanians together rose in revolt. In 339, at the battle of Vesuvius, the Roman army narrowly escaped disaster and could do no better than fight to a draw. In 338, however, a Roman army under Titus Manlius Torquatus, accompanied by Samnite auxiliaries, faced the Latin-Campanian alliance at Trifanum. Torquatus was a tough commander - he is said to have executed his own son for disobeying orders - and his leadership had largely saved the day at Vesuvius. At Trifanum his forces triumphed, crushing the Latins and Campanians so completely that the rebellion collapsed. The defeated were treated leniently, being brought back into a subservient alliance with Rome.

"The Latins were so utterly worsted that when the consul and his victorious army was preparing to ravage their territory, they made a complete surrender."

Livy, The History of Rome, c.29 BCE-17 CE

#### THIRD SAMNITE WAR

#### Sentinum

LOCATION

Umbria.



PYRRHIC WARS

Heraclea

LOCATION

southeast Italy

central Italy

Romans 38,000;

CASUALTIES Romans:

8 500: Samnites and

Gauls: 25,000

In the Third Samnite War (298-290 BCE), Rome faced a dangerous alliance of Samnites. Etruscans, Umbrians, and Gauls, The Romans mobilized two consular armies, led by consuls Publius Decius Mus and Quintus Fabius Maximus Rullianus. Each army consisted of two Roman legions and two legions from Rome's allies. This powerful force marched out to locate and destroy the Samnites and their allies. A diversionary attack against their homelands drew the Etruscan and Umbrian forces away, leaving the Samnites and Gauls to face up to

FORCES

Romans: 35,000:

Greeks: 30 000

Romans: 7 000-15 000:

Greeks: 4.000-11.000

CASHAITIES

The expansion of Roman power into

southern Italy posed a threat to the

the Romans at Sentinun (near present-day Sassoferrato) Decius's army took up position opposite the Gauls, while to his right Fabius's army prepared to fight the Samnites under their leader, Egnatius. As usual the consuls positioned the two Roman legions at the centre of the line of each army, flanked on each side by the allied legions, with the cavalry at either end. When fighting began, the legions led by Fabius soon gained the upper hand over the Samnites. Decius and his army had a more difficult time, however, and were surprised by the Gauls, who sent war chariots careering into the Roman cavalry. Milling horses disrupted the legion's infantry formations, which

began to crumble under the attack

of sword-wielding Gallic warriors.

Tarentum, invited Pyrrhus, king of

most experienced general of his day,

the Greek state of Epirus and the

to help them against the Romans.

war elephants, and took control

of southern Italy. The Romans

responded by sending an army.

commanded by Publius Valerius

Laevinus, to confront Pyrrhus. The

forces met at Heraclea, by the Siris

beasts the Romans had never before

river. While Pyrrhus's elephants -

encountered in battle - frightened

He brought with him some 20,000

infantry and 3,000 cavalry, as well as

At this desperate uncture, Decius rode out alone into the midst of the Gauls in a suicidal act of self-sacrifice. Emboldened by the courageous death of their consul, the legions fought with renewed vigour. By this time the Samnites were fleeing, their leader, Egnatius, and thousands of his people cut down by the pursuing Romans. The Gauls successfully disengaged, limiting their losses, but Rome had won another important victory. SAMNITE GEAR

Although the Samnite wars

ended in defeat for the Samnites, two of whom are shown on this vase, they continued to fight Rome in the 2nd and 1st centuries BCE. PYRRHIC WARS

#### Beneventum



LOCATION Beneventum. CASHAITIES Campania, No reliable estimates southern Italy

FORCES

Romans: unknown

Pyrrhus's army:

After the battle of Asculum (see Heraclea, below). Pyrrhus crossed to Sicily to support the Greek city of Syracuse in its conflict with Carthage. Returning to southern Italy in 275, he encountered a Roman army led by Manius Curius Dentatus, Pyrrhus's infantry and elephants pressed the Romans back to the walls of their camp, but the Romans goaded the elephants to turn back into the Greek phalanx. In the resulting confusion the Romans counterattacked and carried the day. Pyrrhus soon returned to Greece, and, before the end of the year, Tarentum had fallen to Rome.

#### "The elephants more particularly began to distress the Romans, whose horses, before they came near, not enduring them, went back with their riders..."

Plutarch, "Life of Pyrrhus", c.75 ce

The slaughter was so great on both sides that Pyrrhus reputedly said, "One more such victory and I am lost" hence the term "Pyrrhic victory". After the battle Pyrrhus marched north towards Rome, expecting the Romans to sue for peace. Instead, Rome and its allies assembled another army to face him. Pyrrhus prudently

southern Italy, including the Samnites. his own soldiers, and recruits from the Greek cities. Rome once more took the offensive, marching south into Apulia. In another fierce fight at Asculum, Pyrrhus was victorious. but again at heavy cost - he himself was badly wounded. The Romans lost on the day but retained their forces in fighting shape.

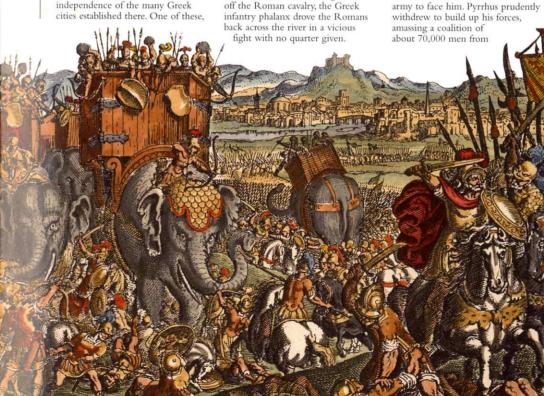
#### MIGHTY BEASTS

This 17th-century CE painting of the battle of Heraclea overestimates the carrying capacity of Pyrrhus's elephants. A crew of three was usual; one to steer, two to fight.

#### 319-272 BCE

#### **PYRRHUS**

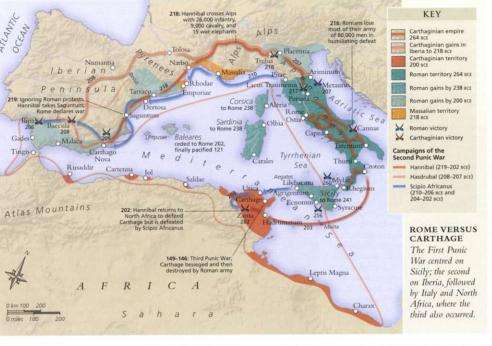
Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, was an inspired soldier of fortune who amassed power and wealth fighting in the wars between Alexander the Great's successors in Greece. His outstanding talents as a general made warring rulers vie for his services, for which he ensured that he was well recompensed. As a professional military man, he was startled by the ferocity of Roman warfare and by the Romans' refusal to do a deal when clearly beaten. In 272 BCE, while fighting in the streets of the Greek city of Argos, Pyrrhus was knocked out by a tile thrown from a rooftop and promptly decapitated by a passing enemy soldier. He left behind two highly praised books; his memoirs and a study on the art of war.



## THE PUNIC WARS

THE EXPANSION OF ROME IN THE 3rd century BCE brought it into conflict with Carthage, the dominant power in the central Mediterranean. In the First Punic War (264-241 BCE) Romans and Carthaginians fought for control of Sicily in a series of naval battles. Defeated in Sicily,

Carthage sought revenge in the Second Punic War (218-201). The Carthaginian general Hannibal came close to destroying Rome, but once more the Romans ultimately triumphed. Finally, in the Third Punic War (149–146). Rome completed the destruction of Carthage.



days. Mylae put this new fleet to the

at sea, the Romans depended on an

underside. Each time a Carthaginian

galley closed with a Roman vessel,

the corvus was dropped so the spike

legionaries then swarmed across to

capture the ship. The result was a

innovation: the corvus, a boarding

bridge with an iron spike on its

drove through its deck. Roman

test. To make up for their inexperience

FIRST PUNIC WAR

#### Ecnomus



coast of Sicily

CASUALTIES Romans: 24 ships sunk; Carthaginians: 30 ships sunk, 64 captured

DATE 256 BCE

FORCES Romans: 330

ships, 140,000 crew;

ships, 150,000 crew

Carthaginians: 350

In terms of the number of sailors and soldiers involved, Ecnomus was one of the largest naval battles in history. In 256 BCE the Romans decided to attack Carthage itself. A large fleet, under the command of consuls Lucius Manlius Vulso and Marcus Atilius Regulus, set out to ferry an army across to North Africa. Two squadrons in wedge formation in front and a reserve squadron in line behind protected a squadron of galleys towing transports. This fleet met the Carthaginians, whose ships were stretched out in line off the Sicilian coast. In a pincer movement, the Carthaginian right wing attacked the Roman reserve squadron while their left drove into the transport squadron. But the front two Roman squadrons broke through the centre of the Carthaginian line and then turned back to rescue the struggling rear squadrons - no mean feat of commanding and manoeuvring. In the words of the Greek historian Polybius, "It was now the turn of the Carthaginians to be in difficulties." The Romans routed them and, after refitting in Sicily, their fleet sailed across to Africa unopposed.

#### FIRST PUNIC WAR Mylae



FORCES Romans: 110 warships: Carthaginians: 130 warships

CASUALTIES Carthaginians: 31 Off the north coast



FIRST PUNIC WAR

#### Drepana



FORCES Romans and Carthaginians: 130 warships each **CASUALTIES** Romans: 93 shins lost, 8,000 men killed 20,000 captured

DATE 249 BCE

Despite their triumph at Ecnomus, the Romans' expedition to Africa ended in catastrophe. A large fleet sent to evacuate the Roman army was wrecked by a storm, claiming around 100,000 lives. By 249 BCE, however, Rome had built another fleet, which set out to blockade the Carthaginians at Lilybaeum, one of Carthage's last strongholds in Sicily. Seeking a good omen before the operation, Roman consul Appius Claudius Pulcher spread grain in front of sacred hickens on his ship's deck. When the chickens refused to eat. Claudius had the birds thrown overboard. This sacrilege proved unwise. Carthaginian dmiral Adherbal sailed out of port before Claudius's fleet arrived, then doubled back from behind a headland to trap the Romans as they closed on he harbour. The Carthaginians

OFFICER'S CREST Roman legionary officers wore this simple bronze helmet with its horsehair crest in the late 1st century BCE.

rammed and boarded most of the Roman galleys - fewer than 30 escaped - but this was to be Rome's last defeat in the First Punic War. In 241 a decisive Roman victory off the Aegates islands cut the supply route for the Carthaginian army in Sicily. Carthage had no choice but to give Rome full control of the island.

#### SECOND PUNIC WAR

#### Trebia



LOCATION South of Milan northern Italy

Carthaginians: 30,000 CASUALTIES Romans: 30,000 killed Carthaginians: 5.000 killed

Romans: 40,000;

218 BCE

At the start of the Second Punic War the Carthaginian Hannibal marched an army from Spain through Gaul and across the Alps, into northern Italy. He lost many of his men and animals including most of his 37 elephants traversing Alpine passes deep in snow, but his arrival in Italy was a shock to the Romans. Hannibal was victorious in his first encounter with Roman forces, near the Ticinus river. The battle was little more than a cavalry skirmish, but with two significant outcomes: the Roman general Publius Cornelius Scipio (father of Scipio Africanus) was badly wounded, and Hannibal's success encouraged more



Gallic warriors to join his forces. A few weeks later the Carthaginians faced a Roman army across the Trebia river. Hannibal sent light horsemen to harass the Romans, provoking them into attacking across the swollen river. Meanwhile his brother Mago led a concealed force of infantry and cavalry to strike the Romans' rear. Most of the Roman forces fled or

responded by rushing his army

#### ROMAN DEFEAT

Scipio Africanus (centre) saves his father at the battle of Ticinus, the first encounter between Hannibal and the Romans on Italian soil, a few weeks before Trebia.

were massacred, although the legionary infantry hacked its way through the Carthaginian centre and escaped to safety.

#### 247-182 BCE HANNIBAL

Hannibal was the son of Hamilcar Barca, a Carthaginian general in the First Punic War, Hannibal inherited his father's obsession with revenge against Rome and provoked the Second Punic War by besieging Saguntum, in eastern Spain, in 219. He showed his military genius time and again in the campaigns in Italy from 218 onwards, but even he could not prevent the final defeat for Carthage at Zama in 202. He spent his later years in exile, first at the court of the Seleucid king Antiochus III and finally in Bithynia, where he poisoned himself rather than face Roman captivity. Roman accounts of Hannibal mention his cruelty and greed, but there is much evidence to the contrary, such as the respect he showed for the bodies of fallen Roman generals and the care he took of his men and his animals.

#### SECOND PUNIC WAR

#### Lake Trasimene



June 217 BCE FORCES Romans and Carthaginians: 40,000 soldiers each

LOCATION Near Perugia.

CASUALTIES Romans: c.30,000 killed

In the spring of 217 BCE Hannibal outmanoeuvred the Romans again. By marching his forces across the Apennines and through a supposedly impassible swamp around the Arno river, he bypassed the armies positioned to block his advance on Rome. Consul Gaius Flaminius

south in pursuit. This is exactly what Hannibal had anticipated. He positioned his men where the road to Rome passed through a narrow gap between Lake Trasimene on one side and steep hills on the other. As Flaminius's army marched through the defile they ran into Hannibal's infantry, drawn up across the road. Hannibal's cavalry and light infantry then charged down from the hills above. The cavalry attacked the rear of the Roman column, while the light infantry clashed with the Roman flank. Flaminius was killed in the ambush along with thousands of his men, who were cut down in the fighting or drowned fleeing into the lake. Thousands more surrendered in return for their lives being spared.

"The Romans, before they could discover their foe, learned from the shouts raised on all sides that they were surrounded."

Livy, The History of Rome, c.29 BCE-17 CE

#### HANNIBAL'S ARMY

The army that Hannibal led into Italy in 218 BCE had few Carthaginians in its ranks. Since Carthage had too small a population the operation went on. Rather than to form a citizen army, it relied on standardizing these forces, Hannibal allies or tributaries to provide most exploited their different fighting of its forces. Various Spanish tribes styles - Numidian horsemen fought supplied the core of the army,

as javelin throwers, for example, while Spanish tribesmen were fiercesome wielders of slingshots. Hannibal welded these troops into a disciplined force, hardy on the march and responsive to his command.

along with Libyans and Numidians

from North Africa, In addition, large

numbers of Celts (Gauls) enlisted as



#### MIXED FORCE

A 16th-century portraya of Hannibal's army reflects the variety and exoticism of his forces.



LOCATION southeast Italy

FORCES Romans: 80,000 infantry, 6,000 cavalry; Carthaginians: 40,000 infantry, 10,000 cavalry CASHALTIES Romans 50 000 killed: Carthaginians: 6,000

DATE 2 August 216 BCE

After the disaster at Lake Trasimene, the Romans elected Ouintus Fabius Maximus as dictator to lead the war effort. Fabius's policy was to avoid pitched battles, instead shadowing and harassing Hannibal's army, although these tactics were alien to the Roman way of making war. In July 216 BCE, when Hannibal captured a major Roman supply depot at Cannae in southern Italy, a massive Roman army set out to destroy his forces. Under the command of consuls Lucius Aemilius Paullus and Gaius Terentius Varro, the Roman force consisted of 16 legions: eight Roman and eight allied. After some initial skirmishes,

both sides established camps on the

north side of the Aufidus river. On

in front of the Romans but they

FIELDS OF WAR

severest defeat ever.

A column overlooks the

battlefield of Cannae, the

site of the Roman army's

1 August Hannibal deployed his forces

day, on Varro's orders, the Romans forded the river and drew up ready to fight on the south bank - a relatively narrow battlefield between the river and some hills, in which the Carthaginians would find it hard to use their cavalry. Without hesitating, Hannibal sent his own army across the river, shielding its movement with a screen of skirmishers. The Roman infantry legions were massed in a deep, tight formation at the centre of their line, with Roman cavalry flanking them on the river side and allied horsemen on their left. Hannibal's line consisted of lightly armoured Celtic and Spanish infantry at the centre, flanked by African infantry. At the edge of the river. Hannibal's armoured cavalry charged into the Roman horsemen. With no room to manoeuvre, most

declined to fight. The following

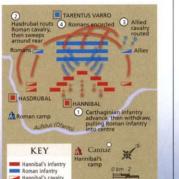
"Thus it came about, as Hannibal had planned, that the Romans were caught between two hostile lines of Libvans - thanks to their impetuous pursuit of the Celts. Still they fought, though no longer in line, yet singly, or in maniples..."

Polybius, The Histories, c.200-c.118 BCE



A 3rd- or 2nd-century BCE Carthaginian gold breastplate. representing the distinctive style of a culture that was wiped out by Rome.

combatants dismounted and fought hand to hand. Hannibal's men, superior in armour and weaponry, cut the Romans apart. In the centre, meanwhile, the Roman legionaries forced back the Spanish and Celtic infantry, but - as Hannibal had intended became drawn into the retreating Carthaginian line. Hannibal's African troops closed in from the sides, while his horsemen remounted and rode around to the rear, charging into the back of the already struggling enemy. The Carthaginians butchered about 50,000 Romans, including Paullus. It was one of the most costly day's fighting in the history of warfare.





SECOND PUNIC WAR

Zama

North Africa

Up to 203 BCE Hannibal successfully maintained an army in southern Italy, but elsewhere the war was turning in Rome's favour. The Roman general Scipio Africanus conquered Carthaginian Spain and, in 204 BCE, invaded Carthage itself, forcing it to sue for peace. During the armistice. however, Hannibal's army - now numbering 18,000 men, mostly Italians - returned to Africa, Carthage broke off negotiations with Rome

202 BCE

FORCES

CASUALTIES

Romans: 35,000;

Carthaginians: 45,000

Romans: 1,500 killed;

Carthaginians: 20,000

killed, 15,000 captured

new army built around the

236-183 BCE

#### SCIPIO AFRICANUS

Publius Cornelius Scipio was one of Rome's greatest generals. He became commander of Roman forces in Spain in 210, aged just 25, and within four years had conquered the whole region. His triumphs in Africa from 204 to 202 won the Second Punic War and earned him his nickname. With his brother Lucius he defeated Antiochus III of Svria at Magnesia in 190, but after accusations of

SECOND PUNIC WAR Siege of Syracuse

213-211 BCE

FORCES Romans: unknown; Syracusans: unknown CASUALTIES

LOCATION Fast coast of Sicily

No reliable estimates Events after Cannae show the

importance of sieges in ancient

warfare. Hannibal found it difficult to capture any fortified cities, let alone Rome itself, because he had no siege equipment. Some cities did, however, side with the Carthaginians. Among these was the Greek city of Syracuse, on the east coast of Sicily, which rebelled against Rome in 213 BCE. A Roman force led by the general Marcus Claudius Marcellus consequently laid siege to the port city by sea and land. The elderly inventor Archimedes was one of the leaders of Syracuse's defence. He organized siege artillery to protect the city's walls, concentrating the fire of different catapults and ballistas upon the besiegers. The Romans had ingenious devices of their own, including sambucae (scaling ladders mounted on galleys). Roman soldiers used pulleys



attached to a ship's mast to lower these ladders against the city walls, but Archimedes' defensive devices managed to smash them. The siege dragged on for many months. The Romans were unable to tighten the blockade sufficiently to keep all supplies out, but Carthage's attempts to relieve the city also failed. In 212, however, while the inhabitants participated in a festival to the goddess Artemis, the Romans managed to get over the walls and into who then sacked the city.

core of Hannibal's Italian veterans.

As the Romans were laving waste

to Carthaginian territory, Hannibal

was forced to bring them to battle,

even though the majority of his

infantry were raw recruits and his

cavalry were outnumbered, since most

of the horsemen of the Numidians -

former allies of Carthage - had joined

the Roman side. At the start of the

battle Hannibal depended on elephants

to break up the Roman infantry, but

Scipio had arranged his maniples in

aside and let the charging beasts pass

harmlessly through gaps in the line.

Scipio's advancing infantry dispersed

but the Italian veterans proved equal

to the legionaries. However, when

Scipio's cavalry, which had driven

off Hannibal's horsemen, returned

owed much to Hannibal's earlier

successes, but this was no comfort

to Carthage, which was forced to

accept a humiliating peace.

corruption he retired to his country estate.

to charge the veterans from the rear,

the rout was complete. Scipio's tactics

Hannibal's inexperienced footsoldiers.

columns so that they could move

#### DEATH OF ARCHIMEDES

This mosaic shows the Greek inventor Archimedes (c.290-c.212 BCE) about to be killed by a Roman soldier during the assault on Syracuse.

the outer city. Archimedes was among those killed. It was another eight months, however, before a Svracusan traitor opened the gates of the inner citadel to the besiegers, SECOND PUNIC WAR

#### Metaurus

Marche region,

central Italy



CASUALTIES Romans: 2,000; Carthaginians: 10,000

The Carthaginians' only major attempt to reinforce Hannibal's army in Italy came in 207 BCE. when Hannibal's brother Hasdrubal marched an army from Spain across the Alps. A Roman force led by Gaius Claudius Nero, strengthened at the last minute by 6,000 crack troops from Apulia, was sent to face Hasdrubal, Outnumbered, Hasdruba attempted a night withdrawal across the Metaurus river, but his forces lost their way in the darkness and were still south of the river when the Romans caught up with them just after dawn. The battle was evenly balanced until Nero led his troops around the back of the Roman line to attack the Carthaginians from the flank. Hasdrubal's forces disintegrated in panic; he himself was among thousands killed in a battle that marked a turning point in the war.

#### THIRD PUNIC WAR

#### Siege of Carthage



FORCES Romans: unknown Carthaginians:

LOCATION Carthage (part of present-day Tunis, Tunisia)

CASUALTIES

149-146 BCE

The Third Punic War was a sad postscript to the epic struggle between Rome and Carthage. Fifty years after the battle of Zama, important figures in Rome such as senator Cato the Elder argued that Carthage was still a threat and should be destroyed. A war between Carthage and Numidia (present-day Algeria) offered a pretext for Roman intervention, and in 149 BCE an expeditionary force was sent to besiege Carthage. Yet the siege of a city surrounded by 32km (20 miles) of walls and capable of resupply by sea was no easy matter. Despite breaching the walls with rams, the Romans at first achieved little against a vigorous defence organized by the Carthaginian commander Hasdrubal. However, in

#### PUNIC MAUSOLEUM

This monument in Dougga, Tunisia, honours a Numidian prince. Numidia's shift of allegiance from Carthage to Rome played a role in the Second and Third Punic wars.

147 BCE, when Scipio Aemilianus the adopted son of Scipio Africanus took charge of the Roman forces, the siege gained momentum. As starvation and disease decimated the city's population, resistance weakened. In spring 146 BCE the Romans penetrated the city walls. After fierce fighting, the survivors - numbering about 50,000 surrendered. The Romans enslaved them and destroyed their city.





A SERIES OF CIVIL WARS in the 1st century BCE brought down the Roman republic and led to the founding of the empire. Under the first emperor, Augustus, and his successors, military attention shifted to the frontiers of the empire. In the east, Rome sought to extend and defend territory against successive rulers of Persia, while in the west it fought the barbarian, or Germanic, tribes.

#### AN OUTSTANDING ARMY

CONQUERING FORCE

The reliefs on Trajan's Column in

Rome clearly depict Roman military

operations. Here the Dacians of south-

The legions of the early Roman empire were an outstanding force, formidable in battle and in all aspects of siege warfare and engineering - building roads, bridges, and fortifications. From the 1st to the 4th century CE there were always about 30 legions, each consisting of ten 480-strong cohorts. These troops were augmented by large numbers of auxiliaries, mostly recruited from conquered peoples within the empire. Yet, despite their advantages, including the support of field artillery in the form of catapults and ballistas, the legions were occasionally beaten, especially by enemies who relied on missile weapons and refused to engage in close combat.

#### HADRIAN'S EMPIRE

The emperor Hadrian (r.117-138 CE) gave up some of Rome's eastern provinces, but strongly defended the rest with a large army and navy.



#### HADRIAN'S WALL

In 122 CE Hadrian ordered the building of a wall to discourage raids by northern tribes into Roman Britain. The wall stretched 73 miles (117 km) across Britain.

#### THE LEGIONS' DECLINE

From the late 2nd century CE, the Roman empire once more slipped into an era of civil wars that sapped the strength of its armies. In the 3rd century, barbarian raids and migrations also began to overrun the empire's borders. The Roman army responded by building up its cavalry, which probably more than doubled in number between the 2nd and 4th centuries. It also extended the recruitment of uxiliaries to include entire barbarian war bands under their own commanders. For infantry, thrusting spears and longer swords replaced the classic pilum

(throwing spear) and gladius (short two-edged sword), while soldiers wore chain mail and iron helmets. During the 5th century the classic Roman army ceased to exist, nutating into the Byzantine rmy in the east, with its mphasis on armoured cavalry, and supplanted in the west by the war bands of peoples such as the Franks. Lombards, and Saxons,

#### LEGION INSIGNIA

Imperial legions were proud of their identity. This plaque shows the emblem of the Twentieth Legion, which took part in suppressing the Iceni revolt in Britain (60-61 CE).

This weaponry and armour comprised a legionary's equipment in the second half of the 1st century CE. The iron helmet replaced earlier bronze headgear, but by this time helmet crests were probably only worn for special ceremonies or as a sign of rank. The throwing spear (pilum) and the short two-edged sword (gladius) were the Roman infantry's basic weapons for at least 500 years (200 BCE to 300 CE).



iron strips, held

together with hooks

leather strips

protected the

roin and made

an intimidating

jangling noise

(caligae) with iron hobnails

on the soles

its scabbard

Dagger (pugio

with a double

edged blade

and leather straps



Leather and bronze

belt (cingulum)

Shield (scutum)

and an iron boss

covered with leather

made of wood



CASUALTIES Up to 100,000 Teuton

Roman empire in Gaul. After the

Romans' defeat at Arausio in 105, Gaius Marius took command in southern Gaul. Facing the Teutones and Ambrones at Aquae Sextae, he drew up his battleline at the top of a slope while sending 3,000 men to hide in woods. When the enemy were almost upon them, the Roman legionaries threw their pila and charged, battering with their shields and stabbing with their swords. The barbarians were pushed back to the foot of the hill, at which point the 3,000 concealed troops emerged to attack them from the rear. The

more captured weaponry and armour to Spartacus's force, which plundered country estates across southern Italy. The Senate entrusted the brutal Marcus Licinius Crassus with restoring order. In 71 BCE Crassus succeeded in bringing Spartacus to battle. It is said that the ex-gladiator slit the throat of his horse before the fight to show his men that he would not flee. With the majority of his army, Spartacus died fighting. Crassus

#### had 6,000 prisoners crucified. GLADIATORIAL COMBAT

Gladiators in action in a Roman amphitheatre. Most gladiators were prisoners, including captives taken in war.



#### ROMAN-PARTHIAN WARS

#### Aquae Sextae



FORCES 30,000-35,000 Romans: up to 150,000 Teutones and Ambrones

killed or captured

FORCES

CASUALTIES

In 73 BCE, about 80 gladiators escaped

from their prison in Capua, southern

Italy. Under the leadership of the

Thracian Spartacus, this small band

attracted a growing army of recruits, mostly slaves who had run away from

their masters. Spartacus shaped the

group into an effective guerrilla army,

southern Italy

Romans: unknown;

No reliable estimates

Spartacus's army:

Present-day Aix-en-Provence, France

In the last decade of the 2nd century BCE. Germanic tribes threatened the

barbarians were slaughtered.

#### Carrhae



39,000 Romans; 7.000 Parthians CASUALTIES

53 BCE

FORCES

24,000 Romans killed; LOCATION The Syrian desert, east of the 10,000 captured Euphrates river

Carrhae was a disaster for the Roman empire in the east. In 53 BCE Marcus Licinius Crassus led an army into Syria to attack the Parthians, rulers of Persia. Parthian armies consisted entirely of cavalry, mostly mounted archers, but also armoured lancers. When Crassus met the Parthian forces under Surenas, their leader, he advanced with his legions in a tightly packed square. Parthian horsemen galloped around the square, shooting a hail of arrows into the troops, the fire of their composite bows powerful enough to pierce armour. When the Romans attempted to engage them they rode off at speed, then turned back to envelop their pursuers. Crassus's son Publius was killed leading a charge against the lancers, and the Parthians paraded his head on a spear. Crassus himself was one of many Romans who survived the

battle only to be killed while retreating.

# "All Gaul is divided into three parts..."

Julius Caesar, The Gallic War, 1.1

WITNESS TO WAR

# GALLIC WARS

aius Julius Caesar was the first general to leave a detailed account of his own Campaigns. That he was not only a military commander but a statesman who achieved supreme political authority over the whole Roman world makes his account of the Gallic Wars a text of almost unparalleled significance. Caesar's work has remained an unrivalled literary epitaph, yet beneath his artfully polished prose it is hard now to discern that its content was as much self-serving propaganda as unvarnished truth.

66 As a nation the Gauls are extremely superstitious; and so

persons suffering from serious diseases, as well as those who are exposed to the perils of battle, offer, or vow to offer, human sacrifices, for the performance of which they employ Druids. They believe that the only way of saving a man's life is to propitiate the gods' wrath by rendering another life in its place.... Some tribes have colossal images made of wickerwork, the limbs of which they fill with living men; they are then set on fire and the victims burned to death. ??

Julius Caesar, The

66 Himself a man of boundless energy, he terrorized waverers with the rigours of an iron discipline. Serious cases of disaffection were punished

Although Caesar provides a great deal of important evidence about the Celtic tribes' social and political organization, much of it is quite generalized. His narrative dwells in some detail on Gallic customs that a Roman audience would find barbarous and threatening. Caesar no doubt played on inherited folk-memories of the Gaulish sack of Rome in 396 BCE (see p36). So deeply fixed were these that each year guard dogs were crucified on the Capitol in recurring vengeance for their ancestors' failure to alert the people of Rome to the presence of the marauding Celtic host. That Julius Caesar had in effect exceeded his authority when he crossed into Gaul in 58 BCE made it all the more expedient that he should invoke the shadow of the predatory Celt in retrospective justification of his invasion.

by torture and death at the stake.... By this terrorism he quickly raised an army.... 'We must strive by every means,' he [Vercingetorix] said, 'to prevent the Romans from obtaining forage and supplies. This will be easy, since we are strong in cavalry and the season is in our favour. There is no grass to cut, so the enemy will be forced to send out parties to get hay from the barns, and our cavalry can go out every day and see that not a single one of them returns alive. ?

Julius Caesar, The Gallic War, 7.4-7.5, 7.14

Caesar clearly regarded Vercingetorix, the Celtic chieftain, as a worthy foe against whom to test the mettle of his legions. This was no mere inflation of the martial prowess of his opponent that in victory would reflect favourably Caesar's own achievement; the Roman general would have been well aware that it was his own determination to conquer the whole of Gaul that had united the tribes behind a single war-standard.

66 To baffle the

extraordinary bravery of our troops the Gauls resorted to all kinds of devices.... They made our terraces fall in by undermining, at which they were expert because they have extensive iron mines in their country and are thoroughly familiar with every kind of underground working. They made frequent sorties by day and night. either to set fire to the terrace or to attack our soldiers at work...?

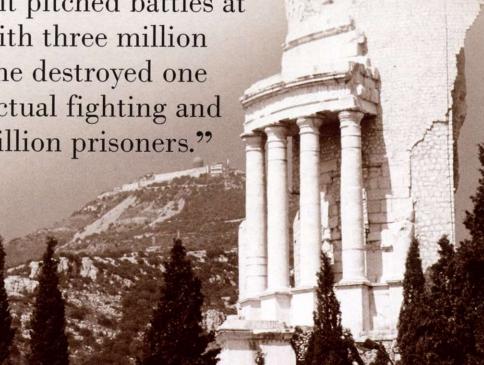
In imitating Roman battle tactics, the Gauls proved themselves able students. Celtic raiding parties harried the Roman supply lines and Vercingetorix adopted surprisingly effective counter-siege techniques, while biding his time for the arrival of a relief force. 66 Caesar put on speed to get When Caesar found his own forces under siege and short of provisions, the situation there in time for the fight. became critical. It was a true mark of his military genius that he succeeded in the manoeuvre that the Celts least expected: attacking their own relief force from behind The enemy knew that he was

coming by the scarlet cloak that he always wore in action.... The Romans dropped their spears and fought with their swords. Suddenly the Gauls saw the cavalry in their rear and fresh cohorts coming up in front. 7.87.3-88.3 They broke and fled, but found their retreat cut off by the cavalry. ??

"[Caesar] fought pitched battles at various times with three million men, of whom he destroyed one million in the actual fighting and took another million prisoners."

Plutarch, Life of Caesar, chapter 15

TROPHY OF THE ALPS This monument in the Alps elebrates a victory by Augustus



100-44 BCE

**IULIUS CAESAR** 

Gaius Iulius Caesar

achieved prominence

in 59 BCE when he

formed an alliance

with Pompey and

Crassus, the most

powerful figures

in Rome. As

commander of

Gaul and Illyria he

extended Roman

rule as far as the

Rhine and twice

invaded Britain. He



July 48 BCE

CASUALTIES

1.000 of Caesar's

troops: fewer on

Pompey's side

Caesar's army: 40,000;

Pompey's army: 90,000

#### Dyrrachium



LOCATION Modern-day Albania

In 49 BCE Caesar led his army across the Rubicon stream into Italy, in defiance of an order by Pompey and the Senate (see box opposite). Civil war resulted. Pompey fled from Italy, allowing Caesar to occupy Rome. where he was declared dictator. But Pompey had control of the Roman navy and superior land forces. In January 48, Caesar sailed seven legions across the Adriatic in merchant vessels, evading Pompey's warships and landing near his opponent's base at Dyrrachium. Although greatly outnumbered, Caesar's forces laid siege to Pompey's army, which was positioned around a natural harbour. After a competition in fortification building, in which Caesar tried to wall Pompey in and Pompey's engineers sought to block these attempts, fighting broke out in which Caesar's forces came off worst. The dictator retreated to northern Greece.

#### ROMAN CIVIL WARS Pharsalus



Thessalv northern Greece

Pompey followed Caesar from Dyrrachium into Thessaly, where the two armies set up camps on the plain of Pharsalus. After much hesitation, on 9 August Pompey arranged his numerically superior troops for battle. Caesar at once led his forces out to take up the challenge. Pompey concentrated his cavalry on Caesar's right flank (the dictator's left flank stretched to the Enipeus river) with the aim of sweeping away Caesar's horsemen and attacking his infantry from the flank and rear. To counter this, Caesar placed six cohorts under his personal command behind the right

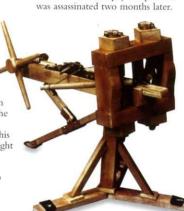
Pompey: 15,000 killed

or wounded

#### FIELD ARTILLERY

Roman troops used the ballista - also known as the scorpion - to propel missiles such as bolts or stone shot.

of Pompey's horsemen caused havoc by crashing into Caesar's small contingent of cavalry, but at this point Caesar led his six cohorts into the fray. Stabbing with their pila, the cohorts drove the horsemen from the field. Caesar then urged them forward to attack Pompey's infantry from the flank. He also ordered the third line of his infantry to charge through the other two and deliver a shock frontal assault on the enemy, throwing their pila and plunging in with their swords. Under this pressure Pompey's infantry broke and fled, and were ruthlessly pursued and cut down by Caesar's men. Pompey escaped but



flank. Sure enough, more than 6,000

was an archetypal Roman commander: daring, quick to seize initiative, and always present at the hottest point on the battlefield. His accounts of his campaigns are classics of military history. When some senators threatened to bring Caesar to trial at the end of his command, he refused to submit and kept the support of his legions. In the ensuing civil war his opponents set Pompey against him. Caesar was completely victorious and in 44 BCE was declared dictator for life, but he was assassinated by his former supporters that same year.

Octavian refused to give battle,

## ROMAN CIVIL WARS



Philippi

FORCES Republicans: 80,000 infantry, 20,000 cavalry; Antony and Octavian: 85,000

LOCATION Philippi. CASUALTIES northeast Greece No reliable estimates

In the confused power struggle after the assassination of Julius Caesar in 44 BCE, Mark Antony and Octavian (the great-nephew of Caesar and the future emperor Augustus) formed an uneasy alliance to hold power in Rome. However, Marcus Junius Brutus and Gaius Cassius Longinus - the leaders of the assassination plot against Caesar remained in command of republican forces in the eastern Mediterranean In September 42, Antony and Octavian led an army into Macedonia and discovered the republican army in two fortified camps at Philippi. Octavian fell

ill, so Antony took sole command. He planned a surprise attack across a swamp to take the camp commanded by Cassius. This operation was wholly successful - believing all was lost, Cassius committed suicide. Brutus, however, seized the opportunity presented by Antony's absence by attacking and temporarily overrunning his camp, forcing the sickly Octavian to hide to escape capture. With honours even, the opposing armies remained in position Three weeks later, suffering serious supply problems, Brutus decided to risk a pitched battle. It was a

disastrous decision. While Octavian kept Brutus occupied from the front, Antony once more led his men through the swamp to envelop the republicans' left. Brutus escaped he rout that followed, but soon followed Cassius's example and fell on his sword.

The alliance between Octavian and Antony was destined to continue, in fragile fashion, for a decade after this victory.

#### EMPEROR AUGUSTUS

Octavian, shown here in this statue in Turin, Italy, became Rome's first emperor after winning the power struggle following

#### ROMAN CIVIL WARS Actium



LOCATION Off the coast of Acarnania, western Greece

In 32 BCE Octavian induced the Roman Senate to declare war on Antony, who had offended Octavian by divorcing his sister and establishing himself in Egypt with the Ptolemaio queen Cleopatra. Once the alliance between the two men ended, Antony also posed a serious threat to Octavian's power. Armies from Rome and Egypt confronted one another at Actium in Greece the following year.

and Cleopatra lost

150 ships

but used his navy - commanded by his deputy Agrippa - to blockade his enemy. Antony and Cleopatra decided to attempt a breakout by sea. They hoisted their sails (usually left on shore for battle), hoping for a wind to speed them to safety. When they encountered Agrippa's fleet, Antony's ships split to the left and the right, opening up a gap through which Cleopatra's squadron escaped into open sea. Antony's flagship was lost in the fierce fighting, but he transferred to another ship and also escaped with a few remnants of his fleet. Antony and Cleopatra committed suicide when Octavian invaded Egypt the next year.

#### ROMAN WARSHIP

This Roman relief depicts a warship manned by legionaries. The tower on the deck enabled soldiers to throw missiles down onto enemy ships.





#### JUDAEAN REVOLT

#### Siege of Masada



73-74 CE FORCES CASUALTIES

LOCATION Mountaintop near the southwest coast of the Dead Sea

Masada was the site of the Jews' dramatic last stand against the Romans. Situated on the top of a steep-sided, rocky hill near the coast of the Dead Sea, Masada's fortifications dated back to the 2nd century BCE, but major development took place the following century under Herod I, the Roman-appointed king of Judaea, the southern province of Palestine. In 66 CE Judaea rebelled against Roman rule. The suppression of the revolt, by the emperor Vespasian and his son Titus, culminated in the siege of Jerusalem in 70 CE. Once Jerusalem had fallen, the uprising was effectively at an end, but a small group of Jewish rebels, led by Eleazar ben Yair, held out in Masada. The Romans could not ignore the rebels' defiance, and in November 73 CE Flavius Silva, the governor of Judaea, led the Tenth Legion to besiege the fortress. Since the approach to the fortress was along treacherous paths exposed to the defenders' fire, the Romans encircled the hill with walls, towers, and camps. They realized, however, that a blockade would be too slow for their purposes. Large storehouses and water cisterns in the fortress meant that those inside would be able to survive a siege that lasted several years. Instead, the Romans devised a remarkable plan to take the fortress by assault. They began building a massive siege ramp up the western side of the hill. The

Romans: 5,000:

constant attack from catapult artillery from the fortress, to which the Romans replied in kind. When complete, the siege ramp was over 600m (1,970 ft) long and rose to a height of over 200m (660 ft). The Romans then pushed a siege tower up the ramp, containing a ram on its lower floor and ballistas on the top floor to give covering fire. The ram soon breached the wall, but when legionaries stormed the fortress they found that Fleazar had incited his followers to commit mass suicide. Only two women and five children were found alive - they had hidden in a water conduit during the assault. construction work proceeded under

## ROMAN SIEGE TACTICS

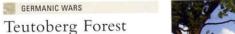
The testudo, or tortoise, was a formation that Roman legionari adopted during sieges. Soldiers behind the front rank held their shields over their heads so that a unit could advance to the wall of a fortress or city and attack it with crowbars or picks, sheltered from the rain of missiles that defenders would pelt down on them. Other methods of making a breach included using battering rams and digging mines under walls.



MOUNTAINTOP FORTRESS

heavy walls, towers, and aqueducts.

The ruins of the city of Masada, which in 73 CE included two palaces with



DATE September 9 CE



northwest Germany

FORCES Romans: 15,000; German tribes unknown CASUALTIES Most Romans

In the last two decades of the 1st century BCE the frontier of the Roman empire in northern Europe extended eastward from the Rhine river - the boundary of Roman Gaul - to the Elbe river in eastern Germany. The conquest of the fierce Germanic tribes was far from complete, however, and there were sporadic revolts in the first decade of the new century. In the summer of 9 CF, the Roman general Publius Quinctilius Varus was conducting operations in central Germany, east of the Weser river, with an army of three



legions - the Seventeenth, Eighteenth, and Nineteenth - accompanied by German auxiliaries. The commander of auxiliaries from the Cherusci tribe was a prince called Arminius, who had served the Romans for some years, winning their trust. When Varus heard rumours that Arminius planned to lead a rebellion, he refused to believe them. In the late summer the Roman army headed back towards its winter quarters, encumbered by a long train of baggage and camp-followers, including many of the soldiers' families. Arminius and his auxiliaries soon abandoned them, proving that the

TEUTOBERG FOREST Unlike today, the Teutoberg forest of 2,000 years ago was a marshy voodland with narrow passes, in which the Romans easily got lost.

rumours were well founded. Without German scouts to guide them or warn of ambush, the Romans entered the sinister, marshy Teutoberg forest. Arminius's

warriors harassed the Roman column mercilessly over a period of days, taking a steady toll with hit-and-run attacks. Finally the weakened army was completely overrun. Most of the Roman soldiers and their families were killed, and Varus committed suicide. According to the Roman historian Tacitus, Roman soldiers coming upon the site of the massacre four years later found "whitening bones...broken weapons and bits of horses, while the skulls of men were nailed to tree trunks". News of the disaster shocked the elderly Emperor Augustus, who reportedly wandered around his palace shouting, "Varus, give me back my legions!" Although Roman forces soon returned to punish the Germanic tribes, plans to advance the frontier of the empire eastward

were abandoned. The lands beyond the Rhine would permanently outside the Roman empire

ROMAN MASK This mask, found at the Teutoberg forest battle site, is of a kind vorn by Roman soldiers

#### AGRICOLA'S SCOTTISH CAMPAIGN

#### Mons Graupius



LOCATION Aherdeenshire northeast Scotland CASUALTIES Caledonians: 10,000; Romans and auxiliaries: 360

Late summer 84 ce

FORCES Caledonians:

30.000: Romans and

auxiliaries: 25,000

Gnaeus Julius Agricola, the Roman governor of Britain, led a force of egionaries and local auxiliaries into Scotland to forestall an uprising by Caledonian tribes. When he met the Caledonian army, led by Calgacus, Agricola let his auxiliaries do the fighting, keeping his Roman troops safely in reserve. The key role was played by cavalry, which dispersed the Caledonians' chariots and then attacked their footsoldiers from the rear. The Caledonians were hacked down as they fled the field.

TRAJAN'S DACIAN CAMPAIGNS

#### BOUDICCA'S REVOLT Revolt of the Iceni



LOCATION Near present-day

Romans: 400 killed: Britons: tens of thousands killed

The Dacians were a warlike people

who dominated a region east of the

Danube river in the Balkan Peninsula.

In the last decades of the 1st century

raids across the Danube into Roman

peace treaty favourable to the Dacians.

The emperor Trajan's invasion of Dacia

territory. These only ended with a

in 101 was a punitive expedition.

intended to reassert Roman

CE, led by Decebalus, they carried out

a Roman province. However. in 60 the Romans faced a major uprising in eastern Britain led by Boudicca, queen of the Iceni, who had been brutally treated by Roman officials. The Iceni were joined in their rebellion by

With the bulk of the Roman legions away on campaign in Anglesey, in northwest Wales, the rebel army sacked the towns of Camulodonum

#### VERULAMIUM

at Verulamium (near present-day St Albans), which Boudicca's forces sacked in 60-61 CE.

Following the emperor Claudius's invasion in 43 CE, much of Britain had become the neighbouring Trinovantes.

> Londinium, and Verulamium.

Remains of the settlement

Britain, Suetonius Paulinus, marched back from Anglesev at the head of the Fourteenth and Twentieth legions, which he positioned in a defile between wooded hills. Boudicca's warriors, who greatly outnumbered the Romans, advanced to attack. The

CONQUERING

Claudius took credit for

during the 43 CE invasion.

The governor of Roman

conquering Britain, although

he spent only two weeks there

legionaries waited until the Britons were almost upon them. Then, on command, they threw their pila and charged with swords drawn. As the front ranks of the Britons fell, the warriors behind pushed forwards in a confused mass. Thousands were cut down by the Romans as defeat turned into rout. Boudicca died, probably by taking poison.

superiority. An army of nine legions, across the broad expanse of the accompanied by large numbers of Germanic auxiliaries, crossed the Danube over a bridge of boats. Little is known about the campaign, but there was clearly much fighting, with Trajan's auxiliaries usually in the front line. In 102 Decebalus sued for peace, but once the Romans had gone he rebuilt his army and resumed attacks on Roman outposts. In 106 Trajan returned, this

Danube - typical of the legions' feats of engineering - and his army thrust into the Carpathian mountain region to besiege the Dacian capital, Sarmizegethusa. Despairing of any relief, the besieged Dacians committed mass suicide. Decebalus escaped but slit his own throat when tracked down by Roman scouts. Dacia was absorbed into the empire. Subsequent campaigns by Trajan in Arabia, Armenia, Assvria. time determined on conquest.





LOCATION

DATE 101-106 CE FORCES Romans: unknown

Dacians: unknown

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

Dacia (present-

Fritigern called for a parley, which

in the heat and not yet in battle formation, accepted. As negotiations

out between the two sides. Valens

though his infantry were still not

ordered a general attack, even

Valens, his men tired from marching

were starting, however, fighting broke

## THE SHIFT TO THE EAST

LATE IN THE 3RD CENTURY CE the emperor Diocletian (ruled 284-305) responded to threats of revolt or invasion throughout the Roman empire by sharing his rule with several subordinates. During the following century the number of co-emperors varied, while the empire's centre shifted east from

of the empire relied increasingly for military support on the Germanic and Gothic tribes that settled in its territories. By the late 5th century the commanders of these tribes saw no further need to recognise an emperor, and the western empire ceased to exist.



bolted when Alemanni light infantry

got among them, creeping low and

infantry stood firm, subjecting the

Alemanni to a sustained missile

stabbing at the horses, but the Roman

barrage from field artillery, bows, and

slingshots. When it came to hand-to-

hand combat, the Romans and their

auxiliaries - many of whom were

also German tribesmen - put the

Alemanni to flight, pursuing them

to the Rhine, where many drowned.

Rome to Constantinople. The western part

Italy to attack Maxentius, ruler of Rome. After a series of victories in northern Italy, Constantine's legions empire was divided

# himself was drowned.

By 323 CE Constantine was sole ruler of the Roman empire. The first Christian emperor, he promoted the Church across the empire.



ROMAN-PERSIAN WAR

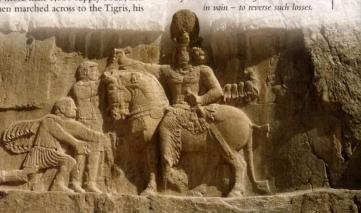
Ctesiphon

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates present-day Baghdad, east-central Iraq

After becoming emperor in 361 CE, Julian, the nephew of Constantine I, invaded Sasanian Persia, Rome's major enemy in the east. He advanced down the Euphrates, accompanied by a fleet of more than 1,000 supply boats, and hen marched across to the Tigris, his

of the Persian capital, Ctesiphon, the Sasanian king Shapur II briefly gave battle before retreating to leave the Romans outside the city's walls. Julian was unable to take Ctesiphon or provoke a decisive battle, however, so he burned his boats and withdrew across country. The retreat was harsh: Persian mounted bowmen harassed the Romans and then, countering a night attack, Julian himself was killed. Hostilities ended only when the Romans agreed to a humiliating peace.

This relief shows Emperor Valerian kneeling before King Shapur I after the Sasanian victory at Edessa in 260. Julian aimed -



CAMPAIGNS OF CONSTANTINE

#### Milvian Bridge



28 October 312 CE FORCES Constantine: 50,000 Maxentius: 75,000 CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

Near Rome central Italy

In the early 4th century CE as many as six emperors vied for power in the divided empire. In 312 Constantine, ruler of Britain and Gaul, invaded

marched on Rome. Maxentius set out to meet them. He had already ordered the destruction of the stone Milvian Bridge over the Tiber, to block the enemy's approach, so his men crossed the river on a have been safer remaining

pontoon bridge. They would inside Rome's newly built Aurelian Walls. Constantine, allegedly inspired by a vision from God in the sky. led his troops to victory. The pontoon bridge collapsed as Maxentius's army withdrew. Maxentius

CONSTANTINE I boats following along canals. In front

#### PERSIAN VICTORY



SECOND GOTHIC WAR

#### Adrianople



LOCATION Present-day Edirne, western Turkey

Romans: 40 000 Goths: No reliable

The pressure on the Roman empire from barbarian migration or invasion increased as the 4th century progressed. In the 370s the Huns - central-Asian nomadic horsemen - began to move westwards, attacking the Germanic Goths living northwest of the Black Sea. Although they were fierce warriors, the Ostrogoths (the Greuthungi) and Visigoths (the Tervingi) fled the Huns, their whole tribes migrating in search of refuge. In 376 the Visigoths sought and received permission from Valens, the Roman emperor in the east, to cross the Danube into Thrace, in northern Greece. Valens refused a similar request from the Ostrogoths, but they crossed into the

Roman officials. Soon the Visigoths,

led by Fritigern, and the Ostrogoths. led by Alatheus and Saphrax, were at war with Rome and rampaging through Thrace, joined by

bands of Sarmatians, Alans,

and even Huns. By August 378 the Goths had established a camp outside Adrianople from

IMPERIAL COIN Valens ruled the eastern half of the Roman empire from 375 until his death at Adrianople in 378.

which their horsemen went raiding and foraging in the surrounding area. Without waiting for reinforcement from the western emperor, Gratian, Valens marched an army out from Constantinople to attack the Goths. When his marching column approached their camp - a circle of wagons protected by a ditch - the Goths' horsemen, including Alatheus and Saphrax, were away on a raid.

fully prepared. At this point, the cavalry of Alatheus and Saphrax returned, in the words of the Roman historian Ammianus Marcellinus, "descending from the mountains like a thunderbolt" Charging down upon the Roman right flank they routed the cavalry and wheeled to attack the infantry from the rear. Fritigern's footsoldiers then emerged from behind their wagons to strike the legionaries from the front. As his soldiers were slaughtered in their tens of thousands, Valens was first wounded, then killed. In typical fashion, the Romans recovered from this disaster and, under Valens' successor. Theodosius, fought back vigorously against the Goths. Fritigern died resisting the Romans five years later. Many Goths ended up as "federate" allies of the Romans, providing armies to fight for the empire instead of against it.

"The plain was covered with carcasses, strewing the mutual ruin of the combatants, while the groans of the dying or of men fearfully wounded were intense."

Roman historian Ammianus Marcellinus, 330-395 ce

## CAMPAIGNS OF THEODOSIUS

#### Frigidus

empire regardless.

of barbarians -

Inevitably, this influx

possibly numbering

two million in total

led to friction with



5 September 394 ce FORCES Theodosius's army unknown; Arbogast's army: unknown CASHAITIES

North of Trieste, No reliable estimates northeast Italy

The increasing prevalence of barbarians fighting both in the ranks of Rome's armies and as its allies added further confusion to the already complex power struggles in the declining western

Roman empire. In 388 CE Arbogast, a Germanic Frank in the service of the eastern Roman emperor Theodosius I. suppressed a rebellion in Gaul. However. when the western Roman emperor Valentinian II tried to oust the Frank from the power base he had established in Gaul, Arbogast murdered him and set up a scholar named Eugenius in his place. Theodosius set out to crush Arbogast. The

army he led into western

Europe included 20,000 Goths among its ranks, as well as the Vandal general Stilicho and the chief of the Visigoths, Alaric. Theodosius's army met Arbogast's in northeastern Italy by the Frigidus, a tributary of the Isonzo river. The first day's fighting went badly for Theodosius: the Franks repulsed a Roman attack, inflicting heavy losses. On the following day. however, a gale-force following wind came to his aid, blinding the enemy with dust and almost knocking them over where they stood. Along with the brilliant generalship of Stilicho, the gale helped Theodosius to win a total victory. Eugenius was beheaded and Arbogast fell on his sword.

Theodosius himself died soon after the battle, but Stilicho went on to become supreme commander in the west, until he was murdered on the orders of the western emperor Honorius. Alaric became one of the empire's gravest enemies, sacking Rome just before his death in 410.

#### VANDAL GENERAL This diptych portrays

Stilicho (365-408 CE) with a Roman soldier's spear and shield.

#### ROMAN-HUNNISH WAR

# Chalons

June or July 451 CE FORCES Romans: unknown: CASUALTIES LOCATION Near No reliable estimates

Châlons-sur-Marne, northeast France

In the 5th century CE the incursions of the Huns, led by Attila, struck terror into the settled populations of the Roman empire. It seemed that no army could resist the Huns' swarms of horsemen, who darted about the battlefield, showering their enemy

with bone-tipped arrows, before closing in to finish off survivors with swords and lassos. In 451, however, the Roman general Aetius caught up with Attila in Gaul, at a site sometimes called the Catalaunian plains. Both armies were a mix of peoples. Aetius's force included Alans and Franks, as well as an army of Visigoths under their king, Theodoric. Attila had Ostrogoths and Gepids alongside his Huns. The details of the battle are unclear, but it was certainly a bloody affair in which the Visigoths distinguished themselves, despite Theodoric being killed. The Huns were forced to withdraw to their wagon-circle camp, which Aetius and his allies failed to assault. It was nonetheless a serious defeat for Attila.

#### C.406-453 CE

#### ATTILA THE HUN

Known to those who feared him as the "scourge of God", Attila became sole ruler of the Huns in 443. Joined by warriors from other barbarian peoples, he led his horsemen in forays deep inside the Roman empire. He was a raider, intent on pillage and destruction, rather than a conqueror.

#### THE POPE AND THE HUN

This tapestry depicts a meeting between Pop Leo I and Attila in 452, in which the pope pai the Hun leader not to attack Rome.





were heavily outnumbered, since reinforcements from Rome had failed to arrive, and at first the battle went badly for them. Their cavalry almost

#### WATCH TOWER

land borders, rivers, and coasts.

Fearful of barbarian invasions, the Romans erected watch towers like this reconstruction — along

JULIAN'S ALEMANNIC CAMPAIGN

357 CE

FORCES

Romans: 13,000;

Alemanni: 35,000

Romans: 243 killed;

Alemanni: 6,000 killed

CASUALTIES

In 356 CE the emperor Constantius II

sent the 24-year-old Caesar Iulian

to fight the Alemanni, a

confederation of German

Chnodomar that was raiding

across the Rhine. After a year

of indecisive fighting, Julian

met Chnodomar's army as

it crossed the Rhine near

Strasbourg). Julian's forces

Argentorate (present-day

tribes led by King

Argentoratum

LOCATION On the west

hank of the Rhine.

eastern France

## CHINESE WARFARE

of the Fei River (383 CE), the Chinese experienced almost constant warfare. Wars ranged from power struggles between rival kingdoms to resistance to "barbarian"

DURING NEARLY 1,000 YEARS between the invasion by steppe nomads. In addition, at battle of Chengpu (632 BCE) and the battle times when China was at its strongest, wars were fought to project power far beyond its borders. Among the consequences of these experiences were sophisticated developments in military theory and practice.

WALL FORTRESS

the Great Wall.

The Chu built defences against outside

attack that later linked up to become the

shown here, was one of the strongpoints on

their path, dragging tree branches to stir up a dust cloud. The trick worked:

the swirling dust blinded the Chu to

the Jin chariots' about-turn and the

With both wings of their army

to withdraw rapidly to avoid

launch of a devastating counterattack.

shattered, the Chu had no choice but

100 chariots to the Jin - a serious blow.

envelopment. They lost more than

SPRING AND AUTUMN PERIOD

FORCES Chu army : unknown;

CASUALTIES

#### Chengpu



Possibly Henan or Shandong province

Chengpu was a classic battle from the era of chariot warfare in China. It occurred during the country's Spring and Autumn Period 770-476 BCE), when the state of

Chu, which dominated an area stretching south of the Yangtze river almost as far north as the Yellow river, fought a three-cornered contest with the states of Iin to the north and Wu on the coast. The main

#### CHARIOT ORNAMENT

This 4th-century BCE gold-inlaid bull's head decorated the shaft of a chariot. players at Chengpu were King Cheng of Chu and Duke Wen of Jin. Between them. Cheng and Wen fielded more than 1,000 chariots; Wen alone is said to have had 700 of the

vehicles, which were usually drawn by four horses. The battle began with a chariot attack by both wings of the Jin army, the left wing of which.

under the command of Xu Chen, had clad their chariot horses in tiger skins.

Whether or not as a result of this gesture, Xu Chen's chariots Great Wall of China. Jiayuguan Fortress, swept through the Chu right wing, and then threatened to attack the Chu centre from the flank. Meanwhile, the Jin right

wing, facing stiffer opposition than their comrades on the left, decided to fake a disorderly retreat. As the chariots of the Chu right wing set off in ursuit, a band of Jin chariots ed by Luan Zhi rode across

WARRING STATES PERIOD

#### Guai Ling



FORCES Wei army: unknown: Qi army: unknown

CASUALTIES

LOCATION Modern-day Shanshi or Honeh province, China

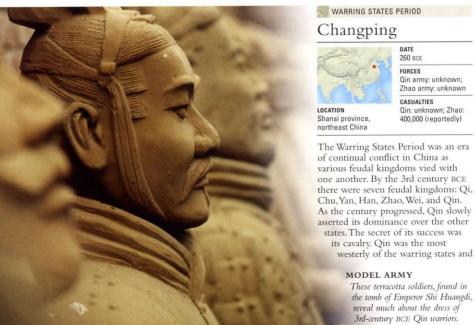
> This battle of the Warring States Period (476-221 BCE) involved the rival northern states of Wei and Qi. It began when Wei's forces besieged the Zhao city of Handan, leading Zhao's ruler to appeal to Qi for help. On the advice of the master tactician Sun Ping, instead of sending an army to Handan, Qi sent its forces into Wei. The Wei general Pang Juan hastily ended the siege and pulled his army back to defend Wei - right nto the path of thousands of Qi rossbowmen, who slaughtered the Wei and took Pang Juan prisoner. Sun Ping's tactics were much admired by a

ater guerrilla leader, Mao Zedong.

#### C.400-C.320 BCE

#### SUN-TZU

Sun-Tzu was the author of the world's first book of military theory, The Art of War. Everything about his life is obscure, including when he lived, but his thoughts have remained fresh throughout the centuries. He regarded the aim of war not as the destruction of the enemy but as the achievement of political objectives and a secure peace. He also advocated the use of subtlety, arguing that "all war is based on deception".



the one most in contact with marauding nomadic horsemen, and it was probably through encounters with these raiders that Qin developed the best Chinese cavalry. After Qin had defeated Wei in about 280 BCE, Zhao remained its most formidable opponent. The battle of Changping was the final showdown between the massive armies of the two kingdoms. Besides cavalry, there were large infantry forces on both sides. Some soldiers wore armour and some did not: some carried crossbows, while others wielded iron spears or pikes. There were also chariots, although these were chiefly used as command platforms for generals. The battle was a desperate attempt at escape by the Zhao army, whom the Qin had been besieging for two months. The attempt utterly failed: the Qin massacred the Zhao, taking no prisoners alive. Even if the reported figure of 400,000 Zhao dead was a vast exaggeration, it was still a decisive victory. Within 40 years, under Shi Huangdi, Qin had completed the suppression of the warring states and established a unified Chinese empire.

HAN DYNASTY WARS

#### Xiongnu Invasion

DATE 201-200 BCE

CASUALTIES

Xiongnu: 300,000:

Chinese: unknown



Mongolia and northwest China

After the collapse of Oin rule in 202 BCE the Han dynasty was founded under the emperor Han Gaozu, whose assertion of central authority prevented a reversion to the civil disorder of the Warring States Period. His new empire faced an immediate



threat, however: the Xiongnu nomads from Mongolia. In 201, united under the

GOD OF WAR

Guandi, the

Confucian war god was revered

for preventing

conflict as well as

for aiding victory.

leadership of Modu, they invaded northwest China with an army of horsemen said to be 300,000 strong. The following year Gaozu led an army out against the invaders, but his forces were no match for the

owing him allegiance. As this

a messenger to Fu Jian's field

him the chance of a pitched

battle if he would just pull

back from the river bank

to allow the Jin forces to

cross unimpeded. Seeing

this as a perfect chance

to crush the Jin, Fu

withdraw, intending to

crushing attack once the Iin

had crossed the river. As his

the river, immediately began

harassing the rear of Fu Jian's

Rong ordered his

turn and deliver a

vast army to

Xiongnu's fastmoving mounted archers, Surrounded by the enemy in a frontier fortress Gaozu was forced to make a humiliating peace, which included the marriage of his daughter to Modu.

WAR SCENE A brick relief from the Han period showing ntry, horsemen. and chariots in battle.

HAN DYNASTY WARS Red Cliffs

208 CE FORCES Bei and Sun Quan:

LOCATION

anotze river

CASUALTIES

Cao Cao: 220,000: Liu

Towards the end of the Han period, Cao Cao, the Han general and effective ruler of the empire, faced a major challenge to his authority in southern China from the warlords Liu Bei and Sun Ouan, In 208 CE Cao launched a campaign against his southern rivals, resulting in the batt of the Red Cliffs, one of the most famous events in Chinese military history. Although details of the battle are unclear, it seems that Liu Bei and Sun Ouan's leading commander. Zhou Yu, negated the effect of Cao's numerically superior forces by drawing him into a naval engagement on the Yangtze river. The southerners were experienced in river warfare, but Cao's northerners were used to fighting only on land. Cao captured a fleet of ships and apparently chained them together for greater stability. But what was gained in stability was lost



A 14th-century illustration depicting the Han general Cao Cao in melancholy mood on the eve of the battle of the Red Cliffs, in which he suffered a massive defeat.

in manoeuvrability: the chained ships were easy prey for the fire-arrows of the southern archers and the burning ships sent sailing into their midst. After this disaster the remnants of Cao's army retreated north in disarray.

#### JIN DYNASTY WARS

#### Fei River



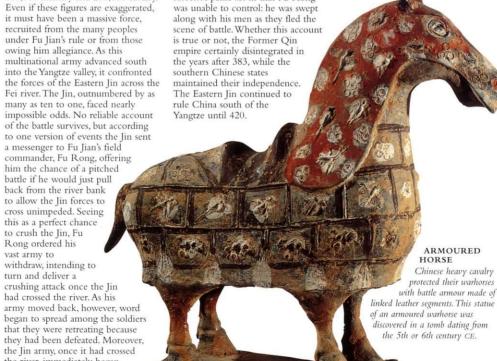
DATE November 383 ce FORCES Eastern Jin: 80.000: Fu Jian: 870,000 CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

Fei river, Yangtze valley, central China The background to the battle of Fei river was the isintegration of China through barbarian invasion and civil war in the 3rd and 4th centuries CE. Unable to resist the attacks by waves of nomadic norsemen, the Jin emperors were driven out of northern China and established themselves south of the Yangtze river as the Eastern in. The Eastern Jin were not ree of threats, however, and the greatest of these came from Fu Jian, a vigorous and effective war leader of Tibetan origin. In around 370 CE Fu Jian established control over northern China, setting up a state known as the Qianqin, or Former Qin. He was soon applying military pressure to the

#### BRONZE SWORD

This bronze sword belonged to an earlier period of Chinese warfare, out the techniques of hand-to-hand ghting remained the same.

Eastern Jin, capturing the important "Those skilled in warfare move the enemy, and are not city of Xiangyang in 379. When a Jin army failed to retake the city in 383, moved by the enemy.... Know the enemy's plans and Fu Jian seized on it as the right calculate their strengths and weaknesses." moment to launch a major campaign to conquer the south. He assembled Sun-Tzu, The Art of War, 4th century BCE an army that reportedly numbered 600,000 infantry and 270,000 cavalry. forces. A panic set in that Fu Rong Even if these figures are exaggerated, was unable to control: he was swept it must have been a massive force, along with his men as they fled the recruited from the many peoples



ROYAL MINT

A gold coin from the

reign of Chandragupta I,

WARFARE IN THE ANCIENT WORLD

INDIAN EMPIRES SUCH AS THE Maurya and Gupta practised warfare on an impressive scale, with large standing armies comprising infantry, cavalry, elephants, and possibly chariots. The Arthasastra, a manual of political and military advice compiled at the court of Chandragupta Maurya in the 4th century BCE, discusses the correct tactical use of the different components of an army, the training of cavalry, the conduct of battles and sieges, and

the construction of fortifications. Yet accounts of battles fought in ancient India are scant, the most detailed being Greek reports of the battle of Hydaspes, in which Alexander the Great defeated the Puniabi ruler Porus (see p27). Although the status of warriors was high in ancient India, the influence of Buddhism provided a counterweight, pulling many people including the Mauryan emperor Asoka - towards pacifism.

MAHABHARATA WAR

#### Mahabharata War



FORCES Kauravas: unknown Pandavas: unknown CASUALTIES

**c.1300** BCE

LOCATION Kurukshetra, All the Kauravas were Haryana state, killed; only five Pandavas survived northwest India

One of the classic literary texts of ancient India, the Mahabharata tells of the power struggle between rival cousins the Kauravas and the Pandavas. Most authorities accept that the war was not a real historical event; nonetheless, the account is a

rare source of information about how wars were fought in India before the 4th century BCE, the probable date of its composition. According to the work, armies fought mostly on foot, with bows; horses were scarce and were used only to draw the chariots in which the nobility fought. The course of the 18-day battle that settled the war has similarities with the Greek epic the Iliad: there is plenty of divine intervention and even a hero who, like Achilles, is killed because a protective magic spell misses one part of his body.

#### MAHABHARATA RELIEF

Relief at Angkor Wat, Cambodia, depicting a scene from the Mahabharata. Indian warfare heavily influenced Cambodia.



MAURYAN WARS

#### Chandragupta's Wars



Chandragupta's army: 600.000 infantry; 30,000 cavalry: 9,000

Northern and central India and Afghanistan

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

c.310-303 BCE

FORCES

Chandragupta Maurya is said to have based his military ambitions upon the example of Alexander the Great, whom he apparently met when Alexander invaded India. It was probably with the aid of some of Alexander's Macedonians, serving as mercenaries, that Chandragupta first took over the Magadha kingdom of northern India, and then extended his rule over the rest of the north and centre of the subcontinent. The expanding Mauryan empire came into conflict with Seleucus, who, after Alexander's death, had gained control of his Asian conquests. In a war lasting from 305 to 303 BCE, Chandragupta fought Seleucus over control of much present-day Afghanistan. It was le surprise that Chandragupta was the victor: an ambassador named Megasthenes, sent by Seleucus to Chandragupta's court, reported on the vast size of the Mauryan army. Chandragupta rigidly controlled this army - soldiers were paid by the state. and he had a monopoly of ownership on horses and elephants, which were thus a permanent part of the standing army. Elephants provided a shock force on the battlefield, as well as acting as living battering rams for breaking through fortifications.

#### MAURYAN WARS



East-central

c.262 BCE FORCES Mauryans: unknown; Kalingans: unknown CASUALTIES Mauryans: 10,000 killed; Kalingans: 100 000 killed

Like his grandfather Chandragupta and his father, Bindusara, Emperor Asoka fought campaigns to extend the boundaries of the Mauryan empire. Asoka eventually ruled all but the southern tip of India, and his empire extended north as far as southern Iran. One of the states he conquered was Kalinga, a kingdom on India's east coast. Around 262 BCE, in the eighth year of Asoka's rule, he called on the Kalingan king to acknowledge Mauryan overlordship. When the king refused, Asoka sent an army to enforce his authority, but this

THE DHAMEK STUPA

first Maurvan army was routed by

unexpected setback, Asoka gathered

the largest forces he could muster for

the Kalingans. Enraged by this

a second invasion. This time the

Kalingans had no answer to the

sturdy resistance was completely

overwhelmed. Asoka devastated

Kalinga in brutal revenge for the

Mauryan inscriptions record that

earlier affront to his imperial power:

100,000 Kalingans were killed in the

war and its immediate aftermath. Yet

the spectacle of the bloodbath that he

had unleashed apparently sickened the

emperor and prompted a total change

234 BCE. Ironically, his new policies -

including a costly welfare state based on Buddhist teaching - led to the

Mauryans' destruction. In 185 BCE a

military coup overthrew the last of

the Mauryan emperors. It would be 1,700 years before so much of the

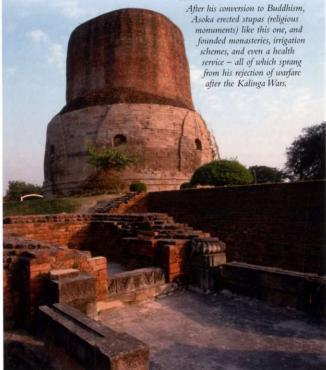
Indian subcontinent was again unified.

of heart. He adopted the Buddhist

faith and turned against warfare,

ruling in peace up to his death in

Mauryan military might, and their



GUPTA WARS

#### Campaigns of Samudragupta



Southern, central and northern India

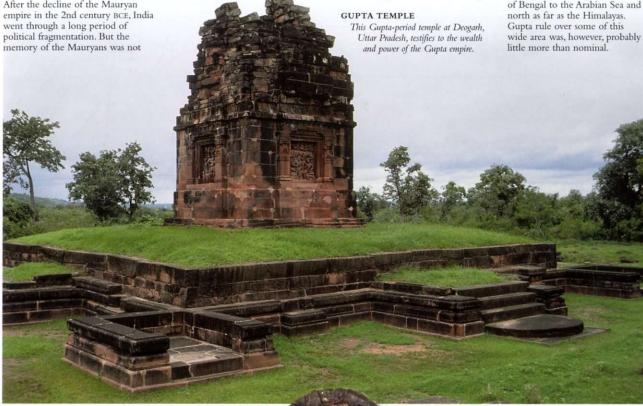
took the Mauryans as a model to imitate. Chandragupta I claimed descent from his namesake, the c.330-375 CE founder of the Mauryan empire, and FORCES set about extending his rule over as wide an area as possible. In about 330 CASUALTIES his son Samudragupta succeeded to No reliable estimates what had become the Gupta empire. As so often occurs in ancient Indian After the decline of the Mauryan

lost. In the 4th century CE a ruler came to power in Magadha - the state from which the Mauryan empire had originated - who consciously

history, the evidence for the military activities of Samudragupta is very limited - all of it being based on a single inscription found on a partly destroyed pillar in Allahabad, in the northern state of Uttar Pradesh. Yet Samudragupta does appear to have been a formidable war leader who achieved substantial conquests; it is recorded that he performed a horse

sacrifice in celebration of his victories

father of Samudragupta and founder of the Gupta empire. includes the defeat of the kingdoms of Kota and Andhra in southeastern India. Samudragupta forced the kings of Kota and Andhra to pay him tribute. while other kingdoms he took over entirely, with the result that he built over 21 kings. The list of his triumphs an empire stretching from the Bay of Bengal to the Arabian Sea and north as far as the Himalavas.



#### GUPTA WARS

#### White Huns



India (present-day

Puniab and Bihar

c.450-530 CE FORCES White Huns: unknown No reliable estimates

Northwest India was subject to repeated invasions by central-Asian peoples. In the 1st century BCE the Scythians and the Parthians arrived in India and established kingdoms there. In the 1st century CE the Kushans established an empire that ruled much of northern India, as well as Afghanistan and part of central Asia, for almost two centuries. And in the 5th century it was the turn of the White Huns to follow this well-worn path. The Byzantine Greeks called the

Hephthalites, and the Byzantine historian Procopius described them as "of the stock of the Huns", but "the only ones among the Huns who have white bodies" One inference is that the White Huns may have been of mixed Mongolian and Índo-European stock. Their style of warfare was similar to other nomadic steppe people, however: White Hun warriors were fast-moving horsemen who preved upon and terrorized settled civilizations. The White Huns appear to have developed a power base along the Oxus river in modern Tajikistan and Uzbekistan, from where they waged war upon Persia's Sasanian empire. In 484 CE they defeated a large Persian army and captured the Persian ruler Firuz, plunging the

White Huns

sophistication at odds with their reputation as barbaric nomads. Sasanian empire into crisis. At first the White Huns were less successful in India, suffering a defeat at the hands of the Gupta emperor Skandagupta in 457. They nonetheless established themselves in the Punjab and maintained their pressure on the Gupta empire, overrunning it after

Skandagupta's death in 467. Their

progress along the Ganges reportedly

left Buddhist monasteries in flames

HUN COIN

The White Huns'

coins reveal an artistic

White Hun kings Toramana and Mihirakula extended their rule to the south and east. In 530, however, Mihirakula was decisively defeated by a coalition of Hindu princes. Within 20 years the White Huns' Indian kingdom had fallen. Around the same time, Chosroes I of Persia destroyed their central-Asian empire, too. It is unclear what happened to the White Huns after their states disintegrated, but they may be the ancestors of the Rajputs, the fierce warriors whose kingdoms were prominent in India from the 8th to the 12th centuries.

and cities in ruins; apparently, the

population of the Gupta capital,

Pataliputra, was reduced to that of a

village. In the early 6th century the

"The Hephthalites have no cities, but roam freely and live in tents. They do not live in towns; their seat of government is a moving camp."

Sun Yung and Hui Sheng, Buddhist pilgrims, 6th century ce



# CAVALRY AND CITADELS

ALTHOUGH "THE MIDDLE AGES" IS A EUROPEAN TERM, referring to the period between the ancient times of the Roman empire and the modern times ushered in by the Renaissance, it makes sense in military terms to apply it to the rest of the world, too. New military technologies spread – if at differing speeds – across most of the globe, and civilizations from Europe and the Middle East to China and India endured waves of invasion, often by the same nomadic forces.



HORSEBORNE EMPEROR Charlemagne, shown here in an 8th-century statue, relied on cavalry to expand his empire.

The Middle Ages were marked by the failure of states and empires either to absorb or to achieve any decisive superiority over the "barbarian" peoples who pressed against their borders. This failing left them exposed to damaging incursions or outright conquest. Under the Tang and Sung dynasties, China was the most technologically advanced society of its time, yet it came under constant pressure from steppe horsemen before finally succumbing to Mongol invaders in the 13th century. Relatively backward western Europe, meanwhile, struggled to resist waves of raiders and settlers from the 8th to the 10th centuries, as did the Byzantine empire. Most western European states found it impossible to sustain professional standing armies and were far from establishing a monopoly of armed force. This weakness made it hard to distinguish between war and simple violence, as local lords or mercenary commanders fought in pursuit of their own motives. But while much warfare was conducted purely to amass plunder or to settle vendettas, the great Arab conquests of the 7th and 8th centuries were fired by

belief in Islam, which inspired a religiously driven campaign of conquest that was mirrored in the Christian crusades from the late 11th century.

#### DOMINANT CAVALRY

Warfare throughout most of this period was dominated by cavalry, ranging from Turkish horsemen armed with bows who wore little or no armour and specialized in hit-and-run tactics, to the heavily armoured knights of western Europe and the Byzantine empire. Everywhere cavalry was the highstatus division of an army, literally looking down on the foot-soldiers. Although the diffusion of the stirrup throughout Europe from about the 9th century did something to increase the stability of the mounted warrior, it was only one factor in the move towards more heavily armoured cavalry - other developments included better-designed saddles and the breeding of stronger warhorses. The improving skills of metalworkers, in both the Christian and the Islamic worlds, made swords more deadly and enabled European knights to adopt plate armour

from the 13th century. Bows were a key weapon of cavalrymen in many armies - including those in Japan and the Byzantine empire - but western-European knights spurned missile weapons, committed as they were to ideals of warfare that involved the charge with couched, or forwardpointing, lance and hand-to-hand combat, Although no elite warrior could be without a horse, in practice horsemen often dismounted to fight. Infantry rediscovered a more respected place on European battlefields in the later part of the Middle Ages, when the intelligent deployment of footsoldiers with crossbows and longbows challenged the effectiveness of the cavalry charge. The 14th and 15th centuries were marked by the growing success of disciplined infantry such as Swiss pikemen, who fought in phalanxes reminiscent of ancient Greece.

#### FORTS AND SIEGES

Widespread insecurity and political fragmentation during the Middle Ages were reflected in the construction of formidable stone castles and the fortification of cities. In turn, these feats of engineering ensured that sieges were a prominent feature of medieval warfare, in China as much as in western Europe or the Islamic world. Since siege engines were, at best, no more effective than those of the ancient world, sieges were often protracted and messy affairs, with heavy losses to disease and hunger among both the besiegers and the besieged.

#### **GUNPOWDER**

The gradual introduction of gunpowder weapons offered the potential for a significant change in siege warfare. The Chinese had explored the military potential of gunpowder by the 11th century at the latest, and by the end of the 13th century they had primitive guns firing stone or iron balls. It did not take long for these innovations to spread to the rest of Asia and Europe. By 1326 the Italian city of Florence was ordering metal cannon for defensive duties, and cannon played a marginal part in the battle of Crécy, between French and English forces, in 1346. Although Europe did not invent gunpowder weapons, it showed great aptitude for developing and improving them. The manufacture of gunpowder in granular form -"corned" powder - made it far more powerful, while the evolution of cannon progressed from iron strips held together with hoops to cast-bronze pieces firing wrought-iron shot. Cannons also increased in mobility, as soldiers mounted them on two-wheeled carriages or limbers, from where they raised and lowered the weapons by means of trunnions (axlelike devices). By the second half of the 15th century the French army was operating with an artillery train, while handguns were beginning to become practical weapons. Gunpowder artillery had far from revolutionized warfare by 1500, but it had already made the stone walls of the medieval castle obsolete

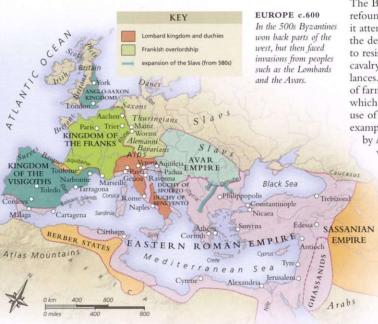
MISSILE WARFARE
Trebuchets — stone-throwing
machines operated by ropes or,
on later models, a counterweight
system — were a major part of
medieval armies' siege artillery.





AB CAVALEY, 11TH CENTURY KHMER KING JAYAVARMAN VII (6.1181-c.1215) FRENCH KNIGHTS, 12TH CENTURY BODIAM CASTLE, ENGLAND, c.1385 GERMAN GOTHIC ARMOUR, c.1470

AFTER THE DISINTEGRATION of imperial rome in the 5th century the empire continued in the east, centred on Constantinople. In western Europe the Franks extended control over Gaul in the vacuum left by the Romans, but waves of intruders - Vikings, Saracens, Magyars - made life insecure for the settled population. It was not until the 11th century that the pressure from raiders and invaders would begin to subside, allowing western Europe to enter a more aggressive phase.



## BYZANTINE SURVIVAL

IVORY HORSEMEN Byzantine cavalrymen carried a lance and a sword as well as a small shield to protect their neck and back.

The Byzantine empire was named after Byzantium, the ancient city refounded as Constantinople in 330. After an early phase during which it attempted to restore control in the west, the empire was largely on the defensive, often relying on the formidable walls of Constantinople to resist invaders. The heart of the Byzantine army was its armoured cavalry, the cataphracts, who carried heavy swords, bows, and sometimes lances. From the 7th century cavalry recruitment was based on the duty of farmers to serve the empire, although this system evolved to one in which regional lords provided agreed numbers of horsemen. Byzantine use of cavalry was sophisticated: for

example, in response to raiding by Arabs and Turks, frontier watchtowers provided early warning of intruders, allowing cavalry to track down and destroy the raiding parties.

> BYZANTINE HERO General Belisarius (far right) led Byzantium's 5th-century resurvence, with victories over the Persians, Vandals, and Ostrogoths.

# KNIGHTS AND FORTS

Like the Byzantines, Charlemagne's Franks saw armoured cavalry as the core of the army - the prestige arm expected to predominate on the battlefield. The knight's horse and

armour have been calculated as being equivalent in value to 20 cows. No state in early medieval Europe could afford to maintain such expensive warriors, so the knight had to be self-supporting, owning land to provide the income to equip himself for war. Recent historians have warned against seeing this period in terms of "feudalism" - with knights holding land in return for military service - but landowners certainly had the duty to present themselves armed and mounted when their lord required. A major military feature missing from European landscapes until the 10th century was the castle. Before that there were simple places of refuge such as hill forts and fortified monasteries that people went to in time of danger. When castles did begin to be built, most were of earth and wood,

#### FRANKISH WARRIOR This crude 7th-century carving

of a Frankish warrior gives ominence to his "scramasax" dagger). Frankish weapons vere prized across Europe.

like the famous motteand-bailey design - an earth mound topped by a tower and surrounded by ditches, a rampart, and a palisade.



Between the 5th and 10th centuries, western Europe experienced waves of armed raids, invasions, and migrations that threatened the stability of states and the safety of established communities. While Muslims and Vikings raided around the coasts, peoples such as the Avars, Bulgars, and Magyars pressed across Europe's long land border to the east. The Vikings were especially feared, the raids of their warships terrorizing communities along coasts and up rivers far inland from the late 8th century. However, many raiders and invaders

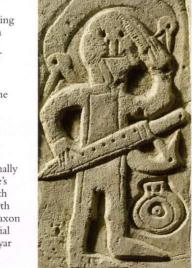
> Magyar kingdom of Hungary. The Scandinavians, for a long time a plague to Christian western Europe, eventually established realms in eastern England, Ireland, and northern France. Intermarrying with local people, the French Northmen became known as Normans, and their fearsome warrior bands adopted the fighting practices of their settled neighbours, becoming mounted knights like the Franks. In the 11th century Norman armies - hardly to be distinguished from those of any other European state - conquered not only Anglo-Saxon England but also southern Italy and Sicily.



to dress and arm themselve. Iron helmets with noseguards, like this one were worn by chieftains. Contrary to popular belief, Viking helmets had

## AFTER ROME

In much of the former western Roman empire there were long periods of general insecurity, during which warfare was extensively decentralized, with local lords organizing protection for their people. The strongest kingdom to emerge in the wake of the Roman empire was that of the Franks: the Frankish rulers of the Merovingian dynasty controlled most of what is now France by the time they converted to Christianity at the end of the 5th century. Under the Carolingian dynasty from 751, the Franks' military conquests expanded the area under their rule so substantially that, by 800, their powerful king Charlemagne was ready to assume the title of emperor, which the pope formally bestowed upon him in Rome. After Charlemagne's reign his successors had difficulty maintaining both his power and the unity of their realms. In the 10th century, however, in what is now Germany, the Saxon emperor Otto the Great was able to revive imperial power, winning some notable victories over Magyar invaders from western Asia.





# BYZANTIUM SURVIVES

IN THE EARLY 6TH CENTURY the Byzantine emperor Justinian (483-565) recovered the lost regions of the Roman empire in much of the western Mediterranean. His success, however, was short-lived: Italy, for example, had succumbed to the Lombards by the 580s. The Byzantine empire retained its vigour, triumphing over the Persians in the 620s, but over the next 100

JUSTINIAN'S CONQUESTS

#### Tricamarum



DATE 15 December 533 FORCES Byzantines: 5,000 cavalry, 10,000 infantry, 20,000 sailors; Vandals: up to 50,000

No reliable estimates

West of Carthage, modern-day Tunisia

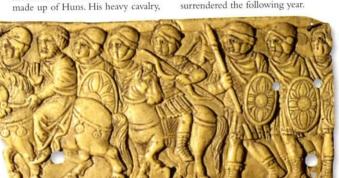
In summer 533, Emperor Justinian sent an expedition to reconquer former Roman north Africa, which the Vandals had occupied since the 5th century. Led by the Byzantine general Belisarius, an army sailed from Constantinople on board 500 transports, under the escort of 92 warships. The force landed in Tunisia and advanced on the

#### BYZANTINE ARMY

Byzantine cavalry and infantry advancing to battle. Horsemen fought with bows, lances, and swords.

Vandal capital, Carthage, which it seized on 15 September after brushing aside the warriors of the Vandal king Gelimer, Gelimer, however, built up a new army in neighbouring Numidia and returned to the offensive. As the Vandals drew nearer to Carthage, Belisarius came out to meet them, despite having doubts about the lovalty of his lightmounted archer horsemen, who were

in contrast, which had advanced ahead of the infantry, charged at the Vandals as soon as they saw them, giving the enemy no time to prepare or battle. After intense hand-to-hand fighting the Vandals began to waver. Once they saw that a Byzantine victory was probable, the Huns joined in, delivering a thundering charge that shattered the Vandal forces. Gelimer escaped the rout but surrendered the following year.



#### c.505-565 BELISARIUS

years Islam-inspired Arab conquests delivered a blow from

Byzantium's stance was defensive. Even its most expansive

phases were chiefly a search for more defensible frontiers.

Byzantine army remained a well-organized fighting force, and its

armoured cavalry was second to none, but from the 7th century

which Constantinople never completely recovered. The

Born in Illyria in the Balkans, Belisarius rose to prominence in the early 530s through his victories over Persia and his bloody of a revolt in

Constantinople. However, after conquering Ostrogothic Italy in 540 he was recalled by Emperor Justinian on suspicion of aspiring to rule the western empire. Although he fought many subsequent campaigns, Belisarius never fully regained Justinian's trust and was even briefly imprisoned in 562. The English historian Edward Gibbon (1737-94) praised him as "daring without mess, prudent without fear".

#### JUSTINIAN'S CONQUESTS

## Siege of Rome



537-538

FORCES Byzantines: 5,000 and 7.000 reinforcements; Ostrogoths: up to 50,000 CASUALTIES

No reliable estimates

central Italy

In 535 Emperor Justinian sent Belisarius to reconquer Italy from the Ostrogoths, who had ruled the country since 493. Belisarius first took Sicily, then marched north via Naples to enter Rome in December 536. Led by Vitiges, the Goths organized a counteroffensive, advancing to besiege Rome the following March. The siege lasted a year and nine days. The Goths' attempts to assault the city walls failed, wilting in the face of disciplined fire from Belisarius's experienced archers. Efforts to blockade the city also failed, for Belisarius received both troop reinforcements and food supplies during the siege, and sent his cavalry out on punitive raids into the surrounding country. Demoralized and decimated by disease, the Goths lifted the siege in March 538. Byzantine forces sallied from the city to attack them as they withdrew.

#### JUSTINIAN'S CONQUESTS

#### Taginae



central Italy

By 551, under the energetic leadership of Totila, the Ostrogoths had recovered most of Italy from the Byzantines, Justinian appointed an aged eunuch, Narses, to command an army to take on Totila. In summer 552 Narses marched around the head of the Adriatic coast into Italy and advanced south towards Rome. Totila blocked his path in a narrow mountain pass in the Apennines. The Gothic heavy cavalry, armed with lances, charged at their enemy, but came under concentrated crossfire from archers, both mounted and on foot, whom Narses had placed in advanced positions on the flanks. Thrown back in confusion, the Goths were then enveloped by the Byzantine armoured cavalry. Totila was among those killed in the ensuing slaughter. Within two years, after another decisive victory at Casilinum, Narses had regained Italy for the empire.

#### JUSTINIAN'S CONQUESTS

#### DATE FORCES Byzantines: 25,000; 40,000-50,000

Byzantines: 20,000; Ostrogoths: 15,000 CASUALTIES Ostrogoths: 6,000 killed LOCATION Byzantine

ortress town of Dara Armenia Twenty-two years before Taginae.

Dara

Byzantine forces under Belisarius demonstrated their abilities with a Persian army on the border between the two empires. The battle began with a prolonged exchange of arrow fire. Then the Persian armoured cavalry charged with their lances, first on the right flank and then on the left. Each time they pushed back the Byzantine horsemen, only to be enveloped by mounted Hun archers whom Belisarius had positioned in between his heavier cavalry. Once the Persian horsemen had been savaged, the Persian infantry fled. Most escaped,

as Belisarius restrained his cavalry

victory over a numerically superior

#### GREEK FIRE



Persians:

CASHAITIES

Byzantines: unknown

Persians: 8,000 killed

from a potentially dangerous pursuit. napalm. Soldiers sprayed it using a pump or poured it into cartridges, which they launched at the enemy. Greek fire was chiefly used in naval warfare, sprayed

#### BYZANTINES VERSUS PERSIANS

12 December 627

Byzantines: unknow

Persians: unknown

No reliable estimates

FORCES

CASUALTIES

#### Nineveh



LOCATION Near present-day Mosul, northern Iraq

In the early 7th century the fortunes of the Byzantine empire were at a low ebb. The Persian armies of King Chosroes II had conquered Egypt, Svria, Armenia, and Anatolia, and were camped outside Constantinople. Emperor Heraclius resolved on a counteroffensive, and in 622 he sailed with an army to the north coast of Asia Minor. In a series of campaigns over the following years he harassed the Persians, building up his army's training and experience. In the spring of 627 he swept into Mesopotamia. In December he encountered a Persian army, led by the commander Razates, on a plain near the ruined ancient city of Nineveh. Battle was joined in the early morning and continued for 11 hours without a break. Heraclius, always in the thick of the fighting. eventually came face to face with Razates and severed his head with a single blow. The routed survivors of the Persian army fled, but the Byzantines pursued them to the gates of their capital, Ctesiphon, and then withdrew without attempting a siege. The defeated Chosroes, however, was overthrown in a palace coup and his successors sued for peace. Unfortunately for Heraclius, this great victory was almost immediately followed by a wave of Arab conquests.

#### HERACLIUS'S VICTORY

negated all his gains.

Pliska

LOCATION Near

modern-day Shumen

northeast Bulgaria

A 13th-century depiction of the battle of Nineveh, in which the Byzantine emperor killed three Persian generals, as well as the Persian commander, in single combat.

26 July 811

CASUALTIES

By the early 9th century, while the

Arab caliphate showed signs of

weakening, the Byzantine empire

attempted to reassert itself. In 811

Emperor Nicephorus led an expedition

Byzantines captured the Bulgar capital.

against the Bulgar Khan Krum. The

Pliska, but were then ambushed and

Nicephorus was decapitated and his

slaughtered at a mountain pass.

No reliable estimates

FORCES

between the early 630s and 651, that

# BYZANTINES VERSUS BULGARS BYZANTINES VERSUS BULGARS Kleidion

29 July 1014

Byzantines: unknown

Byzantines: unknown;

Bulgars: 20,000

Bulgars: 14,000

FORCES



Thessaloniki northeastern Greece

Under the rule of Samuel from 976 the Bulgars extended their territory at the expense of the Byzantine empire, taking over Macedonia and much of Greece. Byzantine emperor Basil II fought back in a series of successful campaigns. By 1007 he had recovered the lost territories and was envisaging the conquest of the Bulgar state. To block a Byzantine invasion, Samuel skull used by Krum as a drinking cup. | built towers and palisades to defend

#### key passes and valleys leading into the BASIL THE BULGAR SLAYER Bulgarian heartlands. In 1014 a large Byzantine army approached the pass



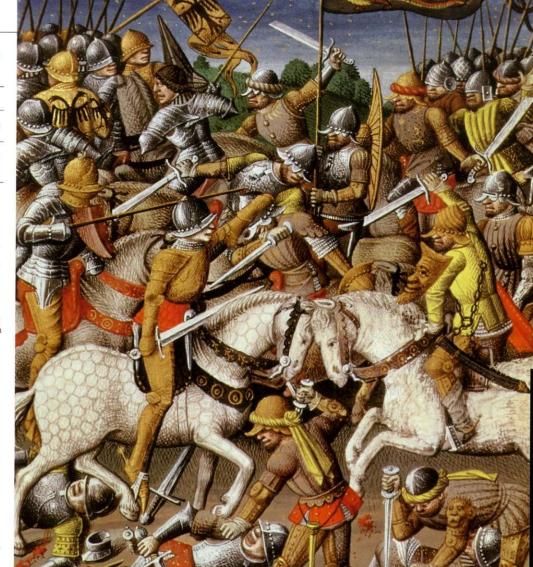
Vicephorus Xiphias, to lead a small force through mountainous country and attack the Bulgars from the rear. The ploy worked to perfection. Panicked by the sudden appearance of Xiphias's men, the Bulgars turned to face them. Basil's main army was then able to

overrun the unmanned fortifications,

A coin shows the heavily bearded features of Basil II (r. 976-1025), an energetic ruler who was capable of extreme cruelty.

> rapping the enemy n the pass. About two-thirds of the Bulgars were captured and on these, according to Byzantine historian John Skylitzes, Basil took dreadful vengeance. For every 100 prisoners 99 were blinded and one was left with a

single eye to lead them back to their king. Samuel apparently died of shock at the sight of his mutilated army. Four years later the Byzantines completed the conquest of Bulgaria.



# FRANKISH POWER

AFTER THE COLLAPSE OF ROMAN RULE the Franks became the dominant force in Gaul. By the late 8th century, under Charlemagne, their authority extended over much of the former western Roman empire. In 843, however, the Carolingian empire was divided between

Charlemagne's three grandsons. While Franks continued to rule the western regions, in the 10th century the German, eastern portion came under Saxon dominance. Saxon king Otto I did his best to re-establish Charlemagne's empire, but France remained an independent kingdom.



CAMPAIGNS OF CLOVIS

#### Vouillé



Franks' unknown: Visigoths: unknown Near Poitiers, west-

FORCES

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

A series of military campaigns enabled Clovis (d. 511), king of the Salian Franks, to extend his authority well beyond his original territory in northeastern Gaul. Around 486 he defeated Syagrius, ruler of northwestern Gaul, while in about 496 he defeated the Alamanni, after which victory he converted to Christianity. The pretext for Clovis's invasion of the Visigothic kingdom, which culminated in the battle of Vouillé, was the Visigoths' Arian faith - a version of Christianity that originated with the 4th-century theologian Arius. But just as important for Clovis was the conquest of Visigothic territory in Gaul. In 507 Clovis led an army across the Loire river, and Alaric II, the Visigoth leader, advanced to defend his kingdom. When both sides met, Clovis triumphed over the Visigoths, Clovis reportedly slaying Alaric in person. The Franks took the Visigoth capital, Toulouse, and most of southwestern Gaul to add to their growing domain.

#### FRANKS VERSUS MUSLIMS

c.732

FORCES

Franks: 15,000-75,000;

Muslims: possibly

#### **Poitiers**



50,000 CASHAITIES No reliable estimates Poitiers and Tours. west-central France

In 732 Abd ar-Rahman, the governor of newly conquered Muslim Spain, invaded neighbouring Aquitaine with a substantial army, predominantly of Arab and Berber cavalry. Duke Eudo. the ruler of Aquitaine, fled to Austrasia in the eastern part of the Frankish kingdom. Abd ar-Rahman pursued the duke, threatening the safety of the Christian shrine of St Martin at Tours. Charles Martel, the governor of Austrasia and effective ruler of the Franks, confronted the invaders somewhere between Poitiers and Tours. Both sides hesitated to commit to battle, but after a six-day stand-off the Muslims attacked. The Frankish knights fought dismounted, forming a tightly packed square that they defended with sword, spear, and shield against the Muslim cavalry. The Franks held formation, at one point surrounding and killing Abd ar-Rahman himself, and the Muslims eventually gave up and withdrew. This victory was traditionally seen as a

"The northern peoples remained immobile as a wall, holding together like a glacier in the cold regions, and in the blink of an eve annihilated the Arabs with the sword. The people of Austrasia, greater in number of soldiers and formidably armed, killed ... Abd ar-Rahman when they found him, striking him on the chest." WITNESS TO WAR

#### ANONYMOUS

The writer of the anonymous Chronicle of 754 described the resistance of the Franks to the Muslims at the battle of Poitiers.

turning point in history, the moment at which Christian Europe stemmed the tide of Arab conquest. More recently, historians have emphasized that the battle had little importance for the Muslim world, even if it was of great significance to the Franks.

#### CLASH OF ARMS

An illuminated manuscript depicts a cavalry clash at Poitiers. For much of the battle, however, the Franks fought dismounted.



#### SAXON WARS

#### Charlemagne's Saxon Campaigns

DATE 772-799

FORCES

CASUALTIES

Franks: unknown;

Saxons: unknown

No reliable estimates



LOCATION Saxony and Westphalia, Germany

In the 770s the Saxons rebelled against Frankish overlordship and carried out raids into Frankish territory. Almost every year, Charlemagne sent forces to subdue them. Occasionally the Saxons were successful, as in 782, when Charlemagne's cavalry came to grief against a wellprepared defensive line. But mostly the size of Charlemagne's forces and his ability to invade Saxon territory from several directions at once gave him the upper hand. Widukind, the Saxon leader, surrendered in 784 and submitted to baptism, but campaigns against the Saxons continued until the end of the 8th century.

#### 742-814 CHARLEMAGNE

Charlemagne was the grandson of Charles Martel and the son of the Franks' first Carolingian king, Pépin. The first three decades of his reign were a period of conquest and expansion. By the time he was crowned emperor by Pope Leo III on Christmas Day 800 Charlemagne had conquered Lombardy (northern Italy), subdued the Saxons, and defeated the Avars and Slavs. He dedicated the later years

of his reign to consolidating the defences of an empire that stretched from northeastern Spain to Denmark. The secret of Charlemagne's military success was his ability to mobilize and supply large forces for innual campaigns over long distances, and later to provide permanent garrisons for fortresses on distant borders

#### FRANKS VERSUS BASQUES Roncesvalles

15 August 778 Franks: unknown; Basques: unknown CASUALTIES

INCATION The No reliable estimates Pyrenees, Navarre northeast Spain

In 778 Charlemagne made his first expedition into Spain but found his way checked by Muslims. While the Frankish army was returning across

the Pyrenees, stretched out in a long column through a narrow mountain pass, lightly armed Basques ambushed the rearguard. Among the slain was a count named Roland. The ambush became the subject of an Old French epic poem, "The Song of Roland". In the poem, the Basques have become Muslims, and Roland Charlemagne's nephew. Roland refuses to blow a horn to call for help, feeling that this would show a lack of knightly valour.

#### FRANKISH KNIGHTS

Cavalry were the core of Frankish armies. The charge with forward-pointing lance, shown here, was common by the 11th century.



#### GERMANS VERSUS MAGYARS

10 August 955

FORCES Germans: unknown;

#### Lechfeld



Magyars: unknown No reliable estimates river, near Augsburg, Bavaria

In the 9th century the Magyars, horsemen from central Asia, began to mount destructive raids into the former Carolingian empire. In 955 they invaded Bavaria and besieged Augsburg. Otto I, the Saxon king of Germany, led a force of up to 10,000 heavy cavalry to relieve the city. The Magyars, who greatly outnumbered the Germans, unhesitatingly gave battle. Their faster-moving horsemen

#### CRUEL VICTORY

A 19th-century painting of the battle of Lechfeld bathes Otto I in light. After the battle, hundreds of Magyar prisoners had their noses and ears cut off.

quickly outflanked the Germans but became distracted by the chance to plunder the enemy camp. Otto led a charge on the captured camp, routing the dismounted Magyars, before turning his forces to attack the main body of the enemy. Riding through their volley of arrows, his cavalry smashed into the Magyars and drove them from the field. There were no more Magyar raids. The victory confirmed Otto's authority in Germany.



#### FRANKISH WEAPONS

The trade in Frankish weapons, from Iceland to Russia, suggests the regard in which they were held in early medieval Europe. During the 9th century short Frankish swords disappeared from use, while the edges of longer swords began to taper from hilt to tip, increasing their manoeuvrability.

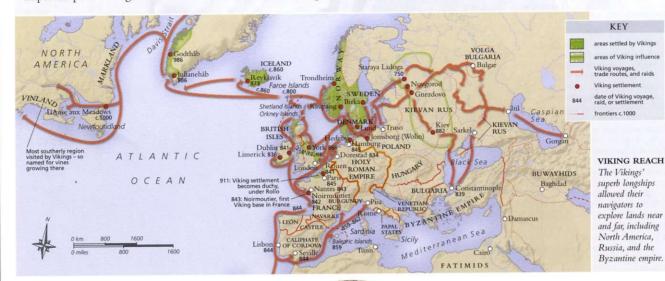
Missing grip would have been made of wood covered with leather or bone FRANKISH SWORDS AND HELMET FROM THE 6TH AND 7TH CENTURIES

Double-edged

Parallel edges gave e sword power but made it heavy

THE VIKINGS ENTER HISTORY in the late 8th and 9th centuries as sea raiders, terrorizing Europe from Dublin to Constantinople. These outstanding shipborne warriors were also traders, explorers, and settlers, and the period of hit-and-run raids was followed in some areas by permanent settlement. Over time, improved political organization in Scandinavia turned raiding

into the more ambitious warfare waged by the kings of Denmark and Norway. In 911, in return for a promise of good behaviour, the Frankish king Charles III granted Vikings territory in northern France. Thus Normandy was founded and Vikings became Normans ("Northmen"), in which guise their military enterprises continued, with conquests ranging from England to Sicily.



VIKING RAIDS

#### Lindisfarne



Northeast coast

"It is nearly 350 years that we and our forefathers have inhabited this most lovely land, and never before has such terror appeared as we have now suffered from a pagan race..." Such was the response of the scholar Alcuin

FORCES

Vikings: unknown

Anglo-Saxons:

CASUALTIES

VIKING HELMET Many Viking helmets had "goggles" to protect cheeks, as well as a nosepiece.

of York to the shocking news of the sack of Lindisfarne by Scandinavian warriors in 793. Up until this date the Anglo-Saxon kingdoms of England, established by invading Saxons, Angles, and Jutes in the 5th century, enjoyed a comfortable sense of security from outside attack. Nothing showed this more clearly than the siting of the Lindisfarne monastery, a famed centre of Christian learning, on

an island just off the coast of Northumbria. When Viking warships came to raid across the North Sea. Lindisfarne was an appallingly exposed target. The 11thcentury chronicler

Simeon of Durham related how the raiders "laid everything waste with grevious plundering, trampled the holy places with polluted feet ... and seized all the treasures of the holy church". Some monks were put to the sword; some were drowned; some were taken away

rich plunder to be had it is not surprising that the Vikings felt encouraged to return. In the 790s attacks such as that on Lindisfarne were only scattered incidents. But from the 830s raids resumed with greater frequency around the coasts of mainland Europe, with Utrecht and Antwerp among the first targets. In the 840s inland France was ravaged as the Vikings sailed or rowed their warships up the Seine and the Loire rivers. In 845 a fleet of 120 ships led by the Viking Ragnar attacked Paris for the first time. The Frankish king Charles the Bald had no option but to buy them off with 7,000 pounds of silver. Soon, however, Vikings began to winter in France; responding to population

VIKING SPEARS

were often cavalry weapons.

in chains, probably to be

sold as slaves. With such

Vikings used short-headed spears for

stabbing or throwing; long-headed spears

#### MEDIEVAL RUINS

rather than plunder.

growth in Scandinavia they

began to envisage settlement

The ruined church and priory at Lindisfarne, both built at a later date, evoke the atmosphere of the 793 disaster.

VIKING RAIDS

#### Raid on Constantinople

DATE Summer 860

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

Vikings: 200 ships;

Byzantines: unknown

FORCES



Constantinople (modern-day Istanbul

On 18 June 860, without warning, a fleet of warships sailed down the Bosphorus towards Constantinople burning and pillaging every town, village, and monastery that it passed before anchoring opposite the walls of the Byzantine capital. The warriors on these ships called themselves "Rus", but they were almost certainly Vikings who had brought their longships along trade routes from the Baltic, Byzantine chroniclers recorded with horror the acts the raiders committed, but the Vikings made no attempt to assault Constantinople's formidable city walls. Instead, in a pattern familiar to western Europeans, they took their plunder and disappeared. In the 10th and 11th centuries Vikings would return, however, giving rise to the Varangian Guard, the elite troops

# VIKING LONGSHIPS

The sleek and graceful longship was the key both to the Vikings' raids and their voyages of discovery. Its strengths were speed and versatility. Capable of sailing the open seas instead of hugging coasts, it allowed its crew to arrive without warning. Its shallow draught meant it could land on beaches, with no need of harbours, and because it had a prow at both ends it could make a rapid getaway when required. It had a square sail but the Vikings could row it, too, giving it great manoeuvrability. Its shape and draught also meant that it could progress up shallow rivers, and it was light enough to be carried overland, at least for short distances - vital for inland journeys that involved

moving from one river to another SPECIFICATION Date c 800

Length 22m (71ft) Crew 30 oarsmer Width 5m (16ft) Speed Up to 10 knots

This ship was reconstructed from remains discovered in a burial mound in 1904. It is the earliest known Viking vessel to have a mast.

THE OSEREDG SHIP

Elaborately carved stern prow



HULL The Viking longship was clinkerbuilt, with a hull made of overlapping planks. The wood used was oak.

Sail of woven cloth



RUDDER The longship was steered by a rudder-paddle mounted aft on the starboard side.

Oars used when there was no wind

#### MANISH SETTLEMENT OF ENGLAND Edington



of the Byzantine

emperor's household.

May 878 FORCES Possibly 5.000 on each side CASUALTIES

No reliable estimates

Near Chippenham southwest England

In 865 a Danish Viking force caused an upheaval within the Anglo-Saxon kingdoms of England. Within five years Northumbria, Mercia, and East

Anglia were all under Danish rule. At the start of January 878, Danish forces led by King Guthrum infiltrated Wessex, the remaining Anglo-Saxon kingdom, and surprised its king, Alfred, at his royal manor at Chippenham. With only his personal bodyguard to defend him, Alfred had to

#### ALFRED JEWEL

This jewel bears the inscription "Alfred had me made" on its rim, suggesting it belonged to Alfred the Great.

flee to an area of marsh and woodland, where he established a fort from which to harass Guthrum's forces. Surprisingly, in May 878 Alfred was able to summon a substantial army to join him and march on Chippenham, which Guthrum had made his base. The two armies met at Edington. Alfred's contemporary biographer, Asser, tells how the king fought "fiercely with a compact shield wall against the entire Viking army

[until] he destroyed the Vikings with great slaughter". In the wake of this defeat Guthrum was forced to withdraw from Wessex. An agreement in 885 formally divided England between an Anglo-Saxon area and the Viking Danelaw.

#### CAVALRY SWORDFIGHT

The Vikings adapted to land warfare in the 9th century, as this carving from a burial site in Oseberg, Norway, shows.



Siege of Paris



LOCATION Paris France No reliable estimates

VIKING RAIDS

Although the Franks built fortified bridges to block major rivers, they could not stop the Vikings penetrating deep inland, and in November 885 Viking forces reached Paris. After their first attempts to seize the city failed, they settled down to a siege. The defence of Paris was led Count Odo and Bishop Gozelin, who used ballistas and stone-throwing mangonels to repel attacks on the city walls. Although the Vikings took one of the strongpoints outside the city, they could not break inside. A first relief expedition, led by Duke Henry of Saxony, was seen off, but in the late summer of 886 the Frankish emperor Charles the Fat arrived with a larger army. Instead of fighting the Vikings he paid them a large indemnity to lift the siege and gave them permission to ravage Burgundy, which was refusing o acknowledge his imperial authority.





Franks: unknown CASHAITIES

#### VIKING RAIDS



August 991 FORCES Vikings: 3.000: Anglo-Saxons: possibly a similar number

CASUALTIES LOCATION Maldon, Essex, southeast England

During the 10th century the Anglo-Saxon kings, successors of Alfred the Great, conquered Danish England to rule the whole country. From the 980s, however, a new wave of Norse raiders arrived to prey upon the English coastal population. One of these raids, in Maldon, Essex, became

#### DEATH MARSH

The marshland by the Blackwater river in Essex, where the battle of Maldon was fought.

In the summer of 991 a fleet of warships headed by Olaf Tryggyason (the future king of Norway) sailed along the coast of Essex. The earl of the county, Byrhtnoth, set out with his thegus (personal retainers) and a local militia to confront them. The raiders made camp at Northey island, connected to mainland Essex at low tide by a causeway. Byrhtnoth took up position at the end of this causeway. When the tide went out, the raiders advanced to the mainland but found their way blocked. Seeing that a real battle was impossible in such a confined space, Tryggvason called on Byrhtnoth to let the raiders on to the mainland so they could fight properly. This Byrhtnoth did, perhaps confident that he could defeat the enemy. A fierce fight ensued, in which the earl was killed by a spear. Most of his army fled, but the thegns fought on around Byrhtnoth's body until they were all dead.

the subject of an Anglo-Saxon poem.





#### VIKING SETTLEMENT IN IRELAND Clontarf



Just north of Dublin,

DATE 23 April 1014 Leinster, was among those who **FORCES** c.7.000 on both sides CASUALTIES Brian Boru's forces: 1,600-4,000 killed; Vikings and Leinstermen: up to 6.000 killed

The Vikings established themselves in Ireland during the 9th century, with Dublin as their major trading centre. Outside Viking areas, fractious Gaelic

tribes competed for power. In 1002 Brian Boru, king of Munster, claimed leadership of the Gaels as High King of Ireland. Mael Morda, king of resisted this claim. Mael allied himself with Sigtrygg Silkbeard, the Viking ruler of Dublin. In the spring of 1014 Brian raised an army, including a Viking contingent, to attack Dublin. In response, the Dublin Vikings and Leinstermen sailed to Clontarf, behind Brian's camp, where they drew up in a battle line to face Brian's army. (Brian himself apparently did not fight, since it was Good Friday.) The Vikings on both sides were

generally better armed and armoured than the Gaels, but Brian's army carried the day. Put to flight, their enemies ould neither reach their beached ships nor cross the Liffey river back into Dublin. Most

were slaughtered. Brian Boru was also killed, however, when fleeing Vikings attacked his camp. Sigtrygg, who had emained in Dublin, kept control of the Viking settlement, but the Vikings ceased to be an independent force n Ireland's power struggles.

#### VIKING CHAINMAIL

By the 11th century most Norse varriors wore knee-length coats of nail, made of interwoven metal lin MANISH INVASIONS OF ENGLAND

18 October 1016

Danes: unknown:

No reliable estimates

Anglo-Saxons:

FORCES

unknown

CASUALTIES

# Ashingdon

INCATION Ashingdon. Essex, southeast England

In 1013 the Danish king Sweyn Forkbeard invaded England and drove the Anglo-Saxon ruler Aethelred II into exile. When Swevn died in 1014 Aethelred returned to the throne, but died himself as Swevn's son Cnut led

an army against the king at London. Aethelred's son Edmund Ironside contested Cnut's subsequent rule, and, after a number of indecisive engagements, both sides met at Ashingdon. The battle was evenly fought until Edmund's Mercian contingent fled the field, possibly in an act of treachery. The rest of the English battle line broke, to be heavily cut down by Cnut's army. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle records that "all the nobility of England were there destroyed". Edmund survived the battle only to die six weeks later, leaving Cnut as king of all England.

#### KING CNUT

Cnut came to England in 1013 with his father, King Sweyn of Denmark. The Danish fleet hailed him as king of England in 1014, but he had to fight to secure the throne, first against Aethelred and then against Edmund. In 1019 Cnut succeeded his elder brother as king of Denmark and in 1028 conquered Norway. He strengthened his hold on the English throne by marrying Aethelred's widow, Emma of Normandy, although he also had a Danish wife. Cnut was generally respected as a wise and powerful ruler.

NORMAN CONQUESTS

#### Civitate



Apulia. southern Italy

The Normans retained the ruthless enterprise of their Viking ancestors nowhere was this more clearly shown than in southern Italy, where the Norman Hauteville family built up such a power base that, in 1053, Pope

14 October 1066

FORCES Normans:

Saxons: 9,000

Normans: 2 000-

7,000-15,000; Anglo-

CASUALTIES (Possibly)

Anglo-Saxons: 4,000

Leo IX invited the Holy Roman

Three days after Stamford Bridge

William of Normandy, who had

crossed the Channel with up to 700

NORMAN CONQUESTS

Hastings

LOCATION 10km (6 miles)

north of Hastings, southeast England

CASHALTIES

DATE 18 June 1053

cavalry; Imperial and

No reliable estimates

papal forces: chiefly

lead an army against them. In a battle of cavalry against infantry, the Normans trounced their enemies, with the FORCES Normans: 3,000 young Robert de Hauteville, later known as Robert Guiscard ("the cunning"), distinguishing himself. The Normans took the pope prisoner, holding him for 10 months. Robert went on to establish Norman rule in Apulia, Calabria, and Sicily, and to mount an invasion of the Byzantine empire.

Emperor Henry III to

#### ANGLO-SAXONS VERSUS NORSE Stamford Bridge



CASUALTIES LOCATION 13km Norse: 4,000 killed: (8 miles) east of York. Anglo-Saxons: no north-central England reliable estimates

In January 1066 Harold Godwinson became king of England. His right to the throne was contested by William of Normandy, while he also faced the hostility of his brother Tostig, ejected from the earldom of Northumbria the previous year. Tostig invited the

Norwegian king Harald Hardrada to join him in an invasion. They crossed the North Sea in 300 ships, defeated an army led by the earls of Mercia and Northumbria, and occupied York. Moving north with astonishing speed, King Harold came upon the invaders at Stamford Bridge. According to a Norse account, the English attacked first, but a frenzied counterattack led by Harald almost won the day. The battle turned, however, when Harald was killed by an arrow in the throat. Harold offered Tostig peace, but he rejected it, encouraged by the arrival of Norse reinforcements. But these arrivals were exhausted, and after more savage fighting - in which Tostig was cut down with most of his men - King Harold was victorious.

#### by Norman infantry and cavalry with their spears

and axes. At one point a

rumour spread that William

had been killed and he had

to show himself to rally his

men. Then the tide of

battle turned because the

possibly in the excitement

according to one account,

because of several feigned

retreats the Normans made

(see battle plan). The

English right wing

English lost formation,

of imminent success or.

Anglo-Saxons: 10,000;

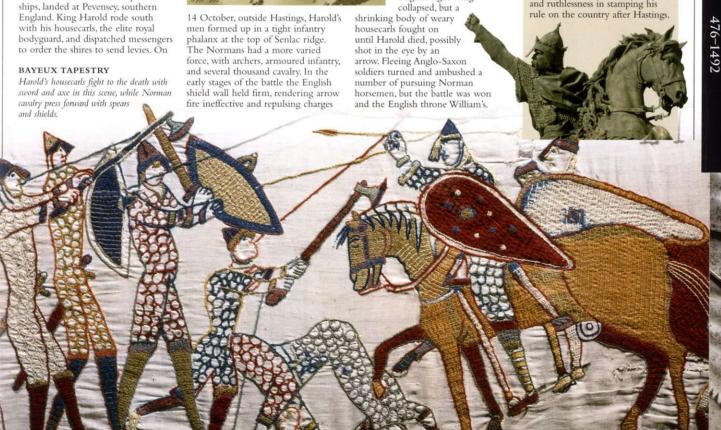
Norse: 5,000

#### WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR

1027-1087

The bastard son of Robert, Duke of Normandy, William acceded to the dukedom at the age of seven and was lucky to survive childhood - three of his guardians were killed. He asserted himself with the necessary savagery once he came of age, however. William showed diplomatic skill in winning papal blessing for his invasion of England and ruthlessness in stamping his





FROM THE ESTABLISHMENT OF A Muslim state in the 620s, the expansion of Islam was astonishingly swift. Within a century the Islamic caliphate controlled much of Asia, North Africa, and part of Europe. These conquests were achieved without innovative technology or tactics, but were the triumph of a militant ideology, inspiring believers with a fighting spirit and an urge to conquer in the name of their faith.

WARFARE IN THE MIDDLE AGE

This ancient fortress in eastern Anatolia was taken over by the Muslim Abbasids in the 9th century CE and later rebuilt and strengthened by the Seljuk and Ottoman Turks.

#### PROPHET AND CALIPHS

Although in principle war between Muslims was forbidden, war against unbelievers was permitted by the tenets of Islam and encouraged by its early history. The prophet Muhammad (c.570-632), founder of Islam, was also a military leader who fought and was wounded during the war between the north Arabian cities of Medina and Mecca. During the brief rule of Abu Bakr, the first of the "caliphs" who led the Muslims after Muhammad's death, Arab Muslim forces had

already begun to push outside Arabia. By the foundation of the Umayyad caliphate in 661, with its capital at Damascus, the Arabs ruled Egypt, Persia, Palestine, and Syria. Within a century they penetrated to the east as far as Afghanistan and as far west as Spain and central France. The unity of Islam was an ideal not realized, the founding of the Umayyad dynasty itself sowing the seeds of the split between Sunni and Shia Muslims that has persisted to this day. In

> the 750s the Umayvads were bloodily overthrown by the Abbasids, who moved the caliphate's centre to Baghdad. Rival caliphs were proclaimed in Cordova and in Egypt (the Shiite Fatimids) in the 9th and 10th centuries. Internal disputes necessarily hobbled Islam's expansion.

BERBERS AND TURKS

By the 11th century the Arabs had ceased to be the effective rulers of the Muslim world. In the west, the Almoravids and their successors, the Almohads drew their support from the Berbers, taking control of Morocco and Muslim Spain. In the east, Islamicized Turks seized most of northern and central Asia, including Arabia. The Turks were superb horsemen who traditionally fought as mounted archers, firing their composite bows in hit-and-run skirmishing style. When they also learned to engage at close quarters with lance, mace, and sabre, they became a formidable enemy. In the 10th and 11th centuries the Ghazni Turks, who had been the sword arm of the Abbasids in central Asia,

> formed their own empire, ruling from eastern Persia to Afghanistan. During the 11th century they were superseded by another Turkish group, the Seljuks, who became the dominant force in Muslim Asia. Under the warrior leaders Toghril and Alp Arslan, the Seljuks extended their rule to the Mediterranean and began to Islamicize Anatolia (modern-day Turkey).

NEW WAVES

By the 12th century there were signs that the Islamic tide was ebbing. In Spain the Christian Reconquista (see p88) was well under way. Disunity among the Seljuks had allowed Christian crusaders to seize Jerusalem and establish new states in the eastern Mediterranean. In the 13th century most of Spain was lost by Islam, while Muslim Asia felt the full fury of Mongol attacks under

Genghis Khan and his successors. Muslims ruled much of northern India but were solidly resisted by Hindu Rajput kingdoms and, from the 14th century, by the empire of Vijayanagar in southern India.

Yet Islam retained a power of renewal, capable of fresh waves of military aggression. The slave soldiers of Egypt, the Mamelukes, proved capable of defeating both the Mongols and the crusader states, while in Anatolia in the early 1300s the Turkish sultan Osman I began the slow build-up of the Ottoman empire.

DOME OF THE ROCK

One of Islam's holiest sites, this shrine was built in Jerusalem in the late 7th century, some 50 years after the Arabs capture of the city in 638. It was designed by Byzantine architects.

INDIAN ARMY

Soldiers such as these.

depicted in a frieze at

a palace of the Hindu

Vijayanagar kingdom in

southern India, held back

the spread of Islam beyond

north and central India.

## FIGHTING TECHNIQUES

649 date of Muslim conquest

Sassanian empire c.610

Abbasid caliphate at its greatest extent c.800

Muslim lands by 634

Muslim lands by 656

Muslim lands by 756

KHAZAR EMPIRE

TRANSOXIANA

INDIAN OCEAN

RAPID RISE

Islam created an

empire to rival

ancient Rome's.

northern Spain

and central Asia.

reaching as far as

In the century after

Muhammad's death

OMAN

Arab armies were originally notable largely for their use of camels, which gave them great mobility, carrying equipment and supplies as well as soldiers. Yet the Arabs proved quick learners: adapting much from the military techniques of the Byzantines, they developed effective cavalry and even learned

the art of naval warfare. But over time Arabs ceased to be simple warriors of Islam. From the 9th century, their aristocracy lost its taste for warfare. Instead, Muslim rulers co-opted men from the Turkish tribes of central Asia to fight in their armies. These soldiers were slaves, even if of an unusual kind: some slave-commanders became wealthy and privileged members of society. This preference for slave soldiers was to become a feature of Muslim armies. A saying of the vizier Nizam al-Mulk (1018-92) summed up the attitude of Muslim rulers: "One obedient slave is better than 300 sons, for the latter desire their father's death, the former long life for his master." But the passing of military power to non-Arabs was inevitably followed over time by a transfer of political power.

CERAMIC CAVALRYMAN This bowl was made in 9thcentury Persia. Persian arms and armour - for example helmets - influenced Islamic warfare.



ARMOURED WARRIOR

Iron helmet with

decorative spike

By the period of the Crusades (1099-1291), Muslim warriors were wearing chainmail and distinctive spiked helmets such as the example shown here.

SELIUK SOLDIERS The Seljuk Turks emerged as a dominant force in the Islamic world in the 11th century, decisively defeating the Byzantines at Manzikert in 1071

## AR AB ADVANCE

WITHIN TWO DECADES OF THE formation of the first Muslim state in 622. Arabs had conquered the Sassanian Persian empire, the eastern Mediterranean, and Egypt. Although the Byzantine empire held out, largely due to the impregnability of Constantinople's walls, within

another century Muslim armies had conquered the North African coast and most of the Iberian peninsula. In the 9th century Sicily underwent an Islamic invasion, and even parts of Italy were occupied. The Muslim jihad (holy war) had brought much of the globe under Islamic rule.

CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE BYZANTINES

#### Yarmuk



DATE 20 August 636 FORCES Byzantines: up to 80,000; Arabs: up to CASUALTIES

Byzantines:

possibly 70,000

river, south of Sea of Galilee, Palestine

In 634 Arab forces invaded Palestine and Syria, taking major cities from the Byzantines, including Damascus. In 636 the Byzantine emperor Heraclius responded by raising a large army that advanced through Syria, forcing the Muslims to abandon Damascus. Arab forces led by the inspired general Khalid al-Walid confronted the Byzantines by the Yarmuk river.

"The battle fought at al-Yarmuk was of the fiercest and bloodiest kind. ...the Greeks and their followers tied themselves to each other by chains, so that no one might set his hope on flight. By Allah's help some 70,000 of them were put to death, and their remnants took to flight ..."

#### WITNESS TO WAR

#### AL-BALADHURI

The Arab historian al-Baladhuri (d. c.892) described the battle of Yarmuk in his work The Origins of the Islamic State, which he based on oral history and earlier writings. His account of the battle also tells how the Arabs were welcomed by many people in Syria and Palestine, who resented Byzantine rule.

A lengthy period of skirmishing ensued, encampment. Blinded by sand and but on 20 August a sandstorm blew up, dust, most of the Byzantines were the wind coming from behind the Arabs' backs. Al-Walid mounted a tremendous charge against the enemy

slaughtered. The Arabs re-occupied Damascus and, in February 638, captured the holy city of Jerusalem. Oadisiyya

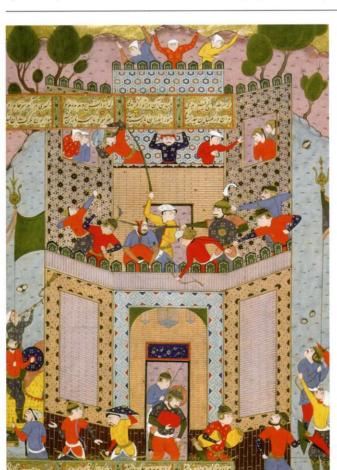
MUSLIMS VERSUS SASSANIANS



DATE 1 June 637 Arabs: 30 non-Persians: 50,000 CASUALTIES

LOCATION Near al-Hirrah, south of Banhdad Iran

When Arab armies, inspired by their new Muslim faith, headed north from Arabia in the 630s, they advanced into a power vacuum created by the exhaustion of the two great regional empires, Byzantium and Sassanian Persia. Although the Sassanians coped with early Muslim Arab incursions, in 637 a large army commanded by Saad ibn abi-Waqqas advanced towards the Persian capital, Ctesiphon. Meeting a numerically superior Sassanian army at a canal of the Euphrates river, the Arabs' aggression and determination secured an outstanding victory. They were able to continue their advance, crossing the Tigris river and staging an unopposed triumphal entry into Ctesiphon. Sassanian resistance continued in other parts of the empire until another Arab victory, at Nahavand in 641, destroyed the last remnants of the once great Persian army.



#### CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE BYZANTINES

#### Siege of Constantinople



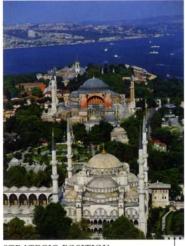
DATE 717-718 Arabs: 160,000-200,000 Byzantines: unknown CASUALTIES Arabs: possibly 130,000-170,000

stanbul, Turkey)

Forty years after the Arabs' first, unsuccessful siege of the Byzantine capital (674-678), they returned for a second attempt. An 80,000-strong army led by Maslama crossed into Europe to besiege Constantinople from the land, while 1,800 war galleys sailed into the sea of Marmara, south of the city. The Byzantine emperor Leo III led the defence with skill and determination - Maslama found Constantinople's walls unassailable. Meanwhile the Arab galleys proved unable to sail up the Bosphorus strait in the face of sorties by the Byzantine navy, armed with its famous incendiary weapon, "Greek fire". With the Bosphorus open to their shipping, the Byzantines kept Constantinople supplied from the Black Sea, and it was the besiegers rather than the besieged who suffered during the

#### UNDER SIEGE

Unlike the Byzantine fortress in this Persian depiction, Constantinople's walls proved impervious to successive waves of attackers right up until the 15th century.



STRATEGIC POSITION The Arabs desired Constantinople for its position between the Aegean and the Black seas and its control of vital trade routes.

harsh winter of 717-718. The Arabs were reduced to eating their donkeys and camels; disease killed thousands. In the spring the arrival of an Egyptian fleet reinforced the Arab army, but further assaults on the city failed. In July the Bulgars - temporary allies of their Byzantine neighbours - attacked Maslama's demoralized forces, inflicting heavy casualties. The next month the Arabs abandoned the siege. Part of their army retreated back through Anatolia. The rest tried to withdraw by sea, but a storm devastated the fleet and only five galleys survived.

MUSLIM WAR OF SUCCESSION

10 October 680

Umayyads: 4,000;

FORCES

CASUALTIES

#### Karbala



LOCATION 88km (55 miles) southwest of Baghdad, central Irag

Internal divisions within Islam always threatened to put a brake on its military expansion. In 661, after the murder of the prophet Muhammad's son-in-law Ali, the wealthy Umayyad family claimed the caliphate - the secular and religious leadership of the Muslim world. Some Muslims resented the Umavvad accession, however, regarding the descendants of Ali as the only legitimate claimants. Tension mounted until 680, when Mu'awiyah, the first Umayyad caliph, died and the leadership passed to his son, Yazid. Opponents of the Umayvads rose up in the ancient Iraqi city of Kufah, inviting Ali's second son, Husayn, to join them and lead their resistance movement. Husavn set off for Kufah from Mecca in Arabia, accompanied only by his family, personal retinue. and harem. Yazid, meanwhile, sent Umar, son of Saad ibn abi-Waqqas, the victor of Qadisiyya, to intercept Husavn with a substantial army.

MUSLIM INVASION OF SPAIN

DATE c.718

FORCES

Visigoths: 300:

CASHALTIES

Covadonga

northwest Spain

By 710 the Arabs had

governor of this vast

across the straits into

region, Musa ibn

Nusair, sent an

exploratory force

southern Spain,

Visigothic king of

kingdom collapsed

result of this defeat

because most of the

high aristocracy was

NATIONAL HERO

Pelayo, the victor at

Covadonga, was later

Spanish Reconquista

and the founder

of Asturias.

celebrated as a hero of the

very quickly as a

Spain, Roderic.

The Visigothic

which, in 711.

defeated the

conquered North Africa from

Egypt to Morocco. The Arab

#### CAMEL WARRIORS

One account of Husayn's death tells how horses trampled on his body. Arab warriors did fight on camels, but they were more commonly used for transport. aiding the movement of armies.

The Umayyad general came upon Husayn at Karbala. For eight days Husayn appealed to his opponents' sense of faith and humanity but to no avail: he, along with all his men, was slaughtered. His head was cut off and sent to Yazid as proof that the job had been done. Karbala was an ambush rather than a battle, but it had profound results. It secured the Umayyad caliphate, but at the same time made a martyr of Husayn. and confirmed the split between Shiites - believers in the succession from Ali - and Sunnis within Islam. The Shiite version of Islam is the dominant belief in Iran and Iraq to the present day, while Husayn's death is remembered on Ashura, a day of public mourning.

killed, and in that sense the battle was similar to Hastings (see p71). By 721, the Muslims had subdued all Visigothic resistance except in the remote northern areas of the peninsula, most notably in the mountains of the Asturias. When the Arabs tried to expand their control into the region they were defeated by a local aristocrat called Pelagius (Pelayo). As a result, an independent Christian kingdom of the Asturias

in time formed the core of the later kingdom of Castile. Nothing is known for certain of Pelayo's victory at a place called Covadonga, but within half a century several legends had grown up around it, alleging that the Arab army numbered 187,000 men (of whom 124,000 were killed) and that God had turned the Muslims' missiles around in mid-flight and sent them back against them The importance of Covadonga, probably little more than a skirmish, lies in the fact that it acquired an almost religious status as the first step in the Spanish Reconquista (see p88).



attempt to occupy the island, however, ARAB VICTORY

its population. There was no Arab

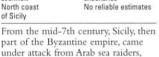
until the powerful Muslim Aghlabid state established itself at Kairouan in North Africa at the start of the 9th century. Separated from Sicily by a narrow stretch of sea, the Aghlabids were inevitably tempted to mount an invasion. A pretext came when the Byzantine admiral Euphemius, the loser in a power struggle in the Sicilian port of Syracuse, asked the Aghlabids to help him regain the city. In June 827 the Aghlabid ruler Ziyadat Allah I sent a fleet of 70 ships to land 10,000 men and 700 horses on the island. At first Byzantine resistance was too strong, but the Aghlabid forces were eventually joined by troops from Muslim Spain, and together seized Palermo in 831. The city became the seat of an emirate, or province, and was used as a base for Muslim incursions into southern Italy. It remained in Muslim hands until the Normans took it in 1071.











who plundered its cities and terrorized



This Byzantine illustration is of the Arab conquest of Messina, in northeastern Sicily, which fell to the invaders in 842.

## ISLAMIC IMPACT

ONE RESULT OF THE MUSLIM ARAB VICTORIES in the 7th and 8th centuries was the Islamicization of the mainly Turkish peoples of central Asia. Consequently the Turks became warriors of Islam, putting their traditional fighting skills at the service of the faith in "slave" armies employed by Arab rulers. Soon these Turkish slave soldiers themselves became rulers of large areas of

Asia, overawing the Arabic empire known as the Abbasid caliphate. In the 10th and 11th centuries Turkish leaders such as Mahmud of Gazhni and Alp Arslan headed a new wave of Muslim military expansion. Mahmud took the armies of the faith deep into India, while Alp Arslan turned Anatolia, the heartland of the Byzantine empire, into the territory of the Seljuks of Rum.

raids and conquest. His favourite

target was Hindu India, which he

1030. At Peshawar in 1009 he was

confronted by an alliance of Hindu

effect of massed elephants, but

princes led by Anang-pal. The Indian

army depended heavily on the shock

Mahmud panicked the beasts, making

them turn back on their own side.

elephants as part of his own army.

MAHMUD'S MAUSOLEUM

After this victory Mahmud adopted

invaded 17 times between 1000 and

#### ABBASID EXPANSION

#### Talas



Arabs: unknown Chinese: unknown

CASUALTIES LOCATION Present No reliable estimates

day Kyrgyzstan,

In the 8th century China's Tang dynasty, extending its influence west into central Asia, clashed with the Arab Abbasid caliphate, pressing eastwards from Persia. In 751 a Chinese army commanded by the Korean general Gao Xianzhi met an Abbasid army by the Talas river. For cavalry support, the Chinese infantry relied chiefly on horsemen from various Turkish tribes. But early in the battle many of these riders defected, leaving the Chinese footsoldiers exposed to encirclement by Arab cavalry. General Gao Xianzhi escaped the defeat, but Chinese influence west of the Pamir mountains (in modernday Tajikistan) was at an end and the Turkish peoples of central Asia came fully under Islamic influence.

#### GHAZNAVID CONQUESTS

#### Peshawar



LOCATION

Present-day

Mahmud of Ghazni, the son of a Turkish slave who had become ruler

Indians: unknown

No reliable estimates

CASUALTIES



#### SELJUK CONQUESTS

#### Dandangan



Turks: unknown: Ghaznavids: unknown CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

day Turkmenistan

In the 1030s the Seljuk Turks, led by Toghril Beg, began to raid areas of northern Khurasan, part of the Ghaznavid empire. The Ghaznavids. led by Mahmud's son Masud, found the hardy Seljuk forces difficult to counter. In 1040 Masud's army, which ncluded Arab and Kurdish cavalry and Turkish palace soldiers as well as 12 elephants, set out from the city of Merv. Encountering the Seljuks at Dandangan they were first fatally weakened by fire from skirmishing mounted archers and then cut apart at close quarters. Masud fought tirelessly with mace, sword, and poison-tipped short spear, but his army was defeated and Khurasan fell to the Seljuks. Under Toghril Beg the Seljuks went on to ake control of Abbasid Persia.

#### INDIAN FORTRESS

The 12-century fortress of Jaisalmer in Rajasthan was built by a Hindu Rajput prince who resisted Muslim rule in India



#### GHURID CONQUESTS

#### Tarain



Ghaznavids: unknown; Turks: unknown CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

In the late 12th century Muhammad of Ghur established Muslim rule through much of northern India. Like Mahmud of Gazhni, Muhammad was ased in Afghanistan and used Turkish lave soldiers as the core of his army. In 1191 he suffered a setback when, at Tarain, he was defeated by the Hindu Rajput leader Prithviraj III. Although he was badly wounded in the encounter, Muhammad returned the following year for a rematch on the same battlefield. This time, making maximum use of his Turkish mounted archers, he defeated the Hindu army. Prithviraj was captured and put to death. After Muhammad's death in 1206 his slave commanders Outh Uud-Din and Muhammad Bakhtiyar extended Muslim rule in India.

#### SELJUK CONQUESTS

#### Manzikert



50,000; Seljuks: 40,000 Manzikert (now Malazgirt), Armenia

In 1071 the Byzantine emperor Romanus IV decided to strike a decisive blow against the Seliuk Turks. who had been carrying out incursions into Armenia and Anatolia. He set out east across the Bosphorus with a large army - although the loyalty of many of its mercenaries and feudal levies was questionable. Alp Arslan, the Seljuk leader, led a force north from Syria to meet the Byzantines. Romanus, meanwhile, divided his forces, sending the larger part against the Seliuk-held fortress of Khelat while he himself occupied the fortress town of Manzikert. The first he knew of the proximity of the Seliuks was when a Byzantine reconnaissance force was virtually annihilated. Undeterred, Romanus drew up his forces on a plain outside Manzikert and began to advance. The Turks, however, proved an elusive enemy. Their mounted archers maintained

#### BYZANTINE PERSPECTIVE

An illumination from an 11th-century Byzantine chronicle depicts a cavalry battle between Byzantine (left) and Arab forces.

harassing fire on the Byzantines from

RVZ 4NITINI EMPIRE Byzantine frontier in Asia c.1025 Byzantine forces Seliuk empire c.1095 Seliuk forces Byzantine territory overrun by Seljuks by 1095 eastern boundary of territory regained by Byzantines 1180 Major battle

the flanks, but their centre refused battle. After an exhausting day chasing shadows, Romanus was far from his camp as evening fell and decided to turn back. This was the moment the Seljuks had been waiting for. They swarmed down from the hills around the plain and surrounded Romanus and his vanguard. The rearguard, made up of the Anatolian levies, fled the

field rather than aid the emperor. Almost all the troops who staved with Romanus were killed, while he himself was taken prisoner. The Seliuks soon occupied Armenia and most of Anatolia. The following century, with the help of the crusades, the Byzantines were able to regain part of Anatolia, but the Byzantine empire never truly recovered from the defeat at Manzikert.

"It was like an earthquake: the shouting, the sweat, the swift rushes of fear, and not least the hordes of Turks riding all around us."

A Byzantine chronicler on the Seljuk assault at Manzikert



#### ALP ARSLAN

Alp Arslan, the conqueror of Georgia, Armenia, and Anatolia. succeeded his uncle Toghril Beg as Seljuk leader in 1062. Chroniclers differ in their descriptions of Alp Arslan's character, some stressing his cruelty and contempt for human life, others his efficiency and justice as a ruler. He was undoubtedly a superb leader of an army in the field, displaying a mix of caution, trickery, and absolute ruthlessness. He was killed by a prisoner while on campaign in Persia the year after his great victory at Manzikert.

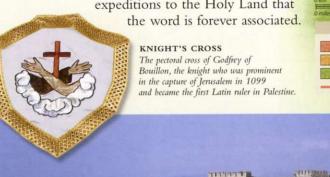


WARFARE IN THE MIDDLE AGES

# THE CRUSADES

IN THE LATE 11TH CENTURY, responding to a call from Pope Urban II for a holy war against the Muslims, a military expedition captured Jerusalem and founded Christian states in the eastern Mediterranean. For the next 200 years Muslim armies sought to drive the Christians out, while more crusades were mounted to relieve them. Other crusades were declared - against Christian heretics in France, Muslims in Spain, and pagans around the Baltic Sea - but it is with the

expeditions to the Holy Land that the word is forever associated.



#### Louis IX's Crusade 1248 Louis IX's Crusade 1270

Mediterranea Second Crusade 1147-49 Third Crusade 1189–92

#### TAKING THE CROSS

There were many motives for going on a crusade, from the papal promise of eternal salvation to greed for land and plunder. It was not an enterprise to be taken lightly. Getting to Palestine - a journey of some 4,000km (2,500 miles) from Europe was in itself a considerable undertaking. The overland route through Turkish-controlled Anatolia proved a death-trap for many crusaders. From the Third Crusade (1189-92) the preferred route was by sea, which involved expensive reliance on the fleets of Italian cities such as Genoa, Pisa, and Venice. A large-scale crusade such as that of the French king Louis IX in 1248 was an extremely ambitious undertaking, costing six times the French crown's annual income. Exactly how many Christians went on crusade is unknown, but the Fifth Crusade

#### BUILT IN STONE

Reinforcing their precarious occupation of hostile territory, the crusaders built many elaborate stone castles like this one at Mamure in southern Turkey.

is believed to have involved about 3,000 cavalry, 20,000 infantry and archers, and 30,000 assorted pilgrims and camp followers.

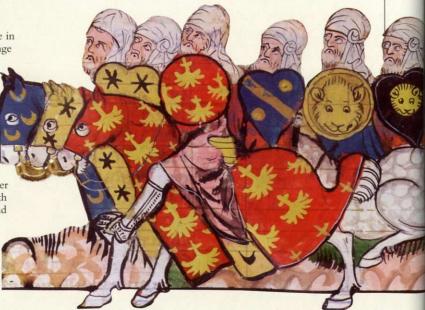
#### DIVIDED LOYALTIES

Raiding and sieges were the two most common forms of warfare in the crusader lands. The Europeans made no special effort to change their style of fighting - centred on the charge with lance by heavily armoured knights - to suit local conditions. Crusader armour, generally heavier than that of Muslim armies, could become unbearably hot, so the cloth surcoat, worn over armour, was adopted to keep the metal cooler. Warfare was often far from a straightforward fight between Muslim and Christian. Each side fought their co-religionists as well as the infidel. In the search for survival, the Christian states formed alliances with Muslim neighbours and even, in the 13th century, with the pagan Mongols. Whenever strong Muslim leaders such as Saladin (1137-93) or the Mameluke Egyptian ruler Baybars (d.1277) emerged, the Christians fell back on the strength of their stone fortifications. Baybars could field an army of around

40,000, at least twice or three times the combined strength of the crusader states. The crusaders were, however, generally skilled and aggressive fighters, even if they sometimes lacked discipline.

SALADIN'S ARMY

A European representation of the army of Saladin, one of the crusaders' most impressive Muslim foes. He was respected by many



Leopold V of

Austria. While

#### RICHARD I THE LION-HEART

Richard, the son of Henry II of England and Eleanor of Aquitaine, embarked on a crusade to Palestine in 1190, just a year after acceding to the English throne. His encounters with Saladin became the stuff of legend, but he failed to retake Jerusalem and quarrelled with fellow crusaders Philip II of France and

returning from the crusade he fell into Leopold's hands and was imprisoned, returning to England in 1194 after paying a hefty ransom.

#### ROYAL TOMB

Richard was buried in Fontevrault Abbey, France, after being killed by a crossbow bolt during the siege of Chalus Castle.

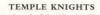
A seal of the Knights Templar, who took their name from their in the former Jewish Temple.

## THE MILITARY ORDERS

From the 1120s military orders such as the Hospitallers and the Templars established themselves in the crusader states. Like monks, members of these orders followed religious rules but were dedicated to war in defence of Christendom, becoming the elite of Christian armies in the east. The Templars were accused of heresy and suppressed in

1312, but other orders continued to play an important role in European warfare, such as the Order of Santiago in Spain and the

Hospitallers in wars against the Ottoman Turks.



quarters in crusader-run Jerusalem



# THE FIRST AND SECOND CRUSADES

IN 1095 POPE URBAN II called on Christian knights to embark on an expedition to seize the holy city of Jerusalem, held by Muslims for more than 400 years. Some 100,000 people across east and west Europe answered the pope's call, fired by the hope of material gain and Urban's promise of a place in heaven to those crusaders who died on the battlefield. Against all the odds

this large-scale foray into distant, hostile territory succeeded, and Christian states became established in Palestine and Syria. Their existence, however, was always precarious, and the mounting of Muslim counterattacks necessitated other crusades to defend the gains of the first. Instead of a one-off event, crusading became an established part of medieval Christian life.



#### Dorylaeum



DATE 1 July, 1097 FORCES Turks: 3,000; Crusaders: 4.000 CASUALTIES

LOCATION Modern-day No reliable estimates Eskisehir, central Anatolia, Turkey

The participants in the First Crusade assembled outside Constantinople in late 1096 and early 1097. Among their main leaders were the Norman duke Bohemond, Count Raymond of Toulouse, the German prince Godfrey of Bouillon, and Adhemar, bishop of le Puy. The army set out across Turkish-held Anatolia the following spring, with Bohemond's Normans in the vanguard. Near Dorylaeum they were ambushed by the army of Kilij Arslan, the Seliuk sultan of Rum. The fast-moving Turkish mounted archers evaded every effort of the Norman knights to engage them. The crusader Fulcher of Chartres wrote how,

THE FIRST CRUSADE

LOCATION

Jerusalem



#### CATAPULTED HEADS

On the way to Dorylaeum the crusaders besieged Nicaea, during which they catapulted severed Turkish heads into the city to demoralize the defenders.

"crushed one against the other, like sheep penned up in a fold, we were shut in by the Turks on every side" The Normans were saved by the arrival of another crusader column, led by Count Raymond, which surprised by the size of the crusader forces, prudently pulled his horsemen away as Turkish casualties mounted.

charged the Turks. Kilij Arslan, however, they prepared an assault, with catapults. Under a barrage of Siege of Jerusalem

#### building wheeled siege towers fitted stones and Greek fire, the crusaders wheeled the towers up to the walls. Once knights from a tower had captured a section of wall, others could join them using siege ladders. The defenders were soon overcome. A great massacre of the city's Muslim

## No reliable estimates

7 June-18 July, 1099

Crusaders: 1,300

footsoldiers

CASUALTIES

knights and 12,000

FORCES

By the time the First Crusade reached Jerusalem, its numbers had dwindled. Under the vigorous leadership of Count Raymond of Toulouse and Godfrey of Bouillon,



and Jewish inhabitants followed, which left the streets knee-deep in bodies.

#### ASSAULT ON JERUSALEM

The crusaders saw their goal as the liberation of Jerusalem from Muslim rule, but once they took the city they perpetrated a massacre of appalling barbarity.



THE FIRST CRUSADE

#### Antioch



21 October 1097-28 June 1098 FORCES (June 1098) Turks: 75.000: Crusaders: 15,000 CASHAITIES

ancient Syria (now in outhern Turkey)

In October 1097 the crusaders laid siege to the large, heavily fortified city

of Antioch. The defence of the city was energetically conducted by its Turkish governor, Yagi Siyan, who mounted damaging sorties against the succour and help crusaders. Through we had none." the winter the besiegers found themselves more

besieged. Relief forces for both sides,

meanwhile, either turned back or

seriously threatened by hunger and hardship than the

No reliable estimates of a sacred relic - the Holy Lance restored morale and inspired Bohemond to lead a sortie against Kerboga. With around 1,000 mounted "The Turks... pressed us on one side, and river and attacked excruciating hunger on the other, but of

> Gesta Francorum. Fulcher of Chartres, 1101

#### SIEGE SCENE

A 15th-century representation of the siege of Antioch reflects crusader accounts of the city's strong walls and great wealth.

1098, a Turkish traitor admitted the

crusaders to one of the towers on

the city walls. After massacring the

citadel, which remained in Turkish

hands. A Muslim relief army said to

be 75,000 strong now appeared, led

by Emir Kerboga of Mosul, and the

crusaders were themselves besieged

inside Antioch. They were on the

verge of defeat when the discovery

knights and 14,000

crossed the Orontes

footsoldiers, he

the far superior

Muslim forces so

decisively that they

fled, suffering heavy

casualties. Bohemond

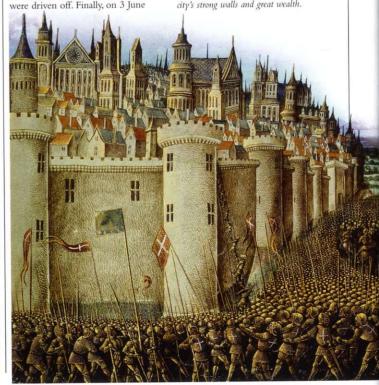
then took possession

of Antioch as the

base of his own

principality.

inhabitants the crusaders besieged the



THE FIRST CRUSADE

#### Harran



DATE May 1104

FORCES Crusaders: 3,000 knights, 9,000 infantr Muslims: unknown

Present-day southeast Turkey CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

In spring 1104 Bohemond of Antioch joined with Baldwin of Edessa to capture the fortress of Harran, A relieving Muslim army came upon the Christians outside the city. Bohemond and Baldwin split their forces, the Edessenes facing the Muslim attack while the Antiochenes hid in ambush But the Muslims used the well-tried stratagem of fleeing, luring Baldwin's men straight into the maw of the main Muslim force. By the time Bohemond entered the battle, the Edessenes had been cut apart.

#### MUSLIM FIGHTBACK

#### Edessa



FORCES Muslims: unknown Christians: unknown No reliable estimates

Modern Sanliurfa. southeastern Turkey

The fall of Edessa, the most isolated of the crusader states, set the stage for the Second Crusade. In 1144 Zengi, the Muslim atabeg of Aleppo, invaded the state. Edessa's ruler, Joscelin II, had neglected its defences and Zengi found little resistance as he advanced on the city. Muslim catapults and siege engines soon weakened Edessa's fortifications and sappers undermined the city wall, opening a breach through which Zengi's army poured to massacre its inhabitants.

#### THE SECOND CRUSADE

### Siege of Ascalon



25 January-19 August 1153 Christians: unknown Egyptians: unknown CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

In 1153 Baldwin III of Jerusalem besieged the Egyptian port of Ascalon. The city's land fortifications were strong

Coastal Palestine

south of Jaffa

and the Christians lacked the resources to prevent the Egyptians reinforcing the city by sea, but a crusader siege tower fell against the city wall, causing a section to collapse. Further battering by siege engines proved too much for the Muslims, and on 19 August they surrendered in return for safe passage.

#### THE SECOND CRUSADE

#### Second Crusade



1147-1149 FORCES Around 20,000 German and 15,000 French crusaders CASUALTIES

No reliable estimates

Anatolia and the

In the wake of the capture of lerusalem in 1099, the crusader states depended for their survival largely upon dissension between different Muslim states, which spent far more energy fighting one another than attempting to evict the infidels. In 1127, however, Imad al-Din Zengi, the atabeg of Mosul, took control of Aleppo and began extending his rule over northern Syria and northern Mesopotamia. In 1144 he captured Christian-ruled Edessa, the first crusader state to fall to a Muslim counterattack. Zengi died in 1146, but his son Nur ed-Din proved an even more dangerous enemy for the Christians. Meanwhile, in response to the fall of Edessa, Pope Eugenius III called for a new crusade. Armies led

#### HEAVY WEAPONRY

This 12th-century cruciform hilted sword would have been typical of the heavy blades that the crusaders wielded to great effect against their Muslim opponents.

#### CHRISTIAN HORDE

The Christian army sent against Damascus was unusually large by the standard of these mostly small-scale encounters

by King Louis VII of France and Emperor Conrad III of Germany set out from Europe, but got into serious trouble crossing Anatolia. Conrad's army, hungry, thirsty, and exhausted, was ambushed by Turks and massacred

near Dorylaeum. The emperor escaped with a few survivors and eventually arrived in Palestine by sea. After following the Anatolian coast to Attalia, King Louis also took to the sea with most of his knights safely reaching his destination, but his footsoldiers and remaining cavalry were decimated SAFETY HELMET by the Turks.

The "pot helm" was the most common DAMASCUS headgear for crusader knights. It offered Looking to strike solid protection but could lead soldiers to a spectacular blow overheat in the hot sun of the Levant. against the Muslims,

Louis and Conrad agreed with Baldwin III, king of Jerusalem, to attack the famous city of Damascus. The decision was highly questionable since Damascus was hostile to Nur ed-Din, and the Christians should

have courted its friendship. Yet in July 1148 the largest Christian army ever seen in the east advanced on the city. provoking its ruler, Emir Unur, reluctantly to call on Nur ed-Din to send an army to save him. At first the Christians progressed well, driving the Damascene forces back inside the city walls. But they soon came under

attack from Muslim

skirmishers in the orchards around the city and from sorties by Unur's forces. Put on the defensive, the Christians quarrelled over who would rule Damascus when it was captured. When news of Nur ed-Din's approach was received, controversy spread to more pressing matters. The local barons belatedly tried to explain to Louis and Conrad the complexities of local politics. There was also nervousness as to what might happen if their army found itself

caught between Nur ed-Din and the Damascus garrison. Ignominiously, the great expedition retreated just four days after arriving outside Damascus. It was a bitter blow to Christian prestige and a major boost to Muslim morale.



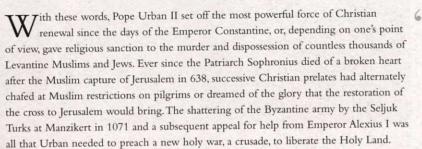


# "Let this one cry be raised by all the soldiers of God: It is the will of God!"

Robert the Monk, History of Jerusalem, reporting on Urban II's sermon at Clermont, 1095

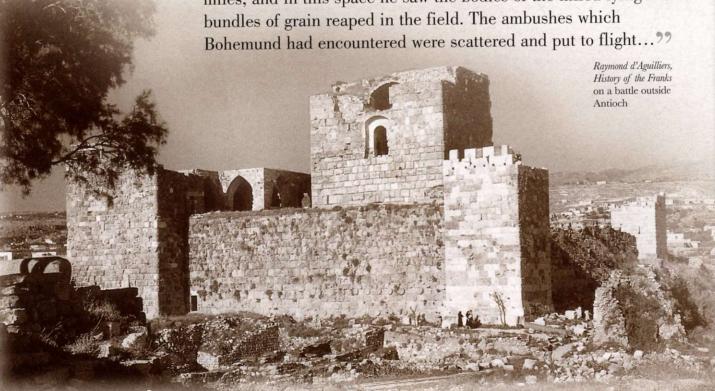
WITNESS TO WAR

# FIRST CRUSADE



66 [When] the Arabs, coming against the Count of Flanders, saw that the affair was not to be conducted at a distance with arrows, but at close quarters

with swords, they turned in flight. The Count followed them for two miles, and in this space he saw the bodies of the killed lying like



From early 1096, enthusiastic crowds flocked to "take the cross" and embark on armed pilgrimage to the Holy Land. The first waves of crusaders were more a disorganized and marauding peasant rabble than an effective military force. But when 66...they hurled not only the nobility of Europe, inspired by a potent trinity of eternal salvation, martial glory, and earthly plunder, embarked on the journey to Jerusalem, the prospects for the crusade grew brighter. Christianity's shock troops, the mounted knights, pushed through Asia Minor and on into northern Syria. Their opponents employed unfamiliar tactics, using light cavalry to harass, encircle, and entrap the more lumbering crusader columns. But when the Christian army succeeded in pinning down their foes in the open, the impact of their heavy-cavalry charge was irresistible.

stones and arrows, but also burning wood and straw. The wood was dipped in pitch, wax, and sulphur: then straw was fastened on

by an iron band, and, when lighted, these firebrands were shot from the machines. [They were] all bound together by an iron band... so that wherever they fell, the whole mass held together and continued to burn. Such missiles, burning as they shot upward, could not be

resisted... by high walls, 99

Raymond d'Aguilliers, History of the Franks on the siege of Antioch, 1097-98

At Antioch, the crusaders became bogged down in the characteristic squalor and frustrated violence of a medieval siege. Deciding not to risk the losses that would ensue from storming the city's impressive fortifications, the Christian army were caught in a waiting game. They hoped that Antioch's starving defenders would surrender before their own dwindling supplies gave out entirely. Meanwhile, they sought to undermine Muslim morale - if not the walls - by hurling a creative array of incendiary devices against the infidel.

66 Some of our men (and this was more merciful) cut off the heads of their enemies; others shot them with arrows, so that they fell from the towers; others tortured them longer by casting them into the flames. Piles of heads, hands, and feet were to be seen in the streets of the city. It was necessary to pick one's way over the bodies of men and horses... Indeed, it was a just and

History of the Franks Jerusalem splendid judgment of God that this place

CRUSADER

The imposing crusader fortress at Byblos was

town's capture by Raymond de St Gilles in 1103.

CASTLE

should be filled with the blood of the unbelievers...?

The siege of Jerusalem (June-July 1099) was a much briefer affair than that of Antioch. Aware that they could not risk the weakening of their forces that a long investment of the Holy City would entail and keen to grasp the ultimate prize of its liberation, the crusaders held back from a major assault for little more than a month. When their siege towers succeeded in capturing a section of the walls, the Muslim defenders' will to resist buckled. What ensued was a massacre of such bloody ferocity that it shocked even the crusaders' chroniclers, whose tolerance for wanton slaughter was normally quite elevated. It also forever poisoned all hope of coming to an accommodation with neighbouring Muslim powers.

"Anyone who had not even a village there has a city here, thanks to God. Why go back to the west, when we can find all this in the east? "

Fulcher of Chartres, Gesta Francorum

MUSLIMS VERSUS CRUSADER STATES

30 June-4 July 1187

Muslims: 30,000;

FORCES

Christians:

CASHALTIES

Unknown

15,000-20,000

started fires in the brush around the camp. The next morning, by now almost dying of thirst, the Christians tried to break through the Muslim encirclement,

halted on a dry plateau by

a double hill known as

the Horns of Hattin.

That night, Saladin's

Christian forces and

army encircled the

1137-1193

SALADIN

Saladin was a Kurdish warrior who seized control of Egypt in 1171, replacing the Fatimid caliphate with his own Ayyubid dynasty. A series of campaigns gave him control of Damascus and Aleppo, after which he focused on the jihad against the Christians. He was a cautious military leader who waited for an opportunity to strike decisively but who avoided battle if there was a serious

PIOUS RULER

Saladin deserved his

reputation for piety

from bloodshed.

but did not shrink

#### MUSLIM RESURGENCE

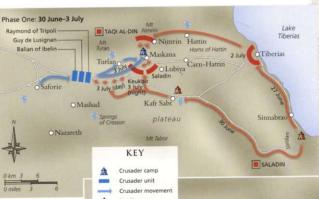
risk of defeat.

Saladin followed victory at Hattin, illustrated here in a 15th-century French manuscript, by taking Jerusalem and reversing much of the crusaders' earlier successes.

> but their footsoldiers were corralled and slaughtered by the enemy. Count Raymond broke out during a cavalry charge, but most Christian riders were struck down by Muslim archers. The remaining knights fell back to one of the Horns, where they resisted bravely until they were forced to surrender. King Guy was among those taken prisoner.

#### HEAD GEAR

Most knights in the crusades period wore a chainmail coat and a coif (head covering), topped by a steel cap and possibly a helmet.



when Saladin's forces encircled them. Count Raymond was one of the few to escape; the remaining knights got as far as Carn Hattin but were overwhelmed.



Phase Two: 4 July





LOUIS IX

## DECLINE OF THE CRUSADES

AFTER SALADIN'S TRIUMPHANT CAPTURE of Jerusalem in 1187, Pope Clement III called a Third Crusade. Europe's most powerful rulers, Frederick Barbarossa, Richard the Lionheart of England, and Philip Augustus of France all responded, but Frederick died on the way to Palestine and Richard and Philip met with very mixed fortunes. Further crusading efforts were

directed to attacking Byzantium (the Fourth Crusade) and Egypt (the Fifth and Seventh Crusades), and to doing deals with Muslim rulers. Emperor Frederick II, leading the Sixth Crusade, even got Ierusalem back by clever diplomacy, but was promptly excommunicated for his pains. By the end of the 13th century, the crusader states of Palestine had disappeared from the map.

THE THIRD CRUSADE

#### Siege of Acre



Acre, modern Israel

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

DATE 28 August 1189-

Christians: unknown:

Muslims: unknown

12 July 1191

FORCES

In 1189 a small Christian force led by Guy de Lusignan boldly laid siege to Acre two years after its fall to Saladin. The siege was supported by a blockade of Pisan and Genoese ships. In April 1191 they were joined by King Philip of France and, in June, by King Richard of England, whose arrival gave the Christians the edge. Saladin's forces failed to fight their way through to relieve the city. As breaches began to open in the walls, the besieged finally surrendered, a great victory for the Christians after so many reverses.

#### GOD'S ACRE

Crusaders disembark at Acre in 1191. The ability to resupply the crusader states by sea was vital after the long land route through Anatolia became too dangerous.



THE THIRD CRUSADE

#### Arsuf



coastal Palestine

7 September 1191 FORCES

Crusaders: under 50 000: Muslims:

CASUALTIES Muslims: 7,000 killed; Crusaders: 700 killed

On 22 August 1191, Richard the Lionheart marched south out of Acre, shadowed by Saladin's army. Richard moved in short daily marches, keeping a disciplined formation that minimized casualties. Templars led the army, with Hospitallers at the rear, while crossbowmen and infantry covered the landward flank. Knights were under strict orders to hold formation, whatever the provocation from Muslim hit-and-run attacks. On September, however, Richard decided to give battle. At a prearranged trumpet signal, the Christian knights charged, scattering Saladin's men in a few minutes. For all the discipline and organization of his army, Richard failed to take erusalem the following year.

#### THE FOURTH CRUSADE



July 1203-April 1204 FORCES

Christians: unknown; Muelime: unknown

LOCATION CASUALTIES Constantinople No reliable estimates (modern Istanhu

In 1201 Pope Innocent III called for a new crusade - the Fourth. Enrico Dandolo, the Doge of Venice, agreed to provide ships for 25,000 crusaders. When the crusaders failed to raise the fee, Dandolo offered to transport them in return for help in seizing Zara, a former Venetian dependency then held by Hungary. In 1202 Zara was duly captured and sacked. The crusaders had with them Alexius, a claimant to the Byzantine throne, who offered them various inducements, including a payment of 200,000 marks, to install him as Byzantine ruler. Reaching Constantinople in June 1203, the crusaders launched an assault on the city the following month. The Venetian fleet penetrated the Golden Horn and

attacked the sea walls, directed in person by the 95-year-old Dandolo. The emperor Alexius III fled, hastening the fall of the city. The crusaders' candidate was installed on the throne as Alexius IV. The Venetians and crusaders settled down to wait for their 200,000 marks. But the money was not forthcoming. Instead Alexius IV was overthrown in a palace coup and his successor, Alexius V, prepared to defend the city. The crusaders' first attack, on 6 April 1204, was repulsed with heavy losses, but six days later, during an assault on the sea walls, fire broke out in the city and the defenders scattered in panic. For the next three days Constantinople was a scene of looting and massacre on a massive scale.

ASSAULT ON ZARA

The crusaders' capture of Zara in 1202 saw them fighting the Hungarians,



#### THE SEVENTH CRUSADE

#### Harbiyah



THE SEVENTH CRUSADE

DATE 17 October 1244 FORCES 1,500 Christian knights plus Muslim allies; 5,000 Egyptians nlus Khwarizmians

CASUALTIES 5 000 Christians killed 800 taken prisoner

In 1244 Khwarizmian horsemen from central Asia swept through Syria and Palestine, attacking Christians and Muslims alike. They seized Jerusalem and then allied with the Egyptians. The Templars made a pact with the Muslim rulers of Homs and Damascus to resist them. A combined Muslim-Christian army advanced towards Egypt, where it was met by a horde of Khwarizmians and a disciplined body of Egyptians, including Mameluke slave soldiers. The Khwarizmian horsemen charged and broke the Muslim forces on the Christian-Muslim left, leaving the Christians trapped. Although they fought bravely, the Christians, including the Templars' Grand Master, were massacred. Only 33 Templars and 26 Hospitallers escaped.

### Mansurah



LOCATION

Nile Delta northern

In 1249 French King Louis IX landed in Egypt, quickly capturing the city of Damietta. Advancing towards Cairo, in December he met a large Egyptian army, commanded by Fakhr ad-Din,

CASHALTIES

Heavy on both sides



holding the far side of the Bahr as-Saghir canal. At dawn on 8 February the king's brother Robert of Artois led a vanguard of knights across the ford. He launched an immediate surprise attack on the Egyptian camp, in which many Egyptians, including Fakhr ad-Din were slaughtered. The remaining Egyptians fled to the nearby town of Mansurah. Imprudently, Artois gave chase, A Mameluke commander, Ruk ad-Din Baybars, swiftly set an ambush. The Christian knights charged into the town unopposed; then, trapped in the narrow streets, they were butchered. But outside the town the Christians prevailed. It was an illusory

> harassed by Egyptian forces, the crusaders tried to withdraw to Damietta. At Fariskur on 6 April they were overrun; almost all were either killed or. like King Louis, taken prisoner

ROYAL PRISONER King Louis IX was taken prisoner by the Muslims and kept in chains in a ouse in Mansurah

Louis IX of France set off on his first crusade (the Seventh) in 1248, hoping to defeat Egypt, the most important Muslim power, and retake Jerusalem. The crusade ended in disaster, with Louis a prisoner of the Muslims and his brother, the Count of Artois, dead. Louis was released in return for a huge ransom and the return of Damietta to the Egyptians. His victory. Decimated by disease and long and peaceful reign in France ended in 1270 when he embarked on another crusade

> Italian artist Vivarini emphasize: King Louis's saintly aspect. He was canonized in 1297.

SAINT AND KING

(the Eighth), this

time landing in

Tunisia, where he

died in an epidemic.

This portrait by 15th-century

#### FALL OF THE CRUSADER KINGDOMS

#### The Fall of Acre



Acre (modern Israel)

CRUSADER CASTLE

FORCES Muslim cavalry: 60,000,

infantry: 160,000; Christian knights:1.000. infantry: 16,000

DATE 6 April-28 May

CASUALTIES

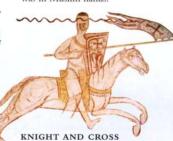
In 1260 Baibars seized control of Egypt. With its vast wealth at the disposal of such a skilful, single-minded Muslim warrior, the crusader states

were doomed. He conquered their cities and castles one by one, employing plentiful siege engines: Antioch fell in 1268, Krak des Chevaliers in 1271. Baibars's death in 1277 brought some respite, but Egypt's new ruler, Qalawun, and, from 1290, his son al-Ashraf Khalil continued the conquest. By then, the port city of Acre was the last fortress still in Christian hands. In 1291 al-Ashraf laid siege to Acre. Built on a peninsula, the city was defended by a double line of walls reinforced with 12 towers. It was open to resupply by sea, but the number of defenders was insufficient to man the walls. Day after day the

Muslims battered the walls with their siege engines, while their engineers mined under the walls. By 18 May part of the outer wall had collapsed and al-Ashraf ordered a general assault. According to a Christian eyewitness, "They came on foot, in numbers

which were beyond comprehension; first came those who carried massive shields, and next came those who threw the Greek fire, and after were those who fired darts and feathered arrows so thickly that it was as if rain was falling from the sky ... The Muslims fought their way into the city, killing or taking prisoner all who failed

to flee by boat. By the evening only the Templars held out. On 28 May, mined by al-Ashraf's engineers, this last stronghold collapsed and Acre was in Muslim hands.

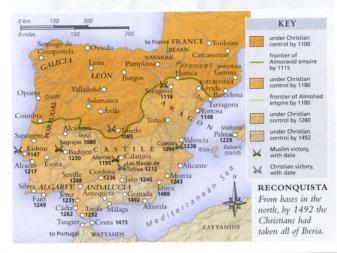


This knight wears the white surcoat and red cross of a Templar. The Knights Templar had a key role in Acre's defence and managed to



## THE SPANISH RECONQUISTA

FROM THE 8TH CENTURY, Muslim rulers controlled most of Iberia. After the caliphate of Cordova disintegrated in the early 11th century, however, the Christian kingdoms of Castile, León, Aragon, and Portugal began a "Reconquista", pushing the Muslims back, and eventually driving them out entirely.



#### THE SPANISH RECONQUISTA

#### Siege of Toledo



25 May 1085 FORCES CASHALTIES

By the 11th century the Muslim emirate of Spain had broken up into numerous small kingdoms known as taifas. King Alfonso VI of León and



Castile took advantage of this disunity to force neighbouring taifa kings to pay him tribute. When in 1081 a faction in Muslim Toledo demanded that these payments cease, Alfonso besieged the city. At first the siege was half-hearted, but in autumn 1084 Alfonso established a stricter blockade around Toledo. He also laid waste the surrounding countryside to sharpen the mounting famine. The Toledan ruler, al-Qadir, appealed to the other Muslim kingdoms for help, but none came to his aid. On 6 May 1085 al-Qadir agreed to surrender, and on 25 May Alfonso entered Toledo. It was

the largest city yet to be captured by the Spanish Christians, and its rulers, the Dhul-nunids, were the first Muslim dynasty to be dethroned by a Christian attack. Toledo was also strategically vital - the Muslim geographer al-Himyari called it "the centre of all the country". Its conquest meant the Spanish Christians could strike anywhere nto Moorish territory.

#### WARRIOR OF FAITH

After his remains were found at Compostela in about 800, St James became the patron of the Reconquista. He allegedly appeared in battle to help the Christians earning the nickname "Matamoros" (Moor-killer).

SPANISH RECONQUISTA

#### Siege of Valencia



DATE July 1093-16 June 1094 FORCES

Christians: unknown: Muslims: unknown CASHAITIES

"The city was cut off

race and stood alone

Ibn Alcama, Moorish historian

and eyewitness to the siege of

Valencia, in his History of

El Cid's conquest of

Granada, 1110

Mediterranean coast Unknown 30,000 prisoners

After a decade fighting as a mercenary for both Christian and Muslim rulers in eastern Spain, by the 1090s Rodrigo Diaz "El Cid" (see panel) had become powerful figure in

his own right. The Muslim king of the city of Valencia was effectively his client. But in 1086 Spain was invaded from the south by the Almoravids, an expansionist Muslim power based in Marrakesh, Morocco. Their ruler, Yusuf ibn

Tashufin, defeated Alfonso VI at Zallaka in 1086, and also conquered all of Muslim Spain. Valencia came under a new ruler, Ibn lehhaf, owing allegiance to the Almoravids. In July 1093 El Cid placed the city under siege, building a

EL CID'S SWORD

El Tizona, the Cid's sword was captured from a Muslim king. In the 20th century Spanish dictator General Franco tried, but failed, to acquire it.

fortified camp at Juballa, just outside the city. The Almoravid garrison left the city but Ibn Jehhaf refused to capitulate. In response, El Cid tightened the siege, razing the city's suburbs. By April 1094 there were severe food shortages in the city, with reports of cannibalism. El Cid pressed ever closer, battering

with siege machines. In June, Valencia from the entire Moorish was forced to surrender and El Cid entered amidst a sea of death." the city. But his position was far from secure. An Almoravid army advanced to counterattack. In December 1094

El Cid ambushed and defeated this force at Cuerte, 7km (5 miles) outside Valencia. He held the city as an independent ruler until his death in 1099. It was recaptured by the Almoravids in 1102.

#### c.1040-1099 EL CID

In his early 20s Rodrigo Diaz de Vivar, nicknamed "El Cid" (from the Arabic, meaning "Lord"), served in the army of the future Sancho II of Castile. In 1081, however, he fell out with Alfonso VI of Castile and was exiled. He then served as a mercenary in eastern Spain, fighting for both Christians and Muslims - ironically, in view of his status as an icon of the Reconquista. Christian rule over Valencia did not long survive El Cid's death in 1099. In 1102 his widow, Ximena, who had held the city after he died, burnt it rather than let it fall intact to the Muslims.



#### SPANISH RECONQUISTA Siege of Saragossa



northeastern Spain

Winter 1118 FORCES Christians: unknown; Muslims: unknown CASUALTIES

Alfonso I, "the Battler" of Aragon, was determined to push the Muslim Almoravids out of Spain and welcomed French crusading knights

to help his cause. Alfonso's expedition to Saragossa in 1118 was proclaimed a crusade, and Gaston de Béarn, who had participated in the conquest of Ierusalem (see p80), joined his army. Gaston's experience of siege warfare in the Holy Land was vital, and he supervised the construction of siege towers and 20 catapults, which rained missiles on the city's defenders. After several months a Muslim relief force arrived, commanded by the Almoravid general Tamim. Alfonso routed him in a pitched battle on 8 December. Saragossa capitulated under pressure of the renewed siege and the Christian army occupied it on 19 December.

#### SPANISH RECONQUISTA

#### Siege of Lisbon

October 1147

Crusaders: 13,00 men,

FORCES



164 ships; Muslims: unknown Lisbon, Portugal CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

In western Iberia victory over the Almoravids at the battle of Ourique in 1139 allowed Afonso Henriques to become the first king of Portugal. In 1147 he persuaded a fleet of German, Flemish, and English crusaders on their way to the Holy Land to stop off and help him conquer the Muslim city of Lisbon. The crusaders landed outside the city on 28 June and, after a series of skirmishes, occupied the suburbs on 1 July. At first the siege went badly: five mangonels (catapults) used to batter the walls were destroyed and a siege tower got stuck in waterlogged ground. The Germans and Flemish dug mines under the city walls, opening a breach on 16 October, but the defenders repulsed an assault. On 19 October, however, the English completed a second siege tower. As the tower was rolled towards the walls, the Muslims agreed to surrender the city in return for an undertaking that it would not be sacked. When the crusaders entered Lisbon under truce on 24 October they nonetheless engaged in massacre and pillage.

#### SPANISH RECONQUISTA

#### Las Navas de Tolosa



FORCES Christians 60 000-80 000 Muslims: 100,000 CASUALTIES

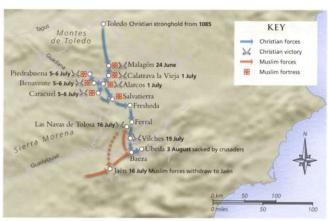
Sierra Morena Possibly 60,000 dead southern Snain

In the mid-12th century the Almohads, a Muslim revivalist movement, swept through Almoravid Morocco and Spain and then won a great victory over a Christian army at Alarcos in 1195. Alfonso VIII of Castile, faced with this Moorish offensive,

ALFONSO'S TRIUMPH Alfonso VIII's victory at Las Navas de Tolosa opened the way for the Christian reconquest of most of the Iberian peninsula by the mid-13th century.

persuaded Pope Innocent III to proclaim a crusade against them. On 20 June 1212 a large crusader force marched southward from Alfonso's capital, Toledo. including an Aragonese contingent led by Peter II and knights from Portugal and France. The Spanish military orders of Calatrava and Santiago and Spanish city militias provided vital





parts of the army. Alfonso's force was further reinforced by Sancho VII of Navarre. Caliph al-Nasir waited for the Christians on the high plain of Las Navas de Tolosa, believing they would have to force the well-defended Losa canyon. But a local shepherd guided Alfonso's army along a secret path that enabled it to surprise the Muslims on the plain. The lightly armoured Almohads hoped to weaken the heavier Christian cavalry and then to close in for the kill. At first al-Nasir's tactics succeeded. But when all seemed lost Alfonso ordered a charge of his cavalry reserve that broke the Almohad army, who were massacred as they fled. The Christian victory at Las Navas de Tolosa effectively destroyed Almohad power in Spain.

#### SPANISH RECONQUISTA

#### The Fall of Granada



Kingdom of Granada,

DATE February 1482-FORCES Spanish: 26,000 rising to 60,000; Granada Moors: 53,000 at start of siege

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

By the 15th century Granada was the last enclave of Muslim rule in Spain. In 1479 Isabella of Castile and Ferdinand of Aragon were established as joint rulers of Christian Spain. Determined to complete the Reconquista, in February 1482 an army commanded by Ferdinand invaded Granada, Most of his horsemen were caballeros a la jinete - light cavalry well suited to fighting in dry, arid conditions. The Spanish army possessed a contingent of Swiss pikemen and was well supplied

with gunpowder weapons. It had 91 artillery pieces in 1485, as well as a corps armed with primitive arquebuses. Ferdinand systematically conquered cities and fortresses around Granada. in an eight-year campaign that hardened his fighting men into an experienced and disciplined army. Infighting among the ruling Moorish dynasty of Granada, the Nasrids, prevented any concerted Muslim counterattack, Under siege from April 1491, the city of Granada submitted

on New Year's Day 1492. Ferdinand and Isabella entered the city the next day. The terms of surrender guaranteed the Moors the right to practise their religion, but this toleration did not last - in 1502 the Moors were forced to choose between baptism and exile.

#### ALHAMBRA

Granada's Alhambra was the last Moorish stronghold in Spain to fall to the Christians. Its splendours are a reminder of the Muslim achievement in the Iberian peninsula



THE 13TH-CENTURY CONQUESTS of the Mongols have never been surpassed. Under the leadership of Genghis Khan and his successors, the steppe horsemen struck east and west, conquering China and the Muslim states of central Asia, and penetrating deep into Europe and the Middle East. Although their attempts to extend Mongol rule into Japan and southeast Asia failed, they only once suffered a decisive defeat - at the hands of the Mameluke general Baibars at Ain Jalut, Palestine, in 1260.

# KHANATE OF THE campaigns of Genghis Khan 1206–1227 THE MONGOL EMPIRE empire of Genghis Khan 1227 The Mongols ruled an area stretching campaigns of Genghis Khan's successor

empires of Genghis Khan's successors

from modern-day Korea to the eastern

edge of Europe. By 1300 this empire

#### MODERN NOMADS

Like their Mongol ancestors, these Mongolians from Bogdo Suma, ride their small horses on the steppe.

#### MOUNTED WARRIORS

The Mongols - tribes from the grasslands north of the Gobi desert who united under Genghis Khan - followed the tradition of steppe warriors: swift-moving mounted archers who rained arrows on their enemies while keeping out of range of retaliation. They delighted in tricks familiar to the Huns almost a thousand years earlier, such as pretending to flee and then rounding on their pursuers. They also, however, had armoured lancers who engaged the enemy at close quarters to achieve a decisive victory. The Mongols' ability to fight over immense distances was due to the endurance of their small steppe horses, but also to their lack of a supply chain. Like most armies of their time, they brought a train of camp followers with them, but they lived by plunder and foraging. Their resilience and endurance were

matched by their indifference to the suffering of others. They were merciless towards those who defied them, massacring entire populations of cities without remorse.

#### REIGN OF TERROR

The Mongols cultivated a reputation for brutality Some towns that they destroyed, such as this one in Afghanistan's Bamian valley, were





#### TRIUMPH AND DIVISION

Genghis Khan began the Mongol conquests in 1211 with an invasion of northern China, an area with a long history of nomadic incursions. At first the Mongols failed to seize the region's walled cities, but soon Khan ("lord of the earth"), was the learned the arts of the siege with the help of Chinese engineers. son of a tribal chief in the north of Genghis then turned west, taking the great central Asian cities of Bokhara and Samarkand. The drive westwards continued under his son Ogetai, who subjugated Russia. By the time of Ogetai's death in to learn the art of survival. Rising 1243, Mongol armies had reached Poland, Hungary, and the eastern Mediterranean. By about 1250 Karakorum, the Mongol capital, was the diplomatic centre of the world, receiving ambassadors from the king united the warring tribes under his of France, the Byzantine emperor, and the princes of Russia. More triumphs followed. In 1258 Mongol forces captured and destroyed the Islamic capital Baghdad; two years later Genghis's grandson Kubla Khan embarked on the conquest of southern China. Kublai Khan's campaign introduced strong Chinese influences into the Mongol army Sea warfare and sieges replaced the warfare of the steppes, and Kublai founded a short-lived dynasty of Chinese emperors, the Yuan. In the west, Mongol khanates ruled as far as the Black Sea and the Persian Gulf, but succession disputes since the mid-1200s steadily undermined Mongol unity. By 1294, the year of Kublai's death, the great wave of Mongol conquests was already at an end.



#### CHIEF AMONG CHIEFS

Genghis presides over a kuriltai, a council of tribal leaders. A kuriltai after Genghis's son Ogetai's death - to which all leaders had to return to



**GENGHIS KHAN** 

Temujin, later known as Genghis

what is now Mongolia. When he

was 13 his father was murdered, and Temujin had little choice but

to power through a mix of

diplomacy and aggression, he

leadership, which a kuriltai (tribal

council) acknowledged in 1206.

His subsequent conquests appear

his mission to rule all peoples.

to have been driven by a belief in

This 14th-century image of Mongols at war accurately portrays their weaponry, but their small, sturdy horses were very different from these noble steeds



# CONQUESTS IN ASIA AND EUROPE

THE MONGOL ARMIES' SPEED OF MOVEMENT and outstanding skill in battle and siege allowed them to project their power west across most of Asia and central Europe. In 1241, after the battle of Leignitz and a subsequent rout of the Hungarians at the Sajo river, the Mongols were able to send scouting parties as far west as Vienna and the Alps. It was only the timely death of the great

khan Ogodei, requiring the Mongols to go home to debate the succession, that saved western Europe from invasion. The Islamic world had a similar escape in 1259. The Mongol Hulegu, who had destroyed Baghdad, conquered Syria and Palestine, and was poised to invade Egypt, withdrew following the khan Mongke's death and the ensuing conflict over his successor.

MONGOL CAMPAIGNS IN RUSSIA

#### Kalka river



FORCES

Mongols: 40,000; Russians and Cumans: 80.000 CASUALTIES

No reliable estimates

LOCATION the Black Sea

In 1222 Mongols crossed the Caucasus mountains into the territory of the Turkish Cuman peoples. An alliance of Russians and Cumans met the far smaller Mongol force at the Kalka river. The Mongols' peace envoys were murdered; in response the Mongols drove the Cumans from

the field and all but annihilated the Russians.

> KHAN'S COIN A coin issued by

#### MONGOL CAMPAIGNS IN RUSSIA Vladimir



East of

FORCES Mongols: 150,000 horsemen: Russians: CASHAITIES

No reliable estimates

In 1237 the Mongols launched an invasion of the Russian principalities. The nominal Mongol leader was Genghis Khan's grandson Batu, but effective control lay in the hands of Subotai, one of the generals at Kalka river. The Mongols attacked in midwinter, riding their horses across the many frozen rivers

#### COMMANDER BATU

Batu, commander-in-chief of the western Mongol empire, had the great khan overall responsibility for the Ogodei showing invasion of central Europe.

#### BURNING VLADIMIR

The Mongols' destruction of captured cities was a deliberate policy to spread terror and cow enemies into submission.

that might otherwise have impeded their progress. The Russians believed that if they staved within their walled cities they would be safe.

But fortifications were no deterrent to the Mongols. In early 1238 they sacked the cities of Ryazan, Moscow, and Vladimir, burning each one to the ground. In March, at the Sil river. the Mongols wiped out a Russian army led by Yuri II, the grand prince of Vladimir, before moving south into Ukraine





MONGOL CAMPAIGNS IN EUROPE

#### Leignitz



LOCATION Leignitz uthwest Poland) Mongols: 20,000;

9 April 1241

CASUALTIES Germans and Poles: 30,000

In 1241 Subotai led a Mongol invasion of central Europe. One branch of his army, commanded by Ogodei's grandson Kaidu, swept through oland. At Leignitz it encountered a orce of Germans, Poles, and Teutonic Knights. Aware of approaching European reinforcements, Kaidu gave battle at once. His archers unleashed a hail of arrows that put part the coalition army to flight, then Mongol lancers and the more heavily armoured Christian knights clashed. The Mongols gave way before the knights' charge, but swiftly turned to surround them. The Christians' losses, ncluding many nobles, were great.

#### GORY PRIZES

After the battle of Leignitz the Mongols collected ears from the fallen enemy as trophies, and mounted heads on lances.

MONGOL CAMPAIGNS IN PERSIA

#### Fall of Baghdad



CASUALTIES Baghdad, Persia (now central Irag)

In 1256 Hulegu, the Mongol khan of Persia and the brother of the great khan Mongke, set out to conquer the Muslim Abbasid caliphate in Baghdad.

10 February 1258

Mongols: 150,000

Baghdad's citizens:

FORCES

"The Mongol army swarmed in like ants and locusts from all directions, forming a circle around the ramparts of Baghdad and setting up a wall ... They prosecuted the battle in unison, set up catapults opposite the Ajami Tower, and breached it... Fierce battle was joined for six days and nights ..."

#### WITNESS TO WAR

## RASHID AD-DIN

The Persian politician and historian Rashid ad-Din (1247-1318) served under the Mongol ruler of Persia, Abagha, and was the author of the Jami' at-tawarikh ("Universal History").

Although real power in the Islamic world had long since shifted to Cairo and Damascus, al-Mustasim, the 37th caliph, remained a figure of major symbolic importance to Muslims He haughtily rejected Hulegu's demands to acknowledge Mongol suzerainty. Hulegu responded by destroying the fortress of Islamic warrior sect the Assassins at Alamut, Then, in late 1257, he marched on Baghdad from the east, while another force, led by the Mongol general Baichu, advanced south from Anatolia. On 11 January 1258 the Abbasid army confronted Baichu about 50km (30 miles) outside Baghdad. Baichu apparently lured the enemy on to marshy ground, then sent his engineers to breach the dykes of the Euphrates river behind them. Trapped between the Mongols and flooded ground, the bulk of the Arab army was destroyed in the subsequent battle. Hulegu reached Baghdad and directed his soldiers to build bridges of boats across the Tigris river up and down stream of the city. Within four days the Mongols had encircled Baghdad by land and blocked any possible escape by water. Hulegu had brought with him

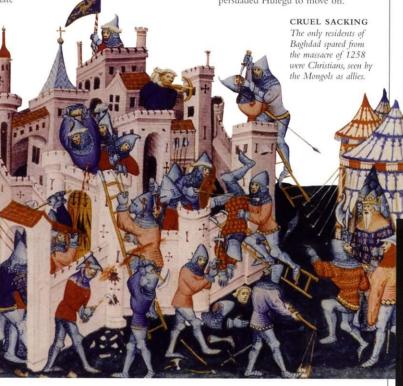
a formidable siege train,

with large catapults that

set to battering the city's eastern walls. By the end of the first week of February the walls had begun to collapse. The Mongols were already in the suburbs when al-Mustasim surrendered on 10 February, emerging from the city with all his chief officials and military commanders. Hulegu

had them massacred with the exception of the caliph himself. who was kept alive for five more days, until he revealed the location of his hidden treasure. The massacre of the city's population continued for over a month, until the stink of decaying corpses in the streets persuaded Hulegu to move on.

ordered them to disarm and then



#### MONGOL CAMPAIGNS IN PALESTINE Ain Ialut



Palestine

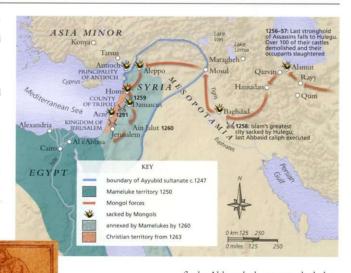
23 September 1260 FORCES Mongols: 20,000; Egyptians: possibly

Eastern Galilee. No reliable estimates

After the destruction of Baghdad, Hulegu captured the Syrian cities of Aleppo and Damascus, leaving Egypt as the sole unsubdued Muslim state in the region. Hulegu sent envoys to Cairo, calling on the Egyptian sultan Saif ad-Din Qutuz to accept Mongol

At this crucial moment, however, Hulegu was forced to return eastward to discuss the succession after the death of Mongke, the great khan. He left behind only a small part of his forces under his general Kitbuqa. Qutuz seized the opportunity and led an Egyptian army into Palestine with his Mameluke (slave soldier) general Baibars in the van. They found the Mongol forces at Ain Jalut in eastern Galilee. The numerically superior Egyptians hid part of their cavalry behind hills while Baibars led the rest out to confront the Mongols. When the Mongols charged, Baibars retreated into the hills, behind which the rest of the Egyptian cavalry emerged to hit the enemy from the

suzerainty. Qutuz had them executed.



#### MONGOL CAVALRY

This 13th-century Persian illustration from Rashid ad-Din's Universal History accurately depicts Mongol armoured cavalry in action, bearing lances and round shields.

flanks. Although the trap worked, the battle was still close fought - Kitbuga's men were superb fighters. In the end a few Mongol horsemen cut a way through to escape, while Kitbuga was beheaded. The Egyptians went on to retake Damascus and Aleppo, although Qutuz did not benefit from his victory - Baibars assassinated him and took control of Egypt.

# CONQUESTS OF TIMUR

THE GREAT WARRIOR TIMUR'S career of conquest, which terrorized cities from Delhi to Damascus, was an unexpected late reprise of the era of Mongol triumph. Although himself more Turk than Mongol, Timur took the Mongol conquerors as his model, leading armies of equal fighting skill and exceeding his mentors in ferocity. His capital, Samarkand, became a place

of beauty and learning, but the effect he had on most of the lands he occupied was purely destructive - the most striking feature of his campaigns was his use of terror. Timur's last expedition to the West took him as far as the Aegean at Izmir, and he died while attempting to conquer China. The vast Timurid empire he left behind swiftly crumbled after his death.

CONQUEST OF PERSIA

## Sack of Isfahan



FORCES Timur: 70.000: Persians unknown CASHALTIES

70,000 civilians killed

Southern Persia

In 1387 the Shah Hodshah, who ruled southern Persia from Isfahan, died. Timur advanced on the city to make his successor pay homage. The new ruler promptly fled, leaving Isfahan to the mercies of the Timurid army.

The city opened its gates and its leaders agreed to pay tribute. Timur then departed with his

#### PRIZED QUIVER

Timur's lieutenants may have carried richly decorated auivers like this one.

#### REIGN OF TERROR

Timur's troops are shown here terrorizing Isfahan. One man is being killed by having molten metal poured down his throat.

army, leaving an occupation force to collect the agreed payment. When they were asked to hand over their valuables, however, the citizens revolted, killing several thousand of Timur's occupation force. Timur turned back with his army and stormed the city. He then ordered his 70,000 soldiers each to bring him the severed head of one of

the citizens. This order was duly fulfilled, some men who balked at killing in cold blood buying a head off a less scrupulous colleague to meet their quota. The heads were then

piled in a pyramid on

the walls of Isfahan.



TIMUR VERSUS GOLDEN HORDE

#### Гerek



Timur: 100.000: Golden Horde: unknown CASUALTIES

Central Asia

Possibly 100,000 dead

Timur's hardest-fought campaigns were against Tokhtamysh, leader of the Mongol Golden Horde that dominated much of western Asia. In 1391, at Kandurcha, they fought a three-day battle that may have left 100,000 dead. Although Timur held the field, he did not have the strength to pursue his enemy. In 1395, the two armies met again, this time by the Terek river. As hand-to-hand fighting raged, Tokhtamysh urged his men to seek out and kill Timur himself. They very nearly succeeded. Timur had his sword broken while resisting his attackers and was only saved by his bodyguards forming a living wall around him. But it was Tokhtamysh who finally fled the field, and this ime Timur's pursuit was merciless.

INVASION OF INDIA

#### Panipat



DATE 16 December 1399 FORCES

Sultan of Delhi: 10.000 cavalry, 40,000 infantry: Timur:

North of Delhi, India CASUALTIES Possibly 100,000 dead

As an intolerant follower of Islam, Timur was scandalized by the Muslim sultan of Delhi's failure to keep his Hindu subjects in proper submission. He decided to invade northern India, although his generals emphasized the hazards of India's mountains and rivers. The advance into India partly confirmed these fears. The section of the army led by Timur crossed the Hindu Kush, experiencing hardship the ageing leader was pulled down icy slopes on a sledge. But they reached

#### FIRE WEAPON

Mounted on a war elephant, a soldier hurls an incendiary device filled with flammable liquid at Timur's horsemen. The depiction of the cavalry's armour and lances is authentic

the Indus and descended towards Delhi in an avalanche of destruction. By the time they approached the sultan's city, Timur's army was so cluttered with plunder and slaves that he ordered all Hindu captives killed, so that his men could concentrate on the battle ahead. Those murdered may

have numbered 100,000. Timur met the sultan's army at Panipat, on a plain between the Himalavan foothills and the desert of Rajasthan. The Indian army lined up behind its war elephants, from which soldiers hurled incendiary devices down onto the enemy. The sultan's soldiers also fired

rockets - metal fireworks - at Timur's men, but nothing disconcerted the battle-hardened invaders. Timur said contemptuously that the elephants were "driven off like cows". The sultan's defeated army fled and the gates of Delhi were opened to the conquerors, who sacked the city.



CONQUEST OF SYRIA

#### Aleppo



30 October 1399 FORCES Timur: unknown; Mamelukes: unknown CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

Aleppo, Syria In the 13th century the Mameluke rulers of Egypt had defeated the Mongols at Ain Jalut (see p93), taken control of Syria, and driven the

#### ALEPPO CITADEL

The 10th-century citadel of Aleppo was the centre of military power in the region. It was razed by Timur's forces but restored to its old glory by the Mamelukes in 1415.

Christians out of Palestine. But by the end of the 14th century they were by no means powerful enough to stand up to the army of Timur, who was drawn to western Asia by revolts against the corrupt and brutal rule of nis son Miran Shah in Persia, Having implacably punished those responsible, Timur advanced on Syria. In front of Aleppo the Mameluke army attempted to make a stand, but was annihilated by Timur's forces with contemptuous ease. Aleppo was taken and sacked, leaving the great city of Damascus open to the conqueror. Timur was surprisingly lenient with the Damascenes, perhaps because they did not oppose the entry of his army. But, in the absence of systematic mass executions, his soldiers still pillaged and burned much of the city.

#### 1336-1405

#### TIMUR

Timur was born into a Turkic tribe in Uzbekistan, although he claimed distant descent from Genghis Khan, whom he sought to emulate. Through fighting and intrigue he made himself emir of Samarkand and leader of the Chagatai Mongols by 1370. Unlike Genghis, he always commanded his armies in person, taking an interest in every detail of logistics and equipment. His ambition was

insatiable. He was in his 60s when he undertook his invasions of India and Anatolia, and he had embarked on the conquest of China when he died, apparently of drinking too much iced



#### INVASION OF ANATOLIA

#### Ankara

central Turkey



20 July 1402 FORCES Timur: unknown Ottomans: unknown CASUALTIES Ottomans: at least 15.000 killed

Timur's conquest of Syria brought him to the borders of Ottoman-ruled Anatolia. Rivalry between these two ethnically related powers turned to open war after Timur seized the Ottoman city of Sivas in 1400. Ottoman ruler Bayezid I, victor in the crushing defeat of the Christians at Nicopolis in 1396 (see p122), was engaged in a siege of Constantinople, but he pulled his army away to face

the threat from Timur. In summer 1402 Bayezid advanced east towards Sivas while Timur headed west towards the Ottoman city of Ankara. The two armies missed one another. Timur laid siege to Ankara while the Ottomans had to turn around and come back to find him. It was a weary and thirsty Ottoman army that eventually confronted Timur's battle line, which had Indian war elephants arrayed at its centre. Accounts of the battle are confused, but Timur's forces seem to have been placed between the Ottomans and the only available water supply. Bayezid, forced to take

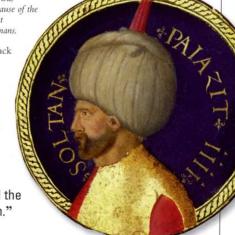
#### THUNDERBOLT SULTAN Sultan Bayezid I (1360-1403) was known as "The Thunderbolt" because of the

speed of his victories. His defeat at Ankara was a shock to the Ottoman the offensive, came under attack

from the rear. Some of the Ottoman troops, ethnically related to Timur's men, deserted. At the end of the day Bayezid fled with a few hundred warriors, but was pursued and caught. He died the following year without having regained his liberty.

"Bayezid took to flight and went with at least a thousand horsemen to a mountain. Timur surrounded the mountain so that he could not move and took him."

Johann Schiltberger, eyewitness of Bayezid's capture, 1402



# EAST ASIAN WARFARE

FOR MUCH OF THE MEDIEVAL PERIOD, China was the world's richest and most powerful empire, enjoying a significant lead in technological progress and large-scale organization. At times it extended its rule deep into central Asia, Korea, and southeast Asia, as well as exerting a dominant influence over the early development of Japan. But with its long land border, China was always exposed to invasion and its sheer size made it liable to division and civil war.

#### CHINA UNDER THE SUNG

In the 7th century the Tang dynasty united China, ending 400 years of chaotic civil conflict. Under Emperor Taizong (626-649), punitive expeditions defeated Tibetans and central Asian Turks, carrying warfare far beyond China's traditional frontiers. These successes were partially reversed in the 8th century by Muslim armies in the west. The Tang depended heavily on non-Chinese troops, such as Turkish cavalry, and it was a revolt by Turkish soldiers in 755 that undermined the Tang empire. Two centuries of insecurity followed until, in 960, the Sung dynasty replaced the Tang. The Sung concentrated on resisting seminomadic horsemen to the north and west, building up a vast standing army of Chinese peasant infantry equipped with crossbows and halberds.

#### PRECIOUS HORSES

The Chinese mounted frequent expeditions to central Asia in their search for thoroughbred horses to equip their cavalry.

#### **GUNPOWDER** WEAPONRY

Gunpowder was invented in China in the 9th century. Under the Sung, its incendiary and explosive properties were developed to create burning arrows, firecrackers, grenades, and flamethrowers. During the 13th century, the flamethrowers - tubes packed with gunpowder - were used to fire projectiles. These proto-guns could be used to fire lead shot or bundles of arrows, as in the device shown below.



#### NOMADIC INVASIONS

All the efforts of Sung emperors could not prevent the north of China being overrun. For a time the Chinese played off two tribal federations, the Khitan and the Jurchen, against one another, but in the early 12th century the Jurchen defeated first the Khitan and then the Sung. The Jurchen founded their own Jin dynasty in northern China, which was in turn was overthrown by the Mongols a century later. Meanwhile, the Sung withdrew to the southern capital of Hangzhou, depending largely on naval control of the Yangtze river for defence. Their navy numbered hundreds of ships, including armoured vessels with paddle wheels driven by treadmills. Siege catapults were mounted on the ships as artillery. The Mongol leader Kublai Khan was forced to employ naval power and use Muslim-developed

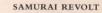
siege machinery to conquer the Sung.

MONGOL

Waves of invading horsemen

By 1279 he ruled over all China.





This painting depicts a scene from The Tale of Heiji, which tells the story of the failed seizure of power by the Minamoto clan of samurai in 1160.

#### MONGOL DOMINANCE

Kublai Khan absorbed and developed Chinese ways of making war. He turned the Sung river fleet into an oceanic force for overseas campaigns against Japan and Java and carried out land invasions of southeast Asia. He had limited success against areas with established military traditions, such as southeast Asia. Mongol rule swiftly declined and in the 14th century native control was restored to China under the Ming dynasty. Korea's history mirrors that of China, as it repeatedly fought Khitan incursions, ambushing and decimating a Khitan army in 1018. Resistance to Mongol invasion in 1238 stimulated a sense of national consciousness. In the 14th century General Yi Song-gve rose to power after distinguishing himself against Japanese raiders, establishing the Choson dynasty which ruled Korea for 500 years



VERSION A 15th-century European artist with no knowledge of the distinctive ships, clothes, or weaponry of the conducting a siege

EUROPEAN



system of military rule under puppet emperors. The rule of the shoguns

allowed spells of internal peace and of organized resistance to Mongol invasions in 1274 and 1281, but in the 14th century civil strife

returned. It was another 300 years before Japan was effectively pacified.

## KUBLAI AND THE MING

THE SLOW-MOTION FALL of China's Sung empire took a century and a half to complete, from the loss of northern China to Jurchen steppe horsemen in the early 12th century to the final triumph of Kublai Khan's Mongol armies in the 1270s. In order to accomplish these

military triumphs, however, the invaders from the steppe were forced to adopt Chinese military techniques, including the use of siege engines and gunpowder weapons, and fighting in largescale naval warfare. Eventually, however, the

Mongols lost control of China to the Ming.

#### JURCHEN-SUNG WAR

#### Kaifeng



Northern China

Jurchen: unknown; Chinese: over 500,000

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

September 1126-

January 1127

FORCES

In 1122 the Jurchen, tribal horsemen from beyond the Great Wall, invaded the Chinese Sung empire. Despite the vast size of the Chinese forces - a standing army of around 500,000 plus huge peasant militias the Jurchen swept through northern China and eventually laid siege to the Sung capital, Kaifeng. Although the Sung used their latest weapons explosives and gunpowder-tipped arrows - the city fell after a siege of four months. Emperor Hui Zong was captured, but his Sung successors continued to rule over southern China, while the Jurchen established the Jin dynasty in the north.

MONGOL CONQUEST OF CHINA

1268-73

FORCES

Mongols: unknown:

Chinese: unknown

Xiangyang

## MONGOL CONQUEST OF CHINA

#### Fall of Zhongdu



DATE February 1214-Mongols: unknown; Chinese: unknown

Modern Beijing

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

In 1211 Mongol leader Genghis Khan (see p93) turned his attention to the conquest of the lin empire. At first his campaign was frustrated by the Mongols' ignorance of siegecraft and inability to capture fortified Chinese cities. But, with typical resourcefulness, the Mongols developed a siege train, probably employing Chinese experts to provide the necessary skills. In February 1214, equipped with mangonels and rams, they besieged the city of Zhongdu (Beijing). After

the Mongols defeated a Jin relief

Xiangyang. Kublai's troops were

manded by his brilliant general

Bayan, grandson of the famed Subotai.

by Lu Wenhuan. A hard-fought series

The Sung armies were commanded

army in March, there was little hope for the city's defenders, yet they held out for over a year. Food shortages had reportedly reduced both besiegers and besieged to

cannibalism by



WARRIOR

Most Mongol horsemen fought as mounted archers, using hit-and-run skirmishing tactics, although there were also heavier Mongol cavalry with lances and swords.

around the two cities, including river

engagements in which the Mongols

warfare, fielding a fleet equipped with

hipborne catapults.

the first ever use of

Hand-held weapons firing

projectiles were probably

employed by both sides -

proved they had adapted to naval

#### Siege of Kaifeng



FORCES

LOCATION

enemies of the Jin. In 1232 the engines and dug sapping trenches towards the walls. The Jin,

Chinese gunpowder

technology. Their most powerful Crash Bomb", created an explosion that could be heard 50km (31 miles) away and scorched an area 100m (300ft) square. The device had a devastating effect: "The attacking

#### of battles and skirmishes took place

## KUBLAI KHAN

The grandson of Genghis Khan, Kublai was a Mongol great khan who came fully under the spell of Chinese civilization. Well before becoming the first emperor of the Chinese Yuan dynasty in 1271, he had established Beijing as his the Mongol steppe. His ambition him to campaign as far afield as Japan in the north and Vietnam, Burma, and Java in the south.





#### MONGOL CONQUEST OF CHINA

Mongols: unknown

CASUALTIES

In 1231 the Mongols undertook the final destruction of the Jin empire, supported by the Sung, long-standing Mongols, led by Subotai, laid siege to the Jin capital, Kaifeng. It was an extraordinary confrontation: both the Mongols and the Jurchen Jin were steppe horsemen, yet fought a classic siege in the style developed by settled civilizations. The Mongols used siege

meanwhile, employed the latest

device, a "Heaven- Shaking Thunder-

soldiers were all blown to bits, not even a trace being left behind." The Jin also had proto-flamethrowers: bamboo tubes full of gunpowder mounted on a lance, which sent out a 2m- (6ft- ) long jet of sparks and fire. This was all to no avail. Kaifeng was taken by assault after a year-long siege.

### 1214-1294

capital, rather than fixing himself in for conquest was insatiable, leading



#### RISE OF THE MING Red Turban Revolt LOCATION **Fastern China** The Yuan dynasty that Kublai Khan founded never won general acceptance in China, the Mongols being seen as an alien rulers. The Yuan, moreover, failed to maintain efficient government and an effective military system. In the mid-14th century, banditry and revolt spread through large areas of China, and in 1351 a group known as the Red Turbans became the focus for a widespread anti-Mongol uprising. Their leader, Zhu Yuanzhang, came from humble peasant origins and was living in a Buddhist monastery in south China when he was recruited into a local Red Turban band in 1352. Within four years he rose to command his own section of the Red Turbans, led them in the seizure of the city of Nanjing, and established an oasis of orderly government there. In series of campaigns against rival rebel or bandit leaders. Zhu seized most of southern China, before taking on the Yuan emperor Ch'en-liang, still ruling from Beijing, in a struggle focused on control of the Yangtze river. In 1363 a najor naval battle was fought at Lake Po-yang, on the middle Yangtze. The Yuan fleet included three-decked CHINESE FIRELANCE Early Chinese gunpowder weapons like this one worked by stuffing projectiles such as darts into a bamboo tube or lance: the exploding gunpowder would hurl these with lethal force.

#### 1371-1435

FORCES

CASHAITIES

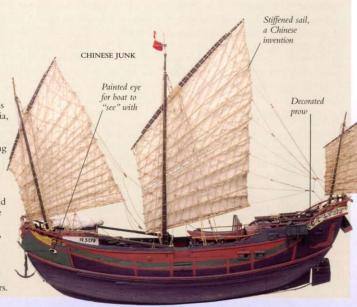
Mongols: unknown;

Chinese: unknown

#### ZHENG HE

Under the expansionist Ming Yongle emperor, Muslim eunuch Zheng He projected Chinese power around the coasts of southeast Asia and the Indian Ocean. He built a fleet of huge nine-masted junks which, with numerous smaller vessels. embarked on seven vovages between 1405 and 1433, sailing as far as Sumatra, India, Persia, Arabia, and the east coast of Africa. The last of his voyages involved 63 ships and over 30,000 men. Zheng brought back curios such as a giraffe for the emperor's zoo, but the serious purpose of his enterprise was to make rulers in these distant lands - already linked to China by trade - acknowledge the Chinese emperor as their suzerain and pay tribute. In 1436, however, the Hongxi emperor banned all further ocean voyages as the Ming dynasty turned from power projection to a defensive concentration on its internal affairs.

warships that were larger than any vessels Zhu could muster, but Zhu's smaller ships were more manoeuvrable Both sides had cannon mounted on board - the Chinese had discovered how to fire projectiles from gunpowder weapons. Zhu was victorious, incorporating many of the captured Yuan ships into his own fleet, which went on to take the coastal cities along the South China Sea. In 1368 the last Yuan emperor fled as Zhu's army advanced on Beijing. Zhu founded the Ming dynasty as Emperor Hung Wu. Ming armies fought the Mongols for the next 20 years until their final victory in 1388.



"But when the nation began to rouse itself,











northern China. Overcoming the the southern empire were vast. The terrain of the Sung lands was totally unsuited to the fast-moving mounted warfare of the steppe tradition, being a mix of agricultural land and forest, traversed by large rivers and canals hot and short on fodder for horses. But Genghis Khan's grandson Kublai campaign as lieutenant to Great Khan Möngke; after Möngke's death in 1259 he continued the conquest as great khan himself. The pivotal struggle of the war took place from 1268 around

the fortified cities of Fancheng and

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates Hebei, southern China Once in control of the Jin empire, the Mongols turned south to attack the Sung, who had been foolish enough to help them achieve dominance over Sung was, however, no mean task. The economic and manpower resources of had the relentless will to complete the final conquest of China. He began the

## SOUTHEAST ASIA

MEDIEVAL WARFARE IN SOUTHEAST ASIA was heavily influenced by Indian models. War elephants were widely used, in part because horses were largely unsuited to the area's climate and vegetation. Armies were more Chinese-influenced in the northern portion of what is now Vietnam. Although most wars were between states within the region, incursions from the north by Chinese forces were also frequent.

#### CHINESE-ANNAMESE WAR

#### Bach Dang



FORCES Chinese: unknown

Annamese: unknown

LOCATION Near Hainhonn northern Vietnam

Annam (present-day northern Vietnam), which had been under Chinese rule from the 2nd century BCE, seized the opportunity presented by the decline of the Tang dynasty in the 10th century CE to assert its independence. A force under Liu Hung-tsao sailed south to uphold Chinese authority. The Vietnamese general Ngo Ouven, anticipating that this fleet would sail up the tidal Bach Dang river, had a line of iron-tipped stakes driven into the riverbed so that they were just submerged at high tide, then sent shallow-draft boats out at high tide to provoke a fight and retreated, drawing the Chinese ships into a pursuit. As the tide went out, the Chinese fleet was impaled on the spikes. Ngo Quyen then attacked to complete the rout, in which Hungtsao was killed. The area became independent as Dai Co Viet in 946.

#### CAMPAIGNS OF KUBLAI KHAN



Burmese: 60,000 infantry and cavalry 2 000 elephants; Mongols: 12.000

CASUALTIES

Myanmar

This battle, between Kublai Khan, the Mongol ruler of China, and the Burmese king Narathihapate is chiefly known from the account of the Venetian traveller Marco Polo. Although his version is at variance with Burmese chronicles, it is probably substantially correct. In 273, Kublai sent envoys to Pagan, the Burmese capital, demanding tribute. Narathihapate had the envoys killed, apparently because they showed disrespect by failing to take off their shoes. A force, probably consisting mostly of Turkish cavalry, was sent from the southern Chinese province of Yunnan to punish the Burmese. The two armies met on a plain. The Burmese advanced with their war

elephants in the van, causing the enemy's horses to shy away. The Mongol commander ordered his men to dismount and fire their bows on foot. The rain of arrows panicked the elephants, which turned and charged back into the Burmese ranks. Kublai's cavalry then remounted and charged the Burmese, striking out with sword and mace. After a fierce fight. Narathihapate's army was put to flight. The city of Pagan was eventually captured by the Mongols and the kingdom destroyed.

#### PAGAN TEMPLE

Pagan became a Mongol provincial capital in 1287 and was razed to the ground by the emergent Shans in 1299.

#### KHMER-CHAM WARS

#### Sack of Angkor



FORCES Cham: unknown Khmers: unknown CASUALTIES

LOCATION North of Tonle Sap lake, north-

The 12th century brought prolonged warfare between the kingdoms of the Cham, in what is now southern Vietnam, and their neighbours, the Khmers, in what is now Cambodia. The Cham, a people of Indonesian origin, had established the powerful Champa state and repeatedly waged war against Annam (northern Vietnam) as well as Angkor. The Khmer kingdom of Angkor is now known chiefly for its remarkable Hindu temples, but it too was a state whose rulers were expected to be warriors, and Angkorian armies fought not only Champa and Annam but also against the Thais to the west. Most of the details of this warfare can be derived only from temple inscriptions and reliefs. It appears, however, that in the 1170s Champa gained the upper hand over Angkor. The two countries' armies were similar, consisting of war elephants carrying a

with spear or bow, a few cavalry, and a mass of infantry levies, who may have fought in nothing but loincloths. The Chams also possessed crossbows, possibly due to their contact with China. These weapons were used by their horsemen and may have given them the edge over Angkor. In 1177 Cham invaders sacked Angkor's cities and subjugated the country. With Angkor's king, the usurper Tribhuvanadityavarman, dead, Jayavarman assumed leadership of the Khmer resistance. In 1178 it seems that a naval battle was fought. either on the Mekong river or on Tonle Sap lake, in which the Cham were decisively defeated. By 1181 Jayavarman had restored Angkor's independence and over the next two decades he completely turned the tables on the Cham. By 1203 Javavarman had defeated and occupied

Champa, but the cycle of warfare

continued - neither of the antagonists

## c.1125-1219

#### **IAYAVARMAN VII**

One of the greatest Khmer rulers, Javavarman was seemingly reluctant to assume power. He did not assert his right to the throne after the death of Dharanindravarman, his father, in 1160, and it was only after Angkor's humiliation by the Cham

in 1177 that he emerged as a Khmer leader. King from 1181, he not only restored Khmer power through his military activities but also constructed some of Angkor's most

had the resources to make a victory permanent. Indeed, the 13th century turned out to be a period when Champa's star was once more in the ascendant, while Angkor struggled against rising pressure from the Thais.

#### KHMER WARRIORS

Reliefs such as this one at Bayon, Cambodia, of a war elephant and footsoldiers provide much nation about Khmer warfare. MAI VIET INDEPENDENCE WAR

#### Lam Son Uprising (Tot Dong)



FORCES China: unknown Vietnamese: unknown CASHAITIES

No reliable estimates

West of Hanoi. northern Vietnam

In 1405 the Chinese Ming dynasty invaded Dai Viet (northern Vietnam) on the pretext of settling a succession dispute. Within a year the previously independent kingdom had been reduced to a province of China. Ming rule was harsh and provoked a resistance movement led by Le Loi, a Vietnamese landowner, who in 1416 established himself with a few followers in a mountainous region, from where he gradually built up an army of several thousand soldiers. From 1424 he began a guerrilla campaign, attacking isolated garrisons. Some 100,000 more troops were sent from China, but Le Loi's forces also grew as Vietnamese flocked to his banner. By 1426 the rebels were strong enough to take on the Chinese commanded by the experienced general Wang Tong - in open battle. Using elephants to unnerve Wang Tong's cavalry, Le Loi routed the enemy at Tot Dong, Restricted to a few strongpoints, the Chinese forces were in a precarious situation. Le Loi offered to help Wang Tong evacuate his troops in return for a guarantee of etnamese independence. In 1427 he Chinese accordingly left and Le

oi became ruler of Dai Viet.

## SAMUR AI WAR FAR E

IN THE MEDIEVAL PERIOD JAPANESE warfare was highly stylized. Battles were preceded by an exchange of oratory as samurai picked out individuals to fight in single combat, while fighting often began with a series of archery duels. Strict rules of honourable conduct

applied - for example, the severed heads of samurai killed in battle were supposed to be mounted on spiked boards and returned to their own side. Yet there was no doubt of the samurai's fighting prowess, as shown when the Mongols tried and failed to invade Japan in 1281.



#### EARLY NINE YEARS' WAR

#### Kawasaki



FORCES Abe Sadato: 4.000: Minamoto: unknown CASUALTIES

Northern

Minamoto Yoshiie (1041-1108) came to be seen as embodying the pure spirit of the samurai. At the time of the Early Nine Years War (1051-63), he was a young man fighting alongside his father, Minamoto

Yoriyoshi. The Minamoto clan had been entrusted with defeating a rebellion by the Abe clan in Dewa Province, northern Japan. The first major battle of the war took place at Kawasaki. Abe Sadato had established his forces in a strong defensive position. The Minamoto attacked during a snowstorm, but were driven off and pursued. In the hard-fought retreat, Yoshiie showed his outstanding qualities as a samurai, earning the name Hachimantaro - son of the war

god Hachiman. He played a major role in the eventual defeat of the Abe, capturing several forts, and successfully besieging their stockade at Kuriyagawa. Victorious, he carried Sadato's severed head back to the Japanese capital, Kyoto, to prove that the job was done.

#### SAMURAI SWORD

This 17th-century short sword is the kind that samurai would use when committing ritual suicide, or seppuku, for which they became famed.

MOUNTED BOWMEN

This scene of early samurai warfare

more highly than swordsmanship,

highlights the importance of the bow as a

weapon. Prowess as an archer was valued

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates Kyoto, Japan

GEMPEI WARS

First Battle of Uii

FORCES

Taira: unknown:

Minamoto: unknown

In 1160 the Taira clan took power in Japan, executing many of their Minamoto rivals. Twenty years later the Minamoto fought back against the rule of Taira Kivomori, setting off a series of conflicts known as the Gempei Wars. The Minamoto were allied to Buddhist warrior-monks. rough fighters who upheld the interests of their temples in the chaotic conditions of the time. The monks' chief weapon was the naginata, a long-handled sword-like implement. The first battle of the Gempei Wars occurred when a force including Minamoto Yorimasa was pursued by the Taira to the south bank of the Uji river. They set out to prevent the Taira crossing, while waiting for reinforcements. Warrior-monks fought in single combat on the broken bridge over the river to hold the Taira back. The Minamoto were finally driven back to the Byodo-In temple, where, as his sons held the enemy at bay, Yorimasa dashed off a poem before committing ritual suicide.

> "Like a fossil tree From which we gather no flower Sad has been my life Fated no fruit to produce."

Minamoto Yorimasa. poem written before his seppuku, 1180



#### HONOURABLE SUICIDE

Minamoto Yorimasa, shown here in a 19thcentury Japanese representation, became revered more for the manner of his death than for any feat on the battlefield





DATE June 1183 FORCES Taira: 100,000: Minamoto: 50 000 CASUALTIES

No reliable estimates

LOCATION Central Japan north of Kyoto

Kurikara is the battle that marked the point the Gempei Wars turned in favour of the Minamoto. Led by Taira Koremori, son of the clan leader Taira Munemori, the Taira army advanced north to meet the forces of Minamoto Yoshinaka. The Taira forces, although numerous, consisted mostly of poorly trained levies. They passed through the countryside like a plague of locusts, consuming the meagre rice stocks of a desperate peasantry. After capturing the Minamoto fortress of Hiuche, the Taira made the mistake of dividing their forces. While Taira Koremori led the larger part into the mountain pass of Kurikara, a smaller contingent split off to march further north into Noto province - where

a detachment sweeping around to he enemy's rear. To distract the horns of a herd of oxen, which

Samurai wore masks such as this both for protection and to make themselves look fierce. This type of half-mask with nosepiece was called a mempo.

they achieved a small and strategically worthless victory. The main Taira army reached the top of the pass, from where they saw Yoshinaka's army in the valley below. Yoshinaka had erected a crowd of banners in a prominent spot to give the impression that his forces

GEMPEI WARS

#### Awazu

vere more numerous than they

rested and watered their horses in

the mountain pass, Yoshinaka sent

Taira's attention from this move,

ne initiated a prolonged archery

duel that kept them occupied

until near sunset. As the light

failed, the Minamoto mobile

the Taira from the rear. To

increase the panic, Yoshinaka

had burning torches tied to the

The Taira forces fled in disorder, many

resounding victory, Yoshinaka pursued

the remnants of the Taira army towards

the capital, Kvoto, Taira Munemori

imperial family with him. Yoshinaka

entered in triumph and installed the

throne, Go-Shirakawa, as emperor.

Minamoto candidate for the imperial

fled the city, taking most of the

falling to their deaths from the edges

were driven into the narrow pass.

of mountain paths. Of those who

were slaughtered. After this

made it down into the valley, many

contingent suddenly attacked

actually were. In this way he

eterred the Taira from an

immediate attack. While they



LOCATION No reliable estimates

Awazu, Tokushima Prefecture Janan

FORCES Yoshinaka: unknown Norivori and Yoshitsune: unknown CASUALTIES

Minamoto Yoshinaka's rule, after his Japan victory at Kurikara, was so vicious that his own clan took up arms against him. He was driven out by his cousins Minamoto Yoshitsune and Minamoto Norivori. After an initial defeat at the

second battle of Uji, Yoshinaka faced his foes at Awazu. Fighting alongside him were his trusted companion Imai Kanehira and his wife, Tomoe Gozen. Yoshitsune and Norivori won after a hard fight. Yoshinaka was killed by an arrow after his horse was immobilized. Tomoe Gozen also died, though only after claiming the head of a samurai opponent. Facing defeat, Imai Kanehira committed seppuku in original fashion by plunging headfirst off his horse

GEMPEI WARS

#### Ichinotani



FORCES Minamoto: 10 000 Taira: unknown CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

West of Kobe, western Honshu

Minamoto Yoshinaka's death left his clan free to concentrate on their struggle with the Taira, whose leaders had retreated to the fortress of Ichinotani. Led by Minamoto Yoshitsune, an army advanced down

positioned his main army facing the Taira defensive line. The battle opened in traditionally ritualistic fashion: Minamoto samurai approached the Taira line, shouting out their lineage and military record, waiting for a Taira warrior to propose single combat. As this prelude to full battle was played out, Yoshitsune led a mounted detachment to the rear of the fortress, where it backed on to a steep cliff. The Taira had neglected their defences on this side. But Yoshitsune's forces rode down the cliff and stormed into the rear of the Taira position. The Taira staged a fighting retreat to their boats on the beach. One account of the

battle tells how the Minamoto samurai

the coast towards the fort. Yoshitsune

#### HEAD SEVERING

After a hattle it was a samurai convention to cut off the heads of enemy dead with a dagger. Some of these men carry naginata blades, along with bows and swords.

Kumagai Naozane, grieving for his 16year-old son killed earlier in the battle, found himself in a position to kill the 16-year-old Taira Atsumori - which he did, after much soul-searching. Most of the Taira escaped by sea, but the Minamoto pursued them along the coast. Yoshitsune drove the Taira out of their last stronghold at Yashima Dispirited, the Taira fell back to the shore of the Shimonoseki Strait. There Yoshitsune found them in April 1185 for the decisive battle of Dan no Ura.

# GEMPEI WARS

#### Dan no Ura

with a sword in his mouth.



DATE 25 April 1185 FORCES Minamoto: 850 ships: Taira: 500 ships

OCATION Retween Honshi and Kyushu, Japan

The sea battle at Dan no Ura sealed the Minamoto victory in the Gempei Wars. The two fleets each carried a number of samurai. The battle began with an exchange of long-range arrowfire, followed by hand-to-hand fights with sword and dagger. Helped by the treachery of a Taira general and an opportune turn of the tide, the Minamoto triumphed. Most of the Taira committed suicide, leaping into he ocean to drown. Taira Munemori was fished out of the sea, to be taken

back to Kyoto for execution.



#### SAMURAL AT SEA

This scroll depicting the battle of Dan no Ura shows long-oared ships closing with grappling hooks ready to enable the samurai warriors to engage in close-quarter combat.

MONGOL INVASIONS OF JAPAN First Mongol Invasion November 1274 FORCES Mongols: 40,000; CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

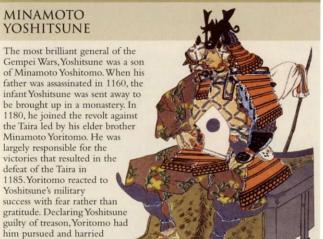
In 1274 the Mongol leader Kublai Khan dispatched a fleet of 900 ships from Korea, carrying a combined force of Mongol, Chinese, and Korean troops. The army landed at Hakata Bay, after having slaughtered the defenders of Tshushima and Iki

LOCATION

Hakata Bay,

islands. It was the first time samurai had encountered a foreign force and they were startled by the enemy's unceremonious form of warfare, they could catch and killing them" This shock was augmented by the towards Dazaifu. Japan seemed in the Mongols re-embarked and disappeared almost as soon as they had come, presumably having only constituted a reconnaissance in force. The oft-repeated story that they were scattered by bad

Japanese courtier Kadenokoji Kanenaka on the second Mongol invasion, 1281



style. The samurai of the period were in essence mounted archers. Iron strip attached to the top breast pl guard, or haidate, to protect loin. laced with

SAMURAI ARMOUR

This 12th-century samurai

warrior's battle dress is in th

great armour, or O-voroi

MONGOL INVASIONS OF JAPAN

#### Second Mongol Invasion

until, cornered by his

suicide in June 1189.

enemies, he committed



June-August 1281 FORCES Mongols: 150,000: Japanese: 40,000 CASUALTIES Mongols: allegedly 100,000

For seven years after his abortive invasion of 1274, Kublai Khan bided his time. By 1281, when he mounted a renewed serious invasion, the Japanese had prepared coastal defences to meet it, including the building of a

20km- (12.5 mile-) long stone barrier at Hakata Bay. This time the Mongols had 4,400 warships in two fleets, the smaller one sailing from Korea and the larger from northern China. The Korean fleet arrived first at Hakata Bay, but the ferocity of the Japanese response and the strength of their coastal fortifications restricted the Mongols to offshore islands, where they were repeatedly raided by samurai in small boats. The fleet withdrew to rendezvous with the ships from China at Iki island, but apart from an attack on the island of Takashima they had achieved nothing when a typhoon - known to the Japanese as the "divine wind" kamikaze) - scattered and sank the invasion force. The Mongols made no further attempts to conquer of Japan.

### GO-DAIGO'S REBELLION

boots reflected

#### Minatogawa

silk and



Minato river near Kobe, Japan

In 1331 Japanese emperor Go-Daigo led a revolt against the Hojo shoguns. Among the imperial supporters was Kusunoke Masashige, who defied the Hojo from his mountain fortresses. The capture of their capital, Kamakura, in 1333 brought the Hojo's downfall, only for another clan, the Ashikaga, to

5 June 1336

CASUALTIES

Imperial army: 2,700;

FORCES

army marched on the imperial capital. Go-Daigo's commander, Nitta Yoshisada, called on Kusunoke to come to Kyoto's defence. Kusunoke protested at the decision to confront the Ashikaga, but reluctantly went along with it. The imperial forces took up position astride the Minato river. The Ashikaga advanced by land and sea, Tadavoshi and Shoni Yorihisa commanding the land forces, Ashikaga Takauji and Hosokawa the seaborne forces. Facing a frontal assault led by Shoni and threatened by Hosokawa from the rear, Nitta retreated. This left Kusunoke's small band hopelessly exposed. After six hours' fighting, with his situation hopeless, Kusunoke committed suicide along with his relatives and retainers.

launch a bid for power. In 1336 their

SAMURAI WARFARE

face mask, or

ignoring calls for single combat and instead, as a Japanese chronicle puts it, "rushing forward all together in a mass, grappling with any individuals Mongol use of massed bowmen and gunpowder bombs flung by catapults. forcing the Japanese to retreat inland danger of falling to the invaders, but, weather seems unlikely.

"On this past first day a typhoon sank most of the foreign pirates' ships. Several thousands were killed or captured. Not one enemy boat remains at Iki or Tshushima."

## SAMURAI SWORDS

FROM THE 12TH CENTURY Japanese military life was dominated by the samurai, an elite warrior class with its own code of honour. Samurai were expected to cultivate an ascetic lifestyle, and be willing to die at any moment in the service of their lord. Central to a samurai's armoury were his swords, which were often of superb quality. A long sword (katana) was

worn pushed through his sash together with a short sword (wakizashi). Both were carried with the sharp edge uppermost in order to deliver a sweeping cut straight from the scabbard. Not until 1868 was the samurai class abolished.

#### BLADES AND SCHOOLS

As forging techniques improved, so did the style of the sword. Early swords were straight, but by the 8th century warriors found that a curved sword could be drawn from the scabbard more quickly and provided a better cutting angle. With the rise of the samurai the military arts, inspired by the teachings of Zen Buddhism, became the highest form of study. A local lord would sponsor a fencing school where his retainers could learn to use the sword - a skill acquired through years of gruelling training. Wooden and bamboo swords were used for practice, and only from the 17th century was padded armour worn to reduce the risk of injury in training.

#### LONG SWORDS

The katana, or long sword, is seen here without its tsuka (hilt). As the blade was cooled in water, a natural decorative shape called a hamon formed along the blade

The samurai carried a tanto, a small dagger that he kept hidden in his armour. The tanto scabbard ontained a kozuka (small knife) and a kogai (skewer).



LACQUERED TANTO SCABBARD

The wakizashi, or short sword, was an additional fighting weapon, but was also used by samurai for seppuku, ritual suicide by

KOGAI

SWORDSMITHS

Tsuba (sword guard)

Sageo (cord) fastened

This print shows swordsmiths practising their art. Blades were forged through a complex process of heating and folding iron ore, nammering it into shape, and cooling it in cold water to harden the metal.

WAKIZASHI

Hamon (crystalline wave pattern)

amanan , mananan

KATANA BY SWORDSMITH YAMATO SHIZU, 14TH CENTURY

Shinogi (ridge line)

KATANA ATTRIBUTED TO SHIZU GROUP

SWORD STATUS

14411114444

The long sword was carried out of doors only and samurai alone were permitted to own one. The short sword was worn at all times. The hilts were often ornate status symbols, made of wood, wrapped in sharkskin and braid, and containing ornaments. The butt of the hilt could be used as a punching weapon if an opponent was too close for the samurai to draw his sword.

LACQUERED SCABBARD (SAYA) WTH

ORNATE WAKIZASHI

**BATTLE ARMOUR** 

As the samurai sword was used for delivering wide cuts, armour had to permit free and rapid movement while providing some protection. Even so, a good blade could cut through most armour. Numerous laquered metal plates were laced together with silk and leather to cover the chest, arms, and shoulders. From the 16th century, armour

became sturdier, partly to provide more protection against musket fire. The style and complexity of armour evolved over time until the whole body was protected, as in this elaborate 19th-century example (right).

FIGHTING SKILL

This 19th-century print shows a samurai raising his long sword to deflect a cut. He does this by pushing the flat side of the blade forwards in order not to damge his cutting edge.

WAKIZASHI BY SWORDSMITH SESHU

LACQUERED SCABBARD (SAYA)

Monuchi (the part of the blade used for cutting)

Mune (flat

Ikada (plate in mail)

Kote (arm defence) -

# KNIGHTS, CASTLES, AND BOWMEN

Kingdom of Germany

Kingdom of Italy

Papal States 1178

added by 1219

added by 1278

DESPITE ATTEMPTS TO DIRECT fighting energies outwards during the Crusades, there was more or less constant warfare in Europe in the period 1100-1500. Fighting wars was regarded as the proper activity of able-bodied young men of high status. Combined with the fragmented nature of European political authority - the territorial claims of rival kingdoms, competing cities, dukedoms, popes, and emperors vying for power - this ensured that conflicts smouldered and flared across the continent.

#### CHIVALROUS COMBAT

Europeans had a clear idea of what warfare was supposed to be: a matter of chivalrous combat between knights on horseback, inspired by an ideal of honour and valour. Preferably they would charge one another with lances. The reality, outside jousting tournaments, was rather different. For much of the period raiding and pillaging were the norm, as in the "chevauchées" with which the English laid waste areas of France during the 100 Years War. Pitched battles were avoided as much as possible - regarded as too risky in every way. Knights had a healthy desire for safety, leading to the adoption of all-over armour, with gauntlets and greaves, and moveable visors on helmets. Horses too had

IRON CONE HEAD

The basinet was common headgear for 14th-century knights. Germans called i a Hundsgugel ("hound's hood").

to be armoured, making horse and rider a weighty package that could

get into difficulty on soft ground.

#### TRICKS OF DEFENCE

The late-14th-century Bodian Castle, England, has stretches of curtain wall protected

BRANDENBURG\_\_ Tour Magdeburg LUSATIA POLISH PRINCIPALITIES THURINGIA KINGDOM OF FRANCE GERMANY AUSTRIA frontier of Holy Roman Empire 1250 Mediterranea EMPIRE OF FREDERICK II The Holy Roman Empire was stymied by the medieval papacy, which was at the height of its spiritual authority. RAISING ARMIES

> Raising and maintaining armies was a constant strain on the resources of Europe's states. The cheapest way of waging war was to use those deemed to owe obligation of military service, who provided their own arms and were paid from plunder. But rulers increasingly found themselves obliged to come up with payment, and the employment of mercenaries became common. Mercenary companies were led by ambitious entrepreneur-soldiers, known as condottieri in Italy. Some of these earned fame and fortune. But mercenaries were always changing sides or simply plundering if unemployed. By 1450 use of mercenaries was evolving towards the formation of professional standing armies.

# captured bowmen. FOOTSOLDIER KIT

#### MEDIEVAL FOOTSOLDIERS TREBUCHET

Ordinary footsoldiers with bows, pikes, and halberds could prove effective against charging knights, as long as they were well disciplined. For a knight, losing on the battlefield was more likely to mean being taken prisoner and ransomed than being killed (one of the purposes of chivalrous behaviour was to minimize casualties), but footsoldiers could expect no such treatment. Many knights hated archers, whose style of fighting at a distance they considered unfair. The Church attempted to ban the use of crossbows in 1159 and

knights would sometimes SINGLEtake savage revenge on

A late-medieval infantryma wore a padded coat for protection and carried a small buckler shield for punching. His main weapon was the glaive, a long spiked pole.

## CASTLES AND SIEGES

The general insecurity in Europe meant that this was a time of fortification. Both city walls and castles were formidable structures in stone. Castles evolved from being a simple ring wall surrounding an inner tower to a series of concentric walls with a fortified gatehouse and towers built into the walls. A panoply of siege equipment was deployed against such defences, including missile-hurling mangonels and trebuchets, ballistas, rams, and siege towers. From the 14th century these were joined by cannon,



BALLISTA The giant crossbow was

a machine inherited from the ancient Greeks. It used the tension of twisted ropes to shoot a large bolt.

FATING KNIFF

The trebuchet was a large stone-throwing machine operated either by pulling on ropes or, from the 13th century, by a counterweight system (the weight was wound up and then dropped to power the missile). Some trebuchets could hurl a 100kg (220lb) stone a distance of more than 400m (1.300ft). Unlike simpler stone catapults, which might be built by carpenters on the site of a siege, trebuchets were transported with the army.

Length 3.6m (12ft) Calibre 100kg (220lbs) Used from 11th century Weight 2 tonnes plus



#### his is a counterpoise

rebuchet in action at the siege of Antioch in 1097. The weight was a box sand. The pouch hurled stones or, worse

#### BOWMEN

The two most effective archery forces in medieval Europe were Genoese crossbowmen and English archers with longbows. The crossbow was a relatively slow-loading weapon, although it compensated for this with its high penetrative power. The longbow could be used much more quickly - shooting about 12 arrows a minute - but it required a specialist to use it effectively. In 1337 all sports except archery were banned in England in a

bid to maintain the supply of skilled archers. Early firearms were no match for bows in battlefield effectiveness.

Welsh archers are shown

here in a depiction of the battle of Crécy. Shooting a longbow required strength





## POPES AND EMPERORS

IN THE 12TH AND 13TH CENTURIES Europe was riven by a three-way power struggle between the papacy, France, and the Hohenstaufen Holy Roman Emperors. The arena in which this struggle was most bitterly contested was politically fragmented Italy, where pro-imperial Ghibellines and pro-papal Guelfs vied for power. Initially the Hohenstaufens were based in Germany,

but in the 13th century their focus shifted to lands inherited by marriage in southern Italy and Sicily. The papacy called in the French, in the person of Charles d'Anjou, to evict the Hohenstaufen from these territories in the 1260s, although the Angevins were themselves defeated by the Aragonese in the war of the Sicilian Vespers (1282-1302).

WARS OF THE LOMBARD LEAGUE

#### Siege of Crema



June 1159-February 1160 FORCES Barbarossa's forces: unknown; Cremese:

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

In 1158 Frederick Barbarossa led an army to Italy to establish his overlordship in Milan and other cities in Lombardy. Crema was a small but well-fortified city allied to Milan. In June 1159 Frederick ordered its citizens to dismantle their city walls, a

move urged upon him by neighbouring Cremona, Crema's direst enemy. When Crema refused, a bitter siege ensued, characterized by barbarous cruelty on both sides. Frederick had prisoners decapitated; the Cremese responded by hacking prisoners to bits on the city walls in full view of their comrades. Frederick is said to have put Cremese children in siege catapults and hurled them against the walls. Every known technique of siege warfare was employed. The besiegers used a "cat" - a mobile roof - to cover

and motivated. With

only cavalry at his disposal,

'considering it unworthy of his

Frederick was heavily outnumbered,

imperial majesty to flee". At first the

them. They swept aside the Lombard

mounted vanguard and then delivered

a crushing attack on the main body of

Lombard cavalry, putting the citizen

cavalry charge. The footsoldiers stood

shoulder to shoulder around their

carroccio, a large wagon surmounted

by a banner and manned by priests,

which acted as a sacred rallying point

for troops to defend. Forming a shield

wall with grounded pikes bristling

outwards, they faced the thunderous

charge of the imperial heavy cavalry.

Had their line broken, they would

have been massacred, but they held

firm and the repeated attacks of the

German knights shattered against the

long pikes. Frederick, in the thick of

wavering German army. The Germans

the fighting, was unhorsed and fell

from sight just as the Lombard

cavalry, which had regrouped,

smashed into the flank of the

horsemen to flight. This left the

Lombard infantry exposed to a

German cavalry carried all before

but he rejected advice to avoid battle.

When a ram breached the fortifications, the Cremese built an earth wall behind the breach and blocked it again. Decimated by hunger and disease, the citizens eventually surrendered. They were allowed to leave before the entire city was razed to the ground.

#### STONE THROWER

The catapult used the pulling power of a skein of twisted ropes. When released, the arm flew up and hurled the missile.

engineers who mined under

the walls. The defenders

responded with tunnels

of their own, leading to

underground warfare.

WARS OF THE LOMBARD LEAGUE

DATE 29 May 1176

Imperial: 3,500 cavalry;

Lombard League: 4,000

cavalry; infantry;

CASUALTIES

FORCES

#### Legnano

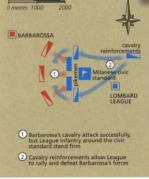


(20 miles) from Milan, northern Italy

During 1176 Frederick Barbarossa was on campaign in Italy, again attempting to impose his authority on the pope and the city states of Lombardy. He was riding south from Como towards Pavia with a force of more than 3,000 German cavalry when he was intercepted by the Milanese and their allies from other cities of the Lombard League. The Milanese forces were a citizen army, with the richer citizens providing the cavalry and the less wealthy the



armour and weapons thanks to the city's wealth gained from trade and less skilled than their imperial opponents, but the Milanese ootsoldiers were highly disciplined



infantry. All were well equipped with agriculture. The citizen cavalry were

#### broke and fled, pursued by the Milanese, who took many prisoners as well as capturing Barbarossa's lance and shield and the imperial standard. At first believed dead, Frederick turned up safe in Pavia three days after the battle. SACRED WAGON

The Milanese forces' carroccio, the wagon carrying their standard and priests, dominates the scene of carnage in this 19th-century depiction of the battle of Legnano.

#### c.1123-1190

#### BARBAROSSA

Frederick I Hohenstaufen, known as Barbarossa because of his red beard, became Holy Roman Emperor in 1152. He fought six campaigns in Italy, finally making peace with Pope Alexander III and Milan in 1177 after his defeat at Legnano. In Germany, he came out on top after a long power struggle with Henry the Lion of Saxony. Having participated as a young man in the Second Crusade of 1147, he again departed for the Holy Land in 1189, only to drown on the way in a Turkish river. Sometimes cruel, he was nonetheless a skilful general and an ambitious political leader.

GILDED HEAD OF



ANGEVIN-FLANDERS WAR

## Bouvines



LOCATION ROUVINGS south of Tournai, northeastern France

CASUALTIES German and Flemish knights: 300 captured or killed In 1213 an alliance of Otto IV of

**DATE 26 July 1214** 

FORCES French: 1.450

German and Flomish

1.500 cavalry 7.500

infantry

cavalry, 6,000 infantry

Germany, Count Ferdinand of Flanders, and King John of England made war against Philip II of France. An army led by Otto came up against the French at Bouvines in 1214. While armoured cavalry clashed in couched-lance charges, infantry also fought savagely and Otto's army was reduced to a formation of mercenary footsoldiers. Victory gave Philip control of Flanders and ruined John's hope of regaining territory in France.

#### CLASHING ARMOUR

Knights fought in very close combat at Bouvines. As well as lances, they used daggers to stab through gaps in armour.

#### WAR OF THE SICILIAN VESPERS Bay of Naples



Southern Italy

DATE 5 June 1284 FORCES Aragonese: 40 galleys; Angevins: 30-40 galleys

CASUALTIES At least 10 Annevin galleys captured

In the war of the Sicilian Vespers, the Aragonese fought Charles d'Anjou for control of southern Italy. In June 1284 Aragon's admiral Roger de Lauria, blockading Naples, succeeded in luring the Angevin fleet out of the port to fight. Commanded by Charles d'Anjou's brother Charles of Salerno, the Angevin fleet pursued Lauria's ships into open sea. When they were well away from port, Lauria turned on them, aided by reinforcements that had crept up unseen from nearby Castellamare, Some of Charles's fleet fled. The rest were deluged with arrows by Lauria's crossbowmen. Reportedly, the Aragonese also threw soap onto the enemy decks to make them too slippery for soldiers to stand. Charles held out until his ship was holed, then surrendered.

#### ARAGONESE-FRENCH WARS **CROSSBOWS**

#### Benevento



LOCATION Benevento east of Naples. southern Italy

CASUALTIES Angevin: unknown, but heavy Manfred: unknown hut heavier

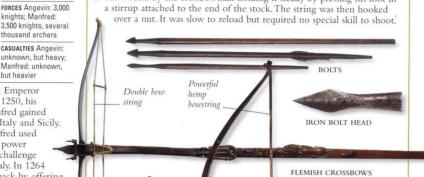
nights; Manfred:

When Holy Roman Emperor Frederick II died in 1250, his illegitimate son Manfred gained control of southern Italy and Sicily. Like Frederick, Manfred used these territories as a power base from which to challenge papal influence in Italy. In 1264 Pope Urban IV hit back by offering the crown of Sicily to Charles d'Anjou, brother of French king Louis IX. Louis provided funds to help Charles raise an army, partly because Manfred's friendly relations

with Muslim Saracens offended his Christian principles. In the winter of 1265-66 Charles landed at Rome and led his army south, meeting Manfred's forces on a plain near Benevento. Manfred opened the battle by sending forth thousands of Saracen archers as skirmishers. Deluged in deadly arrow fire, the French infantry

The foremost section of French knights responded by charging the Saracens, who swiftly scattered. Some German knights then charged

fell back in disorder.



Stock, or

The crossbow was the most powerful hand-held missile weapon of its day.

It was wound by the crossbowman holding it steady by pressing his foot in

of the disorganized French cavalry. The battle developed into a vast melée, as more and more knights charged into the thick of the fighting. Battle was so closely joined that the Saracen archers could not fire, unable to mark out friend from foe. The French wreaked

#### ROYAL LANCE

Charles d'Anjou, wearing a crown, thrusts his lance in the battle of Benevento. Manfred himself was slain in the battle.

havoc by attacking their enemies' horses, rather than the heavily armoured riders. At a crucial moment, Manfred called on his reserves to charge, but many betrayed him, riding away from the field. Manfred charged regardless, disappearing

into the mass of wheeling, hacking knights. Gradually overwhelmed, his forces fell apart and were slaughtered piecemeal.

bolt is fitted



11 September 1297

English: 50.000-60.000

No reliable estimates

Scottish: 15,000;

FORCES

CASUALTIES

In 1297 the Scots were in rebellion

country by English king Edward I

Wallace and Andrew de Moray took

against the annexation of their

A Scottish army led by William

up position on a slope above the

Forth river, to face a far larger

English force under

The English began

to cross the river by

narrow bridge in

front of the Scottish

lines. Wallace and de

Moray hurled their

slope. Floundering

spears down the

the Earl of Surrey.

ANGLO-SCOTTISH WARS

Stirling Bridge

Abbey Craig, north of

Stirling, Scotland

## HERESY AND REVOLT

THE LATER MIDDLE AGES saw increasingly powerful sovereigns seeking to impose real authority and religious uniformity upon vassals and subordinates who had hitherto owed them only nominal allegiance. Throughout Europe, warfare frequently erupted in the form of challenges to these newly assertive religious and political authorities. In France the repression of

ALBIGENSIAN CRUSADE

#### Muret



12 September 1213 FORCES Crusaders: 900 cavalry, 1,200 infantry; oulouse/Aragon: 4,000 cavalry, 30,000 infantry CASUALTIES

Toulouse/Arago

at least 7,000 killed

DATE 8 October 1217-

Crusaders: unknown

Toulousains: unknown

No reliable estimates

1 July 1218

CASHAITIES

FORCES

20km (12 miles) south

Simon de Montfort, leading a crusade against the Albigensian heretics in southern France, was besieged inside Muret by the far superior forces of Count Raymond of Toulouse and King Pedro II of Aragon. With his only hope lying in attack, Simon led his knights out of the town and rode in a wide arc towards the enemy camp. With their armour and helmets glittering in the sun, they charged at full tilt into the Toulouse cavalry with a noise "like a whole forest going

the Cathar heretics (also known as Albigensians) from 1209 sparked complex and brutal conflicts that ultimately led to the extension of French royal authority over previously independent Languedoc. In Britain English kings fought to extend control over Scotland and Wales, as well as facing internal challenges from rebellious barons or rival claimants to the throne.

down under the axe". Next Peter of Aragon's cavalry corps was crushed in similar fashion, the king himself cut down by a sword blow. Then de Montfort scattered Raymond's cavalry that was defending the camp. All that remained was to slaughter the infantry besieging the town walls.

#### THE PERFECT HERESY

The Albigensian heresy pervaded all levels of society, appealing to rich town-dwellers such as these as much as to rural peasants.



#### ALBIGENSIAN CRUSADE

#### Toulouse



oulouse. France

In 1209 Pope Innocent III declared a crusade against the Albigensians, or Cathars, heretical Christians who were especially numerous in Languedoc, southern France. Barons and knights from northern France proceeded to suppress the heretics with great thoroughness, massacring the entire population of Béziers in July 1209; papal legate Arnaud-Amaury allegedly gave the order: "Kill them all, God will know his own."The major beneficiary of the crusade's early successes was Simon de Montfort, who gained extensive lands including Béziers and Carcassone. His growing power brought him into conflict with Raymond VI, Count of Toulouse, and with King Peter of Aragon, who had his own interests in southern France.

After victory at Muret, de Montford's

position seemed unassailable. Raymond

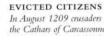
fled and Simon took control of

Toulouse. However, in 1216 the citizens of Toulouse rebelled and Simon sacked the city in retaliation. Count Raymond saw the opportunity to regain his lands. In September

1217 he re-entered Toulouse to a rapturous reception. The Toulousains rebuilt the city's fortifications, which Simon had destroyed, and toiled night and day to have defences ready before the appearance of the crusader army. Simon arrived outside the city on 8 October and ordered an immediate attack on the half-finished works. The whole population

#### SIEGE SCENE

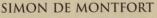
A relief on Simon de Montfort's omb in, Carcassonne, depicts the use of siege engines at Toulouse.



In August 1209 crusaders expelled the Cathars of Carcassonne. They had to leave behind their possessions, as well as their homes.

take the crusaders on at close quarters but the attack was driven back. Although reinforced by knights from northern France, through the following winter and spring Simon repeatedly failed to storm the city. Supplies, moreover, got through to the city along the Garonne river. In June 1218, Simon had a massive siege tower built with a platform higher than the city battlements. The defenders decided that they must destroy the tower or face defeat. On 25 June they swarmed out of the city to attack the machine. Simon and his knights rode into the attack, driving the Toulousains back but advancing dangerously close to the defenders. Simon was hit on his iron helmet by a rock fired from a mangone

(allegedly operated by Toulousain women). The blow, wrote a chronicler, "shattered his eyes, brains, back teeth, forehead, and jaw". With Simon dead, the siege was soon abandoned.



responded with any missile they could

find. A chronicler described rocks,

arrows, staves, and stones falling on

Toulousain knights made a sortie to

the attackers "dense as fine rain".

Anglo-French knight Simon IV de Montfort went on the Fourth Crusade in 1202-04, distinguishing himself by refusing to take part in attacks on fellow Christians. His role as leader of the Albigensian crusade after 1209 earned him the undving hatred of the people of Languedoc. His death at the siege of Toulouse is shown here. His second son, also Simon de Montfort, led the Barons' revolt in England.





#### Evesham



14 August 1265 FORCES
De Montfort: 7 000-Prince Edward: 20,000

No reliable estimates

CASHAITIES

LOCATION Evesham, Worcestershire. England

In 1258 a group of barons led by Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester, forced English King Henry III to agree to the Provisions of Oxford. This obliged the king to devolve government to a baronial council and hold regular parliaments. When Henry reneged on this agreement in 1261, civil war followed. At the battle of Lewes in 1264 the king and his son Edward Longshanks were defeated by de Montfort and taken prisoner. Edward, however, escaped to raise an army in western England, while Earl Simon made an alliance with Welsh prince Llewelyn. Assembling an army in Wales, he set out to join up with much larger forces commanded by his son, also called Simon, Edward knew that he must prevent the junction of the two de Montfort armies. Marching

GLYNDWR'S REBELLION

Rebellion

LOCATION

Wales

Owain Glyndwr's

1400-09

FORCES

CASUALTIES

Wales was conquered in the 1280s by

English King Edward I, who built a

string of castles to stamp English rule

upon the country. Although on the

surface most Welsh people appeared

to accept this situation, discontent

smouldered. In September 1400 a

Welsh landowner, Owain Glyndwr,

caught in a dispute with an unruly

English: unknown

No reliable estimates

CLOSE ENCOUNTER and positioned his forces to block the

Prince Edward and Simon de Montfort sporting a crusader's cross - clash in an naginary episode of the battle of Evesham.

Declared Prince of

Wales, Owain took

control of most of

a guerrilla war In

routed an English

Edmund Mortimer

at Pilleth, Captured.

Mortimer became

against King Henry

him to a revolt

force led by Sir

only two roads out of Evesham. When Simon saw he was surrounded by far superior forces, he reportedly said: 'May God have mercy on our souls. for our bodies are theirs." With typica bravado he led his men in a charge uphill against the centre of Edward's army, but his forces were engulfed and Simon was slain. The battle was so one-sided that chronicler Robert of Gloucester called it "the murder of Evesham, for battle it was none"

English neighbour, burnt down the township around Ruthin castle. This and advanced with the Welsh to Worcester. Confronted by King

revolt against the the country through English is a long-June 1402 the Welsh standing madness ... from the savings of the prophet Merlin they still hope to Owain's ally, linking recover England."

led by the Percy family in northern England. The Percys were defeated at Shrewsbury in July 1403, however, before they could link up with Glyndwr. Owain next sought support from France and in 1405 a force of French crossbowmen

sparked a general Welsh uprising. "The Welsh habit of

> Castle was the last stronghold to resist without hope of resupply, its tiny Welsh garrison surrendered. Owain disappeared into the Welsh hills. His subsequent fate is uncertain.

and infantry landed at Milford Haven

SCOTTISH HERO William Wallace was captured and executed by the English in London in 1305.

the field.

WARS OF THE ROSES Bosworth Field coupled with



DATE 22 August 1485 Henry Tudor: 5,000; Richard III: 8 000

CASHAITIES No reliable estimates

On 7 August 1485 Henry Tudor landed at Milford Haven, Wales, intent on asserting his claim to the English throne. His army met the forces of King Richard III at Bosworth Field (the exact site of which is unknown). Richard's army was numerically superior but riddled with dislovalty. A third army, led by Lord Stanley, who had promised both sides that he would fight for them, intervened on the side of Henry Tudor. At the key moment in the battle, the king led a charge towards the position where Henry stood, hoping to kill the pretender and thus carry the day. Richard succeeded in killing Henry Tudor's standardbearer, but with much of his own army changing sides or nolding aloof from the battle, he was surrounded and cut down. Henry Tudor came to power as Henry VII.



rapidly eastward from Worcester, at dawn on 2 August he surprised and defeated the vounger Simon's forces in their camp at Kenilworth, Unaware of this disaster, Earl Simon stopped in the vale of Evesham on the night of 3-4 August. Allowing his men no rest. Edward advanced through the night

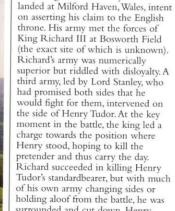
> Henry and a force of armoured knights the Welsh withdrew and the disappointed French soon went home. The rebels still held most of Wales, but Prince Henry, the king's son, ground down the rebellion by military action

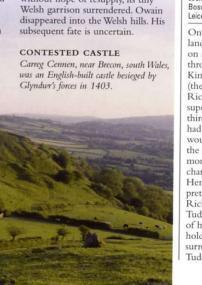
> > inducements to

tempt rebels back to

A scribe at Edward III's court

allegiance. Harlech the English. In 1409, starving and







## THE HUNDRED YEARS WAR

24 June 1340

English: 150-250 ships;

French and Genoese:

CASUALTIES 166 French

and Genoese vessels

around 190 ships

captured or sunk

26 August 1346

FORCES English: 10-20,000, including

10,000 longbowmen

CASUALTIES English: 200

dead; French: probably 4,000 dead

French 25-60.000

FORCES

THE SERIES OF WARS fought between the kings of England and France between 1337 and 1453 is conventionally known as the Hundred Years War. Provoked by King Edward III of England's claim to the French throne, they ended with King Charles VII of France driving the English almost completely out of France.

HUNDRED YEARS WAR

#### Sluvs



Sluys, Zeeland, southern Netherlands

In the earliest phase of the Hundred Years War, Edward III sought to exploit alliances with Flemish nobles to attack the French. Little was achieved, however, and in the summe of 1340 a fleet commanded by Edward III crossed the Channel intent on asserting his claim to the French throne. A French fleet, reinforced by Genoese mercenary galleys, gathered to oppose them, commanded by Admiral Hugues Quiéret (for the

as Barbavera (for the Genoese). The two fleets met in an inlet off the coast of Flanders. The French fleet was still in anchorage, against the advice of Barbavera, and the ships were formed into three or four lines, the vessels lashed together with ropes. King Edward's fleet entered the inlet on the morning of the 24th. Ships on both sides were packed with soldiers, for at this time battles at sea were the same as battles on land except that, in the words of chronicler Froissart, "battles on sea are more dangerous and fiercer... for on the sea there is no recoiling or fleeing". The English fleet was arranged with one ship full of men-at-arms between each two ships of archers. After manoeuvring to get the wind and sun behind them, the English vessels closed on the French and battle was joined. The English

got by far the better of a series of

encounters decided by the exchange

French) and Egidio Bocanegra, known



#### COGS OF WAR

Most of the vessels at Sluys were cogs clumsy single-masted sailing ships. Their function in battle was to carry the soldiers on board into fighting range of the enemy.

of arrow fire and by hand-to-hand fighting between soldiers in vessels grappled side by side. After a battle that, according to Edward, lasted "all that day and the night after", the French fleet was almost entirely

destroyed. Quiéret was killed, although Barbayera escaped. Froissart puts the French loss of life at more than 30,000, although this is almost certainly an exaggeration. Edward failed to capitalize on this victory, however; the subsequent land campaign achieved little more than an unsuccessful siege of Tournai. The cost of the expedition, moreover, had been exorbitant and prevented any further major invasions for much of the 1340s.

#### HUNDRED YEARS WAR

#### Crécv

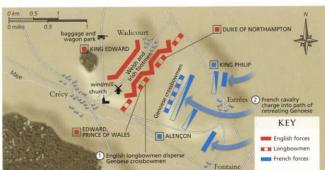


LOCATION Crécy, near Abbéville, Picardy, northern France

In July 1346 Edward III took an army across the Channel to Normandy. Cutting a destructive swathe through French territory, he marched south towards Paris and then turned northeast. The army of French king Philip VI caught up with the English near the French coast. Edward took up position on a slope alongside the village of Crécy. During the morning

"The English archers then advanced one step forwards, and shot their arrows with such force and quickness that it seemed as if it snowed."

of 26 August he arranged his forces in three "battles", one nominally commanded by his 16-year-old son, Prince Edward. Each battle included knights. squires, and sergeants fighting dismounted (as armoured infantry), longbowmen, and some Welsh light infantry. The French army arrived tired and disorganized from a long march, wet from a thunderstorm, and facing into the low sun behind the



The iron helm, with its

narrow eye slits, provided

protection at the cost of

weight and poor vision.

English position. But

Philip could not restrain

his knights' enthusiasm

for an immediate attack

on the outnumbered

English. Reluctantly,

his Genoese mercenary

rossbowmen advanced up the slope. They fired

Jean Froissart, Chronicle, c.1369

KNIGHT'S HELMET

their first volley too early to be effective and were then decimated by the English longbows, which outstripped them in range and rate of fire. As the crossbowmen fell back, French knights led by the Comte d'Alençon charged through them up the slope, into the dense fire of the English archers. A few reached the English line, engaging in fierce fighting with Prince Edward's battle, but most were killed or wounded. In a memorably quixotic gesture, Philip's aged and blind ally King John of Bohemia had himself led into the battle to die. He lay amongst thousands of nobles and commoners left on the battlefield the following morning.

## 1330-1376

#### BLACK PRINCE

Prince Edward, the eldest son of English King Edward III, was one of the most successful commanders of the Hundred Years War. He was known as the Black Prince after the colour of his armour. As a youth he acquitted himself well at Crécy. His subsequent victories included Poitiers in 1356 and Najera in 1367. He was also a noted practitioner of the chevauchée - campaigns of pillage and destruction that laid waste large areas of France. His last act of war was a notorious massacre at Limoges in 1370. He died before Edward III and so never became king.



#### HUNDRED YEARS WAR

#### Siege of Calais



Calais, northern France

After the victory at Crécy, Edward III marched north to besiege the port city of Calais. With his army he had

4 August 1346-

30,000; French:

No reliable estimates

19 Sentember 1356

FORCES English: 12,000,

including 4.000 men-

CASUALTIES

4 September 1347

some 20 primitive cannon, which he deployed against the city's stone walls. Basically metal tubes mounted on carts, they proved ineffective. The noise unnerved the citizens of Calais but their projectiles failed to breach the walls. The English had to starve the city into submission, a long and costly procedure as reinforcements and supplies had to be ferried across the Channel. After 13 months, with Philip VI failing to mount a relief of the city and its people reduced to eating rats and mice, Calais surrendered. Its captain, Jean de Vienne, and six wealthy burghers came out of the city

#### IVORY TOWERS

A medieval ivory carving depict: the siege of a moated castle. Crossbows were much used by both besiegers and besieged

with halters around their necks to plead for mercy. The capture of Calais was a valuable prize for Edward, but his finances were exhausted and Europe was entering the nightmare of the Black Death. A truce was agreed that lasted eight years.

MODEL KNIGHT

This 14th-century bronze model of a

mounted knight represents

the medieval ideal of a

into the chaos of

fallen horses and

riders, hacking right

and left. The next wave

by the dauphin,

advanced through

a hail of arrows and

of French knights, led



#### HUNDRED YEARS WAR

#### Poitiers



LOCATION 3km (2 miles) east of Poitiers, central France

at-arms: French: 20.000-40.000 CASHALTIES French 2,500 killed, 2,600 prisoners: English

1,000 killed

In late summer 1356 Edward the Black Prince led an army from Aquitaine on a raid through central France. In September, slowed by a baggage train loaded with booty, the English were intercepted by a French army led by King Jean II. Edward took up a strong defensive position on a slope outside Poitiers, seeking to avoid battle against superior forces. Early on 19 September he attempted to slip

away. Spotting the English retreat, the French launched their attack forcing Edward hastily to return to the field. As the chronicler Froissart relates the English were positioned behind a hedge "lined with archers and the menat-arms drawn up behind among the vine and thorn bushes, all on foot; the hedge

had but one gap in it, where four

engaged the English in savage hand-to-hand fighting. After Edward threw his reserves into the knights might ride abreast..."The front line, the English barely prevailed. French sent 300 of their best knights Exhausted and with many wounded, to charge through this gap. The rest they prepared to face a further French dismounted to follow on foot behind onslaught, the archers pulling arrows this mounted spearhead. When the from bodies to replenish exhausted French cavalry reached the gap in the quivers. Fortunately, the next French hedge, the longbowmen shot their formation, commanded by the young horses. English men-at-arms waded Duc d'Orléans, was so unnerved by

the fate of the dauphin's forces that it fled the field. This left the final French force, personally commanded by the king, to advance on the English. Seizing the initiative, Edward ordered his entire army to charge the French, and sent a force of 200 horsemen around the French flank to attack from the rear. There was fierce fighting as the two forces clashed; English archers, out of arrows, resorted to fighting with knives. But the cavalry charge from the rear broke the French. At last only the king and his entourage fought on, surrounded by dismembered bodies. until they too were overpowered and forced to surrender.

#### KING AT BAY

French King Jean II makes a last stand at Poitiers. The king was taken prisoner and held by the English until 1360, when he was ransomed for three million gold crowns.



HUNDRED YEARS WAR

DATE 3 April 1367

FORCES French and

Castilian: probably

30,000; English:

perhaps 20,000

England and France officially made peace in 1360, but this brought no end to the suffering of the French people. The "free companies", mercenary soldiers, refused to disband and sought profit from general plunder. After their reign of terror, it was a great relief to the French population when the renowned French soldier Bertrand du Guesclin took a large company of

to support Enrique of Trastamara in a civil war with his English-backed brother, King Pedro the Cruel, Pedro was deposed and Enrique placed on the throne. In February 1367 Edward, the Black Prince, led an army across the Pyrenees to restore Pedro's rule Du Guesclin and his Castilian allies met the Black Prince's army at Najera. As so often, English archers dominated the battlefield, routing the Castilian cavalry. Du Guesclin's mercenaries. were undaunted by the bowmen and put up staunch resistance. But in the absence of real support from their Castilian allies they were inevitably defeated. Du Guesclin was taken prisoner and Pedro restored to his throne. The Black Prince allowed du Guesclin to be ransomed for 100,000 francs and he returned home to become constable of France in 1370.

mercenaries from France into Castile

HUNDRED YEARS WAR

#### Lancaster's raid



July-December 1373 FORCES English: 5,000-10,000 men; French: unknown

CASUALTIES English: roughly half of force lost

When war resumed in 1368, French King Charles V sought to apply constant pressure to the English but avoided pitched battles. With du Guesclin as his constable, Charles reversed many of the French losses. In 1373 the English mounted a fresh expedition to France, led by John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, who took his men on a five-month pillaging

ENGLISH DUKE (1340-1399) never matched the military successes of his father Kino Edward III.

march from Calais down through Champagne and Burgundy, and into Aquitaine. The French took refuge within their walled towns and

harassed the English forces, picking off stragglers and laying ambushes. When winter set in, the English began to die of hunger, exposure, and exhaustion. By the time he reached Bordeaux, Lancaster had lost half his men and almost all his horses without fighting a battle.



HUNDRED YEARS WAR

#### Agincourt



25 October 1415 FORCES English: 6,000; French 20,000-30,000

in the Pas-de-Calais, northeastern France

WARFARE IN THE MIDDLE AGES

CASUALTIES French: 3,000-5,000 killed; English: 300-400 killed

In August 1415 Henry V of England sailed for Normandy with around 10,000 men, seeking to exploit a civil war in France to reassert the English kings' claim to the French throne. The campaign began with the siege of Harfleur. By the time the city was taken on 22 September, Henry's forces had been depleted by casualties and disease. Exhausted, hungry, and harassed by hostile local people, his army began to melt away as they marched north to English-held Calais. Henry found the road blocked by an army led by the constable of France, Charles d'Albret. Early on 25 October (St Crispin's Day), Henry drew up his forces, now probably 6,000-strong, at a point where the Calais road passed through a gap between thick woods.



ARMOUR AND BOWMEN

Armoured men-at-arms and archers were the two key components of the forces that contested the battle of Agincourt.

#### THE LONGBOW



His archers, placed on the flanks and interspersed with dismounted menat-arms in the centre, hammered pointed stakes into the ground in front of them. The far more numerous French were forced by the narrow battlefield to arrange their men in three "battles", one behind the other. Most of their men-at-arms were on foot. When the French attacked, the few mounted knights reached the English line first, but were held off by the archers' stakes. Under heavy arrow fire and milling about on soft, muddy ground, the cavalry were soon in desperate trouble. Their colleagues

advancing on foot, plodding through the mud in heavy armour, reached the English line exhausted and having suffered heavy casualties

As close combat developed, the English archers exchanged their bows for axes and swords, and joined the men-at-arms in a savage melée. At one point. Henry was told that his camp to the rear had been attacked. Fearing encirclement by the French, he ordered that the prisoners be killed in a last stand the English would not have had the manpower to guard them. The French plan to surround Henry had backfired. A mounted charge by a few hundred English cleared the remnants of the French army

> from the field. The French dead included d'Albret, three dukes, seven counts and more than 90 other noblemen.

> > KING HENRY V The king is shown here enthroned and carrying a shield with a fleur-de-lys motif, a symbol of his claim to he French crown.

HUNDRED YEARS' WAR

#### Siege of Orléans



Loire valley, central

France

FORCES English and French: 5.000: French: variable

> CASHAITIES No reliable estimates

May 1429

12 October 1428-7

Shortly after the death of Henry V in 1422, his infant son Henry VI was declared king of France as well as

of England. The regent, the Duke of Bedford, ruled from Paris, with the aid of his Burgundian allies, while the French dauphin, the future Charles VII. cowered south of the Loire. In 1428, Bedford sent an army south to seize the Loire river crossing at Orléans. The English concentrated on a

c.1412-1431

**IOAN OF ARC** 

two-towered fortress guarding a stone bridge south of the city. On

17-year-old Joan of Arc came to

her to save France. Her role has

been disputed, some arguing that

she was a master tactician, others

relegating her role to the purely

the tide of the war. An attack

on Paris in September failed

and in May 1430 Joan was

captured by the Burgundians.

Handed over to the English.

she was burned as a heretic.

inspirational. Either way, she turned

the French court in February 1429

convinced that voices were urging

PARADE SAN SHIPE PRINTERS the Bastard, commanding the defence

23 October, they seized it after mining efforts forced the French to abandon the position. The leader of the English army, the Earl of Salisbury, was killed by a cannon as he climbed one of the

two towers to "Everyone marvelled at observe the French defences. Thus the this, that she acted so siege was instituted wisely and clearly in under the leadership of the Earl of waging war, as if she Suffolk. The English was a captain who had insufficient forces to blockade had the experience of Orléans. They 20 or 30 years..." constructed a series of earth-and-wood Duc d'Alençon, testimony at Joan fortified positions of Arc's rehabilitation, 1456 around the city, but

> able to filter in supplies and troop reinforcements. By December, Jean

the French were



DESTINY'S COURT Château Chinon, where Charles VII held court in 1429. On 4 March, Joan of Arc, the daughter of a tenant farmer, arrived there. Her miraculous visions helped rally the French cause and insni them to victory.

of the city, probably had stronger forces than the English, although the latter had been reinforced by around 1,500 Burgundians. The French. however, remained largely passive. When, with the aid of a Scottish contingent, they intercepted an English supply convoy approaching Orléans from Paris on 12 February, they were fought off by the convoy's able commander, Sir John Fastolf. The arrival of Joan of Arc at Charles VII's court at Chinon, however, began a transformation of morale in the French camp. The defection of the Burgundian contingent in March also undermined the English position. In April 1429 Charles allowed Ioan to attempt the relief of Orléans. Under her inspiration, an army some 5,000 strong marched to Orléans and safely passed the English strongpoints. Overcoming the resistance of the senior French commanders, she successfully urged a series of sorties that took a chain of strongpoints by assault. By 7 May the

#### COUNTERPOISE TREBUCHET



As the weight on one end of the pivot arm dropped, the sling on the other end flew up launching a missile up to 300 m



Bodkin arrowheads such as these would have pierced vulnerable points in armour. In the hands of skilful longbowmen they wrought lethal destruction on the French.

English were left in occupation of only a few bastions northwest of the city. They then formed up for battle in the open, but the French refused to be drawn into a direct assault, and the English abandoned Orléans. Joan was wounded by an arrow in the fighting, but went on to inspire further French successes along the Loire valley, culminating in the battle of Patay on 19 June, in which an English army led by Lord John Talbot and Sir John Falstolf was routed with heavy losses. By 16 July the French had triumphed as far north as Rheims, where the dauphin was crowned king of France.





Western France

Châtillon

17 July 1453 English: 6,000 men; French: 7,000-10,000

with 300 cannon

No reliable estiantes

The closing stages of the Hundred Years War brought an almost unbroken series of French victories. During a truce in 1444-49, Charles VII avoided the problem of unemployed soldiers rampaging around the country by paying them to serve the state in compagnies d'ordonnances - the beginnings of a standing army. He also employed the brothers Jean and Gaspard Bureau to develop a well-organized mobile artillery train which played a vital role

the English, battering stone walls with cannonfire. They also used cannon as field artillery to decisive effect at the battle of Formigny in April 1450. By summer 1451, France had driven the English out of Normandy and conquered Aquitaine. Loyal to the English king, however, the nobles of Aquitaine appealed for help. An English army led by John Talbot, Earl of Shrewsbury, landed in October 1452 and regained

Bordeaux. In July

in the war's final years. From 1449,

the French took city after city from

GREAT HELM The conical or globular skull of a basinet helmet gave good protection

to the neck and side of the face.

Bureau who was battering its walls with his artillery. Aware the English were coming, Bureau turned his cannon around Talbot at the head of the English cavalry, was deceived into thinking the

1453, Talbot went to

withdrawing and charged the earthworks Bureau had thrown up to

rench were

"The artillery caused grievous harm to the English, for each shot knocked five or six men down..."

An eyewitness to the battle of Châtillon, 1453

#### the aid of the town of This blade has a diamond-shaped Châtillon (Castillon), profile to give extra stiffness. under siege by Jean Its acute point could burst apart links in chain mail. protect his forces. Fire from the French cannon and

THRUSTING SWORD

archers threw the cavalry into disarray. An eyewitness wrote, "The artillery caused grievous harm to the English, for each shot knocked five or six men down..."Talbot was killed after his horse was shot from under him and the English army eventually fled in disorder. The French went on to retake Aquitaine.

ROMANTIC KNIGHT

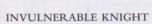
Dürer's famous engraving, The Knight, Death and the Devil, made in 1513, displays a splendid suit of Gothic armour.

## MEDIEVAL ARMOUR

BY THE 15TH CENTURY EUROPEAN KNIGHTS HAD OPTED FOR FULL STEEL PLATE ARMOUR, WHICH, WITH ITS RIGID SURFACE, PROVIDED BETTER PROTECTION THAN CHAINMAIL.

There were two main centres for the manufacture of plate armour: southern Germany and northern Italy. The style of armour made in Germany, such as the suit shown here, is called "Gothic". Suits of

armour were extremely expensive custommade objects and their decorative detail was intended to be admired, which is why knights at this period stopped wearing cloth surcoats over their armour. Although it looks cumbersome, the armour was painstakingly shaped to fit the body and its weight of about 25kg (55lb) was evenly distributed. As a result, the knight could move perfectly freely, including mounting and dismounting his horse unaided. It did, however, take a considerable time to put the armour on



Encased in plate armour, the knight had no need to carry a shield. The armour would resist any slashing blow from a sword, forcing enemies instead to stab at weak points at joins between the plates. To block this ploy, a knight might wear chainmail under the plate armour - a

weighty combination - or have chain sewn into the joins. A heavy blow from a mace might still injure the knight without piercing the armour, but the curved helmet was well designed to deflect blows and was much better for this purpose than the flat-topped helmets of the period of the crusades. A knight in this armour was truly vulnerable

only to two types of weapon: powerful steel crossbows and firearms. The increasing use of handguns in the 16th century, however, eventually led to the abandonment of full suits of plate armour.

ort letrabuge cou bon ceual fount.



Poleyn: knee defence with wing to protect back of joint



armour. Features such as this rose at the hinge on the sallet helmet's visor would help deflect the force of any blows.



HINGE at the join between the greaves and sabonet.

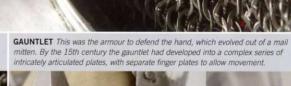
BUCKLE Sections of plate armour were laced or buckled to a padded undergarment or arming doublet.

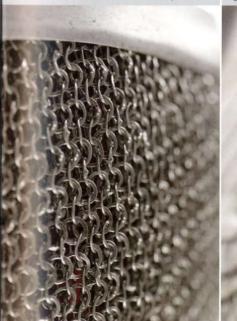
CHAINMAIL was used to protect exposed joints such as by the armpits. Occasionally full mail coats were worn under plate.

CUISSE This rear view of the knight's upper leg armour shows the intricate work necessary to join the plates

BESAGEW These small round shields were attached to chainmail at the shoulder to defend the armpit. Although uncommon in the 14th century, this feature reappeared

in 15th-century Gothic armour.











The knights shown here are wearing chainmail under cloth surcoats with plate armour on their arms and legs, a combination that was common in the 14th century.

Origin Northern Germany

Style Gothic Date Late 15th century Height Up to 2m (6ft) Thickness 2mm (0.1in) Weight 25kg (55lbs)

articulated plates ending

plate armour

## TRIUMPH OF THE INFANTRY

A NUMBER OF BATTLES IN THE 14th and 15th centuries showed that non-noble footsoldiers could defeat high-status mounted knights in pitched battle - a profound shock to those who held medieval views of warfare and society. Clever tactical innovation and disciplined ferocity were usually the secret. The advice given by Flemish general William of Iülich to his footsoldiers at

Courtrai was: "Do not allow the enemy to break through your ranks. Do not be afraid. Kill both man and horse." The relative decline in the effectiveness of armoured cavalry through this period was also seen in the success of bowmen and the introduction of gunpowder weapons, although mounted soldiers were to remain a key element in warfare into the 19th century.

FRENCH-FLEMISH WAR

#### Courtrai



Courtrai (Kortrijk),

In 1302 Guy, Count of Flanders, rebelled against his feudal overlord, Philip of France and soon controlled almost all of Flanders. Philip sent his brother, Robert of Artois, to bring them to heel. Guy's army consisted of

"Each made his confession on the spot, and then they crowded together, one against another. Thus they formed as it were a stone wall to endure the frightful ordeal."

Chronicler Louis de Velthem on the Battle of Courtrai

Flemish merchants, artisans, peasants, and a few nobles, all on foot, armed with pikes or wooden clubs known as goedendags ("good-days"). The French knights were impatient to charge and, riding through their footsoldiers, they crossed the ditches and advanced on the Flemish infantry with couched lances. The enemy did not flinch, standing with



on the ground to injure

horses and their riders.

ANGLO-SCOTTISH WARS

#### Bannockburn



South of Stirling,

CASUALTIES English: up to 15,000 dead;

In 1314 King Edward II of England sent an army northwards to confront the forces of Robert Bruce (King Robert I of Scotland), whose raids and ambushes threatened to drive the English from Scottish soil. Robert was besieging English-held Stirling as Edward's army neared. The Scottish king moved his forces to a carefully chosen battlefield on a slope above a stream called Bannockburn. Forest and marsh restricted the width of the battlefront to about a mile. There were some initial skirmishes on 23 June, in one of which Robert clashed with the English knight Henry de Bohun, killing him with a battleaxe. The main battle was joined on 24 June. The Scottish formed up in their traditional infantry formation, the schiltron. This resembled the

Greek phalanx,

with footsoldiers

making a wall of

shoulder to shoulder

24 June 1314 EUBCES English: 25,000: Scottish: 9,000

hundred Flemish dead

Scottish: 4,000 dead

shields from which their pikes thrust outwards. Unlike the phalanx, though, the schiltron infantry faced outward in all directions - to the rear and flanks as well as the front. like the 18th-century infantry square. The English knights foolishly deployed in front of their archers, preventing them from shooting, and charged across the burn at the Scots. The schiltrons held firm. Even when a knight broke through the bristling shieldwall, he was surrounded and hacked

OCAL HERO

Robert Bruce, whose statue

Stirling Castle is shown

here, remains a hero for

Scottish nationalists

#### CONFUSED MELÉE

mounted knights fell prey to the schiltrons.

down. The bottom of the valley was soon filled with a confused mass of English knights and footsoldiers floundering in the marshy ground. tried to fire on the Scots but to little effect. King Edward took an early decision to flee the field, further His army soon followed, suffering Scottish independence. It also gave the Scots a false confidence in the offensive power of their schiltrons.

This medieval illustration epitomizes the chaos and confusion of Bannockburn as

Into this mass the schiltrons advanced to deadly effect. English longbowmen undermining the morale of his men. heavy casualties as it fled. The decisive victory enabled Robert to re-establish At Halidon Hill in 1333, the English inflicted a severe defeat on the Scots by using their longbowmen to pour arrow fire into the dense Scottish formations.

#### SWISS WARS OF INDEPENDENCE



LOCATION By the Aegerisee, 15 November 1315 FORCES Austrian: 8,000 with cavalry; Swiss: 1,500 infantry and archers CASUALTIES

KFY

In 1315 Leopold of Austria led an army into Switzerland to enforce Habsburg authority over the Swiss. He was ambushed in a mountain pass by a much smaller Swiss force that hurled boulders and tree trunks down on the Austrians, throwing them into confusion. Leopold's knights could not deploy in the confined space and were virtually annihilated when the Swiss charged down the slopes, stabbing and hacking them with their halberds.

#### CAVALRY AT BAY

Infantry with pikes and clubs hold an armoured cavalry force in check. Pikes were longer than knights' lances.





#### Murten



Murten (Morat), west 7.000-10.000 killed: of Bern, Switzerland Swiss losses small

Duke Charles the Bold of Burgundy was an innovative and ambitious leader who created a well-trained standing army, equipped with field artillery. Yet in the footsoldiers of Switzerland he faced the 15th century's most potent military force. In June 1476 the Burgundian army besieged Swiss-held Murten. They created strong defensive

22 June 1476

Swiss: 25,000:

15.000-20.000

CASUALTIES Burgundian

Burgundian:

field fortifications of trenches and palisades. But the Swiss infantry, supported by cavalry supplied by Austria and Germany arrived so swiftly that they took the Burgundians completely by surprise. Not stopping to deploy in battle order, the Swiss attacked immediately, finding the trenchworks only lightly held. When the majority of the Burgundian army began to arrive in haste from their camp, they were overrun and slaughtered by the Swiss pikemen.

#### FALL OF THE BOLD

Six months after Murten, on 5 January 1476, Charles the Bold was again defeated by the Swiss at Nancy, and this time was killed. This painting of the event is by French artist Delacroix

community at their stronghold of



HUSSITE WARS

#### Kutna Hora



21-22 December 1421 FORCES Sigismund's forces: unknown; Hussites: CASUALTIES

Kutna Hora, Bohemia, No reliable estimates Czech Republic

In 1419 the pope declared a crusade against the Hussites, Czech religious reformers inspired by the teachings of Jan Hus, executed in 1415. One radical branch of the Hussites, known as the Taborites, formed a religious-military

#### c.1376-1424

#### IAN ZIZKA

Czech general Jan Zizka learned his fighting skills in the service of King Wenceslas IV of Bohemia. After the battle of Tannenberg in 1410, he returned to Prague and was converted to the strict beliefs of Jan Hus. When the suppression of the Hussites began in 1419, he became the leading organizer of the Hussite armed camp at Tabor. His revolutionary tactics, built around the use of wagon forts, achieved some outstanding



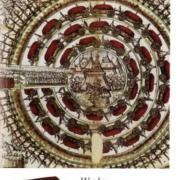
Tabor. Mostly peasants, though including people from all levels of Czech society, the Taborites became a disciplined military force, bonded by their shared religious beliefs and governed by strict rules of conduct. Under the inspired leadership of Ian Zizka they adopted the latest available weaponry, including handguns and long thin cannon they called 'snakes". Their war wagons provided them with a flexible means of conducting mobile warfare. Their most remarkable operation was at Kutna Hora in the winter of 1421. There Zizka's Taborite army was encircled by King Sigismund's numerically superior forces. Although Sigismund's armoured cavalry was kept at bay by the Taborite artillery, the Hussites apparently faced imminent destruction. But Zizka organized his wagons into a column and charged the enemy lines. The battle wagons advanced with all guns blazing and punched through to safety. Sigismund failed to mount a pursuit, considering the Hussites defeated. Zizka, however, soon mounted a counteroffensive. despite still having numerically inferior forces. His normal tactic was to mount raids that would draw his opponent into attacking his wagon fort, then, at the right moment, sortie with cavalry, bowmen, and pikemen to savage the enemy. Relentlessly pursued by Zizka's apparently unbeatable army. igismund's demoralized force were driven back out of Bohemia.

#### HALBERDS

The halberd was a highly effective infantry weapon, a ombination of a pike and an axe. It was the main weapon of Swiss armies in the 14th century,

#### HUSSITE WAR WAGONS

Drawing wagons into a circle for defence dated back to ancient times However, the Hussites developed the wagon fort, or "wagenburg". into a formidable defensive system The wagons, reinforced with iron as armour, were chained together to make a continuous barrier. The might also be surrounded by a palisade. Crossbows and hand gur were fired through loopholes; other wagons had cannon mounted on them. Pikemen were ready to repel any enemy soldiers who made it through this hail of fire.





## NORTHERN WARS

A SERIES OF CONFLICTS fought at Europe's northern edge from the 13th to the 15th century eventually saw the rise of Lithuania, Muscovite Russia, Poland, and Prussia as important states. Much of the fighting had a religious edge, between Catholic and

Orthodox Christians and between Christians and non-Christians, The Teutonic Knights, a military order founded in Palestine, carried the spirit of the Crusades into these northern lands. Ultimately Poland and Lithuania united and held back the tide of German expansion.



SWORD BRETHREN CAMPAIGNS

#### Saule



22 September 1236 FORCES Livonians: unknown: Lithuanians: unknown

CASUALTIES

to protect Christian

from pagan attack. In

into pagan territory but

Lithuanians. Their leader.

which were hurled at short

against unwieldy Livonian

heavy cavalry. Chronicler

records the Livonians were

"cut down like women".

MEMORY OF WAR

The Sigulai monument

tarks the victory that

enabled Mindaugas to

Mindaugas, used light cavalry armed with javelins,

range - highly effective

Petrus von Dusburg

was routed by the

September 1236, the

Livonian Knights: around 50 killed

Saule (Siaulai)

LOCATION On Kulikovo Pole (Snipe's Field), by CASUALTIES Don river, Russia

The Livonian Brethren of By the mid 14th century, civil wars the Sword was a military had weakened the authority of the order established in 1204 Mongol Golden Horde, which had dominated Russia for a century. Prince colonists around the Baltic Dmitri of Moscow took advantage of this by ceasing regular tribute payments. In response the Mongol Livonian leader Volquin Schenk led an expedition

"... they were routed by the Christians, and some were struck down with weapons, and others drowned in the river, a countless number of them."

The Chronicle of Novgorod

general Mamai raised an army, which included Genoese crossbowmen. He allied with Jogaila of Lithuania and Oleg of Ryazan, planning to launch a massed combined attack against the Muscovites. But Dmitri managed to intercept the Mongols at Kulikovo, near the Don river, before they could link up with their allies, who were just 40km (25 miles) away. Before the battle a champion from each side met in single combat, but both died. The ensuing fighting was fierce and both

sides suffered heavy casualties. Dmitri eventually won the day by launching a flanking counterattack, and Mamai fled the field. After the battle Dmitri was given the soubriquet "Donski" ("of the Don"). Kulikovo was the first battle in which a Russian army was victorious over the Mongols.

#### MUSCOVITE TRIUMPH

Dmitri Donski is shown here both before and after the victory that marked the end of Mongol rule over Russia.

#### TEUTONIC KNIGHTS VS POLAND Grunwald

MUSCOVITE-MONGOL WAR

Kulikovo



15 July 1410 FORCES

8 September 1380

Muscovite Russians:

No reliable estimates

30.000-80.000:

30,000-125,000

FORCES

from their own side. The Knights rallied, forcing the Lithuanians on the right flank to retreat. They seemed to be getting the better of the fighting until Ladislav launched a reserve force from a forest behind the main army. A Teutonic flanking counterattack failed and the Knights were crushed.

#### 1360-1410

#### **ULRICH VON** IUNGINGEN

In 1407 Ulrich von Jungingen was elected as the 23rd grand master of the Order of the Teutonic Knights, in succession to his brother Konrad. It was an unfortunate choice as he was arrogant and irascible and embarked on an aggressive policy that led to war with Poland and Lithuania in 1409. He fatally underestimated the Poles and Lithuanians, especially their footsoldiers. That he led his men bravely is not in doubt; at one point in the battle of Grunwald he personally charged the strongest Polish unit. But he was killed in the final stages of Grunwald, along with most of his knights. Von Jungingen's successor as grand master, Heinrich von Plauen struggled to keep the Order's holdings from complete extinction; land had been lost both to Poland and Lithuania and the loss of life at Grunwald meant the Teutonic Knights had to rely on hiring mercenaries, an expense they could ill afford.

### THIRTEEN YEARS WAR Chojnice (Conitz) 18 September 1454



The Thirteen Years War began in 1454

(Conitz), northern

FORCES Polish: 20.000 Teutonic Knights: 15,000 CASUALTIES Polish 3,000

killed, 300 knights prisoner: Teutonic

476-1492

when leading Prussian cities allied with Poland against the Teutonic Knights. Chojnice had been under siege by the Poles and their Prussian allies since April 1454. The mercenary Bernard Szumborski, hired by the Teutonic Knights, led an army to relieve the city. The Polish army, led by their king Casimir IV, was almost wholly composed of heavy cavalry, their commanders believing infantry and artillery would be unnecessary. The Poles wheeled around to face the Teutonic force. Initially their tactics of massed cavalry charge were successful, breaking the Teutonic lines and taking Szumborski prisoner. But the Poles were thrown into disarray when a force of Teutonic Knights broke out of the besieged city and attacked their rear. forcing them to retreat. In the panic Szumborski succeeded in escaping and helped to organize the pursuit of the fleeing Polish army. The Poles were completely defeated at

Teutonic Knights in 1466. TWO-HANDED SWORD

Choinice, but they eventually

triumphed over the

Double-edged two-handed swords were heavy weapons used for combat on foot. Only plate armour could resist a blow.

#### RUSSO-SWEDISH WAR Neva



15 July 1240 FORCES

Swedes; unknown; Novgoroders:

of Neva and Izhora rivers Russia

CASUALTIES

In July 1240 a Swedish army led by Birger Iarl attacked the prosperous Russian city of Novgorod. The Swedish army included Norwegian and Finnish contingents; the invasion was ostensibly launched to punish the Novgoroders for encroaching on the lands of their Finnish allies, but the Swedes also sought to gain control over the mouth of the Neva river and bar Russian access to the Baltic. Prince Alexander Yaroslavovitch, the son of Prince Yaroslav of Vladimir, led a small Russian army up the Volkhov river to defend Novgorod. He approached the Swedish camp under cover of thick fog, and launched a surprise attack before the Swedes could assail the city itself. The Swedish army was soundly defeated, and survivors were able to flee across the Izhora river only because of the poor light. After the battle Alexander was given the nickname "Nevski" ("of the Neva") in honour of his victory. The success

at the Neva saved Russia from an all-



#### SAINTLY PRINCE

Alexander Nevski (1218-63), victor of the battles of Neva and Lake Peipus, was declared a saint by the Orthodox Church.

out invasion from the north at a time when it faced attack from the Mongols in the east. After his victory, Alexander argued with the rulers of Novgorod, who thought that his growing influence posed a threat to them, and he was exiled from the city.

#### TEUTONIC KNIGHTS VS NOVGOROD Lake Peipus



5 April 1242 FORCES Tuetonic Knights: fores: unknown

OCATION Near Lake Peipus, Russian-No reliable estimates Estonian horder

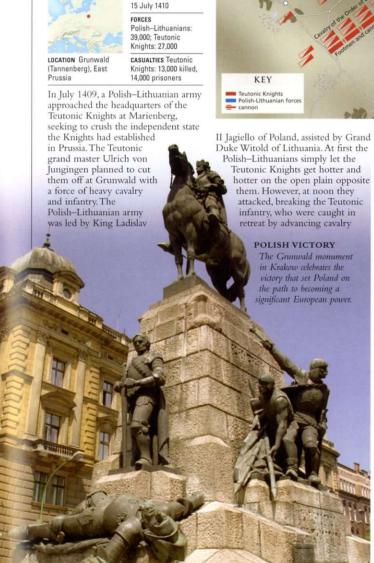
In spring 1242, the Teutonic grand master Gerhard von Malburg led his Knights across the frozen ice of Lake Peipus to attack Pskov. Before they could reach it, they encountered

Alexander Nevski, recalled from exile to defend the city. The armies clashed on the ice on 5 April. The Teutonic Knights, possibly outnumbered 60 to one, attacked in a wedge and hours of hand-to-hand fighting ensued. The Knights finally retreated in the face of a fresh cavalry charge. In addition, their heavy armour caused the ice to crack, and many of them drowned as they retreated across it. Their defeat put a stop to Teutonic plans to conquer Russia.

#### ICE BATTLE

Alexander Nevski leads the Russian charge across the ice in this representation of the battle of Lake Peipus.





## RISE OF THE OTTOMANS

IN ABOUT 150 YEARS, the Ottoman Turks grew from a small band of ghazis, or holy warriors, settled on land in northwest Anatolia, into the rulers of an empire straddling Europe and Asia. They destroyed the Byzantine empire and conquered the great city of Constantinople, while also extending their dominion over the Christian Balkans. The secret of their success

was partly a cunning diplomacy that took full advantage of the weaknesses and divisions of their enemies. But it was also their successful blending of traditional Turkish warrior spirit with the latest technology borrowed from Europe, exemplified by the use of cannon at the siege of Constantinople. By the mid-15th century, their advance looked set to overwhelm central Europe.

OTTOMAN-BYZANTINE WARS

#### Siege of Nicomedia



Osman's forces: unknown; Byzantines unknown

DATE 1333-37

FORCES

No reliable estimates

In the early 14th century an ambitious Anatolian Turkish warrior, Osman, was establishing himself as the leader in a continuous war of raids conducted against the Byzantine empire. By 1301 he controlled land around the city of Nicaea (Iznik) and, as his success against the Byzantines grew, more Turkish warriors were attracted to his banner. Soon after Osman's death in 1326, his army captured the major city of Brusa (Bursa), which became the first Ottoman capital. When Byzantine emperor Andronicus III sent an army to relieve Nicaea in 1328 it was soundly defeated by Osman's son, Orkhan, In 1331 Nicaea fell to the Ottomans, leaving Nicomedia (Izmit)

the only major Byzantine stronghold in Anatolia. When Orkhan laid siege to the city in 1333, Andronicus sought to buy him off by paying a hefty sum in tribute. It was to no avail. Four years later the Ottomans took the city anyway, making it their new capital.



SULTAN OSMAN

Osman I began life as a ghazi, a warrior raider, and founded an emirate that would grow to control Anatolia and the Balkans.

OTTOMAN-SERBIAN WAR

#### Kosovo



15 June 1389 FORCES Ottomans: 30,000: Serbs and allies: 15.000-20.000

Kosovo Polje, near Pristina Kosovo

CASUALTIES

The Christian world began to wake up to the threat posed by the Ottomans in 1365, when Sultan Murad I moved his capital from Asia to Edirne Adrianople) in Europe. The following year Pope Urban V called for crusade against he Ottomans, but the response was largely ineffectual; Murad exploited divisions between Christians in the Balkans to extend his

Ottomans occupied the southern Serbian city of Nis. The Serbian ruler. Tsar Lazar, assembled a force of Serbs. Bosnians, Wallachians, Hungarians, Albanians, and Saxon mercenaries to take on the Ottomans, Murad marched north, attracting the support of some disaffected Serbs. Accounts of the battle at Kosovo Polje are confused. It appears that Lazar himself was killed quite early in the fighting. Murad was also killed, stabbed by a Serb who was pretending to surrender. The Ottomans carried the day, largely through the treachery of Serbs who betrayed their own

> side and through the bold fighting skills of Murad's son Bayezid. The outcome of the battle was that Serbia became a loval ally of the Turks.

> > CAVALRY TURK

An Ottoman sipahi a feudal cavalryman is depicted on an

talian Renaissance plate.

CRUSADE OF NICOPOLIS

## Nicopolis



Nikopol, Bulgaria

Sultan Bayezid, Murad's successor as Ottoman leader, was an energetic warrior who earned the nickname

25 September 1396

Christians: 16,000;

Ottomans: 20 000

CASUALTIES Heavier for

Ottoman victors than

defeated Christians

"Thunderbolt" and laid siege to Constantinople itself. Fearing he would be next to face Bayezid's army, King Sigismund of Hungary appealed to the French court for a crusade against the Turks. As France and England were at peace, there were

many knights keen for a chance to show their valour. The

Comte de Nevers, son of the Duke of Burgundy, and other notables set off for Hungary with some 8,000 men. There 3,000 were taken prisoner and most they met up with Sigismund's army

and advanced down the Danube into Ottoman-controlled Bulgaria, A force of Knights Hospitaller sailed from Rhodes to join them. The Christian army laid siege to the Ottoman stronghold of Nicopolis, believing Bayezid to be far away. But the sultan hurried north by forced marches and took up position a few kilometres outside Nicopolis, Brushing aside appeals for caution from King Sigismund, the French knights insisted on opening the battle with a charge. Many were unhorsed by sharpened stakes planted in their path or arrow fire, but they fought on with great

valour on foot, "Then each [warrior] only to be enveloped by was ordered to kill his Ottoman sipahis. own prisoners, and for Sigismund then led the reserves into those who did not the battle and wish to do so the king looked on the point of carrying [Bayezid] appointed the day when others in their place." Bayezid's Serbian allies, under Stefan Lazarevich,

16-year-old Johann Schiltberger, who was spared because of his age

cavalry charge that put the knights to flight. Only a few escaped by boat or on foot. About of those were slaughtered next day.

weighed in with a

CRUSADE OF VARNA

influence. In 1386 the

#### Varna



10 November 1444 FORCES Hungarians and allies: 30,000; Ottomans: possibly 60.000 CASUALTIES Probably

allies killed

half of Hungarians and

LOCATION Black Sea coast of Bulgaria

Murad II, sultan from 1421, resumed the Ottoman campaign of conquest in southern Europe that had faltered after Timur's defeat of Bayezid in 1402 (see p94). His progress was halted. however, by a spirited fightback led by Hungarian general János Hunyadi. Pope Eugenius IV declared the campaign a crusade, but it won little support outside the Balkans. Hunyadi. King Ladislas of Hungary and Poland, and Vlad Dracula of Wallachia found themselves facing superior Ottoman forces on the Black Sea coast. Hunyadi took up a strong position, using wagons to make a defensive line, and for a time the battle was evenly balanced. Then Ladislas ill-advisedly waded into the thick of the fighting and was killed. After the Ottomans displayed the king's head on a spear, the battle was lost for the Christians.

#### IÁNOS HUNYADI

Between 1437 and 1443, Hunyadi, the Hungarian national hero, inflicted a series of defeats on the Turks that drove them out of Transylvania and carried the war south of the Danube. After the death of King Ladislas at Varna, Hunyadi ruled Hungary as regent. He lost to the Ottomans again at the second battle of Kosovo in 1448, but defeated them decisively at the battle of Belgrade in July 1456, a month before his death.



OTTOMAN-BYZANTINE WARS

#### Constantinople



Constantino

FORCES Ottomans: 80 000: Byzantine: 7.000

DATE 6 April-29 May 1453

A massive Ottoman

army blockaded the

fleet of around 120

ships sailed into the

although they were

Golden Horn by a

boom laid across the

entrance. The bombardment of the

the heavy pieces firing about seven

rounds a day. Soon breaches began to

outer walls began on 12 April.

appear, but the defenders

repulsed all assaults

by the janissaries. To

increase the

22 April the

Ottomans

hauled ships

from the

sea of Marmora,

the inlet of the

CASHAITIES No reliable estimates

Sultan Mehmet II, who succeeded his father, Murad II, in 1451, was determined to achieve the conquest of Constantinople, which was almost all that remained of the once-great Byzantine empire. He built fortresses on the Bosphorus and the Dardanelles. isolating the city from relief or supply by sea. To deal with the apparently impregnable thousand-year-old city walls, he ordered the building of the largest cannon yet seen. In April 1453 teams of oxen hauled this and other

smaller pieces to face the formidable walls. city by land while a stopped from entering

#### BOSPHORUS CASTLE

Mehmet II built Rumeli Castle on the European bank of the Bosphorus in 1522 to block the sea passage to Constantinople

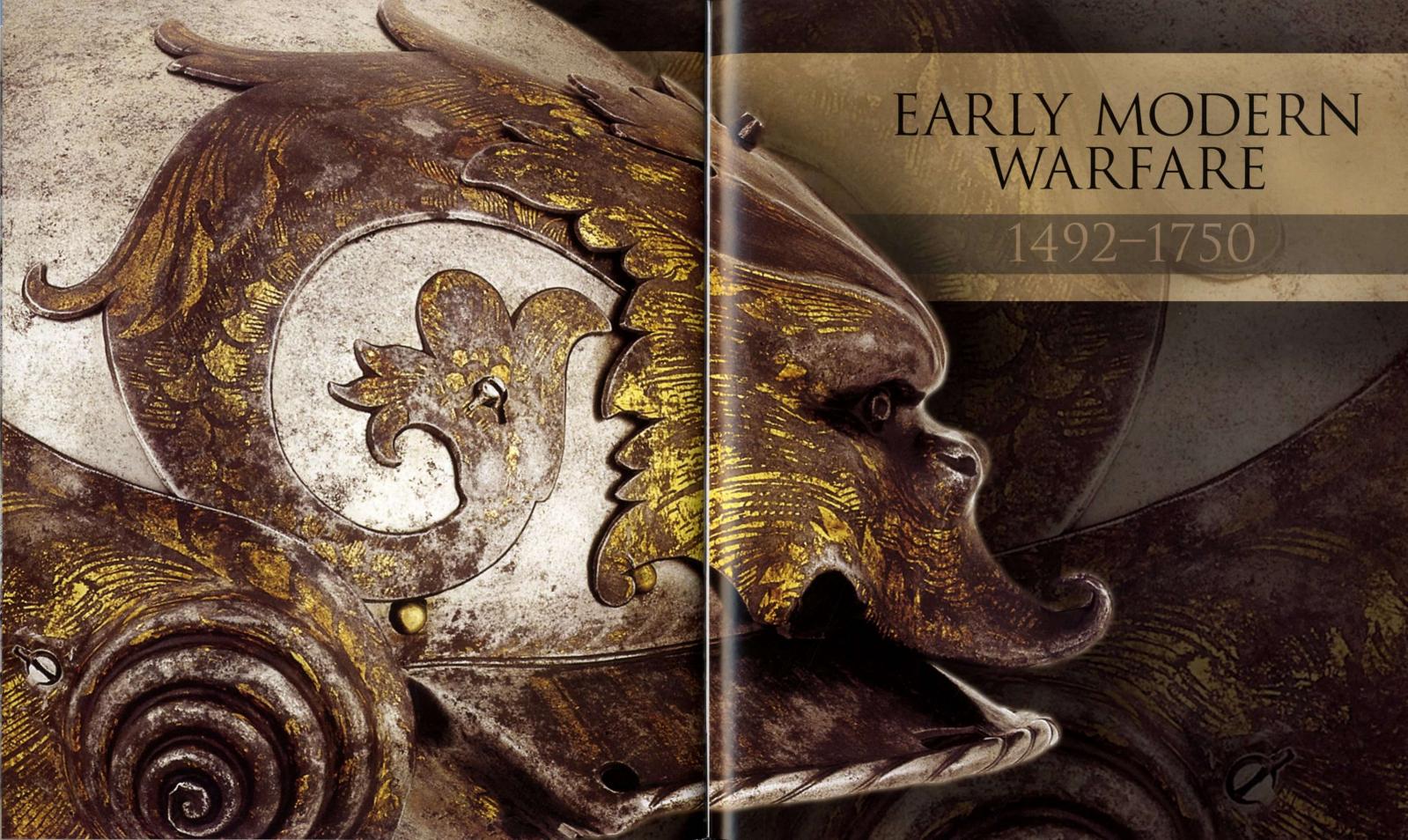
Bosphorus overland and launched them inside the Golden Horn. The defenders, already thinly spread, now had to man the relatively weak sea wall. A combined land and sea assault was begun on the morning of 29 May. Some janissaries found a way into the city by an undefended side gate. The last Byzantine emperor. Constantine XI, died leading a doomed counterattack. That afternoon, as his soldiers

"All through the day the Turks made a great slaughter of Christians through the city. The blood flowed in the city like rainwater in the gutters after a sudden storm, and the corpses of Turks and Christians were thrown into the Dardanelles, where they floated out to sea like melons along a canal."

#### WITNESS TO WAR NICOLO BARBARO

Nicolo Barbaro, a Venetian surgeon and member of a noble family. witnessed the siege and the slaughter that followed the capture of Constantinople, which he describes here. His account takes the form of a diary. Genoese and Venetians, as well as a few Spanish and other Christian soldiers,





CANNON POWER

battle of Poltava in 1709.

# FIREARMS AND FLEETS

THE GROWING IMPORTANCE OF GUNPOWDER WEAPONS was a vital factor in land warfare from the 16th century onwards, while ocean-going sailing ships armed with cannon revolutionized naval battles. Louis de la Tremouille, a 16th-century biographer of the French knight, bemoaned these changes: "What is the use any more of the skill-at-arms of the knights, their strength, their hardihood, their discipline ... when such weapons may be used in war?"

> Spain's success in the 1500s against the Aztec and Inca empires in the Americas demonstrated European military prowess - its steel weapons, cavalry, and ruthless attitude to warfare. But the Spanish conquest did not typify Europe's relationship to the rest of the world in this period. Powers outside Europe had little

difficulty keeping up with the new gunpowder technology. as peoples as diverse as the Japanese and the Ottoman Turks showed. Throughout most of the 16th century. indeed, Christian Europe was on the defensive against the Muslim Ottomans, Although Europeans fought around the world - in the West Indies, the Indian Ocean, and the Pacific - it was mostly against one another, in

an extension of the wars that almost continuously Artillery helped Russia to ravaged Europe itself. Much of this warfare had a victory over Sweden in the religious edge after the split between the Protestant

and Catholic versions of Christianity divided Europe at the Reformation, although dynastic conflicts reinforced or cut across religious divides.

#### CHANGES TO LAND WARFARE

The challenge posed by cannon meant that, by the early 1500s, siege warfare in Europe was already being transformed through the construction of new types of fortification. Instead of tall stone walls, early-modern fortresses had bastions, or projections, jutting out in and other missile weapons could cover all approaches. striking the relatively low walls. Besiegers therefore had to adopt painstaking new tactics, digging zigzag sap trenches towards the walls to prevent exposure to direct fire, while using mortars to lob munitions into sought ways of deploying firearms and cannon to good effect alongside more traditional resources. The Spanish tercios, the most effective infantry of the 16th

a smaller number of soldiers armed with matchlock arquebus guns. As more effective flintlock muskets came into use, throughout the 17th century the balance shifted, with the proportion of pikemen in European armies decreasing. By the early 18th century the widespread use of bayonets was making pikes redundant and every infantryman could be armed with a musket. Cavalry evolved in the course of the 16th century, from knights charging with couched lance to horsemen fighting with pistol and sword, though their role as high-status shock troops remained unchanged. Armour reached its peak of development in the 16th century, but then began to wane in popularity because of its increasing ineffectiveness against firearms. It was still worn throughout most of the 17th century, but generally covered smaller areas of the body in greater thickness.

#### NAVAL POWER

Sea warfare in the Mediterranean in the 16th century another - even if some of the galleys now mounted cannon in their bows. But there were startling innovations in Korea, where ironclad "turtle ships". fitted with cannon, proved formidable vessels, repelling Japan's attempts at invasion. The most significant development, however, was the ocean-going fleets of Spain, France, England, and the Netherlands. These countries' sailing ships, increasingly purpose-built for

guns - one 17th-century warship, for instance, might have as many cannon as a whole land army. Although

boarding still happened, naval battles between sailing

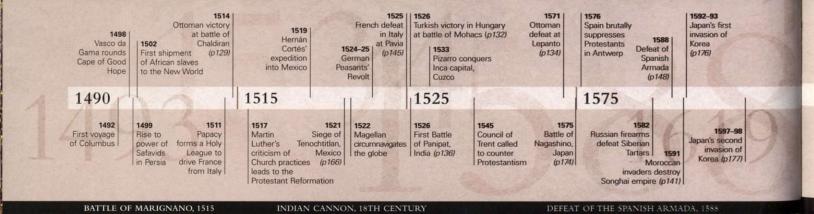
#### COSTLY PROFESSIONALISM

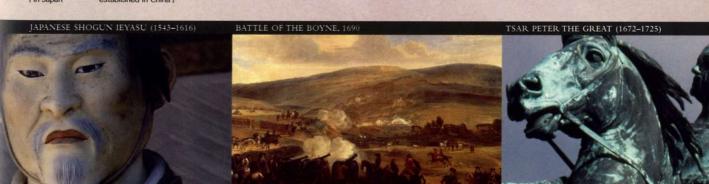
ships developed into standoff cannon duels.

Only states with considerable resources could build and operate such fleets of warships, while on land bastion fortresses and large armies were also costly. forces took up 60 per cent of the government's revenue in peacetime and 90 per cent when at war. world, with oared galleys seeking to ram and board one although private companies such as the British East India Company still managed armies in far-off colonies. The stress on drill, which had been found to increase the effectiveness of infantry, came to the fore. Countries founded military academies and established clear ranks in their armies. They issued soldiers with uniforms and standardized weapons, and subjected them to draconian discipline. By the 1700s European armies and navies were impressive professional forces.

#### NEW FIREARMS

Small-arm technology developed rapidly in the early-modern period. This 17th-century wheel-lock pistol was ready to fire at any time, unlike earlier required a constantly lit length of match in order to work. Both were superseded by the flintlock.

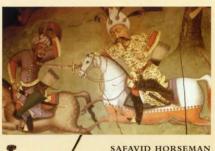




Dutch establish colony at victory at the Boyne, Tokugawa **Enalish Civil** shogunate comes St Petersburg, to power in Japan 1650 1710 1600 1690 1618-48 1638 1675-76 Thirty Years Ottomans win Arabs seize Great Northern back Baghdad War begins power from Portuguese Russia and its introduced Jacobites at conquers Culloder

# ISLAMIC EMPIRES (Madrid 1580-1640):

IN THE 16TH AND 17TH CENTURIES the Islamic empires - the Ottoman Turks across Europe and Asia, the Safavids in Persia, the Moguls in India - were among the world's most dynamic powers, with large and sophisticated armed forces. Their fighting style was characterized Tripoli 1551 by a combination of the traditional aggression and mobility of Asian cavalry with the latest gunpowder technology; Mogul emperor Akbar, for example, was an early user of mobile field artillery.

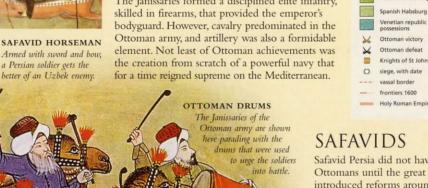


a Persian soldier gets the

better of an Uzbek enemy.

#### MUSLIM TROOPS

The Ottomans were capable of the bureaucratic organization needed to create a standing army and could also raise feudal cavalry from their landed class. Their most renowned troops, the Janissaries, were originally Christian-born slaves who had been brought up as Muslim soldiers. The Janissaries formed a disciplined elite infantry, skilled in firearms, that provided the emperor's bodyguard. However, cavalry predominated in the element. Not least of Ottoman achievements was



Safavid Persia did not have as strong an army as the Ottomans until the great Shah Abbas (1571-1629) introduced reforms around the start of the 17th century. Using European advisers he created standing forces of well-organized artillery and musket-armed infantry. He also set up a force of cavalry responsible directly to himself, rather than relying on tribal horsemen. These reforms turned the Safavids into a dangerous rival to the Ottomans, as Shah Abbas showed when he routed the Turks at Sis in 1606. The prolonged warfare that ensued over the following three decades exhausted both empires.

conquests of Selim I, 1512-20

#### DECLINE

In the 16th century Europeans regarded Islamic armies with the highest respect. But by the second half of the 17th century the Muslim empires were in decline, suffering from decaying political and social structures and losing ground rapidly to the Europeans in technology and organization. Typically, the Janissaries, once so admired, became a weakness in Ottoman forces through their political intriguing and their conservatism. which obstructed military reform.

#### INDIAN SPLENDOUR

The wealth of 18th-century India, shown in this garment of silk, gold, and silver, was reflected in large and richly accoutred armies.

## OTTOMAN GLORY AND DECLINE

FROM THE FALL OF BYZANTIUM in 1453 through to the late 16th century the Ottoman Turks had probably the most effective fighting forces in the world, on both land and sea. They conquered Egypt, dominated the Mediterranean, and managed a campaign against the Austrian empire on one frontier while also fighting the Persian Safavids on the other.

#### OTTOMAN WARS OF EXPANSION

#### Chaldiran



FORCES Ottomans: 60,000; Safavids: up to 50,000 CASUALTIES Probably fairly even

Between Tabriz and Lake Van

Peninsul

GROWTH OF

In the 16th and

17th centuries the

Ottoman empire

grew to encompas.

almost the entire

Ismail I, founder of the Safavid dynasty in Persia, attracted the special hatred of Sultan Selim I, not only as a Shi'ite heretic but also for supporting Selim's brother Ahmed in the power struggle after their father's death. In 1514 Selim led a large army eastward into Safavid territory. The Safavids retreated, burning the land behind them so that the Ottoman forces



starved. When

the two armies met on the plains of Chaldiran, however, it was the Ottomans who triumphed - their mix of infantry, cavalry, and artillery beating the Safavid horsemen. The Ottomans went on to occupy Tabriz, but a mutiny by the Janissaries meant that Selim was forced to withdraw without achieving a decisive conquest.

After their crushing naval defeat at Lepanto in 1571 (see p134). however, the Ottomans never recovered their dominance at sea. By the late 17th century their overall decline as a military power was extremely apparent. A last attempt to take the Austrian capital, Vienna, in 1683 only narrowly failed, but the rout of the Ottoman army at the battle of Zenta marked the end of an era.

DATE June-December 1522

Ottomans: 50.000 killed:

defenders: 5,200 killed

Ottomans: 100,000

defenders: 7.000

FORCES

#### OTTOMAN WARS OF EXPANSION

#### Rhodes



Rhodes, eastern Mediterranean

In 1522 Sultan Suleiman I (known a The Magnificent") laid siege to the Christian fortress of Rhodes, which was defended by the Knights of St John led by Villiers de l'Isle Adam. The Ottomans made breaches in the mighty walls with fire from over 100 cannon, as well as by tunnelling and

exploding charges under the wall

of cannon fire. When the Mameluke

cavalry charged they were harassed by

Ottoman light cavalry from the flanks

foundations. But the defenders

resisted repeated assaults, repelling the Ottomans with very heavy casualties. However, denied any help by the Christian powers, after six months the Knights eventually surrendered the fortress in return for safe conduct.

#### KNIGHTS' FORTRESS

Rhodes had exceptionally strong fortifications, withstanding an Ottoman siege in 1480 before succumbing in 1522.



### OTTOMAN CONQUEST OF EGYPT

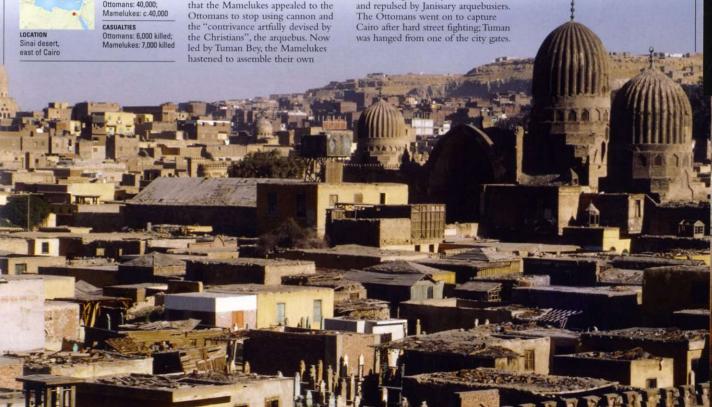
#### Raydaniya



DATE 22 January 1517 FORCES Ottomans: 40.000: Mamelukes: c.40,000 Mameluke-ruled Egypt was a rich prize inviting conquest. In summer 1516 Selim's army trounced the Egyptians at Marj Dabik in Svria, Ottoman gunpowder weapons puttin the famed Mameluke cavalry to flight. Egyptian historian Ibn Zabul relates that the Mamelukes appealed to the Ottomans to stop using cannon and the "contrivance artfully devised by the Christians", the arquebus. Now led by Tuman Bey, the Mamelukes hastened to assemble their own

#### cannon, creating a fortified position at CAIRO CONQUERED Raydaniya to block the advance on The wealth of Egypt and, above all, the Cairo. The experienced Ottoman gunners dominated an initial exchange

city of Cairo, seen here, gave the Ottoman the resources to become a world power.



Koranic texts

inscribed in silver

YATAGHAN SWORD WITH HOLY TEXT Since the Ottomans regarded themselves as warriors fighting for their faith, it was natural

Walrus ivory

to have Koranic texts on a sword blade

Hilt of silver gilt with

Ornately decorated ivory and gilt brass-covered stock

BALKAN MUSKET This musket from the Ottomanruled Balkans dates from the early 19th century. Its miquelet lock is a kind of flintlock found primarily on OTTOMAN CONQUEST OF HUNGARY Mohacs



Vear Mohacs,

FORCES Hungarians: infantry: Ottomans 70.000-100.000

Hungarians: 15,000 killed; Ottomans:

southern Hungary probably similar In April 1526 Suleiman I marched out of Constantinople with a vast army bent on conquering Hungary. During the Ottoman army's long advance, King Louis of Hungary failed to win support from other Christian rulers. He also failed to contest the crossing of the Drava river, which took Suleiman's army five days across an improvised bridge of boats. Instead Louis took up position on the plain of Mohacs, blocking the road leading to the Hungarian capital, Buda. The heavily outnumbered Hungarians put their faith in the shock power of their armoured cavalry troops. After a brief opening barrage from their handful of cannon, the Hungarian knights charged the Ottoman centre. Two lines of Turkish feudal cavalry gave way in the face of this tremendous onslaught, but this brought the knights up against Ottoman cannon - chained together to form an unbreakable line - and the Janissary infantry. The Hungarians fought desperately to break through to Suleiman himself, but were cut down by Ottoman firepower and by flanking attacks from light cavalry. An Ottoman counterattack turned the battle into a rout. King Louis was among those killed in the flight,

lay open to attack - although, when

Suleiman returned to

besiege Vienna for

the first time in

1529, it proved to be his first

military failure.

DATE 29 August 1526 12,000 cavalry, 13,000

CASUALTIES

crushed beneath his falling horse. Hungary became an Ottoman tributary and neighbouring Austria OTTOMAN-HABSBURG WARS OF EXPANSION

#### Tunis



FORCES Imperial forces 60,000; Ottoman:

Tunis North Africa

CASUALTIES No reliable estiamtes

Khair ad-Din, also known as Barbarossa, the admiral of the Ottoman fleet, was raiding Christian shipping and coastlines from his base at Algiers. In 1534 he captured Tunisia, including the capital Tunis, which became a new base for Turkish piracy, Holy Roman Emperor Charles V assembled a crusading army to retake the city. He crossed the Mediterranean protected by the fleet of Genoese admiral Andrea Doria, who decisively defeated Barbarossa's forces at sea. After a siege, during which many died of dysentery, the imperial forces took the fortified port of La Goleta. They went on to Tunis, which they sacked, killing an estimated 30,000 inhabitants.

#### Siege of Malta



CASUALTIES Defenders:

5,000 killed; Ottomans:

24,000 killed

Forced out of Rhodes in 1522, the Knights of St John created a new fortified island headquarters in Malta. In 1565 Suleiman sent a large Ottoman army under Mustafa Pasha to take the island. The entrance to the harbour at Malta was guarded by the ultra-modern star-shaped fort of St Elmo. Heroically defended by the knights and resupplied by sea, St Elmo held out until 23 June, when it was finally taken by assault. The capture of the fort cost the Turks around 8,000 dead with 1,500 defenders killed. The fighting then shifted to the fortifications inside the Grand Harbour, at Senglea, Birgu, and Fort St Angelo. Intensive bombardment by the Ottoman artillery opened breaches in the walls,

but repeated assaults were repulsed in savage fighting. A clever attempt to take the fortifications from their weaker seaward side was mounted by Hassan, pasha of Algiers and son of admiral Barbarossa, but his boats were blocked by a hidden boom just under the water's surface. The arrival of a Spanish fleet carrying a relief force under Garcia of Toledo finally convinced Mustafa Pasha that it

KNIGHTS' CROSS their oath of fealty, this cross, made from silver and adorned with precious stones, was carried from Rhodes by the Knights of St John in 1522 and taken with them to Malta.

"The darkness of the night then became as bright as day, due to the vast quantity of artificial fires. So bright was it indeed that we could see St Elmo quite clearly. The gunners of St Angelo... were able to lay and train their pieces upon the advancing Turks, who were picked out in the light of the fires."

#### WITNESS TO WAR

was time to withdraw.

#### FRANCISCO BALBI, SPANISH SOLDIER

The "artificial fires" were torches and incendiary weapons that were used by both sides, and included burning hoops; pots filled with an inflammable mixture known as "wildfire", which were thrown like grenades; and primitive flamethrowers called "trumps" that shot jets of burning liquid from a tube.

#### OTTOMAN-HABSBURG WARS

#### Siege of Vienna



VICTORIOUS ARMY

The Ottoman army at Mohacs was narily a cavalry force, but in the hands

12 September, 1683 FORCES Ottomans: 150,000-200,000; Viennese garrison: 12.000: Sobieski's relief army: 75,000-80,000

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates In 1683 the Ottomans made a second attempt to seize the Austrian capital, which they had failed to capture 154 years earlier. Led by Grand Vizier Kara Mustafa, the Ottoman army had few heavy cannon and depended on mining to breach the walls. They did not attempt an assault on the city until 1 September. The outer fortifications were breached and the garrison was running short of ammunition when, on the afternoon of 12 September, a relief force of Poles, Germans, and

Austrians led by Polish king Jan Sobieski struck the Ottoman camp Kara Mustafa's army precipitately fled, only escaping destruction because nightfall prevented an immediate pursuit. The sultan, Mehmed IV, had his grand vizier executed, strangled by a bowstring around the throat.

#### SIEGE CITY

The Ottomans made themselves comfortable in a vast camp outside Vienna; the grand vizier brought with him 1,500 concubine

Zenta

OTTOMAN-HABSBURG WARS

Northern Serbia

FORCES Austrians: 50,000; Ottomans: unknown CASUALTIES

11 September 1697

Austrians: 300 killed; Ottomans: 30,000 killed or taken prisoner

Sultan Mustafa II marched north from Belgrade in an overambitious attempt to invade Hungary. Austrian imperial forces under Eugène of Savoy attacked the Ottomans as they were crossing the Tisza river on a bridge of boats. Eugène split the Ottoman army, waiting until the cavalry had crossed before destroying the pontoon. He then crushed the stranded infantry. As well as destroying the Turkish army, Eugene captured 87 cannon, 6,000 camels, and the sultan's treasure chest.



EUGÈNE OF SAVOY Victory at Zenta made Eugène of Savoy the most renowned military commander in Europe. He later fought at Blenheim.



#### JEWELLED HELMET

This 16th-century ceremonial helmet from the Ottoman court, cast in iron and decorated with gold and jewels, reflects the spectacular wealth acquired through conquest. THE MOGUL EMPIRE BROUGHT a golden age of political stability and a cultural flowering to India. The Moguls – Muslims originating from central Asia - conquered Delhi and the north of India from 1526, expanding rapidly southwards and establishing a dynasty that endured until 1858. But from the death of Aurangzeb in 1707, their rule fractured, and for the last

century of their existence the Moguls were effectively puppets of the British or the French. Much of the Mogul expansion was at the expense of existing Hindu regimes, but, although Muslim, the Moguls' acceptance of other faiths was greater than any to be found in contemporary Europe. The abandonment of this tolerance was to prove one of the key factors in their decline.

MOGUL CONQUEST OF INDIA

#### First Panipat



21 April 1526 FORCES Moguls: 12.000: Lodi: 100,000 and 1,000

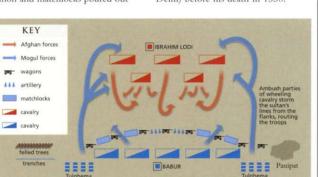
90km (55 miles) north of Delhi, north India

CASUALTIES Lodi: 20,000-50,000

Zahiruddin Muhammad, known as Babur (literally, the "tiger"), was a direct descendant of the great Mongol rulers Timur and Genghis Khan (see pp92-95) and the ruler of a small principality in Ferghana, central Asia. In 1525, having lost his ancestral home to the rival Uzbegs and "tired of wandering about like a king on a chessboard", Babur invaded northern India in search of a new kingdom. "Placing his hand on the reins of confidence in God", he faced Sultan Ibrahim Lodi at Panipat, a few days' march from Delhi.

Ibrahim, ruler of central-northern India, commanded 1,000 elephants and 100,000 men. Fatally, however, he lacked gunpowder weapons. Ibrahim was provoked into attacking on a narrow front against a line of stockades and wagons roped together, from the shelter of which Babur's cannon and matchlocks poured out

deadly fire. Babur's mounted archers reduced the unwieldy Indian army to a panicked mob. Sultan Ibrahim himself died in the rout, and Babur seized his domains, which formed the core of the Mogul empire. With his capital at Agra, he extended his rule to cover most of northern India (including Delhi) before his death in 1530.



MOGUL CONQUEST OF INDIA Second Panipat



5 November 1556 FORCES Monuls: 20 000: Afghans/Hindus: 100,000 and 1,500

CASUALTIES 90km (55 miles) north Moguls captured 1,500 of Delhi, north India

Under Humayun, Babur's son, the Mogul empire suffered a series of reverses. His son, Akbar, re-established the dynasty's fortunes. In 1556, at Panipat, scene of Babur's great victory, Akbar faced a combined Afghan-Hindu army. Their opponents' war elephants initially made strong headway. In the heat of battle, however, the Hindu general Hemu was hit by a stray arrow. causing panic amongst his troops. As the Hindu-Afghan army fled, it was slaughtered. Akbar built a victory pillar with their severed heads.

#### FALL OF VIJAYANAGAR Talikot



Viiavanagar, India

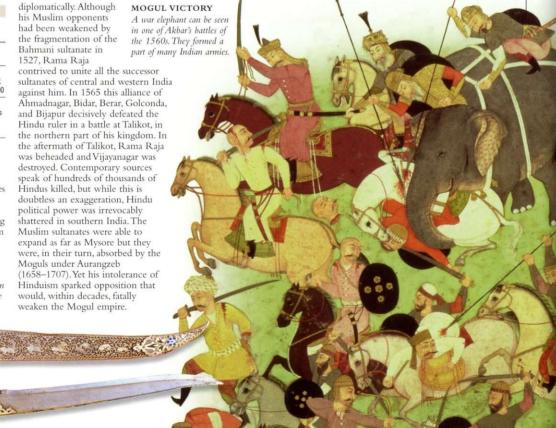
23 January 1565 FORCES Hindus: up to 600,000; Muslims: up to 700,000

CASUALTIES Sources claim Hindus lost hundreds of thousands

Although by the mid-16th century the Moguls dominated north and central India, in the south the Hindu kingdom of Viyajanagar ("city of victory") held sway. For three centuries this Hindu bastion had resisted the southward push of various Muslim dynasties. Vijayanagar possessed a strong military aristocracy, the Nayaks, but in the 1560s its king, Rama Raja, had alienated them and proved inept

#### JEWELLED DAGGER

The opulence of Indian weapons was a sign of wealth and power, but equally attracted the attentions of invaders intent on plunder.



MOGUL CONQUEST OF INDIA

18 June 1576

Moguls: 80,000:

Mewaris: 20,000

on Mewari side

Unknown, but heavier

CASUALTIES

FORCES

#### Haldighati



45km (30 miles) north of Udainur, India

By the mid-1570s Mogul emperor

Mewar came to terms only in 1614.

Akbar had defeated all the Raiputs (Hindu warrior princes) except Pratap Singh of Mewar. His forces swelled by Pratap's rival Man Singh of Amber, Akbar marched south to face Pratap. Resplendent on Chetak, his white Arab charger, Pratap fought bravely, being wounded seven times, but was forced to withdraw. The battle was indecisive:



HERO Pratap Singh stallion, Chetak, as it lies mortally wounded. The horse had earlier saved his life.

#### MADIR SHAH'S INVASION OF INDIA Nadir Shah's invasion of India

FORCES

CASUALTIES

Nadir Shah: unknown:

Indians: unknown

Up to 20,000 in sack



After Nadir Shah's accession to the Persian throne in 1736 (see box), he occupied himself first with the conquest of Afghanistan. In late 1738 he crossed the Khyber pass into northwestern India. Brushing aside Indian resistance at Karnal (24 February 1739), Nadir entered Delhi unopposed on

PEACOCK THRONE The jewelled throne, made for Mogul emperor Shah Jahan, was seized by Nadir Shah in 1739.

20 March 1739. The

the massacres that

sacking of the city and

accompanied it were so

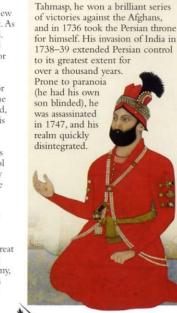
"Nadir Shah had not the wisdom to think of both the present and the future."

comprehensive they gave rise to a new word, nadirshahi, meaning holocaust. As many as 20,000 may have perished. On his return, the treasures he had acquired, including the Koh-i-Noor diamond and the jewel-encrusted Peacock Throne, meant he could afford not to levy taxes in Persia for three years. But Nadir's rule became increasingly tyrannical and paranoid, and in 1747 he was assassinated. His successor, Ahmad Shah Durrani. invaded India in 1757, sacking

Delhi, but leaving the Moguls on the throne. Yet his control over India was threatened by new powers rising in the wake of the Mogul decline, including the Sikhs in the Punjab and the Marathas, a Hindu confederacy. In 1761, Panipat saw another great battle as Ahmad Shah defeated a Maratha army. but continuing revolts led him to abandon India in 1772.

1688-1747

Napoleon Bonaparte, letter to Fatih Ali, Shah of Persia, 1805



NADIR SHAH

Nadir Shah is often seen as the last

great Asian conqueror. Entering the

service of the Safavid Persian ruler

CAMPAIGNS OF SHIVAJI

#### Campaigns of Shivaji Maharaj



DATE 1646-80 FORCES Maratha confederacy: unknown; Mogul: unknown

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates Central India

vacuum. Led by the brilliant, romantic figure of Shivaji Maharaj (1627-80), the "mountain rats" refused to confront the enormous Mogul army openly, instead preferring guerrilla warfare. (One chronicler refers to Shivaji's "fox play".) Taking advantage of a civil war within the Mogul empire, Shivaii seized a string of forts in the Western Ghats, a mountainous regions on the west coast near Mumbai. In 1674 he felt sufficiently secure to declare

As Mogul power diminished in

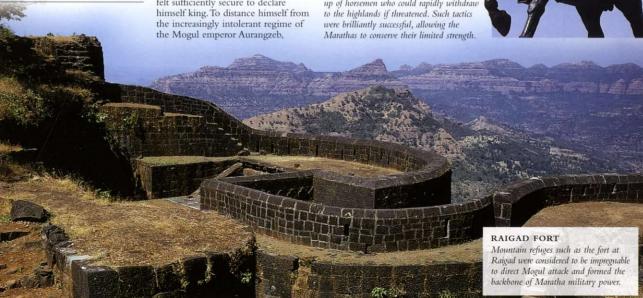
central and southern India, the Hindu

Maratha confederacy rose to fill the

Shivaji espoused a policy of religious tolerance. He "made it a rule... not to desecrate mosques or the Book of Allah, nor to seize the women" Muslims as well as Hindus served in his forces. Although Shivaji died in 1680 and the Moguls sought to exploit a civil war between his sons, Aurangzeb was never truly able to subdue the Marathas, who grew in strength and in 1771 took Delhi.

#### SHIVAJI STATUE

The Maratha leader's army was mainly mad up of horsemen who could rapidly withdrau





## AFRICAN EMPIRES

MANY OF THE ASPECTS OF WARFARE familiar in Eurasia were also found in Africa - for example, armoured cavalry, walled cities, and, from the 16th century, firearms. Although Ethiopia survived as a Christian outpost, most of northern Africa was an extension of the

Muslim world. Islamic rulers in the Sahel region south of the Sahara used cavalry to dominate agricultural societies, founding empires such as Mali and Oyo. Morocco, on the north coast, was a major power centre supporting armies that defeated both Christians and fellow Muslims.



#### AFRICAN EMPIRES Ethiopia fights Ahmed Gran



DATE 21 February 1543 FORCES Portuguese: 400: Muslims unknown CASUALTIES No reliable estiamtes

From the 1520s Christian Ethiopia was threatened by Muslim forces led by the sultan of Adal, Ahmed Gran. In 1541 Portuguese soldiers led by Cristovao da Gama arrived to help their fellow Christians, In August 1542 Ahmed defeated the Ethiopians and Portuguese; Cristovao was beheaded. In February 1543 the Ethiopians and Portuguese encountered Ahmed Gran again at Lake Tana, Half of the Portuguese were killed, but Ahmed was shot dead. With this inspired

CIRCULAR SHIELD Ethiopian

leader gone, the threat to

Ethiopia evaporated.

shields were made of hide This ornate example is covered with velve and silverwork

#### AFRICAN EMPIRES

#### Moroccans defeat Songhai empire



Niger river West Africa DATE March 1591 FORCES Moroccans: 5 000-25 000 including 2,000-4,000 musketeers; Songhai: 10,000-18,000 cavalry, 30,000-100,000 infantry CASUALTIES Unknown

Moroccan ruler Ahmed al-Mansur sent an army south across the Sahara to attack Songhai, the dominant power on the Niger river. Advancing towards Gao, they met a much larger Songhai force, but the Moroccans had firearms the Songhai did not. The Songhai drove cattle into the Moroccan lines, hopin to panic their enemy, but this had no effect. When the Moroccans opened fire with their muskets, most of the Songhai soon fled. The Songhai capital Timbuktu was occupied shortly after.



1549-1603

#### AHMED AI-MANSUR

The death of his brother Abd al-Malik at Alcazarquivir in 1578 brought Ahmed to power in Morocco and allowed him to take credit for the victory over the Christians, hence the name al-Mansur, meaning "the victorious" Ahmed set up a Moroccan standing army around a core of Turkish mercenaries, who were familiar with muskets, arquebuses, and cannon. He recruited professional soldiers from among renegade Christians and Moorish refugees who had fled Christian rule in Spain. It was this force that enabled him to put into effect his plan for the conquest of Songhai in 1591, extending Moroccan influence further south than had ever been achieved before.

#### SLAVE WARS

#### Slave Wars



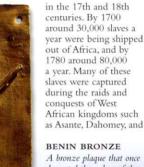
West Africa

DATE From the 14th century onwards

FORCES Not applicable CASUALTIES Not applicable

As in most of the world throughout much of history, warfare in Africa was associated with the acquisition of slaves. This might occur either as an accidental by-product of war through the taking of prisoners or as the aim of military raids and conquests. From the 14th century, for example, the Islamic empires of the Upper Niger basin, such as Mali and Songhai, developed military superiority over neighbouring peoples through the use of cavalry. Riding

fine Barbary horses and wearing coats of mail, these forces took thousands of prisoners in more or less constant raiding. These prisoners were eventually carried along trans-Saharan trade routes to serve as slaves in the Muslim world around the Mediterranean. In the 15th century Portuguese sailors established trade contact with states along the west coast of Africa, and one of the commodities they found it useful to buy was slaves. The symbiotic relationship between the slave trade on the West African coast and warfare developed significantly



decorated the palace of the ruler of Benin, West Africa, shows a Portuguese soldier with a matchlock musket

their military dominance by using the income from the slave trade to buy firearms. By the mid-18th century the Asante standing army, consisting of infantry armed with muskets, was a formidable force capable of extending Asante rule over a wide area. Tribute and the slave trade made Asante's rulers extremely wealthy. With rare exceptions, during this period European nations present in Africa did not attempt any military intervention against native states. With their firearms and armoured cavalry, the African kingdoms would have made formidable opponents.

Oyo, which were able to increase

#### taken prisoner; Moroccans: unknown The battle of Alcazarquivir, or al-Kasr al-Kebir, was a significant defeat for European forces at the hands of an African power. In 1576 a new ruler. Abd al-Malik, took control of Morocco with the backing of the Ottoman Turks. His evicted predecessor. Muhammad al-Mutawakkil, appealed to the king of Portugal, Sebastian, for support in regaining his throne. Young King Sebastian, who was obsessed by dreams of conquest and noble crusading adventures, obtained approval from the pope for a crusade against the infidel in Morocco. On a more practical level, however, he failed to win the military backing of his

#### KING SEBASTIAN

AFRICAN EMPIRES

Alcazarquivir

DATE 4 August 1578

FORCES Portuguese:

7.000 killed, 8.000

Moroccans: unknown

16.500-18.000:

CASUALTIES

Sebastian of Portugal was only 24 when he led the ill-advised invasion that cost him his life

powerful neighbour Philip II of Spain. Sebastian assembled a force of Portuguese noblemen and German, Spanish, and Dutch mercenaries. This makeshift force, led by Sebastian in person, landed on the Moroccan coast and unwisely headed inland, away from the ships that could have provided supplies and reinforcements. Abd al-Malik met them with a well-equipped Ottoman-style army composed of Moors from Andalucía,

Turks, Arabs, and Berbers, and including cavalry trained to fire arquebuses from horseback. What followed is sometimes known as the battle of the Three Kings, because all three leaders died: Moroccan pretender al-Mutawakkil; Abd al-Malik, who died of natural causes early in the battle; and Sebastian, who disappeared, never to be seen again. The Portuguese forces were routed, almost all either killed or taken prisoner. Sebastian's death

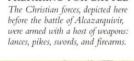
legend that he was alive and would return one day to lead his people. PREPARING FOR BATTLE The Christian forces, depicted here

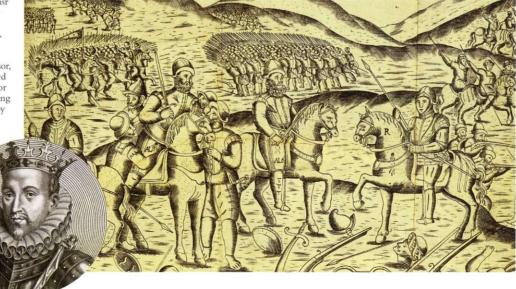
caused a succession crisis that was

exploited by Philip II as a chance to

status as "missing-in-action" led to a

take over Portugal in 1580. Sebastian's







# POWER AND RELIGION

SIXTEENTH- AND SEVENTEENTH-CENTURY Europe was profoundly shaped by warfare. Technological developments gave aspirant empire-builders an increased ability to project their will by military means. Governments and societies were transformed through the need to raise revenues and construct states able to withstand these novel pressures. From 1648 dynastic ambition and territorial aggrandizement, rather than religious zeal, became the prime motives for war.

#### GUNPOWDER AND SQUARES

ROYAL SWORD

for the Protestant side.

The sidering of this 17th-century

sword possibly depicts Gustavus Adolphus, the Swedish king who

almost won the Thirty Years War

The increasing adoption from the early 16th century of smaller, portable firearms presented a profound challenge to early modern armies and signalled the end of the supremacy of the mounted knight. In the 1520s the Spanish *tercios* – blocks of pikemen supported by soldiers with firearms – emerged as the most effective means of deploying guns in battle, a position that they held for over a century, until the Spanish defeat at Rocroi in 1643. The pre-eminence of the *tercio* was not, however,

unchallenged. The Dutch prince and brilliant strategist, Maurice of Nassau employed smaller formations of disciplined infantry who fired muskets in volleys.

#### ACT OF FAITH

The massacre of 2,000
French Protestants on St
Bartholomew's Day, 1572,
set off a bloody religious
conflict that plagued France
for nearly 30 years.

# MATCHLESS MUSKETS

Throughout the 17th century, the successive appearance of the matchlock, wheel-lock, and then flintlock saw a steady improvement in the musket's rate of fire: a well-trained musketeer of the mid-18th century could discharge three or four rounds per minute. In turn, this increased effectiveness fostered innovations, not all of them successful.

The caracole was a manoeuvre in which horsemen trotted up to the enemy lines, performed a half-turn, fired their pistols, and then retreated. By 1680 cavalry had largely abandoned any real attempt to

use gunpowder weapons in battle.

OUT OF THE WINDOW

The Defenestration of Prague, which sparked the Thirty Years War, is shown here. Catholic officials accused of violating Bohemian Protestants' rights were hurled



Despite the enormous changes in warfare in the course of the 16th and 17th centuries, cavalry retained its role as one of the essential components of the early modern army. Horse armour, such as that shown here, was expensive and uncommon; full equestrian armour even more so, and the shaffron, or head armour, was the most common single piece. Possession of such armour, was a sign of high status and by 1600.



equestrian armour harks an earlier age, but shows clearly how the knight's mount

Etched and



# DRILLS AND GRENADIERS

The 17th century saw the increasing professionalization of armies. By 1700 uniformed infantry, armed with flintlock musket and socket bayonet and performing manoeuvres with perfect discipline, had become a standard feature of European warfare from St Petersburg to Lisbon. Permanent regiments had been founded, each with its own colours. Specialization became marked: units such as the grenadiers, who were trained in assaulting fortified positions, became more and more important.

#### DUTCH VICTORY

The Dutch flag is seen flying above this warship at the battle of Texel in 1673. The Dutch won, bringing an end to war with England.

#### TAX AND WAR

By 1750 the demands of war placed a far greater stress on the state than they had in 1500. The French army had five times as many guns at the battle of Neerwinden in 1693 as at Rocroi 50 years earlier. The strain on those states that failed to modernize their revenue-raising ability in parallel was intolerable: the attempt by the French crown to raise taxes without any corresponding increase in political participation by the urban elites was a primary contributor to the French Revolution (see p196).

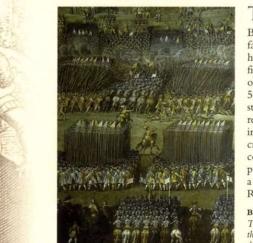
#### BATTLE IN BOHEMIA

The battle of White Mountain in 1618 marked the start of the Thirty Years War. The Protestant defeat near Prague was a severe blow to their cause



#### GUSTAVUS ADOLPHUS

Swedish King Gustavus Adolphus was hailed as the "Protestant Alexander". His genius was to coordinate the deployment of cavalry, infantry, and artillery. This required a new sort of soldier – a professional, disciplined, and highly trained figure. Part of the success of this new model lay in its revival of the role and importance of cavalry.



#### FRANCE'S ITALIAN WARS

IN 1494 CHARLES VIII OF FRANCE invaded Italy, displaying the power of his standing army and his cannon on wheeled carriages. This action set off a chain of wars lasting until the mid-16th century, in which the leading protagonists were France, Spain, the Swiss, and the Italian city-states. These conflicts saw the evolution of fresh military tactics and technologies, from the development

of bastion fortresses to new ideas for the use of handguns. But the battles were above all heterogenous, with armoured knights charging with lances, infantry fighting in pike phalanxes, and crossbowmen operating alongside arquebusiers and cannon. The outcome was the European dominance of Spain and the Holy Roman Empire, combined in the person of Emperor Charles V.

#### FRANCE'S ITALIAN WARS

DATE 28 April 1503

French and Swiss: 10,000;

Spanish: 6.000

No reliable estimates

CASUALTIES

FORCES

#### Cerignola



LOCATION Italy, 30km

18 miles) from the Adriatic coast of Italy

Cerignola is often said to be the first battle won by infantry firearms. The experienced Spanish commander Gonzalo Fernández de Cordoba was attempting to block a French takeover of southern Italy, and had decided that a small army of pikemen and arquebusiers held the secret of battlefield success. Facing a superior force of French armoured cavalry and Swiss pikemen, he entrenched his men on the slope of a hill, protected by a ditch and an earth rampart, and placed his arquebusiers behind the rampart with the pikemen at their rear. The French and Swiss decided on a frontal assault, assuming that the shock



of their charge would break the flimsy Spanish line. Stalled at the ditch, they were shot down by the arquebusiers, who were highly effective at such close range. The French leader, the Duc de Nemours, was among those shot dead. At the right moment, Fernández ordered his pikemen and light cavalry to counterattack, completing the destruction of the enemy. Although

confront a French army led by Gaston

#### BRUTAL BATTLE

An artist's impression of the battle of Cerionola conveys the brutality of war ight with pike, sword, and arquebus.

everything the arquebusiers had done could have been achieved by archers, the Spanish victory confirmed growing confidence in firearms as the missile weapons of the future.

#### SPANISH TERCIOS

The Spanish tercio, or "third", was a formation of pikemen and arquebusiers some 3,000 strong. Based on tactical innovations in the combined use of pikes and firearms, the tercios were first named as such in 1534, and their discipline made them feared throughout Europe until the early 17th century. The arquebusiers were usually placed outside the pike squares, moving inside for protection if threatened with close-quarters attack.



#### FRANCE'S ITALIAN WARS

11 April 1512

FORCES

#### Ravenna



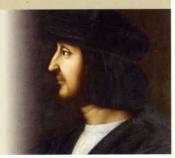
Ravenna, Italy

Spanish: 16,000: French: 21,000 heavy cavalry. The Landsknechte, CASUALTIES Spanish: 9,000 killed: French: 4 500 killed In 1511 Pope Julius II formed a Holy League to fight the French. In 1512 flank, the Spanish staged a fighting predominantly Spanish Holy League withdrawal. The edge was taken off the French victory by the loss of de forces under Ramon de Cardona and engineer Pedro Navarro advanced to Foix, who was killed in the pursuit.

#### 1489-1512

#### GASTON DE FOIX

Made Duc de Nemours after his father's death at Cerignola in 1503, Gaston de Foix was appointed to lead the French forces in Italy in 1511 at the age of 21. He displayed electrifying boldness and energy, storming Brescia in February 1512 before defeating the Spanish army at Ravenna in the battle that cost him his life. Rarely has a military commander built such a reputation in a single campaign



de Foix that was besieging Ravenna. The Spanish took up a defensive position behind earthworks, and for two hours the rival field artillery battered one another's lines. Eventually the nerve of the Spanish cracked; they charged and were cut down by French German mercenary pikemen employed by France, delivered frontal assaults on the Spanish earthworks, where a bloody battle ensued. Eventually, attacked by French armoured cavalry from the

#### FRANCE'S ITALIAN WARS Novara



6 June 1513 FORCES French: 12.000: CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

west of Milan

The Swiss pike-wielding phalanx was the most admired infantry unit of the late 15th and early 16th centuries. The Swiss were much in demand as mercenaries, and by the time of Novara they had joined the Holy League fighting against France. A French army commanded by Marshal Louis de la Trémoille crossed the Alps, captured Milan, and then laid siege to the Swiss-held city of Novara. Alerted in June to the approach of a Swiss relief army, La Trémoille withdrew from the siege lines to prepare for battle, but he had not counted on the speed of Swiss movement. Marching through the night,

#### the Swiss caught the French OPEN-FACED HELMET

The combed morion helmet was adopted by arquebusiers in the 16th century. The open style was convenient when taking aim. utterly unprepared with an attack at dawn on 6 June. Advancing at a trot. dense columns of pikemen smashed through the French lines into the heart of their camp, slaughtering the infantry and forcing the cavalry to flee as best they could. La Trémoille retreated into France with the remnants of his shattered army. Despite this striking victory, overall the Italian wars revealed the limitations of pike formations on the offensive when faced with field fortifications and gunpowder weapons.



#### phalanxes to smash through the ener line. But at Marignano resistance fro François's Landsknecht mercenaries and counterattacks by armoured cavalry led by the king in person - broke the Swiss attack. The close-fought battle continued long after dark and resumed at dawn, but remained undecided until François's Venetian allies belatedly arrived on the field. Faced by these fresh troops, the Swiss withdrew They subsequently evacuated Lombardy, signing a perpetual peace with France FRANCE'S ITALIAN WARS Pavia 24 February 1525 FORCES French: 20,000: CASUALTIES French: 8.000 Pavia, south of Milan Imperial: 1,000 When François I of France invaded Italy for the second time, his main

FRANCE'S ITALIAN WARS

DATE 13-14 September 1515

FORCES

French: 30,000

Swiss: 20 000

French: 5,000;

Swiss: 6 000-10 000

CASUALTIES

François I of France invaded Italy in

the summer of 1515. In alliance with Venice, he intended to recover Milan

from the Swiss. Crossing the Alps with

around 50 bronze cannon by routes

François attempted - with considerable

success - to bribe the Swiss to go

home. In mid-September those Swiss

remaining marched out to attack. They

counted on a swift approach to catch

their enemy off balance and then upon

the shock effect of their dense pike

opponent was Charles V, king of

Spain and Holy Roman Emperor.

In autumn 1524 François marched

his army across the Alps and made a

laid siege to the imperial-garrisoned

that had been presumed impassable.

he arrived in Lombardy in June.

Marignano

LOCATION Modern-day

Melegnano, 15km (9 miles) from Milan

force, commanded by the Marchese di Pescara, arrived in late January 1525, the armies dug in to face one another triumphal entry into Milan. He then across a stream, occasionally exchanging artillery fire. On the night of 23-24

town of Pavia. When an imperial relief February Pescara set in motion a bold KEY Imperial force ▲ Imperial camp French forces A French camp

#### CANNON CAPTURED



plan of attack. Most of his forces marched several kilometres north under

cover of darkness and forded the stream; by daybreak they were positioned on the unprotected French left flank. Taken by surprise, the French struggled to turn their forces. The situation was rendered more confusing by morning fog. Following his instincts and fulfilling chivalrous tradition, François led an armoured cavalry charge with couched lance against the imperial forces. Its shock effect was successful in itself, but the impetuous advance

#### WAR HAMMER

War hammers were used by knights fighting on foot. This French war ammer dates from the 16th century.

#### French army fled. STEEL MACE

Made in Italy in the 16th century, this skull-crushing flanged mace would have been used by a knight in hand-to-hand combat.

of the French knights blocked their artillery from firing on the enemy. François's Swiss mercenary infantry was tardy to come up in support and much of the French army, unclear what was happening, failed to join in at all. As the battle fell apart into small unit engagements across the field, the imperial pikemen and arquebusiers proved as effective fighting in the open as they previously had defending earthworks. The French knights gradually succumbed, the Duc de la Trémoille was shot through the heart, and François was unhorsed and taken prisoner. Mercenaries of he Landsknecht Black Band were the last to cede as the rest of the

ROYAL TOMB

A relief from the tomb of François I

shows the mounted king trampling the

Swiss pikemen, For François the Italian

wars still belonged to the age of chivalry.

FRENCH RELIGIOUS WARS

19 December 1562

Huguenots: 15,000;

Royalists: 19 000

Huguenots: 4,000;

Royalists: 4.000

FORCES

CASUALTIES

#### Dreux



Dreux, east of Paris,

In 1562 open warfare broke out in France between Calvinist Huguenots, led by Prince Louis de Condé and Admiral Gaspard de Coligny, and Catholics led by the Duc de Guise and Montmorency. The first full-scale battle of the French Religious Wars occurred when the Huguenot army, marching

north to join up with an English force at Le Havre, ran into Guise and Montmorency who had just sacked the city of Rouen. The battle opened with Coligny leading a powerful cavalry charge that threw the Catholic forces into confusion. Believing the battle won, Condé led his own cavalry into the melée. But Guise then sent in his Swiss mercenary pikemen, followed by the French gendarmes. Condé was taken prisoner, but Coligny succeeded in extricating a large part of the Huguenot army from the field. The battle was not a clear Catholic victory, as Montmorency was also captured.

#### CAVALRY CHARGE

Pike-wielding cavalry from both sides are depicted here charging on each other and at artillery positions at the battle of Dreux.



DUTCH REVOLT

## Iemmingen



FORCES Spanish: c.15,000: rebels: c.15,000 CASUALTIES

DATE 21 July 1568

OCATION Ems estuary. Friesland, modern-day "These troubles must be ended by force of arms without any use of pardon, mildness, negotiations, or talks until everything has been flattened."

The Duke of Alba on the Dutch rebellion, 1573

When the predominantly Protestant population of the Netherlands rose in revolt against his rule, Catholic Spanish king Philip II, ordered the Duke of Alba and his veteran army to crush the

Spanish: c.100 killed; rebels: 6.000-7.000

#### MATCHLOCK MUSKET

To fire a matchlock, the musketeer tipped powder followed by a ball and wad down the barrel. He then put finer powder in the priming pan. When he pulled the trigger, the smouldering rope plunged into the priming pan, igniting the powder which in turn set off the charge in the barrel. The heavy weapon had to be leaned on a forked rest to fire.



rebellion. Alba was an outstanding commander who is credited, among other things, with introducing

the heavy musket to replace the arquebus as the standard Spanish infantry firearm. Alba's opponent was William of Orange, who, having fled his country to avoid arrest, raised a German mercenary army and sent it into the northern Netherlands under the command of his brother, Louis of Nassau. Alba's army caught up with Louis on the eninsula of Jemmingen. Although the two forces were

evenly matched in numbers, they were dissimilar in discipline and firepower. Trapped with

their backs to the Ems estuary, the rebel army was crushed, with no quarter given. Thousands tried to swim the estuary but few made it. The citizens of Emden found out about the disaster when the hats of drowned Orangists drifted down to their city on the tide. The duke of Alba had a bronze statue erected in Antwerp to commemorate his victory, cast from rebel cannon captured at

DUTCH REVOLT

1 April 1572 FORCES Dutch: 600: Spanish: CASUALTIES

LOCATION Brill, east of day Netherlands

Brill

The Dutch Watergeuzen, or Sea Beggars, were a fleet originally assembled by Louis of Nassau to support his forces at Jemmingen. After the Dutch defeat there, they turned to preying indiscriminately on merchant shipping to make a living. On 1 April 1572, around 600 Sea Beggars boldly seized the town of Brill in Zeeland. The Spanish counterattack was muted because at that time French Huguenots had allied with William of Orange and were threatening to invade the Netherlands. Thousands of unemployed fishermen and other sailors swarmed to join the Sea Beggars, and rebels were soon in control of Flushing (Vliessingen) and other ports along the Zeeland coast. In their fast, cannon-armed "fly-boats", the Sea Beggars were unbeatable in coastal waters, defeating Spanish squadrons on the Zuider Zee in November 1573 and in the Schelde estuary in January 1574. Their attacks on Catholic merchant shipping became a valuable source of finance for the rebel cause.

#### Siege of Antwerp



Antwerp, modern-day

Spanish: unknow CASUALTIES No reliable esti-

Alexander Farnese, the Duke of Parma, took command of Spanish forces in the Netherlands in 1578. The peak of his achievement was the siege of Antwerp. The rebels opened the dykes to flood the Spanish out of their siege lines, but the dykes remained above water, and on these the Spanish built forts, fighting off rebel sorties. During the winter of 1584-85. Parma's engineers constructed a bridge 800m (2,625ft) long across the Scheldt river. On this structure Parma mounted 200 siege guns. On 5 April the rebels sent fire ships packed with explosive down the Scheldt and blew a large hole in the bridge, killing 800 Spanish troops. But they had no way of exploiting the breach they had made. The siege held and on 17 August the starving city surrendered.



FRENCH RELIGIOUS WARS

#### Coutras



France, northeast of Bordeaux

Huguenots: 6,500 CASUALTIES Royalists: 3,000 killed; 200 killed

ARMOUR

Made in France in about

1575, this elaborately

lecorated, close-faced

helmet is of the type

worn by Henry III's

royalist cavalry.

20 October 1587

Royalists: 10,000;

FORCES

By 1587 the French Religious Wars had evolved into the "War of the Three Henrys": King Henry III of France, at that time leaning towards the Catholic side: Henry of Navarre, the leader of the Protestant Huguenots (and future King Henry IV); and French Catholic leader Henry of Guise. At Coutras, an army led by Navarre unexpectedly encountered an army under Henry III's favourite, the Duc de Joyeuse. Trapped in the fork of two rivers, Navarre drew up his forces skilfully, his infantry mostly arquebusiers - on each flank protected by natural obstacles and his



light and heavy cavalry in the centre. His three cannon were placed on the left flank. Joyeuse's cavalry was also drawn up in the centre, but it was stretched out in a line, glittering in elaborately decorated heavy armour, ready to charge with couched lance. Henry's cavalry, relatively lightly

#### MERCIFUL HENRY

Though the clemency of Henry of Navarre after the battle is elebrated in art, many of his men howed no mercy to prisoners.

armoured, were armed with pistol and sword and arranged in compact squadrons six lines deep, with infantry arquebusiers between the squadrons to augment their firepower. The issue was decided in the centre as de Joveuse's cavalry lowered lances and charged. The fire of arquebuses had already taken its toll on the royalist cavalry before they smashed into the Hugueno cavalry and broke apart. Thousands of royalists were slaughtered in the rout that followed. No quarter was given the Duc de Joyeuse was shot through the head after surrendering - until Henry of Navarre intervened to restore order and the rules of chivalry.

ANGLO-SPANISH CONFLICT

#### Raid on Cadiz



Cadiz, southern Spain

29 April-1 May 1587 English fleet: 23 ships CASUALTIES

33 Spanish ships lost

Aware that King Philip II of Spain was assembling a fleet for the invasion of England, Queen Elizabeth I ordered Sir Francis Drake to disrupt Spanish preparations, Drake, whose privateering attacks had helped provoke hostilities, boldly sailed his ships into the port of Cadiz, defying on shore cannon and war galleys. Manoeuvring skilfully to avoid fireships and fend off galleys, Drake sank or set fire to a range of vessels from a galleon to merchantmen, before escaping with few casualties. Reading a report of the incident, Philip concluded, "The loss was not very great, but the daring of the attempt was very

NAVAL HERO

great indeed."

A statue of Sir Francis Drake who boasted that at Cadiz he had "singed the King of Spain's beard

#### ANGLO-SPANISH CONFLICT Spanish Armada

DATE May-October 1588

Snanish Armada

FORCES

130 shins:

English fleet:



Most battles fought in CASUALTIES the English Channel

In the mid-1580s hostility between

England and Spain broke into open

rebels against Spain, Spanish king

for an invasion of England. The

from Lisbon in late May 1588,

Sidonia. Its goal was to establish naval superiority in the Channel.

Bad weather forced the Armda to

PHILIP II OF SPAIN

King of Spain from 1556, Philip's

life-long goals were the expansion

of Spanish power and the defence

of Catholicism against Protestants

and Muslims. He annexed Portugal

in 1580 and saved the southern

Netherlands for Catholicism, but

failed to suppress the Dutch revolt

ming king of France, or to

tore Catholic rule in England.

or to prevent Henry of Navarre

take refuge in La Coruña, and it

did not appear off the coast

of Cornwall until 19 July.

An English fleet under Lord Howard of

Effingham, with Sir

Francis Drake as

Spanish fleet (or "Armada") sailed

commanded by the Duke of Medina

Armada but failed to disrupt its formation. Both sides had run short of ammunition by 26 July, when the Spanish anchored off Calais. On the night of 27-28 July the English sent fireships packed with gunpowder into the Armada's anchorage. Panicking, the Spanish lost 63 ships Spanish ships cut their anchors and drifted north in loose formation. This allowed the English fleet to get among them, sinking or damaging warfare. When Queen Elizabeth I of many ships. Carried by the wind into England sent a force to support Dutch the North Sea, Medina Sidonia Philip II received the pope's blessing decided to head for home by sailing around the British Isles. The voyage was a disaster, as September storms wrecked ship after ship on the coasts of Scotland and Ireland. The English

second-in-command, set out from

from 21 July. In a series of battles

Plymouth and engaged the Spanish

along the Channel the English long-

range guns inflicted damage on the

fleet also suffered its heaviest losses after the action, with thousands of sailors dving of typhus. The victory was less decisive than the English wanted to believe.

VICTORY MEDAL

This 17th-century English medal commemorates the victory over the Armada.

1 English fleet pursues Armada 2 English fleet encounters Armada off the Isle of Wight 3 Armada reaches Gravelines and is dispersed SCOTLAND (4) Routed Armada turns north (5) Remains of Armada caught 6) Some Spanish driven ashore IRELAND ENGLAND More ships run aground; survivors are massacred ATLANTIC OCEAN FRANCE route of Armada === English fleets

"I am come amongst you... being resolved in the midst and heat of the battle to live or die amongst you all, to lay down for my God and for my kingdom, and for my people, my honour and my blood, even in the dust."

Elizabeth I, speech to troops at Tilbury, 8 August 1588

ENGLISH FIREPOWER

f the English fleet supplied with shot brough this lengthy naval engagement

#### HUGUENOT CONFLICT

#### Siege of La Rochelle



La Rochelle, France

CASUALTIES 18,600 die in La Rochelle; 2,000 English killed

The French Wars of Religion came to an end after Henry of Navarre took the French throne as Henry IV, adopting the Catholic faith but reconciling the Protestant Huguenot faction by the 1598 Edict of Nantes. Under his successor, Louis XIII, however, the Huguenots were once more alienated Duc Henri de Rohan and his brother Soubise led a Huguenot revolt from 1625, while Louis's chief minister, the Duc de Richelieu, declared the suppression of Huguenot dissidence his first priority. The rebels won backing from English King Charles I, who sent a fleet of 80 ships under his favourite, the Duke of Buckingham. In June 1627 the fleet landed 6,000 soldiers on the Ile de Ré, just off

#### OCEAN BARRIER

An imaginative picture shows Richelieu inspecting the sea wall built to isolate the city. The real structure was 4,600ft (1,400m) long, built on top of a line of hulks that had been filled with rubble and sunk.

La Rochelle, which although a Protestant stronghold, had hesitated to join the revolt. With the English installed on the Ile de Ré, however, Richelieu deployed an army around the city, and at the start of September the siege began. Meanwhile, on the Ile de Ré, the English laid siege to the small fort of St Martin but could not take it, as French boats boldly ran the blockade to ferry in supplies and reinforcements. By the autumn Buckingham's forces were themselves short of supplies and decimated by disease. After a final assault on the fort went awry, they retreated

"Its port was the last in France open to the English, and by closing it against England, our eternal enemy, the cardinal completed the work of Joan of Arc..."

Alexandre Dumas on La Rochelle in The Three Musketeers, 1844

forces that inflicted heavy casualties. With the English gone, the blockade of La Rochelle tightened. Cut off on land by a rampart 12km (7 miles) long with 11 forts and 18 redoubts, the city was also isolated by a massive sea wall built by 4,000 workmen. The appearance

to their ships under attack from French of an English fleet in September 1628 momentarily raised the city's hopes, but after bombarding French positions the English were forced to withdraw. With all hope gone and most of its people dead of starvation, the city surrendered on 28 October. Some 5,400 of a population of 24,000 remained alive.

kept the Spanish under surveillance

until reinforcements had arrived

from the United Provinces. On 31

October, hemmed in close to land,



#### SPANISH-DUTCH WARS

#### Siege of Breda



28 August 1624-5 June 1625 FORCES Dutch: unknown; Spanish: unknown

Breda, north Brabant. No reliable estimates Netherlands

By the early 17th century, the key commanders in the Spanish-Dutch war were Ambrogio Spinola and Maurice of Nassau. Maurice, son of William of Orange, is credited with major improvements in the organization of Dutch forces. Spinola, a Genoese,

entered the conflict by bringing troops from Italy at his own expense and was financially ruined by the war. Yet Spinola defeated Maurice repeatedly up to 1609, when a truce was agreed, and again after 1621 when war resumed. The siege of Breda, a key Dutch border fortress, is generally considered the peak of Spinola's career. He surrounded the fortress with a ring of redoubts and small forts, rather than trench lines, and defended these against attempted breakouts and relief forces. Maurice of Nassau died of disease during the siege. The garrison and citizens suffered much hardship; at one point, when scurvy had taken hold, a mass cure was achieved by distribution of a placebo medicine. By June 1625, however, conditions inside Breda were desperate. Informed of this

from an intercepted message, Spinola proposed generous surrender terms. The Dutch were allowed to withdraw and the citizens remained unharmed. As was usual in this war of nterminable sieges, this victory had little practical result.

#### SURRENDER

Here, Spinola accepts the surrender of the garrison of Breda. This famous painting by Velázquez mphasizes the chivalry

#### SPANISH-DUTCH WARS The Downs



English coast. Tromp

LOCATION Off the outheast coast of England, east of Dover

outgunned, and unable to manoeuvre, 31 October 1639 the Spanish were slaughtered. Like the FORCES Armada conflict of 1588, the battle Dutch: 117 ships; demonstrated the inability of the Spanish: 77 ships Spanish to adapt to the notion of CASUALTIES ships as mobile gun platforms - their Spanish: 70 ships vessels were packed with soldiers destroyed or captured waiting for a chance to board enemy 15,000 men killed ships that never came. The Dutch

side of the Spanish, especially in the form of commerce raiding. In 1628 Dutch privateer Piet Heyn seized a Spanish fleet laden with silver from the mines in Peru, possibly the most valuable prize ever captured at sea. The Dutch navy also threatened to cut Spain's sea communications with the Spanish Netherlands. In 1639 the Spanish sent a large fleet of warships under Admiral Antonio de Oquendo towards the Spanish-held port of Dunkirk. Dutch admiral Martin Tromp, with only 13 heavily gunned ships, intercepted the Spanish fleet, attacking with such ferocity that they were forced to seek refuge in neutral waters off the

Dutch sea power was a thorn in the victory ensured that Spain would be eventually forced to recognize Dutch independence, which it did in 1648. POPULAR WARSHIP The galleon, the preferred warship of all ocean-going navies in this period, typically 30 guns.



## THE THIRTY YEARS WAR

campaigns, collectively known as the Thirty Years War, were fought in Europe. This was part civil war within the Holy Roman Empire; part battle for European supremacy between France, Sweden, and the Habsburgs in Spain and Austria; and part holy war between

BETWEEN 1618 AND 1648, a complex series of Catholic and Protestant. The war's origins lay in the attempt by the Habsburg emperors Matthias and Ferdinand II to eradicate Protestantism in Bohemia. The intervention of Sweden in 1630 and France in 1635 ensured that few regions of central or western Europe were untouched by the fighting.



THIRTY YEARS WAR

#### Magdeburg



DATE 20 May 1631 FORCES Imperial: unknown Swedes: unknown CASHAITIES

LOCATION Central Germany, 130km (80 Magdeburg miles) west of Berlin citizens massacred

In 1640 King Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden landed an army in northern Germany, seeking to assist the beleaguered Protestant cities there. Chief amongst these was Magdeburg, staunchly Lutheran and one of the Holy Roman Empire's richest cities, with a population of 30,000. Besieged by Imperial forces under Tilly and Pappenheim since November 1630, Magdeburg finally fell on 20 May 1631 after heavy artillery made two breaches in the walls, and the city was sacked by the drunken soldiers of the victorious Imperial army. Up to 25,000 of Magdeburg's citizens perished in the massacre or in the fires that swept through the blooddrenched streets.

#### PLUG BAYONET

Early bayonets, such as this, were jammed into the musket's muzzle, so the weapon could not then be fired.

the services of Albrecht von Wallenstein

(see box), who pledged a large army

to support the Imperial cause. At the



By the early 17th century Calvinist Protestantism had become deep-rooted in Bohemia. In 1618 Holy Roman Emperor Ferdinand II tried to impose a Catholic king on the Bohemians, and a wholesale uprising ensued. In

#### UPHILL STRUGGLE

THIRTY YEARS WAR

LOCATION Bilá Hora,

day Czech Republic

near Prague, modern-

White Mountain

Tilly's professional army is seen here overpowering the motley Bohemian forces. BURGONET HELMET Burgonets had a peak hinged cheek pieces and a crest. deployed on the slopes of a hill

(White Mountain, or Bilá Hora in Czech) near Prague. Opposing him was the Imperial army under Count Tilly. Christian was totally unprepared when Tilly attacked uphill, and the Bohemian centre was quickly overrun. The Protestant army disintegrated and soon afterwards Tilly captured Prague, ending Bohemia's independence.

#### THIRTY YEARS WAR Dessau



niles) north of Leipzia.

In 1625 the Danish king Christian IV intervened to help the beleaguered German Protestants against the Holy Roman Empire. To counter this new threat Emperor Ferdinand II employed

strategic Dessau bridge Wallenstein lay in wait for the Protestant army, led by 25 April 1626 Ernst von Mansfeld. The bridge controlled movement into Silesia. and Imperial: 20,000; Mansfeld, calculated Wallenstein, would Protestants: 12,000 have to cross it. He proved correct, CASUALTIES and on 25 April 1626, a 12,000-strong Protestants Protestant army appeared. Wallenstein 4,000 dead had concealed his guns and elite troops, turning the bridge into a death-trap for Mansfeld's troops, who withdrew with the loss of a third of their number. Wallenstein's army then marched north, taking large areas of Denmark and forcing Christian IV to sue for peace.

#### ALBRECHT VON WALLENSTEIN

Albrecht von Wallenstein, duke of Friedland, used his governorship of Bohemia to raise a large army to counter the Danish intervention in the war in 1625. Thereafter he won a string of victories, but his independent behaviour caused ealousy among the German princes, and Emperor Ferdinand dismissed him in 1630. Recalled (at enormous cost) to face the threat of Gustavus Adolphus in 1631, he sought political power for himself and was assassinated in 1634.



THIRTY YEARS WAR

#### First Breitenfeld



Just outside Leipzig, Germany

Following the sack of Magdeburg in May 1631, Swedish king Gustavus Adolphus sought to conclude a defensive alliance with John George, the elector of Saxony aimed at uniting the Protestant powers against Ferdinand II and his drive to impose Catholic conformity. In late August 1631, an Imperial army under Tilly invaded Savony in an effort to force John George to abandon the Swedish

Imperial: 20 000 (of

which 7.000-8.000

cause. At Breitenfeld, north of Leipzig, Tilly and Pappenheim deployed their troops in 17 squares (tercios) to face the Swedish-Saxon force. The Swedish army was, for the time, relatively disciplined and Gustavus, a master

#### SWEPT-HILT CAVALRY SWORD

This sword is typical of early 17th-century cavalry swords. Its robust double-edged blade could be used for both cutting and

tactician, arrayed his forces in two long lines, creating a front that matched Tilly's, but giving nim a crucial reserve force. Pappenheim's heavy cavalry charged seven times, but the Swedes drove them back each time. Tilly's cavalry. meanwhile, had routed the Saxon cavalry, while John George's infantry had also fled. It looked as if the Protestant cause was lost. At this point

#### SQUARE ATTACK

This contemporary engraving of the battle of Breitenfeld clearly shows the Imperial tercio formations.

"They seing us marching towards them, they advanced likewise towards us, and came so close one to an other that jovning battalions together, wee came to pushe of pike and disputed the buysinesse so longe, till it pleased God, that wee routed them, and gaue us the victorie ... "

#### WITNESS TO WAR **IOHN FORBES**

Sergeant Major Forbes, who wrote this eyewitness account of First Breitenfeld to his father, a Calvinist minister living in Delft. was one of many Protestant Scots who fought in the the army of Gustavus Adolphus.

Gustavus pushed his second line into the fray, fording the Loderbach stream at right-angles to the main front line. Tilly, inexplicably, chose not to attack, and the Swedes swept down on his left flank. The Swedish artillery joined in, devastating the remnants of the imperial army. It was a fine demonstration of the co-ordination of infantry, cavalry, and artillery that exemplified Gustavus's military genius and persuaded Protestant German princes to flock to his banner.

# THIRTY YEARS WAR



Germany

Lützen

DATE 16 November 1632 FORCES Swedish: 12,800 infantry, 6,200 cavalry: Imperial: 13 000 infantry, 6,000 cavalry CASUALTIES Swedish: 5-6.000 dead: Imperia

6-8,000 dead

Following his success at Breitenfeld Gustavus Adolphus embarked on an "all or nothing" strategy, laying a trap for the Imperial commander Wallenstein at Nuremberg, where he positioned 500 artillery pieces. Wallenstein saw through the ploy and each side then embarked on a strategy of attrition throughout the summer of 1632. In November, Wallenstein, thinking that the campaign season was over, split his forces into two columns and retreated towards Leipzig for the winter. Gustavus caught up with him on the Lützen-Leipzig road. To the right of Wallenstein's army lay the castle of Lützen, while the Bavarian cavalry took its position on the weaker Imperial left flank. The Swedes, initially delayed by mist, succeeded in surrounding this weak point in the

imperial line. Disaster for Wallenstein's forces seemed imminent until the arrival of Pappenheim with the other Imperial column. The Swedish left, meanwhile, under Bernard of Weimar, had found itself in serious difficulties.

Gustavus Adolphus led a cavalry charge to Leipzig and then into Bohemia. to rally his beleaguered troops, but during it he was killed. Weimar was subsequently able to envelop the Imperial right, thus securing overall

Although the Swedes were left in possession of the field, the most serious consequence was the loss to the Protestant cause of Gustavus victory. At nightfall Wallenstein withdrew Adolphus, "the Lion of the North'



LOCATION Northwest of Munich, Germany

FORCES Spanish: 20,000 infantry, 13,000 cavalry; Protestants: 16,000 infantry, 9,000 cavalry

CASUALTIES Protestants: 17,000 dead, 4,000 prisoners

After the death of Gustavus Adolphus, the Swedish campaign lost its strategic direction at precisely the time the Catholic camp became more united.

"At this unfortunate moment a barrel of powder blew up, and created the greatest disorder amongst the Swedes. The imperial cavalry charged... and the flight became universal."

Friedrich Schiller, History of the Thirty Years War, 1789

Wallenstein's dismissal as commander helped heal a rift between the Imperial and Spanish branches of the Habsburgs. In September 1634 their combined army moved into Bavaria. Their encounter with the Swedish army at Nördlingen was characterized both by extraordinary bravery and great confusion. The Imperial and Spanish

troops occupied the flatter ground in front of the town, with the vanguard on a hill commanding the road. The Swedish army took up position on a series of low hills 1.5km (a mile) to the southwest. The Protestants planned to attack at daybreak simultaneously in the valley and on the hill, but fatally, their commanders did not

reckon on the woods, which rendered the co-ordination of their forces nearly impossible. The battle descended into a series of intense but confused confrontations. At one point two brigades of Swedish infantry fired on each other. Isolated and eventually overcome, the Swedish forces were butchered. With Habsburg success threatening Europe with the spectre of "universal monarchy", France entered the Thirty Years War.

#### SWEDES AT BAY

This scene of the battle of Nördlingen shows the situation before the collapse of the Swedish army.



THIRTY YEARS WAR

#### Second Breitenfeld



LOCATION Just outside Leipzig, Germany

12 November 1642 FORCES Imperial: 20,000: Swedish: 22,000 CASHAITIES

Imperial: 5,000 killed, 5,000 prisoners

In 1636 Catholic France had entered the war in alliance with Protestant Sweden and Holland, more motivated by the desire to thwart Habsburg ambitions than by religious loyalties. A Spanish invasion of France in 1636 had been pushed back, and by 1642 the Swedish general Torstensson was ravaging the Habsburg lands in Austria. Intent upon capturing Leipzig, Torstensson encountered the Imperial forces under Archduke Leopold and

Count Piccolomini near the city. The battle was opened by a massive imperial cannonade of chain shot, intended to precede a sweeping cavalry attack. Torstensson realized that he

much better range and accuracy than a pistol.

CAVALRY GUN

be fired from horseback. It had

This wheel-lock carbine could

must strike before the enemy formed in line of battle, and he moved quickly against the Imperial left flank, which broke almost at once, despite the Archduke's best efforts to maintain discipline. On the other flank, however, the Bavarian cavalry had repulsed their Swedish opposites, while the

"Do you not know, my son, with what little wisdom the world is governed?"

Axel Oxenstierna, the Swedish chancellor, in a letter to his son concerning the peace negotiations to end the Thirty Years War, 1648

Archduke's infantry was beginning to press against the Swedish centre. Torstensson brought his right wing across and pushed back the Swedish infantry. In the confusion, the Imperial cavalry found itself isolated by the withdrawal of the footsoldiers, leaving them little choice but to surrender or flee. Whole companies of troops simply

threw down their arms and agreed on the spot to serve Torstensson. The Imperial army collapsed and fled. In the aftermath the irate Archduke, who had lost half his army, court-martialled the officers of one whole regiment. The higher officers were beheaded, and one in ten of the soldiers summarily shot. The Imperial side's fortunes had reached their nadir.

#### TORSTENSSON

Lennart Torstensson was a skilled tactician and pioneer of new recruitment methods. Ill health he was crippled by arthritis - meant he often had to lead his army in a litter. His suffering may have shaped his outlook on military discipline. Any failure or act of disobedience was instantly punished and his men heartily loathed him. His severity was matched only by his spectacular successes on the battlefield.



THIRTY YEARS WAR

#### Rocroi



LOCATION 90km (55 miles) northeast of Reims, France

DATE 19 May 1643 FORCES Spanish: 8,000 cavalry, 19,000 infantry; French: 7.000 cavalry.

8,000 killed, 7,000

15 000 infantry CASUALTIES Spanish

prisoners In May 1642 a Spanish army under Don Francisco de Melo crossed into France, stopping to besiege Rocroi, a small fort north of Rheims. The French, under the Duc d'Enghien,

advanced rapidly to face him. The Spanish troops were formed in their habitual tercios rather than the more advanced line formation favoured by the French. Both sides formed up their cavalry on the flanks. The battle

#### STANDING ARMIES

The Thirty Years War proved decisive in the move towards the professionalization of armies. The very nature of warfare was changing. A new, more disciplined and professional - and therefore more expensive - means of conducting war was emerging. One reason advanced for the repeated successes of Swedish forces is that they contained a small nucleus of career soldiers who fought across a number of campaigns. The Thirty Years War also saw the increasing use of drill manuals to provide formal training for soldiers.



whose horsemen defeated the cavalry of the enemy left. The French cavalry on the right wing, however, routed their adversaries. At this point the Duc d'Enghien charged through the enemy centre, a move that allowed him to relieve the attack upon his exhausted infantry. The Spanish horsemen, caught between two assailants, broke and headed towards the marsh. Their flight left 8,000 Spanish infantrymen surrounded without any hope of escape. Despite heroic feats of endurance (the French

began at daybreak on 19 May, and

initially went well for the Spanish,

#### NO QUARTER

This graphic image depicts soldiers (possibly French) being savagely punished for indiscipline and crimes against civilians.

charged them four times) their resistance was destroyed by a combination of French artillery and relentless cavalry assault. But the tercios' surrender did not end the bloodshed; in the confusion d'Enghien was fired upon, and in revenge his men fell upon the helpless Spaniards, slaughtering over half of them. The defeat effectively marked the end of Spanish military power.

#### THIRTY YEARS WAR Iankov



DATE 5 March 1645 Swedish: 15,000; Imperial: 15,000 CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

Near Prague modern day Czech Republic

After Second Breitenfeld, the Imperial forces were saved from disaster only by the outbreak of a Danish-Swedish War. But the Swedish general Torstensson was back in central Europe by summer 1645 and at Jankov, outside Prague, he was confronted by the Imperial army. The ensuing battle was a series of skirmishes over hilly and wooded terrain. The Swedes were outnumbered and Torstensson's tactical ability was crucial in defeating the Imperial forces, whose infantry offered little resistance. Only the Bavarian cavalry fought back against the Protestants, but, outnumbered and outgunned, they fell in large numbers. The loss of this elite force left Emperor Ferdinand militarily crippled and destroyed all Catholic hopes of enforcing a favourable peace.

#### THIRTY YEARS WAR Zusmarshausen

#### 17 May 1648 FORCES Imperial: unknown Franco-Swedish force: unknown

Near Munich southern Germany

By 1648, the elector of Saxony had made peace with Sweden, leaving Emperor Ferdinand dangerously isolated. In spring 1648 the remaining Bavarian and Imperial armies found themselves outnumbered by

No reliable estimates

a Franco-Swedish force. Little or no co-ordination existed between the two Imperial-Catholic forces, their respective commanders having fallen out over the question of precedence. The Imperial forces, moreover, were slowed down by an enormous train of campfollowers, who may have outnumbered the soldiers four to one. Melander, the Imperial field-marshal, tried to move the infantry and

artillery away from his pursuers. hoping that the Italian general Montecuccoli would be able to defend the rear with the cavalry. This the Italian did, with considerable doggedness, until, with Melander killed, he abandoned everything but the infantry, which he

moved into Landsberg. The commander of the Bavarian army, which had retreated, was immediately



#### FRENCH MARSHAL

Henri, Vicomte de Turenne, was the leading French general in the final stages of the Thirty Years War.

arrested on a charge of treason. The battle at Zusmarhausen was followed not long after by the Treaty of Westphalia, negotiations for which had been

dragging on interminably. The settlement, which finally ended the Thirty Years War, helped establish

Sweden as a new force in Europe, and finally forced Spain to recognize the independence of the Dutch Republic. Its terms laid the foundations for a Europe based on the nation-state rather than on dynastic loyalties and overlapping religious and political jurisdictions.

#### PAPER PEACE

The seals on the Treaty of Westphalia, shown here, signalled an end to a generation of war and the advent of modern diplomacy.

Cromwell's army surged through the

town, killing priests and friars on sight

A church in which some defending

fire. Aston was bludgeoned to death

with his own wooden leg. Civilians

as well as soldiers were killed in the

slaughter: Cromwell's actions here and

later at Wexford ensured that he would

forever remain a figure of hatred for

Irish Catholics. He left Ireland in May

1650, two years before Parliamentary

control of the island was complete.

DROGHEDA'S STRENGTH

he onslaught of Cromwell's forces.

Even after the walls had been breached.

Drogheda held out for some time against

soldiers had sought refuge was set on

# THE ENGLISH CIVIL WAR

BETWEEN 1642 AND 1651 a series of wars erupted between supporters of the Crown and of Parliament in England, Wales, Scotland, and Ireland. The split between them stemmed from religious differences and from King Charles I's belief in his "divine right" to rule without recourse to Parliament. The first battle between Royalists and Parliamentarians was fought in

1642, and by 1646 Charles had been defeated. Conflict re-ignited in 1647-49, when the Scots allied with the Crown. Charles was executed in 1649, and his son Prince Charles became the Royalist figurehead. In 1649-51 the Royalists, and their Irish and Scottish allies, were decisively beaten, and Britain came under the rule of the most successful general of the Civil War, Oliver Cromwell.

ENGLISH CIVIL WAR

#### Marston Moor



DATE 2 July 1644 FORCES Royalists: 18,000; Parliamentarians and Scots: 27,000 CASUALTIES Royalists: 4,150 killed; Scots

and Parliamentarians:

Moor, 6km (4 miles) west of York, England c.2,000 killed

Nearly two years after hostilities had started, the war was going badly for the Royalists in the north of England. Led by the Marquis of Newcastle, they had been driven back to York, where they were besieged by Parliamentary and Scots forces led by Sir Thomas Fairfax and the Earl of Leven. A relief army, led by Prince Rupert of the Rhine, reached York on 1 July, and the next day Royalists marched out of the city to give battle. Both sides deployed infantry in the centre with cavalry on either flank. At about 2pm there was a short artillery

to attack the Royalists from the rear and exchange, but



neither side made a decisive move

begin the next morning, but at about 7:30pm, Parliamentary forces attacked. Their left flank, led by Cromwell, routed the Royalist right flank. Elsewhere, the Royalists were more successful, and Leven fled, believing the battle lost. However, Cromwell was able

Rupert believed the battle would

relieve the beleaguered Parliamentary forces. Victory meant that the Parliamentarians would gain decisive control of the north of England.

#### BATTLE HORSES

The strength and manoeuvrability of Cromwell's Parliamentary cavalry was an important factor in the outcome of the battle.



#### ENGLISH CIVIL WAR Naseby



DATE 14 June 1645 Royalists: 9,000; Parliamentarians 14 000 CASUALTIES Royalists:

400-1 000 killed:

**Parliamentarians** 

south of Leicester central England

Parliament's establishment of the New Model Army in January 1645 created a well paid and disciplined force, although at first there was a wide gap in quality between its experienced cavalry and hastily organized infantry. In May the

Royalists sacked Leicester, drawing the New Model Army, led by Sir Thomas Fairfax. away from their siege of Oxford. Prince Rupert drew the Royalists up

along a ridge north of Naseby, with infantry flanked on both sides by cavalry. Fairfax positioned the Parliamentary forces beneath the Naseby ridge in similar fashion, with 1,000

dragoons under Colonel John Okey behind a hedge on the left flank. The land in front of the Parliamentarians was waterlogged, and Cromwell advised Fairfax to withdraw to

#### BATTLE PLAN

This plan of Naseby shows the exact position of the infantry and cavalry units commanded by Charles I and Fairfax.

higher land. Seeing the

Parliamentary army fall

back, at 10am Rupert

NEW MODEL WARRIOR

Commander-in-chief of Cromwell's New Model Army at Naseby, Sir Thomas Fairfax was largely responsible for the Parliamentarian victory.

decided to attack. The cavalry on the right, led by Rupert in person, broke through the cavalry and dragoons on the Parliamentary left in a magnificent charge. But instead of turning to attack the infantry, they charged on, losing touch with the battle.

Meanwhile, the Royalist infantry was overwhelming the Parliamentary infantry. But Cromwell's cavalry, the 'Ironsides", carried out a disciplined charge on the right flank that broke through the Royalist cavalry there, and then charged the infantry. Also attacked by surviving Parliamentarian cavalry and dragoons from the other flank, the Royalist infantry was crushed. King Charles's advisers stopped him leading the reserves in a bid to save the day. The New Model Army had scored its first victory and Royalist hopes of

winning the war were effectively ended.

"The foot on either side hardly saw each other till they were within carbine shot, and so only made one volley; ours falling in with sword and butt end of the musket did notable execution. insomuch as I saw their colours fall and their foot in great disorder."

#### WITNESS TO WAR SIR EDWARD WALKER, ROYALIST

The infantry of both sides did indeed advance to "push of pike' so rapidly that the musketeers intermingled with the pikemen had time for only one volley before turning to using their muskets as clubs. The Royalist infantry were fewer than the Parliamentarians but fought with great determination in the face of inevitable defeat.

ENGLISH CIVIL WAR

#### Drogheda



CASHALTIES north of Dublin

Parliamentarians: 150 killed; Royalists and civilians: 3,500 killed

Parliamentarians:

12,000; Royalists: 2,300

FORCES

On 17 January 1649 the Marquis of Ormonde settled an alliance between the Royalists and the Irish, hoping to turn Ireland into a Royalist base from which a counterattack could be launched against the triumphant Parliamentarians. In response Parliament appointed Cromwell Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland. Cromwell was able to march into Dublin unhindered, but met

Wooden carriage tail

#### FALCONET

Small-calibre cannon such as this Civil War falconet were designed for mobility. They were attached to cavalry or infantry units, rather than to the slow-moving artillery units.

with opposition on

on 10 September.

The town was well

protected by a wall

7m (23ft) high and

2m (6.5ft) thick; its

governor, Sir Arthur

Aston, felt confident of the town's

ordered an artillery bombardment to

commence, and on 11 September the

defences and refused the order to

surrender. Cromwell immediately

arriving at Drogheda

#### Preston



ENGLISH CIVIL WAR

17-19 August 1648 FORCES Parliamentarians 8.600: Scots: 17.600 CASUALTIES Parliamentarians:

unknown; Scots:

LOCATION Preston, northwest

Fnoland 1.000 killed In January 1647 Parliament captured Charles I. However, he escaped in November and signed an alliance with the Scots, who invaded England in July 1648. Led by the Duke of Hamilton. they moved south through Lancashire. On the morning of 17 August, Cromwell attacked Scots

guarding the road into Preston and by nightfall had secured the town. The next day he pursued the disorganized Scottish army. Totally outmanoeuvred by a much smaller force, Hamilton fled with most of his cavalry. The Scots surrendered to Cromwell at Warrington on 19 August.

#### ARMOUR

This pikeman's breastplate with tassets dates from the Civil War.





LOCATION Dunbar, east of Edinburgh, Scotland

The Scots, incensed at the execution of Charles I, committed themselves to restoring the crown in England. On 22 July 1650 Cromwell led an army of 16,000 into Scotland to pre-empt any attack on England. The Scottish army, led by General David Leslie,

3 September 1650

FORCES Scots: 20,000

**Parliamentarians** 

Scots: 3,000 killed;

**Parliamentarians** 

11.000

CASUALTIES

20-40 killed

was numerically superior but throughout August Leslie avoided a direct confrontation. This policy was effective; by the end of the month Cromwell's army had lost 5,000 men to sickness. He was forced to withdraw to the coast at Dunbar, where he would have the support of his fleet. Leslie's army tracked

Cromwell's, and by 1 September the Scots were encamped on Doon Hill above Dunbar with Cromwell's



UNUSUAL HELMET

English Civil War.

walls were breached. The

breach was too small to allow

many troops through, and so

Cromwell's men were repelled twice

as they attempted to storm it. The

person, overwhelmed the defenders.

third assault, led by Cromwell in

This type of iron hat

was occasionally worn

by horsemen during the

men trapped between them and the coast. On 2 September Leslie led his army down the hill, planning to attack Cromwell the next day. Only a steep ravine separated the two armies. Cromwell responded by ordering his army across the ravine under cover of darkness, and launching a surprise attack at daybreak on 3 September, shouting to his men the words of a psalm: "Now let God arise, and his

#### DAWN ATTACK

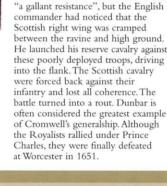
Cromwell launched a surprise attack on the Scots at Dunbar: moving his troops under cover of night, he attacked at daybreak.

enemies shall be scattered." At first the Scots made, in Cromwell's words. "a gallant resistance", but the English commander had noticed that the Scottish right wing was cramped between the ravine and high ground He launched his reserve cavalry against these poorly deployed troops, driving into the flank. The Scottish cavalry were forced back against their infantry and lost all coherence. The battle turned into a rout. Dunbar is often considered the greatest example of Cromwell's generalship. Although the Royalists rallied under Prince Charles, they were finally defeated

#### **OLIVER CROMWELL**

Born into minor gentry, Cromwell fought for the Parliamentary cause from 1642, coming to prominence as an inspiring, disciplined cavalry leader. Courageous and charismatic, he won the loyalty and admiration of his men. It was his conviction that a plain man who "knows what he fights for" would win out against "that which you call a gentleman" He seized power as Lord Protector in 1653, in effect a military dictator.





#### **CANNON**

THE MUZZLE-LOADED, SMOOTHBORE CANNON, CAST IN BRONZE, BRASS, OR IRON, WAS THE BASIC FIELD-ARTILLERY WEAPON FROM THE LATE 15TH CENTURY THROUGH TO THE 19TH CENTURY.

Cannon were initially used primarily in sieges, but the development of lighter guns mounted on limbers (wheeled ammunition cases) created feasible battlefield weapons. Guns chiefly fired solid iron round shot the classic "cannonball" (early cannonballs were made of stone), although against advancing infantry at short range, a canister was used. This was a cluster of small balls inside a tin case. As the case exited the barrel, the balls were released to spray the area in front of the gun. A smaller version of canister shot was grapeshot, which was contained in a canvas bag rather than a metal case. Mortars, and, from the late 17th century, howitzers would fire explosive shells, which took the form of hollow iron spheres packed with gunpowder and ignited by a fuse.

#### MANNING THE GUNS

Cannon were typically serviced by a crew of five or six artillerymen. The guns were pulled along by teams of horses or men to the battlefield, then disconnected from the limber. The barrel was swabbed out and then powder and shot rammed down the bore from the muzzle. The firer applied a smouldering portfire - a wooden holder with a length of quick burner attached to it - to a primer-filled tube in the vent to ignite the gunpowder propellant. After each shot a gun had to be "run up" to the original position from which the explosion's recoil had carried it - a process involving a lot of muscle power - and relaid on its target. This involved raising or lowering the

gun barrel with handspikes and fixing it in position with quoins (wedges), until the elevating screw was introduced during the 18th century. In the late 17th

century, when the art of creating shot for specific barrel sizes became more precise, types of cannon were classified according to the weight of the ammunition that they fired; this measurement became known as the gun's calibre.



A French cannon being captured by the Holy Roman Emperor Charles V's troops at Pavia in 1525. This battle that was unusual in that artillery proved ineffective.

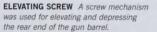


SPECIFICATION







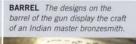




WHEEL HOOK The gun carriage would have been pulled by horses roped to a hook attached to the hub of each wheel.



METALWORK The metal details of the gun BARREL The designs on the carriage were constructed to be in keeping with the bronzework of the gun itself.





SERIAL NUMBER The 19th-century gun carriage bore a serial number by which the cannon could be easily identified.



CONSTRUCTION STAMP The builder of the gun carriage added a forger's mark to its side.





## DYNASTIC WARS

IN THE CENTURY BEFORE 1648, European warfare had been dominated by wars of religion fought between Catholic and Protestant powers. The following century would be characterized by wars whose origin lay more in dynastic disputes. One major source of these wars were the efforts of the French kings principally Louis XIV - to achieve a defensible frontier for their

kingdom. Successive attempts to assert French interest led to a series of conflicts; in Cologne and Britain (the origins of the War of the Grand Alliance, 1688-97), in Spain (the War of the Spanish Succession, 1701-13), and Austria (the War of Austrian Succession, 1740-48). Until challenged by Prussia in the mid-18th century. France was the pre-eminent military power in Europe.

#### WAR OF THE GRAND ALLIANCE

**DATE** 30 June 1690

French: 70 ships

#### Beachy Head



Anglo-Dutch: 70 ships CASUALTIES Dutch: 13 ships sunk, English Channel, off 1 cantured coast of Fast Sussex

In 1688 Louis XIV's France invaded the Palatinate in Germany, provoking an alliance of German states, Spain, Sweden, and Holland to

oppose him. Also in 1688 William of Orange, the Dutch Stadholder. came to the English throne (as William III) and brought his new kingdom into the war. A naval struggle ensued for control of the English Channel. In June 1690 an Anglo-Dutch fleet under the Earl of Torrington

encountered the French under the Comte de Tourville. The struggle that followed, although one of the first great battles of the age of sail, also reveals the limits of 17th-century sea power. The Dutch on the right wing closed with the enemy too soon, unsupported by the English, and their squadron was mauled. The allied fleet fell back in disorder. Torrington was subsequently courtmartialled for retreating and, although acquitted, never commanded again. In his defence, he maintained that, by preserving what remained of the

fleet, he had averted an invasion. Whatever the truth, de Tourville failed to follow up his victory and confined himself to burning the Devon fishing village of Teignmouth, before retiring to France.

> FALSE VICTORY Louis XIV struck this medal to commemorate his fleet's victory at Beachy Head.

#### WILLIAMITE WAR IN IRELAND

#### The Boyne



FORCES Williamites: 35,000: Jacobites: 21,000 CASUALTIES Williamites: 500; Jacobites: 1,500

King James II of England, after his deposition by the Protestant William of Orange, fled to Ireland, where he raised a Catholic army. His Jacobite force was a mixed one: higher quality Irish cavalry mixed with peasant levies. William's army was more professional, giving him a decisive advantage. He also commanded eight times as much artillery as the Jacobites. The two sides met near a ford over the Bovne, near Drogheda. The Williamite infantry fought their way across and staunchly resisted Jacobite cavalry counterattacks. William's cavalry then crossed the river, forcing James to retreat. The Bovne was not a rout, but it ended hopes for a Catholic restoration in England.

**FORTRESSES** 

By the early 17th century, artillery

than 300 forts, including this one



#### BOYNE TO RULE

William III, shown here on the battlefield of the Boyne, was a staunch Protestant invited by the English Parliament to replace the pro-Catholic James II as English king.

#### WAR OF THE GRAND ALLIANCE

FORCES

CASUALTIES

estimates

Louis XIV's army conquered

To defend French gains

Louis's military architect

de Vauban oversaw the

large parts of Belgium.

#### Siege of Namur



Southern Belgium

No campaign better illustrates the than the second siege of Namur. 1 September 1695 William III of England joined the French: 13.000: Allied: Unknown French: 8.000: Allied: no reliable was restored, and the war ended in Following Neerwinden (see p159), 1696, with little gain on either side.

#### PRINCE OF ORANGE

William III reviews his army outside Namur. William starved the city into submission rather than assault it.

construction of 90 fortresses, all based on precise mathematical calculations. importance of these fortified positions electors of Bavaria and Brandenburg in besieging the city. Caught off guard, the French responded by bombarding Brussels. After three months, Namur surrendered. French military prestige was badly shaken, the Allied left flank

#### had developed sufficiently in power to render traditional fortifications almost useless. It was de Vauban, Louis XIV's chief military engineer, who solved the problem with elaborate systems of bastions that gave defenders excellent lines of fire, leaving no blind spots for attackers to exploit. He built or rebuilt more

DE VAURAN De Vauban, of a minor noble family became a military engineer in Louis XIV's army in 1658. He directed nore than 50 sieges, nd the lessons he rned enabled him perfect a type of tar-shaped fortress that would better sist bombardments



#### WAR OF THE GRAND ALLIANCE

#### Neerwinden (Landen)



DATE 29 July 1693 FORCES Dutch: 50,000

13 August 1704

Allies: 52,000

FORCES

CASUALTIES Dutch: 19.000 Brabant, Belgium French: 9,000

By 1692 the French had the upper hand in the War of the Grand Alliance Namur had fallen to them the year before, although they lost it again in 1695 (see p158). In June 1692 the Duke of Luxembourg had beaten William III at Steenkirk. On 29 July

1693 the two generals faced each other again in Brabant. William entrenched between Landen and Neerwinden. His army's artillery was superior to that of the French: the Dutch had brought howitzers of their own manufacture into action. Nevertheless, the Allied army was over-extended and after three assaults the French cavalry broke through it. Casualties were perhaps greater than in any other 17th-century battle. William retreated to Brussels, leaving critical positions such as Louvain, Nieuwpoort, and Ostend exposed to the enemy.

#### A GENERAL'S RETURN

The Duke of Luxembourg is shown on his victorious return from Neerwinden. He died before the war ended, unbeaten by William III.



#### SPANISH WAR OF SUCCESSION

#### Blenheim



Donauworth, Germany

CASUALTIES miles) west of Allies: 12,000

The origins of the Spanish War of Succession (1702-13) lay in the claim of Philip, duke of Anjou (grandson of Louis XIV of France), to the vacant throne of Spain. To the other European powers, the prospect of Spain and France being so closely united was alarming. Britain joined with Austria and the United Provinces of the Netherlands in a Grand Alliance opposing Philip's candidacy. France and Spain, over which Anjou secured control, went to war against

Allied infantry Allied cavalry French-Bavarian infantn French-Bavarian cavalry

the Allies. A series of French successes under the Duke of Marlborough and in 1702 and 1703 in the upper Rhine Prince Eugène of Savoy met Tallard's and south Germany left the Grand Franco-Bavarian army at Blenheim, in Alliance on the point of collapse. At Bavaria. Marlborough detected that this moment of crisis, an Allied army Tallard's deployment was fatally flawed;

although the Danube protected his flanks and the marshes of the Nebel his front, his line was overextended. stretching some 5km (3 miles). Tallard's centre was held by the unsupported cavalry, and the wings were independent of one another. Marlborough isolated and engaged the enemy on his own terms. French battalions were beaten back into the villages of Blenheim and Oberglau. Small battalions of the Allied army tied down and encircled the French infantry. Marlborough's centre was able to ford the Nebel and its marshes. Having resisted the French cavalry, Marlborough pressed his advantage against the weak French centre. Tallard's army was routed. Before the end of the campaigning season the Allies had occupied Bavaria. Most importantly, Marlborough and Eugène had engineered the first major defeat of French arms for more



#### Ramillies

DATE 23 May 1706 FORCES Allies: 62,000; French: 60,000

Allies: 3 600 French: 12,000 (and 6.000 prisoners

p159) threatened to lead nowhere. 1705 had witnessed an abortive Allied campaign in the Netherlands, while Louis XIV had taken advantage of the lull in fighting to reorganize his forces. Marlborough - now in sole command of the Anglo-Dutch army - eventually settled on a campaign into northern France in the hope of engaging the enemy, led by Marshal Villeroi. The English general's greatest ally was, ironically, Louis XIV himself, who insisted that his war-weary army engage the Allies and their superior artillery. Hampered by his sovereign's insistence on detailed management of the campaign, Villeroi decided upon a lightning raid, advancing from Louvain. Both he and Marlborough raced to the plain of Ramillies. In many respects the battle of

#### VILLEROI VANOUISHED

This engraving of Ramillies at its height shows Marlborough and Villeroi directing their armies, in the latter's case to their doom.

Ramillies was strikingly similar to that of Blenheim. Villeroi's army was deployed along a low ridge, his position protected by marshland. Again, Marlborough exploited errors in French deployment; their forces were overextended, the flanks isolated

"Milord Marlborough was rid over ... Major Bingfield, holding his stirrup to give him assistance ... was shot by a cannon ball that passed through Marlborough's legs."

General Orkney, on the battle of Ramillies, 1864



#### MADSHAL'S BATON

This French marshal's baton symbolizes the increasingly formal chains of command that emerged in 17th-century armies.

the land to hide the diversion of forces from his right. Despite heroic rearguard actions, before nightfall Villeroi's forces were being hunted down. Following Ramillies the great strategic strongpoints of the Netherlands - Louvain, Brussels, Antwerp, Ghent, Bruges, Ostend, and Menin - opened their gates to Marlborough's army.



#### from each other, and the movement of the left flank hampered by the marshes. Early attacks upon both French wings were successful and

Both sides subsequently claimed

dragged on for another four years

until it was finally terminated by a

series of treaties over the period

victory in the battle. The war

#### Villeroi was forced to move forces from the centre out to them. Marlborough responded brilliantly, concentrating his forces in the centre and using the lie of

#### SPANISH WAR OF SUCCESSION Malplaquet



modern-day Belgium

Allies: 90,000; French: 90,000 CASUALTIES Allies: 55.000 miles) south of Mons, French: 40,000

FORCES

11 September 1709

dead, 30,000 prisoners

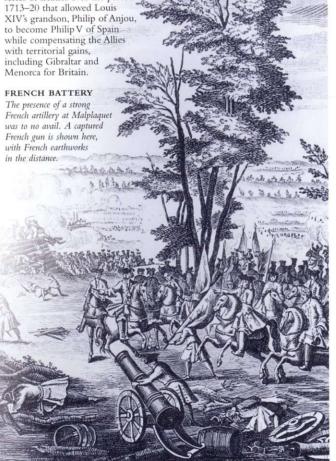
By 1709, the French strategic position was dire. Only the fortress at Mons lay between the Allied army and Paris. In spring 1709 the French king peremptorily dismissed the Allies' peace terms and instructed Marshal Villars to run any risk in order to save Mons and, with it, his capital. Villars was the only French general who was an equal of Marlborough. He chose his position at Malplaquet, where the terrain

favoured his outnumbered forces, and stationed his flanks in two woods. with the area between them fortified with earthworks and the cavalry held Prince Eugène of Savoy launched The appearance of Allied cavalry on his extreme left brought Villars to weaken his centre, just as centre batteries were then seized. cavalry swept through to engage but ferocious melée ensued. The in excellent order into the fortified lines of La Bassée, which commanded the road from Lille to Paris.

in reserve. Marlborough and his ally massed attacks upon the French flanks, hoping that this would bring Villars to weaken his centre, but on both wings the Allied army sustained heavy losses. Marlborough had hoped. The French At this point the 30,000-strong Allied Louis XIV's horsemen. A disorganized French, although pushed back, were able to withdraw the bulk of their army







AUSTRIAN WAR OF SUCCESSION

DATE 27 June 1743

Allies: 40,000:

French: 60 000

FORCES

#### Dettingen



CASHALTIES (70 miles) east of Allies: 2.400 dead: Frankfurt, Germany, French: 5,000 dead

In 1740 Frederick II of Prussia invaded Austrian-controlled Silesia. setting in train a conflict that ranged Prussia, France, Bavaria, and Saxony

shows the red-coated the French infantry.

against Austria, Britain, and the United Provinces. British King George II had tried without success to knock Bavaria out of the French alliance. In 1743 he led his army in person to meet the French in Germany and by late June found himself at Dettingen, cut off from his base and hemmed in by hills. He was fortunate that the

impetuous French Marshal de Grammont attacked prematurely. The advance of the infantry of the French right was met by a deadly fire They recoiled, sheltering behind the cavalry, before fleeing in disorder. Many of them drowned trying to swim the Main. Dettingen had no

> strategic consequences Its position in history is due to it being the last occasion in which a British king led his troops into battle.

#### BATTLE ROYAL

This view of Dettingen British troops holding off AUSTRIAN WAR OF SUCCESSION Fontenov



FORCES Allies: 53.000: French: 70,000

INCATION 8km (5 miles) CASHAITIES southeast of Tournai. modern-day Belgium

Allies: 9.000: French: 5,000

After Dettingen, the fortunes of war had favoured the French, who overran Flanders and in May 1745, led by Marshal Saxe, were laving siege to the fortress of Tournai. At nearby Fontenov an English army under the Duke of Cumberland, George III's 25-year-old son, encountered the French force. Saxe had planned meticulously, hiding his forces in undulating countryside. Although the British and Hanoverian forces broke the French ranks, the fire from the concealed French positions was too punishing and Cumberland had to withdraw. The French victory led to the conquest of much of the Netherlands, including Tournai.



#### WILLIAM FOUGHT

William, Duke of Cumberland, was a general at 21, fought at Fontenoy and Culloden, and in 1757 was disgraced after surrendering an army during the Seven Years War.

#### JACOBITE REBELLION

#### Culloden



Inverness, Scotland

Just east of

16 April 1746 FORCES Jacobite: 5.400

Jacobite: 1,000 killed; Government: 50 killed

The defeat at Fontenoy had left Britain dangerously exposed to French invasion. In 1745 Charles Edward Stuart ("Bonnie Prince Charlie"), who claimed the English

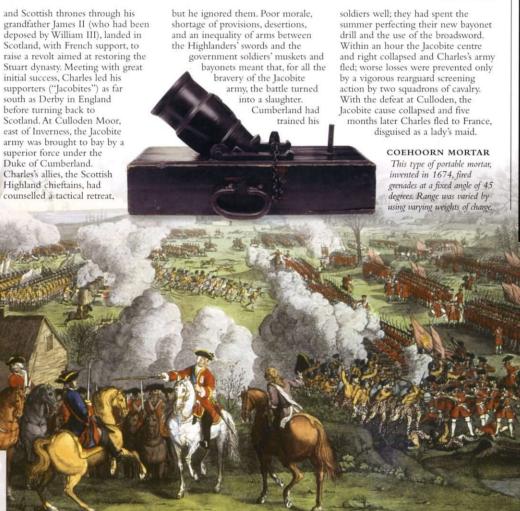
BATTLE ON THE MOOR

The Duke of Cumberland, on a white

horse, directs his troops. His emphasis on

raining helped them win at Culloden.

grandfather James II (who had been deposed by William III), landed in Scotland, with French support, to raise a revolt aimed at restoring the Stuart dynasty. Meeting with great initial success. Charles led his supporters ("Jacobites") as far south as Derby in England before turning back to Scotland. At Culloden Moor, east of Inverness, the Jacobite army was brought to bay by a superior force under the Duke of Cumberland. Charles's allies, the Scottish



#### THE GREAT NORTHERN WAR

THE GREAT NORTHERN WAR (1700-21) saw Sweden and its warrior-king Charles XII (1697-1718) fight a series of campaigns against Denmark, Prussia, Saxony, Hanover, Poland, and Russia. The latter rose with unprecedented speed to become one of Europe's great powers. Russian prominence was achieved largely at the expense of Sweden and its Baltic empire, which had

been essentially trade-based. The Great Northern War became as much a fight for control of the wealth of Baltic trade as for territory. In this region towns were less strategically important than in France or Belgium. Armies were generally able to live off the land. As a result there were only three major sieges, producing a very different form of war from that seen in western Europe.

GREAT NORTHERN WAR

Narva



FORCES Swedish: 8.000; Russian: 40,000 CASUALTIES

Northeastern Estonia

Russian: up to 10.000 killed

30 November 1700

In May 1700 Sweden was attacked by an alliance of Frederick IV of Denmark, Peter I (the Great) of Russia, and Augustus the Strong, elector of Saxony and king of Poland, who were seeking to counter Sweden's growing influence in northern Europe. Sweden was, in

#### PETER'S TRIUMPH

Peter the Great used the nine years after the defeat at Narva to rebuild his army, which led to his triumph at Poltava, shown here.

many respects, a nation geared to war. The Indelningswerk system of recruiting, introduced during the 1670s and 1680s, supplied a professional army. This formidable force was settled on the land: each province provided a regiment; these regiments were settled in "files" (estates) made up of two farms. Each file provided one soldier. The system produced not only a national army but also a well-trained one, as regiments were called up for periods of training in peacetime. In contrast, Russian forces were badly in need of reform a fact recognized by Tsar Peter himself. The first stage of the war saw the small Swedish garrison at Narva (in modern Estonia) besieged by a force of about 50,000 Russians, When Charles XII moved to relieve the town, the Russians retired to an entrenched camp at Novgorod, a few kilometres away. Charles boldly attacked during a November snowstorm. His force of 8,000 Swedes broke into the

entrenchments and, after a three-hour hand-to-hand battle, smashed the Russian left wing and defeated their cavalry, driving the Russians away. This triumph at Narva seemed to confirm Swedish dominance in the Baltic and Charles's status as a military genius. He occupied Warsaw and Cracow in

1701 and engineered the election of his client Stanislaus as king of Poland in 1704. Denmark was forced to make peace with Sweden in 1700, while Saxony did so in 1708, clearing the way for an attack on Russia. After Narva, Swedish predominance in eastern Europe seemed assured.

#### CHARLES XII

Charles XII maintained a Swedish royal tradition of campaigning in person. He was profoundly devoted to the military life; he spoke of being married to the army. After the defeat at Poltava in 1709 he was for five years the unwelcome guest and, latterly, captive of the Ottoman sultan. Fittingly, he died on the field at Frederikshall in 1718. With his demise Sweden's age of greatness came to a close.





#### GREAT NORTHERN WAR

#### Poltava



Eastern Ukraine

The defeat at Narva had shown the urgent need for Russian military reforms. Central organization was improved; while new regiments and military schools were established. In 1705 the system of recruiting infantry was extended; from then on, one soldier was provided by every 20 peasant households. In 1705-09 up to 168,000 men were recruited in this way. Guard regiments were established and training provided for all (including the nobles). Following a victory at Jolowcyzn in

Swedes: 10,000

killed/captured;

#### REVENGE

This relief shows the recapture of Narva by the Russians in 1704, avenging their defeat there four years earlier.

Ukraine, hoping to deliver a decisive blow to the Russian army. His decision was to prove Russians: 1,300 killed catastrophic to the Swedish cause. The winter of 1708-09 was extremely harsh. A Russian scorchedearth policy was partially successful. In January, near Hadyach hundreds of Swedish troops froze to death. Attacking the little fortress of Veprik, Charles's men found that the walls had frozen solid. Charles's ally, the

Cossack leader (hetman) Mazepa,

advisers suggested to the Swedish

king a tactical withdrawal to Poland.

meanwhile, provided little assistance,

and Baturin, the Cossack capital, was

Peter the Great enticed the Swedes to attack his fortified position at Poltava, With Charles injured and unable to oversee in person the battle, his generals proved inadequate. The Swedish attack was badly

co-ordinated, hampered by inadequate reconnaissance and poor communications, Russian infantry and artillery inflicted heavy losses or the Swedes. At 10,000 men, however Charles's losses paled beside the surrender of 15,000 Swedes at Perevolochna on 11 July. Charles took refuge in the Ottoman empire, where he was to remain until 1714. During this period, the Russian Tsar was able to reconquer Poland and Sweden's Baltic provinces. The sacked by the Russians. More cautious war ended only in 1721, but Swedish power was broken



#### GREAT NORTHERN WAR

#### Ezel and Grengam

July 1708, Charles XII invaded the



LOCATION Ezel: off Ezel island, Estonia; Grengam: off Grengam island, Estonia

Grengam: 27 July 1720 FORCES Ezel: 6 Russian warships; Grengam: 61 Russian shins 4 Swedish frigates, 1 warship CASUALTIES Ezel: 2

DATE Ezel: 24 May 1719:

Swedish ships sunk; Grengam: 4 Swedish

More than any other activity, the creation of a fleet marked out Peter the Great's reign. In 1700 the Russian admiralty was established; in 1705 the navy began recruiting specialist seamen; in 1715 the prestigious Naval Academy came into being; and by 1724 there were 32 ships-of-the-line in the Baltic fleet. Using this fleet,

Peter attacked the Swedes, whose will

to resist was much weakened after the death of Charles XII at Frederikshall in 1718. The Swedish navy was defeated in two major engagements at Ezel in 1719 - the first victory of the

Russian fleet on the open sea - and Grengam in 1720. At Ezel the Russian navy captured three ships in what Peter laconically described as "a good start for the

Russian navy". At

fleet composed

largely of light

galleys enticed the

Grengam a Russian

heavier Swedish ships into shallow water; two frigates ran aground and were boarded and two more were captured in the subsequent pursuit. Denied its command of the Baltic.

Stockholm was forced to the negotiating table. The Peace of Stockholm (1720)

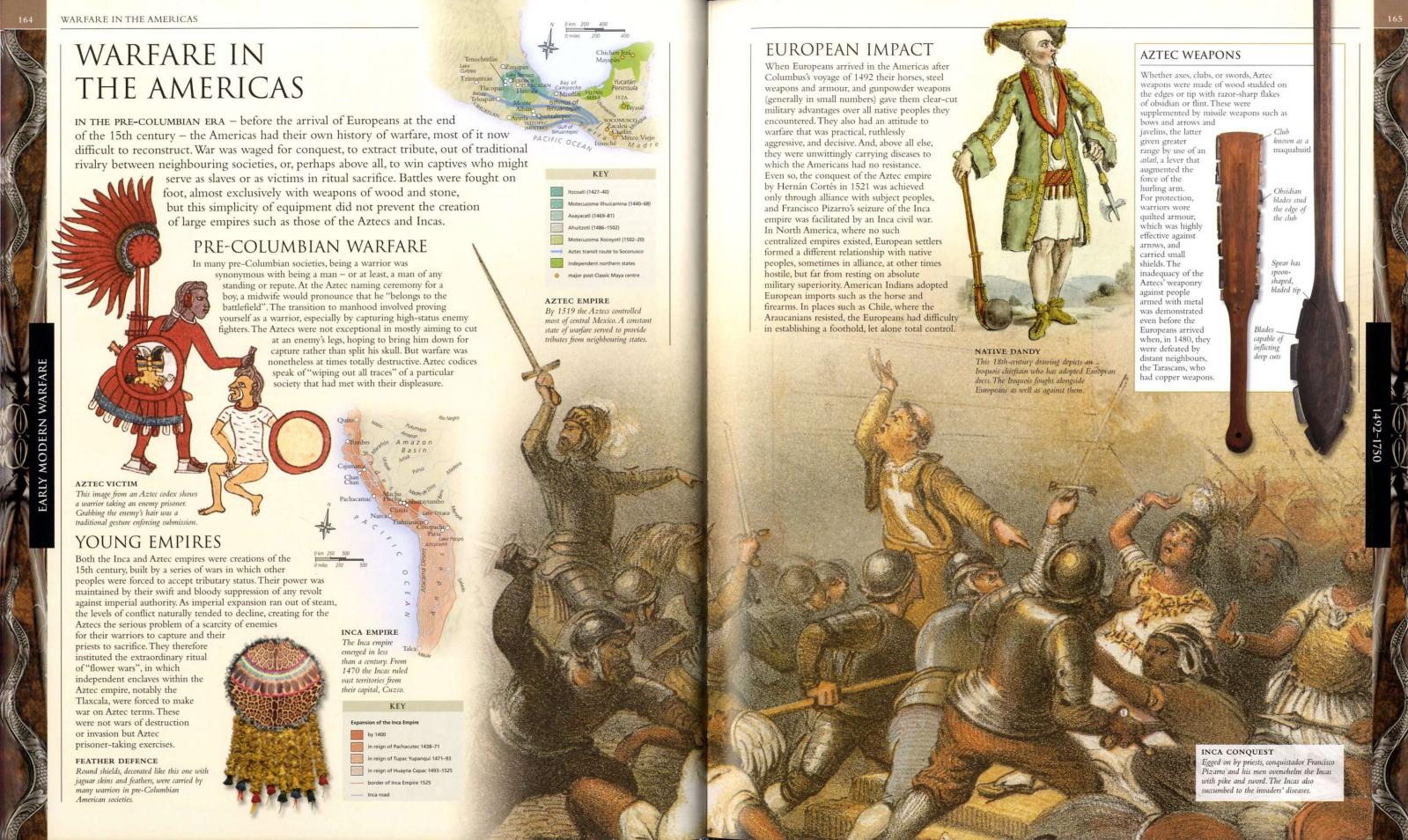
#### SEA MAIL

Improved communications contributed to Russia's victory over Sweden. This frigate was re-equipped by Peter the Great for a military postal service

STEPPE CLASS The Cossacks were warrior horsemen armed with swords such as this shaska. They proved of little use as allies to Charles XII.

brought war between Sweden and Hanover to a close. The latter bought Bremen and Verden for one million thalers, while Prussia obtained part of Pomerania, including Stettin, for two million thalers. The Treaty of Rystad (1721), meanwhile, brought peace between Sweden and Russia and allotted the best part of Sweden's Baltic provinces to Peter, but Finland was restored to Sweden. Russia had now replaced Sweden as the great power in the Baltic and central and eastern Europe.





# CONQUEST OF THE AZTECS AND INCAS

IN NOVEMBER 1518 HERNÁN CORTÉS sailed from Cuba with 600 men, 17 horses, and 10 cannon on an exploratory expedition to the Yucatán peninsula on behalf of the Spanish Crown, Far exceeding his instructions, he formed an alliance with the Tlaxcala, a people hostile to the Aztecs, and advanced to the Aztec capital, Tenochtitlán. Paralysed by superstitious

forebodings, Aztec emperor Montezuma II allowed the Spanish to enter the city and became a puppet ruler under Cortés's control. A subsequent revolt gave the Spanish a hard fight to complete the conquest of Tenochtitlán. The ruthless Spanish adventurer Francisco Pizarro, however, needed to use much less military force to defeat the Inca emperor Atahualpa.

SPANISH CONQUEST OF MEXICO

#### Night of Sorrows



LOCATION day Mexico City

and Aztec: unknown CASUALTIES Spanish: c.600 killed or taken prisoner; Tlaxcalan and Aztec: unknown

DATE 30 June-1 July 1520

FORCES Spanish:

c 1 000: Tlaxcalan

In spring 1519 a Spanish military expedition was sent from Cuba to arrest Cortés for insubordination. Leaving his lieutenant Pedro de Alvarado in control of Tenochtitlán. Cortés marched to the coast, arrested the expedition's leader, and recruited its soldiers. Returning to Tenochtitlán, he found the city in revolt after a massacre of Aztec nobles by Alvarado, Besieged in a palace inside the hostile city, the Spanish decided to escape under cover of darkness by crossing one of the causeways linking the island city to the



in canoes paddled out to attack them on the causeway. Unable to use their horses or cannon in the confined space. hundreds of the Spanish were struck down by arrows or clubbed with axes.

#### CAUSEWAY BATTLE

This artist's depiction of a battle on the bridges leading from the mainland to Tenochtitlán shows how difficult it would have been for the Spanish to manoeuvre.

from the lake, but when the

Spanish and their allies

crossed the causeways

into the city they met

fierce resistance. Each

morning the Spaniards'

allies filled in breaches

the Spanish crossed into

the city. Once they had

control of a street they

razed it to the ground. At

nightfall they withdrew

across the causeways,

which the Aztecs again breached under cover of darkness. By July most of the city was in ruins and the population was dying of starvation; their continued defiance was a paragon of bravery. On 12-13 August the city was overrun, and much of the surviving was population slaughtered in the streets.

in the causeways and

SPANISH CONQUEST OF MEXICO

#### Otumba



Northeast of

FORCES Spanish: 370; Tlaxcalans: c.2,000: Aztecs: c.200,000 (Spanish estimates)

DATE 7 July 1520

CASUALTIES Aztecs: 20,000 killed (Spanish estimates)

After the Night of Sorrows the Spanish and their Tlaxcalan allies retreated. Tired and hungry, they were confronted by an Aztec host at Otumba. Seeing no alternative, Cortés led his men into the midst of the enemy. The Aztecs suffered heavy casualties, cut down by swords and trampled by the few surviving horses. Still, they seemed certain to triumph by sheer weight of numbers when Cortés led a charge with couched lance that laid low the Aztec commander and his banner. The Aztecs fled, but were pursued and slaughtered.

#### SPANISH CONQUEST OF MEXICO

#### Siege of Tenochtitlán DATE 31 May-

shore, but they were spotted and Aztecs



Tenochtitlán, modernday Mexico City

14 August 1521 FORCES Spanish: 900-1,000; Native-American allies: c.100,000 CASUALTIES Aztecs:

100,000; Spanish: no reliable estimates

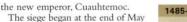
After withdrawing to Tlaxcala in the summer of 1520, Cortés began

preparations for the conquest of

Tenochtitlán. Most of the Aztecs' tributaries now joined the Tlaxcalans as allies of the Spanish. Realizing that control of the lake was the key to taking Tenochtitlán, Cortés had 13 brigantines built - small vessels propelled by sail and oar with a cannon mounted in the bows. Meanwhile, the Aztecs prepared their defence under

#### AZTEC CAPITAL

Tenochtitlán is depicted as an island city on this map published in 1524. Its opulations numbered 250,000.



#### 1521. The Spanish brigantines drove the Aztec war canoes



The emperor was captured while fleeing across the lake. FLINT KNIFE

Flint knives such as this one. vith its sharp, serrated edge, were probably used for human sacrifices ather than as weapons of war.

#### HERNÁN CORTÉS

Born to an undistinguished family from Extremadura, Spain, Cortés went to the West Indies in 1504 bent on making his fortune. His Mexican expedition in 1519 began in controversy; his command was cancelled by the authorities before he left. In his triumph over the Aztecs he proved himself a superb, if ruthless, leader. He had to return to Europe in 1526 to defend himself against accusations of overreaching his authority and never received the post of viceroy that he craved



INCA WARRIOR

Feathers played a prominent part in the martial dress of many American peoples their bright colours and natural sheen led them to be used as symbols of status.

men had arquebuses, crossbows, horses (which especially unnerved the Incas). and, above all, extraordinary nerve. They marched to Atahualpa's headquarters at Cajamarca, where the Incas provided them with lodging and agreed to a formal meeting. There on the morning of 16 November Atahualpa came out to meet the strangers in the central plaza, accompanied by thousands of his followers. At a moment when the haughty emperor had supposedly made a gesture of contempt for the Bible, the Spanish opened fire with arquebuses and crossbows from the low buildings along the sides of the plaza and then charged on horseback, slaughtering the unarmed Incas. Atahualpa was taken prisoner and, after paying a huge ransom in gold, was executed on a trumped-up charge of treason in July 1533. Pizarro then marched on the Inca capital, Cuzco, which was occupied without a fight.

and Pizarro's new capital at Lima, but

their large army could not be kept

in the field for long and the soldiers

soon began to drift away. Pizarro was

this moment because his quarrels with

fellow conquistadors broke into open

warfare when Diego de Almagro seized

Cuzco. In 1538 Almagro was captured

Francisco's brother. The Almagro faction

had their revenge in 1541 when they

and strangled by Hernán Pizarro,

prevented from taking advantage of



#### EMPEROR BEHEADED

This 16th-century engraving shows the decapitation of Tupac Amaru, the last Inca emperor, which completed the Spanish conquest of Peru begun in Cajamarca.

murdered Francisco Pizarro, Manco

a feeling naturally shared by many among the conquered. He escaped from captivity and, in 1536, organized an army to resist the Spanish occupation. The rebel army attacked Cuzco, reportedly bombarding the buildings with red-hot stones fired from slingshots. The small Spanish garrison withdrew to Saxsayhuaman fortress, where they resisted siege with the aid of their superior weaponry. The rebels cut communication between Cuzco

foolhardiness, given that the Inca had

armies numbered in tens of thousands

them (Huayna Capac is said to have

slaughtered 20,000 Caranqui Indians

shortly before his death). But Pizarro's

and were not timid about using

SPANISH CONQUEST OF PERU

Spanish conquistador Francisco Pizarro

was the illiterate son of a professional

soldier. In the course of expeditions

in the 1520s he discovered evidence

of the existence of a wealthy Andean

empire. Boldly obtaining authorization

from Emperor Charles V in Europe, in

1531 Pizarro set sail for Peru. The Inca

emperor, Huayna Capac, had died of

smallpox in 1528, leaving the succession

in dispute. The empire was devastated

by a civil war that ended in 1532 with

victory for Atahualpa. This civil conflict

was being fought to its conclusion as

DATE 1536-1544

FORCES

Inca: 40 000:

Spanish: 200

CASUALTIES

(At Cuzco in 1536)

Pizarro's small band landed on the

coast and advanced inland through

SPANISH CONQUEST OF PERU

Manco Capac's

Rebellion

along the west coast of South America

FORCES

Spanish: 150-200:

No reliable estimates

Inca: 40,000

CASUALTIES

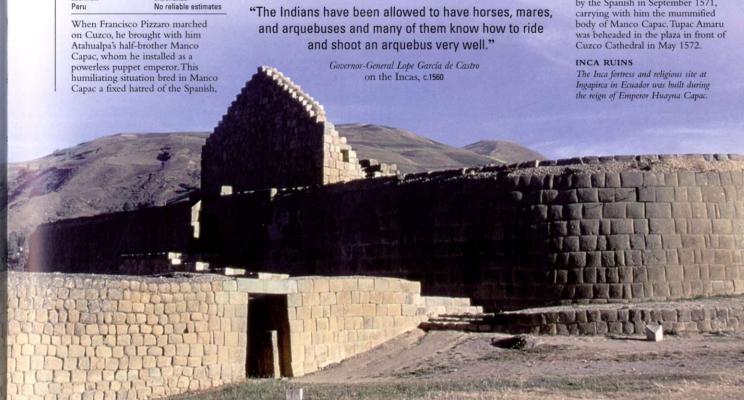
Cajamarca

LOCATION

Cajamarca

northern Peru

Capac, meanwhile, withdrew to remote locations in the Andes, from whence he waged guerrilla war upon the Spanish. Manco Capac died in 1544, probably killed by some of Almagro's former followers who had taken refuge with the Inca rebels. Although this ended the first rebellion against Spanish rule, it was far from the end of resistance by the Inca. That did not come until the last emperor, Tupac Amaru, was captured by the Spanish in September 1571, was beheaded in the plaza in front of



#### EARLY MODERN WARFARE

# "Then Cortés took possession of that land for the King"

WITNESS TO WAR

# CONQUEST OF MEXICO



The overthrow of the Aztec empire in 1519-21 by Hernán Cortés, who had 66 It was a A arrived with a tiny band of followers – just 600 men and 17 horses – marks destructive one of the most lethal thrusts of Europe's overseas adventurism. As far as accounts battle, and a of this catastrophe go, the Aztec side is mostly mute. For the Spanish, in contrast, the compulsion to chronicle their astounding triumph left a plethora of tales, some fearful sight to self-serving, some grandiloquent, all astonished at the magnitude of their journey.

behold. We

Bernal Diaz, The moved through the midst of them at close quarters, slashing and thrusting at them with our swords. And the dogs fought back furiously, dealing us wounds and death with their lances and their two-handed swords.

There is a sense in Diaz's work of ever-present danger for the Spaniards. Surrounded by hosts of Mexican warriors in an alien and threatening landscape, Cortés was thrown back on a mixture of forceful diplomacy, martial prowess, and sheer bloody-minded cruelty to overawe the Aztec nobility. Almost no Spanish soldier emerged unscathed from the campaign, and many were hacked to death or perished from wounds or disease. Diaz stresses the role of the personality of Cortés in the final victory – he saw how vital was the acquisition of native allies who longed to throw off the Aztec hegemony.

66 Then after they had danced the priests laid them down on their backs

on some narrow stones of sacrifice and, cutting open their chests, drew out their palpitating hearts, which they offered to the idols before them. Then they kicked the bodies down the steps, and the Indian butchers who were waiting below cut off their arms and legs and flaved their faces, which they afterwards prepared like glove leather, with their beards on, and kept for their drunken festivals. Then they are their flesh with a sauce of peppers and tomatoes. 99

Bernal Diaz. The Conquest of New Spain, c.1568 In his description of the assault on Tenochtitlán in 1521, Diaz's account reaches a crescendo of menace, terror, and violence. The Aztecs fought bitterly and building by building for their capital. At one point even Cortés was surrounded and seized, and it was only the bravery of several of his captains that rescued him from the fate the Spanish most feared: bloody sacrifice to the pagan gods. That these offerings were believed by the Aztecs to stave off the end of the world was not a theological nicety the Spanish cared to debate.

66 Whenever an attempt was made hosts of warriors were waiting for our men with arrows and slings and their various kinds of swords and lances, and the lake was full of war-canoes. Near the Bernal Diaz, barricades there were many flat roofs from which volleys of stones New Spain, c.1568 descended ...?

The Conquest of

AVENUE OF THE DEAD

Teotihuacán was once the Americas' largest city. By the 16th century, it was already ruined and a place of pilgrimage.

With Cuahtemoc, last emperor of the Aztecs, confined to a small section of Tenochtitlán, Cortés did not hold back from the final attack. Diaz dwells on the military stratagems and bravura that brought Cuahtemoc to bay. Yet between the lines can be discerned glimpses of the new world that the Spanish intended to construct in their new domains. Cortés's native allies, such as the Tlaxcalans, doubtless felt that tributes of gold and precious stones would buy off the newcomers and perhaps even allow them to impose their own hegemony in Mexico. But it was not to be, for whatever the Spaniards' hunger for gold, their thirst for glory remained undiminished.

"We captains and soldiers were all somewhat sad when we saw how little gold there was and how poor and mean our shares would be."

Bernal Diaz, The Conquest of New Spain, c.1568



#### CONFLICTS IN NORTH AMERICA

IN NORTH AMERICA IN THE 17TH CENTURY European colonists were only one element in warfare that also involved American Indians fighting one another. When Europeans fought local tribes they always needed, and found, American Indian allies. War was mostly on quite a small scale, involving raids and ambushes, although it could be highly destructive; defeat often

meant the complete disappearance of a tribe. In the long term the most significant point about the colonists was that they were able to increase their numbers by sailing in more settlers across the ocean. This potentially almost limitless supply of freshly imported manpower was what would bring about the destruction of the American Indians over time.

#### POWHATAN VERSUS SETTLERS

#### The Powhatan attack in Virginia



Coastal Virginia

DATE 22 March 1622 FORCES Powhatan: about 3,000 warriors; English: about 1,000 settlers

CASHAITIES English: 347 killed Powhatan: unknown

When 105 English settlers landed at the mouth of the James river in May 1607 to found the colony of Virginia, they stepped into territory controlled by the expanding Powhatan Confederacy, These Algonquinspeaking people were led by Wahunsenacawh, known to the English as Powhatan, which simply means "chief", who had expanded the confederation from four tribes to over 30, dealing ruthlessly with any opposition. To Wahunsenacawh, the English could be tolerated because they were small in number. Relations remained largely peaceful until a new

chief, Opechancanough, succeeded as leader. He was determined to destroy the settlement, and on 22 March 1622, without warning, his warriors fell upon the settlers in their farms in the

early morning, killing them with tomahawks and knives. But the settlement survived and by 1644 had prospered again while the Powhatan were decimated by disease.

#### VIRGINIAN CHURCH

The brick church and bell tower at Jamestown, Virginia, dates from 1639 and was built at a time when settlers were still in conflict with the Powhatan Confederacy.

#### PEQUOTS VERSUS BRITISH

#### Pequot War



DATE August 1636-September 1637 FORCES At Mystic: 110 English Settlers: 300 Mohicans and Narragansetts

CASUALTIES Over 500 Pequots killed; 2 English killed

The Pequots were an aggressive tribe in the Connecticut river valley, a region where, in the 1630s, a complex relationship existed between competing English and Dutch settlers and Indian bands. In July 1636 a

Massachusetts trader, John Oldham, and his crew were killed near a Pequot village on Block Island. The Massachusetts settlers sent a punitive raid that destroyed the village, provoking the Pequots into attacks on settlers in Connecticut. Crucially, the Mohicans and Narragansetts, no friends of the Pequots, were persuaded to support a counter-raid by Connecticut militia

Led by Captain John Mason, on 26 May 1637 the militia and their Indian allies attacked the Pequot village of Mystic. In the absence of many Pequot warriors, who were away on a raid, Mason penetrated the stockade around the village and killed almost all those inside, including women and children. This massacre broke the Pequots, who disintegrated into small wandering bands. In June the warband of the Pequot chief, Sassacus, was cornered by Mason in a swamp and decimated.

#### INDIAN ATTACK

American Indians shoot down Puritan settlers in this melodramatic depiction of an ambush in New England.



#### IROQUOIS WARS

#### Iroquois wars



FORCES Iroquois: about 8,000 in the early wars CASUALTIES

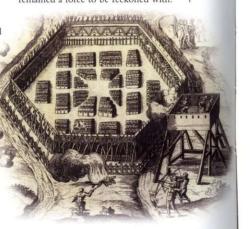
LOCATION Fastern North America

The Five Nations of the Iroquois Confederacy - Mohawk, Oneida, Cayuga, Seneca, and Onondaga were well organized and had adopted European firearms. The Huron, rivals of the Iroquois, were aligned with the French. In the 1640s the Iroquois began raids against the Huron that proadened into attacks on the French in Canada. Striking at farmsteads, the Iroquois war parties struck terror into the settlers. Until the 1660s the Iroquois had the upper hand, but the arrival of the French

#### IROQUOIS STOCKADE

This 17th-century French illustration depicts a fortified Iroquois village under attack by Europeans. The Iroquois were politically and militarily sophisticated.

army turned the tide, invading Iroquois territory in 1666 and laying waste the land so effectively that many Iroquois starved. After this punitive action, there was peace until 1683 when fighting renewed. The Iroquois faced local French Canadian forces, who fought alongside Algonquin allies and who had adopted native fighting techniques, relying on swift unseen movement to carry out violent raids on Iroquois settlements. In 1698 the Iroquois sued for peace, but they remained a force to be reckoned with.



WAMPANOAG VERSUS BRITISH

#### King Philip's War



DATE June 1675-76 FORCES British: unknown

CASUALTIES British: 600 3 000 killed

This was the war that broke American Indian resistance to European settlement in New England, "King Philip" was the English name for Metacomet, chief of the Wampanoag War erupted in 1675 after three of his tribe were hanged by the colonists for the murder of an Indian Christian convert. A raid on the colonial town of Swansea was followed by attacks on other settlements. The colonial militia mounted counter-raids, with the aid of Mohicans. In December 1675 they attacked and destroyed an important Narragansett fort in Rhode Island. Nonetheless, by the spring of 1676 the colonists held only settlements along

Metacomet's manpower and supplies were being exhausted. In the summer Metacomet suffered several defeats. He had only a few followers with him when he was found and killed.

#### SWAMP DEATH

"King Philip" was tracked to a swamp hiding place and shot on 12 August 1676. His head was sent to Plymouth



uprising was launched on 10 August 1680. Missionaries and settlers were

killed and the survivors fell back on

Santa Fe, which was under the

#### AMERICAN INDIAN WEAPONS

Originally American Indians were armed with weapons of wood, stone, and bone. but through trade with Europeans they were soon supplied with steel or iron tomahawks and knives. Although they acquired firearms, American Indian warriors often preferred to continue a traditional using bows and arrows, with which they were more skilled. Many carried shields of hide that could resist arrows. Sinew ties lash cover to Taos Pueblo shield made from dyed War shields were decorated with

#### PUEBLO VERSUS SPANISH Pueblo revolt



the coast. But

the British sent

soldiers to their

colonists, while

August-September

FORCES At Santa Fe: Pueblo: 2,500; Spanish about 1 000

CASHALTIES Snanish about 400 killed: Pueblo: unknown

In the southwest of North America, the Pueblo Indians had come under the rule of the Spanish in the 16th century. The headquarters of the colonial government were at Santa Fe. Resentment at Spanish rule came to a head in the 1670s, when the difficulties of enduring a long-term drought made Spanish demands for tribute in labour especially onerous, while interference with local religions was stepped up at the insistance of Catholic missionaries. In 1675 four Pueblo leaders were hanged and 43 flogged in Santa Fe for allegedly being involved in witchcraft. One of those whipped by the colonial authorities was a certain Popé (or Po'Pay), who lived at Taos Pueblo. Popé set about organizing a rebellion against the Spanish. A co-ordinated

command of the Governor Don Antonio de Otermin. Pueblo warriors, armed with muskets and bows, laid siege to the city, cutting off the water supply and occupying houses around the governor's palace With no hope of outside aid, the Spanish withdrew to El Paso. This was a great triumph for the Pueblo, although its outcome was not entirely happy. Popé set up his own rule that was no less oppressive than the Spanish, while the Pueblos were plagued by Apache raids and continuing drought. When the Spanish returned in 1692, there was little resistance to the reimposition of their rule. HOPI HELP

The Pueblos' allies in their revolt were the Hopi. This Hopi descendant was photographed in Arizona in the 1880s.

"Although I had lost much blood from two arrow wounds in the face and from a remarkable gunshot wound in the chest, I immediately had water given to ... the people."

Letter from Spanish governor Don Antonio de Otermin, 8 December 1680

# PACIFYING JAPAN

FROM THE SECOND HALF OF THE 15th century, Japan was racked by war between feudal lords (daimyo). After European firearms were introduced in the 1540s, daimyo Oda Nobunaga established himself as the paramount power in the land. After Nobunaga's death in 1582 Toyotomi Hidevoshi went further, becoming ruler of virtually the whole nation. Hideyoshi began the disarming of

the population but overreached himself in the 1590s by twice attempting to invade China through Korea. Tokugawa Ievasu, who had not committed his men to Korea, was well placed to win power after Hideyoshi's death. The Tokugawa shogunate that he founded finally pacified Japan under firm central control, consigning the samurai to a life of leisure.

JAPANESE FEUDAL WARS

#### Okehazama



FORCES Yoshimoto: 25.000 Nobunaga: 3,000 CASUALTIES

LOCATION Owari province, southcentral Japan

This was the victory that made Oda Nobunaga's reputation. His territory was invaded by the army of Imagawa Yoshimoto, which set up camp in a steep, wooded valley. Nobunaga led his force through the woods and attacked from the north, putting the unprepared enemy to flight. In his tent, Yoshimoto was unaware what the noise outside signified. Nobunaga's men beheaded



him almost before he realized he was under attack.

#### NOBUNAGA The first of the oreat unifiers of

lapan, Nobunaga destroyed the powe of the Buddhist warrior-monks.

JAPANESE FEUDAL WARS

#### Yamazaki



southwest of Kyoto

CASUALTIES village of Yamazaki,

FORCES

Hidevoshi: 36,500

In 1582 one of Nobunaga's generals, Akechi Mitsuhide, forced Nobunaga to commit suicide and murdered his son and heir. In response, Toyotomi Hidevoshi, one of Nobunaga's most loyal supporters, force-marched an army towards Kyoto (where Mitsuhide had declared himself shogun) and occupied the Tennozan heights. There he fought Mitsuhide 13 days after Nobunaga's death. Hidevoshi's arquebusiers drove off all attempts to storm the heights, while his other men enveloped the enemy on both flanks. Defeated, Mitsuhide fled as far as the village of Ogurusu, where he was killed by bandits.

#### JAPANESE FEUDAL WARS Nagashino



LOCATION Mikawa

Nobunaga: 38,000 CASUALTIES Takeda: around 10,000 killed; Nobunaga:

FORCES

Takeda: 15,000

Oda Nobunaga led a large army to relieve the castle of Magashino, besieged by Takeda Katsuyori. He took up a defensive position behind a stream, with his left wing anchored by a forest but his right wing open. In front of his forces he placed 3,000 arquebusiers, protected by a palisade. The Takeda charged, but Nobunaga's arquebusiers delivered rotating volleys to shattering effect. Those horsemen who reached the defensive line were held off by the long spears of Nobunaga's footsoldiers. His samurai emerged to engage the weakened Takeda with sword and spear in a melée that was especially fierce on the open right flank. Eventually the Takeda were put to flight and mercilessly pursued by samurai on horseback and archers on foot.

#### READY FOR BATTLE

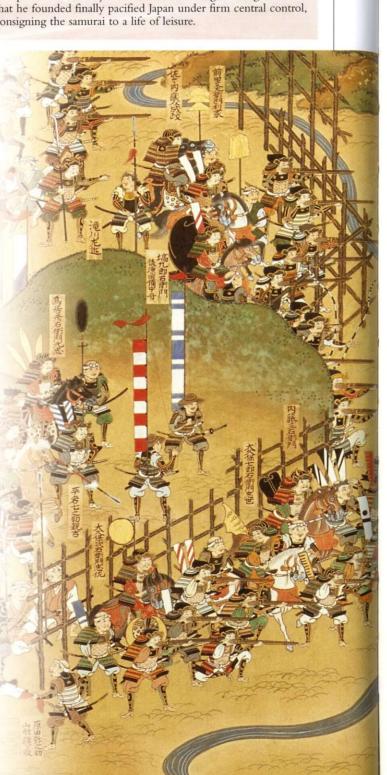
Nobunaga's arquebusiers stand ready in the front line as the Takeda attack at Naga Fire was opened at 50m (165ft).

"While the enemy are still at a distance, the ko gashira distributes the bullets ... Subsequently the fuse will be inserted. This order will be given when they are about 1 cho (100m) away. If the fuse is dropped in quickly or fitted badly, the fire will not continue and it may go out..."

#### WITNESS TO WAR

#### ZOHYO MONOGATARI

This advice to arquebusiers from a contemporary Japanese chronicle emphasizes the need to use firearms in a disciplined manner if they were to have proper effect.



#### JAPANESE FEUDAL WARS

#### Shiugatake



northern shore of

Lake Biwa

11,000; Toyotomi Hidevoshi: 30.000 CASUALTIES

DATE 21 April 1583

Shibata Katsuie:

Shihata Katsuje: many thousands killed

After his victory at Yamazaki, Toyotomi Hideyoshi fought to make himself the most powerful man in Japan. In April 1583 Shibata Katsuie, one of Oda Nobunaga's former followers, attacked a line of fortresses that Hideyoshi had built on high points north of Lake Biwa, including Shizugatake. Sakuma Morimasa, in command on the spot. was ordered by Shibata to withdraw when news arrived that Hidevoshi was heading for Shizugatake with a substantial army, but Sakuma decided to persist with the siege, believing Hidevoshi would take three days to arrive. Instead he took less than 24

#### тоуотомі ніреуозні

Sometimes called the "Napoleon of Japan" Hideyoshi was of humble birth but his military skills won him dictatorial power.

hours. Forced to adopt a hasty defensive posture, Sakuma was swifly routed in a battle that gave seven of Hidevoshi's samurai, known as the Seven Spears of Shizugatake, a chance to distinguish themselves. Many of the routed troops were hacked down in a bloody pursuit through thick woods. Shibata Katsuie committed seppuku by the belly-cut, or hara-kiri.



#### JAPANESE FEUDAL WARS Sekigahara



CASUALTIES Northeast of Kyoto Ishida Mitsunari: up to 60 000 killed

The death of Hidevoshi in 1598 set off an intense struggle for the succession the village of Sekigahara, at a crossroads was in a high flanking position. Ishida planned for Kobayakawa to attack levasu from the flank and rear once agreed to betray Ishida. The battle was Ishida gave the signal for Kobayakawa which the latter never recovered; the remnants of his army scattered, the

#### TOKUGAWA IEYASU

Until the defeat of Imagawa Yoshimoto in 1560, Tokugawa Ievasu fought against Oda Nobunaga, but he then became Nobunaga's most loyal ally. He opposed Toyotomi Hidevoshi's rise to power after Nobunaga's death but managed a wary coexistence with Hidevoshi. cultivating his own power base at Edo (Tokyo). After his victory at Sekigahara, Ieyasu became shogun in 1603, founding a dynasty that ruled for 250 years.



in which Tokugawa Ieyasu faced an alliance led by Ishida Mitsunari. The two armies ran into one another at between three mountains. One of Ishida's allies, Kobayakawa Hideaki, battle was joined in the centre. However, Kobayakawa had secretly delayed by fog, but once it began to attack Ievasu's army. Instead, he attacked Ishida's flank, a blow from reserve fleeing without a fight.

#### JAPANESE FEUDAL WARS Tennoji



Outside Osaka

FORCES Tokugawa leyasu:

In 1614 Tokugawa Ieyasu's rule was contested by an alliance of daimyo gathered around Toyotomi Hideyoshi's son Hideyori. Thousands flocked to DATE 7 May 1615 join Hidevori at his base in Osaka, including many ronin (masterless samurai). The battle of Tennoji was the climax of a long siege of Osaka Castle by Ieyasu's forces. Despite the odds against them. Hidevori and his allies chose to seek a decisive victory. CASUALTIES Their plan was for forces under Sanada Yukimura to pin the enemy at the

front while Akashi Morishige attacked from the rear. Hidevori would then lead the castle garrison in a sortie to settle the issue. The plan went awry when impetuous ronin launched an all-out attack on Ieyasu's centre, forcing Sanada to join in. For a while this boldness seemed to work. The aged Ieyasu, wading into the middle of the battle to firm up his wavering forces, was wounded by a spear thrust, but as the tide of battle turned, it was Sanada who was

killed. Akashi's encircling force was intercepted and never made its attack on the rear. Tokugawa forces penetrated Osaka Castle, driving Hideyori back into the keep, which they bombarded with cannon. His cause lost, Hidevori committed suicide.

#### THE SIEGE OF OSAKA CASTLE

Honda Tadatomo, one of Ieyasu's commanders, leads an attack on Osaka's defenders.



# KOREA RESISTS JAPAN

an invasion of China. When the Koreans refused to allow Japanese troops free passage through their country, Hideyoshi sent a 160,000-strong invasion force to subdue Korea and to continue into China. But although the Japanese were able to occupy the country as far north as Pyongyang, their armies were mauled by

IN THE 1590s JAPANESE DICTATOR Toyotomi Hideyoshi planned Korean guerrillas and their navy was decimated by the Korean fleet. The invasion was abandoned in 1593. A second invasion in 1597 was even less successful; worsted by Chinese intervention and the formidable Korean admiral Yi, the Japanese were merely clinging to a few fortresses when the death of Hideyoshi in September 1598 brought this military adventure to an end.

JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA

#### Chungju



DATE April 1592 FORCES Korean: 16,000 Japanese: 19.000 CASHAITIES

Koreans: ove

3.000 killed

Southeast of Seoul.

ADMIRAL YI

Yi Sunshin was a

After taking the southern Korean port of Pusan, the Japanese invasion force. led by Konishi Yukinaga, advanced north towards Seoul. Ch'ungju was the most important fortress in their path. Korean general Shin Nip drew up his army in flat country to the north of the castle, where he hoped his cavalry would have maximum effect. The battle opened with a Korean mounted charge led by Shin Nip. Taking casualties from arquebus fire, the Koreans failed to break the Japanese line. As the charge stalled, the Korean horsemen were attacked on all sides. Faced with defeat, Shin Nip committed suicide.

#### Chonju



FORCES Numbers unknow CASHAITIES No reliable estimates

LOCATION

The Japanese invasion of Korea began with a series of sweeping victories, but the invaders soon found themselves opposed by guerrilla armies, whose ranks swelled in reaction to the brutality of the Japanese occupation. In July 1592 Korean nationalist resistance was boosted by a major victory at Chonju in which a Japanese army under Kobyakawa Takakage was driven from the field by Korean Yi Kwang. Takakage made a stand further north at Kumsan, but was defeated there the following month by a 700-strong Korean force that were known in Korea as the "700 Brave Men."

#### JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA Siege of Chinju



4-10 October 1592 FORCES Japanese: 20,000; Korean garrison: 3,800 CASUALTIES

Southern Korea, west of Pusan

joining in the

In October 1592 a Japanese army commanded by Hosokawa Tadaoki laid siege to the Korean fortress of Chinju. The Japanese forces used cannon to bombard the walls and built a siege tower from which they could fire down into the castle. On the third day of the siege they brought up bamboo scaling ladders and attempted to take the walls by storm. but the Korean defenders beat them off, civilians

desperate struggle by hurling rocks and boiling water down on the Japanese. Meanwhile, Korean guerrillas had amassed and were closing in on the Japanese siege line from the rear. Several thousand guerrillas broke through to the castle, reinforcing the garrison. Threatened with attack from both sides, the Japanese admitted failure and prudently withdrew. Their retreat marked the beginning of the end of the first Japanese invasion of Korea.



This three-barrelled Korean hand cannon was originally mounted on a wooden haft. It may have been used for signalling.

#### JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA Hansando

"They fired all the guns and piecemeal defeats on Japanese naval arrows in their possession formations. On 8

account of the battle the Korean turtle ships "darted forward, pouring down cannonball-

like hail and

JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA

#### Myongyang



FORCES Korean: 12 ships: Japanese: 133 ships

No reliable estimates

CASUALTIES

The first invasion of Korea had taught

they gave higher priority to their navy.

the Japanese the importance of sea

power, and for the second invasion

In two battles in July 1597, in the

absence of Admiral Yi, removed from

command after annoying his political

masters, the Japanese destroyed some

LOCATION Off the southwest coast of Korea

00000 000000

> HELMET This 16th-century Korean helmet is made of lacquered leather with plate neck and cheek guards riveted inside fabric.

#### MYONGYANG WARSHIPS

The ships engaged in the battle of Myongyang were of varied sizes, but all were packed with crew and soldiers. Arauebus and arrow fire played as

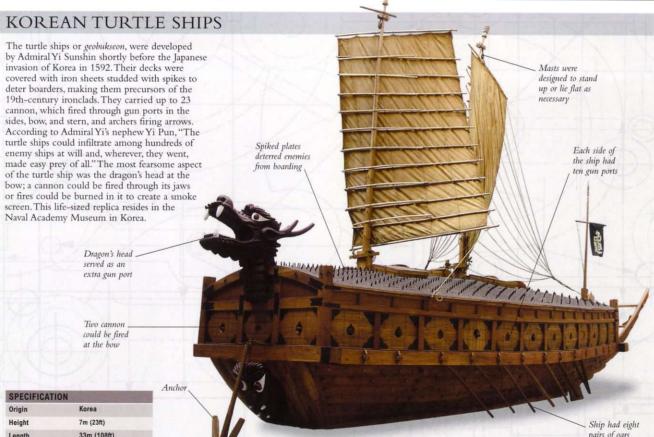
200 Korean warships. In the face of this disaster, with the Korean fleet crippled, Admiral Yi was wisely if tardily recalled to command. The Japanese navy exploited its advantage by advancing up the west coast of Korea in support of the army heading northwards, but admiral Yi blocked their path with only a handful of warships. After fighting a holding action at Oranpo that showed the Japanese what a fierce struggle they could expect, Yi chose the straits of Myongyang as the battlefield on which he would destroy the Japanese fleet. Attacking a force of 133 vessels with his tiny fleet, he swiftly disposed of the Japanese flagship. The Japanese commander, Kurushima Michifusa, was decapitated and his head mounted on a mast. Using their knowledge of the local tides, the Koreans outmanoeuvred their enemy and inflicted heavy losses before the engagement was broken off. The "Miracle of Myongyang", as it is known to the Koreans, ended Japanese hopes of achieving control of the sea, and made bringing home the Japanese invasion force, after the death of Hideyoshi, a hazardous operation, On 19 November 1598 Yi intercepted a fleet of homewardbound Japanese transports in the straits of Norvang and sank or set fire to around half of them. However, in the course of this action Yi was shot by

a Japanese arquebus and killed.

JAPANESE INVASION OF KOREA Siege of Ulsan 60km (37 miles) north

1597-98 Chinese and Korean: 40 000-80 000: Jananese CASUALTIES No reliable estimate

The second Japanese invasion of Korea began in summer 1597. In the absence of Admiral Yi, the Korean navy failed to prevent a massive Japanese army from landing at Pusan. However, the Japanese soon found themselves facing equally large Chinese forces sent into Korea by the Ming emperor. In late 1597 a Japanese garrison was besieged in the fortress of Ulsan by a large Chinese and Korean army under Chinese general Yang Ho. A Japanese relief army eventually lifted the siege, but the Koreans and Chinese continued to pin their enemy back into a few coastal fortresses. The Japanese were still able to come out on top in a major clash at Sachon in September 1598, sending thousands of noses back to Japan as trophies preserved in salt, but the invasion had already clearly failed well before Hideyoshi's death brought the order for the troops to return home.





# MANCHU CONQUEST

IN ABOUT 1610, NURHACI THE LEADER of a group of Jurchen hunters and pastoralists living north of the Great Wall, renounced his allegiance to the Chinese Ming dynasty. Within 30 years Nurhaci's successors had built up a powerful military organization of Jurchen, Mongol, and Chinese forces grouped into "banners". Calling themselves the Manchu, they were well placed to take advantage of the chronic decline of the Ming dynasty in China, where misgovernment and economic collapse provoked widespread revolts. The Manchu seized power in Beijing in 1644 with comparative ease, founding the Qing dynasty, but establishing their rule over all of China took hard fighting over many years.

MANCHU CONQUEST Fall of Beijing



April-June 1644 FORCES Manchu: around 170 000 men

CASUALTIES Beijing, northeast No reliable estimates

By the 1640s, the Ming emperor Chongzhen was threatened from two directions: Chinese rebels led by Li Zicheng were in control of most of Shanxi, Henan, and Hubei provinces southwest of Beijing, while to the north of the Great Wall the Manchu had already proclaimed a new dynasty. Li was one of thousands of ordinary Chinese who had drifted into revolt under the declining Ming empire. The power of the Manchu had been rising for over 30 years. An able Ming general, Yuan Chonghuan, twice defeated attempted Manchu invasions of China in the 1620s, but the Manchu successfully invaded Korea in 1636-37, forcing the Koreans to switch allegiance from the Ming. Although many Chinese generals defected to the Manchu, Ming general Wu Sangui continued to block the crucial Shanhaiguan Pass. In the spring of 1644 Li led a large army across north China, gathering adherents as he went. In April his forces entered Beijing unopposed. Chongzhen, the last Ming emperor, hanged himself in a garden just outside the Forbidden City, Li's triumph was short-lived, however. Given the choice between low-born rebels and the well-organized Manchu, General Wu chose the Manchu. Now under a regent, Dogon, the Manchu banners flooded through the Shanhaiguan Pass and joined Wu in a showdown with Li. After a sharp battle south of the Great Wall, on 6 June the Manchu and Wu entered Beijing and the Qing dynasty took power.

MING TOMBS

This warrior statue (above) guards the entrance to the Ming tombs in Beijing (right). In 1635 Chinese rebel leader Li Zicheng looted some of the Ming burial grounds, a humiliating demonstration of the weakness of a declining dynasty.





#### MANCHU CONQUEST

#### Siege of Yangzhou



FORCES Numbers unknown

May 1645

LOCATION Yangzhou, on the Grand Canal ortheast of Nanjing

CASUALTIES Hundreds of thousands killed in Yangzhou massacre

After Emperor Chongzhen's suicide, surviving members of the Ming ruling family attempted to rally resistance to the Manchu invaders. One of them, the prince of Fu, was proclaimed emperor in Nanjing. In 1645 the Manchus sent large army from Beijing and besieged e Ming-held city of Yangzhou. Ming troops defended the walls of the city with batteries of powerful cannon, but they held out for only week. The Manchu had their own annon, with which they shattered walls, and their soldiers were ost suicidally fearless in the assault When the city fell, it was sacked for 10 days in an orgy of killing.

#### YANGZHOU LAKE

The city of Yangzhou was a rich trading centre with many fine buildings. It was extensively laid waste in the Manchu conquest.

#### SEIZURE OF TAIWAN

May 1661-February

No reliable estimates

1662

#### Koxinga seizes Taiwan



FORCES Koxinga: possibly 200.000 CASUALTIES

West coast of Taiwan.

Zheng Chenggong, known in the west as Koxinga, was a member of a wealthy family from coastal China. A Ming lovalist, he carried out attacks against the Qing with both land and sea forces. By the end of the 1650s, however, Qing armies were closing in on Koxinga's main base at the city of Amoy (Xiamen). Koxinga sailed his forces across to Taiwan and laid siege to the Dutch fortress of Zeelandia. The Dutch held out for nine months, despite being outnumbered ten to one. After their surrender in February 1662 they were allowed to leave in peace. The Zheng family ruled over Taiwan until 1683, when the Qing finally launched a fleet of 300 warships and seized the island.

#### PIRATE AND TRADER

This is a Japanese image of Koxinga, who had a Japanese mother and a Chinese father. His wealthy family had made its money from trade and piracy.



MANCHU CONQUEST

#### War of the Three Feudatories



1673-81 FORCES Numbers unknown CASHALTIES No reliable estimates

Various provinces, southern China

In 1669 the 15-year-old Qing emperor bannermen - that is, they had joined Kangxi ousted the regent Oboi and took the reins of power. Kangxi's

predecessors had accepted their inability to rule all of China, allowing three Chinese generals, known as 'feudatories", to establish their own fiefdoms in the south and southwest

of the country. Two of these, Shang Kexi and Geng Jimao, were Chinese

"If my armies arrive and execute them all, this contradicts my desire to save the people."

> Emperor Kangxi, instructing his soldiers to spare rebels, 1681

> > dynasty, the Zhou, and led an army into Hunan. Geng and Shang Kexi's son, Shang Zhixin, both joined the rebellion, also pushing armies north towards the Yangtze, Kangxi had lost control of all of southern China, but the feudatories were riven by mutual suspicions and failed to co-ordinate their military operations. Kangxi's

#### OING BANNER

This dragon banner belonged to a Qing cavalry formation. The "bannermen" were an elite group in Qing China, whether ethnically Jurchen, Mongol, or Chinese.

Shang had negotiated a surrender.

the Manchu armies before the conquest of Beijing. The third was Wu Sangui.

who had helped the Manchu to take power in 1644. This situation was unacceptable to the young Kangxi and he soon put pressure LOCATION

on the feudatories Mongolia, south of to renounce their Illaanhaatar

domains. In 1673 Wu responded by proclaiming a new from his southwestern base in Guizhou Manchu generals remained loval and he was able to organize a counteroffensive. By 1677 both Geng and

CHINESE-MONGOLIAN WAR Iao Modo

Chinese: 80,000; Zhungar: unknown

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

In the second half of the 17th century the nomadic warriors of the Zunghar tribes in Outer Mongolia found an inspired leader in Galdan, In China, the Qing feared the rise of a new Mongol empire and decided to take pre-emptive action. In 1696 three Chinese armies totalling 80,000 men marched westward. Oing Emperor Kangxi in person led an army across the Gobi desert, achieving a remarkable feat of logistical organization to keep them adequately supplied for an 80-day journey. The Oing forces drove the Zunghars back behind the Kerulen river and then brought them to battle at Jao Modo. With Chinese artillery playing an important role, the Zhungars were decisively defeated. Galdan died the following year.

#### SINO-RUSSIAN WAR Albazin



1685-86 FORCES Chinese: possibly 10.000: Russian: a few hundred CASUALTIES

Manchuria With the defeat of the feudatories in 1681 and the capture of Taiwan

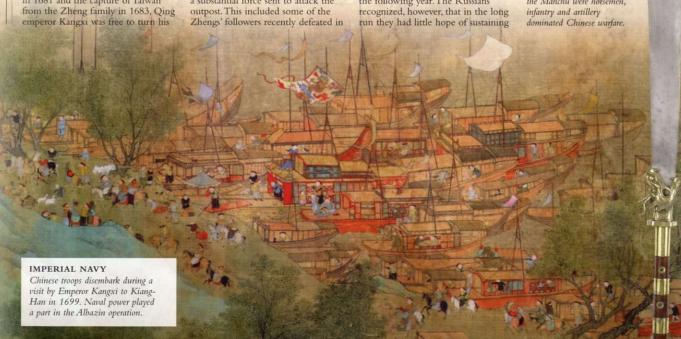
attention to establishing China's borders. Throughout the 17th century Russia had been expanding across Asia through a combination of military expeditions and the enterprise of hunters and traders, who around the middle of the century penetrated territory traditionally regarded by the Chinese as within their own sphere of influence. Qing attention focused on the stockaded Russian settlement of Albazin on the Amur river. Deciding that this constituted an unacceptable intrusion into his territory, Kangxi had a substantial force sent to attack the

Taiwan, who supplied valuable naval expertise for navigating the northern rivers. The expedition also had improved cannon developed under the supervision of Father Ferdinand Verbiest, a Jesuit missionary at the court of Kangxi. After some sharp fighting, the garrison at Albazin was obliged to surrender. The Russians were allowed to withdraw to Nerchinsk, but once the Chinese army had gone they returned to harvest crops they had planted and reoccupy the fort. The result was further intense fighting the following year. The Russians recognized, however, that in the long

outposts in the face of sustained military action. In 1689, under the Treaty of Nerchinsk. the Russians agreed to abandon Albazin and withdraw north of the Amur river.

#### CHINESE BLADE

A typical Chinese infantry weapon of the 16th and 17th centuries. Although the Manchu were horsemen, infantry and artillery





MOBILE FIREPOWER

Artillery such as this field

cannon played a pivotal role

# THE RISE OF MODERN WARFARE

BETWEEN 1750 AND 1914 European armies and those of countries founded by European settlement, such as the United States, achieved an unquestionable pre-eminence in military technology and organization. An ever wider gulf opened up between those forces that adopted western methods and armaments and those that did not - Japan being the only non-western country to cross this divide decisively. Mass armies, new firearms, and new forms of transport and communication allowed western states to extend their rule over much of the planet.

> Many wars in the 18th and 19th centuries crossed continents and created modern nations. The Seven Years War (1756-63), which opens this period, has been called the first true "world war", because its European combatants fought in India and North

America as well as in Europe itself. Warfare was central to the creation of the United States, from the War of Independence (1775-83) against British rule through the wars against Mexico and American Indian peoples to the Civil War (1861-65). In Europe, the great convulsions of the French revolutionary and Napoleonic wars (1792-1815) were followed by a century of more limited but still decisive conflicts, which brought Germany and Italy into being as nationpowers imposed their rule on Asian or African peoples, such as the British in India and east Africa and the French in southeast Asia and west Africa.

By the mid-18th century European countries had European powers recruited irregular skirmishing

UNIFORM DISCIPLINE

uniformed, strictly hierarchical, and professional armies, for which the Prussians under Frederick the Great set the standard, Infantry armed with flintlock muskets and bayonets, and trained to fight in strict lines, squares, or columns, formed the core of the army. Often recruited from the dregs of society, the soldiers were disciplined by draconian punishments, although attempts were also made to inspire them with regimental pride. Cavalry remained the elite arm, executing functions such as screening, reconnaissance, and shock charge, while artillery had become a vital, fully mobile part of armies on the battlefield. Yet the American War of Independence showed the potential vulnerability of a professional states. Elsewhere, many wars occurred when western European army in difficult terrain and against an irregular enemy. As they became aware of the limitations of formally disciplined formations, the

cavalry, often from ethnic minorities in their empires, such as the Cossacks in Russia, and developed rifle sharpshooters and skirmishers.

#### CITIZEN ARMIES

Although there was no dramatic technological progress in warfare between the mid-18th and mid-19th centuries, in the 1790s the French Revolution ushered in a new type of army: the mass conscript force inspired by nationalism. It also brought a new dynamism to the battlefield, typified by Napoleon Bonaparte's use of rapid manoeuvres and his search for decisive victories through the destruction of enemy forces. By the 19th century citizen armies raised by universal conscription had become the norm, at least in mainland Europe. Military service was regarded as a right and a duty, a school for patriotism and a force for national integration.

#### **EXPLOSIVE TECHNOLOGY**

Around 1850 a transformation of warfare began, linked to developments in precision machinery and mass production. The invention of the Minié bullet allowed the first effective rifled muskets to emerge muskets with spiral grooves inside the barrel that made a bullet spin and so increased the weapon's range and accuracy. By the late 19th century massproduced breech-loading rifles came into existence, firing metal cartridges that soldiers fitted into the breech (rear) of the gun instead of the muzzle.

Machine guns, revolvers, and repeater rifles were soon widely adopted. Gunpowder was superseded by various new forms of high explosive; artillery firing high explosive shells replaced solid shot. Railways revolutionized the speed of mobilization and movement of mass armies, while communications were transformed, first by the telegraph and then by the telephone and the radio. At sea, ironclad steam-driven battleships ended the reign of the wooden ships of the line. Warfare tentatively rose into the sky with balloons and early aircraft, and dived under the sea with early submarines.

#### WAR AND PEACE

The American Civil War showed how destructive modern warfare was likely to be if pursued to the limit by irreconcilable enemies. Responding to this changed reality, the western world was inspired by a new ideal of peace in this period, with selfconscious attempts to limit and even outlaw war, ranging from the first Geneva Convention in 1864, concerning treatment of the wounded, to the various agreements of the Hague Peace Conferences of 1899 and 1907. But this ideal was not enough: the creation of mass armies, backed by efficient arms industries and inspired by a virulent patriotism, paved the way for the mass slaughter of World War I.



REVOLUTION AND WAR Liberty Leading the People is by the French artist Eugène Delacroix. The ramifications of the French Revolution were felt throughout Europe and beyond, and influenced the rise of mass armies based on universal conscription.





# THE SEVEN YEARS WAR

THE SEVEN YEARS WAR IS SOMETIMES described as the first true world war. All the great powers of Europe were involved, and fighting took place in Europe, North America, Asia, and Africa, as well as at sea. The war arose out of an Austrian attempt to regain the province of Silesia, recently occupied by Prussia. A transformation of European alliances left Prussia facing France, Austria, Russia, and others. Prussia's only ally was Britain, which provided some subsidies and a few troops while putting pressure on the French. But Britain's chief interest lay in the contest with France for maritime and colonial dominance. In Europe Prussia held out against its enemies, though at great cost, and Britain wrested power from the French in Canada and India.

#### ARMIES

In the mid-18th century European armies were still relatively small, and made up of mercenary troops fighting for wages. Prussia's survival in the war against huge odds was based on its strong military tradition. Many Prussian officers were recruited from descendants of the Teutonic Knights, a military order that had ruled medieval Prussia. The Prussian army was a well-drilled, national (not mercenary) army, with a system of selected conscription that provided ready-trained reserves. Strict discipline enabled them to move fast to attack the enemy at its weakest point with a barrage of howitzer fire.

#### MART UNIFORMS

In headgear like this, made for smartness rather than comfort, British soldiers climbed eep cliffs to attack Quebec.

#### CAVALRY WARS

Cavalry swords or sabres (with slightly curved, slashing blades) were used in the Seven Years War. These examples are French (left) and British (right). Their design was fluenced by earlier Turkish weapons.

Soldiers knew their trade: officers were trained in military academies, gunners were expert mathematicians

#### FREDERICK THE GREAT

French ring of defend

British line of attack

French line of attack

British victory

French victory

AND INDIAN WAR

During the Seven Years

War, the age-old rivalry

France became a battle for

territory in the New World.

between England and

THE FRENCH

Frederick II of Prussia, who reigned 1740-86, was highly cultured, a good musician, an art lover, and a friend of philosophers. Though he became a national hero for his successful military campaigns in Europe, his reputation as a great tactical genius has since come into question. He fought some brilliant campaigns, especially in 1757 after his capital had been sacked by foreign troops, and won great victories, but at such cost in manpower that he eventually employed reluctant foreign recruits. He understood the importance of mobility - he is credited with introducing horse artillery - and was a skilful strategist, but his military system was basically conventional. His biggest asset was the excellent quality of his soldiers. After 1763 he devoted his efforts to restoring his shattered country and army.



THE COLONIES The campaigns of the war that were fought overseas resulted in overwhelming victory for Britain against its chief rival, France, which was fighting a costly war in Europe at the same time. Britain became the world's dominant maritime and imperial power, but this position came at a cost. Defence was expensive - Britain's national debt doubled during the Seven Years War - and efforts to persuade American colonists to pay for their own defence after the extensive campaigns pursued in North America provoked them to claim independence, which they eventually won. The Americans' success encouraged ideas of liberty and equality in Europe, especially France, but after the chaos of the French Revolution France re-emerged as Europe's greatest military power under Napoleon. Prussia lay devastated in 1763, but recovered quickly. Russia, which saved Prussia by changing sides in 1762, was established as a great power.

# THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR

THE SERIES OF CONFLICTS from the Seven Years War that took place in North America is known as the French and Indian War. Clashes had been going on for years between British and French settlers, who were trying to expand southwards into the Ohio valley from "New France" (Canada). Both sides had allies among the American Indian nations. In 1758 a British

expedition captured Fort Louisbourg on Cape Breton Island, then launched an ambitious attack on Ouebec. When Montreal also fell, Britain controlled most of Canada. Thanks to their naval superiority, the British also captured the valuable Caribbean 'sugar island" of Guadeloupe (returned at the 1763 Treaty of Paris), and gained Florida from France's European ally, Spain.

#### THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR

#### Ouebec



LOCATION The plains of Quebec City

British: 4 800 CASUALTIES

FORCES

13 September 1759

The capture of Louisbourg in 1758 opened up the St Lawrence river and the capital of "New France", the city of Quebec, to the British forces. But the British feared that the French. under a greatly respected commander, the Marquis de Montcalm, could only be overcome by a long siege of the city, which the British could hardly sustain. A powerful British fleet conveyed about 8,000 troops under the 32-year-old General James Wolfe up the St Lawrence. Several attempts

at a landing below the city failed, but Wolfe seized Point Lévis on the opposite bank of the river, from which he was able to bombard the city. Some weeks later he decided to land the main body of his men at a cove discovered by his scouts upriver from Quebec. He led them up the Heights of Abraham by climbing the cliffs, about 50m (164ft) high, By moving at night they surprised the French; the actual pitched battle on level ground west of the city was

brief, lasting less than an hour. Both commanders. Wolfe and Montcalm, were killed in the fighting. The city formally surrendered to the British a few days later.

#### DEFEAT OF NEW FRANCE

The taking of Quebec by the English, shown here in a near-contemporary engraving, heralded the end of France's attempt to dominate North



#### THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR Pontiac's Rebellion

DATE 1763 FORCES British/American colonial militia: a varying confederation of native peoples CASUALTIES Settlers

and traders: c.200

The Great Lakes

Events in Canada convinced many American Indians that the British were a greater threat to their independence than the French, and they resented the British decision to discontinue the French custom of distributing gifts. Led by an Ottawa chief, Pontiac, the uprising began near Detroit, spread east, and became a

#### PRISONERS OF WAR

The peace treaty compelled the Indians to surrender all prisoners to Colonel Bouquet, who led the expedition that freed Fort Pitt.

loose association of nations including the Delaware, Shawnee, and Seneca. Attacks on British forts in the Great Lakes region resulted in eight being captured and the British supply line across Lake Erie was broken, but Fort Pitt (Pittsburgh) and Fort Detroit held out successfully. The rising disintegrated



#### THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR Monongaleha River

DATE 9 July 1755

British and colonials:



1,500; French and Indians: 900 CASUALTIES British and colonials: 876 killed: lear the Forks of French: 56 killed:

When the fighting began between British and French settlers in 1754, the 79-year-old General Edward Braddock was appointed British ommander-in-chief in North America. His aide-de-camp was George Washington, who would later take command in the War of Independence and become the first president of the United States. Braddock planned a four-part offensive against the French in 1755 that included a march to take Fort Duquesne (now the city of

Pittsburgh). About 14km (9 miles) south of the fort, the advance unit under Lieutenant Colonel Thomas Gage stumbled on the French and Indians on the banks of the Monongaleha river. After a brief engagement Gage retreated, only to collide with the main British force, which was coming up rapidly after hearing gunshots. While Braddock and his officers, who seem to have performed poorly in the battle. strove to reform their troops, the French and Indians inflicted heavy casualties from the surrounding woods. When Braddock himself was mortally wounded after the fighting had been going on for three hours, the British troops fled. Before withdrawing they burned about 150 wagons of their own equipment As the demoralized British troops still outnumbered the French and Indian enemy, they were not pursued. However, the shocking defeat at Monongaleha sowed doubts about British military effectiveness.

#### WAR IN EUROPE AND INDIA

THE SEVEN YEARS WAR INCLUDED SEVERAL virtually separate conflicts around the world. The common denominator in the European and Indian Wars was that in both France was a major contestant and in both France was the loser. Prussia's great victories of 1757 ruined France's military reputation, after a century of almost continual military success, and it was not

restored until the Revolutionary Wars of the 1790s. In India, both the French and the English were a tiny proportion of the total population and depended on local alliances as much as superior military technology. As in North America, Britain's command of the sea, which deprived the French of reinforcements, ultimately dictated the British victory.

#### THE SEVEN YEARS WAR IN EUROPE

FORCES

French and

#### Rossbach



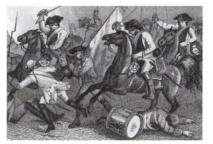
Austrians: 42,000; Prussians: 21,000 CASUALTIES French and Austrians: 7,700 killed; Prussians: 550 killed

After suffering defeat at Kolin in June 1757 and Gross-Jägersdorf in July, Frederick the Great of Prussia prepared to tackle the French-Austrian army at Rossbach in November, commanded by the Prince de Soubise. By the time of the battle Soubise's army was in poor shape and incapable of defeating a Prussian army half its size. The French and Austrians began well but came to grief when they attempted to march around the Prussian left, failing to notice that Frederick had turned his

army around to meet them. A ferocious cavalry attack swept through the Franco-Austrian forces swiftly followed by the Prussian infantry, who completed a devastating victory in about 15 minutes' fighting.

#### A LESSON LEARNED

The Prussian defeat of the French at Rossbach led eventually to reforms in the French army.



WINTER BATTLE

The battle of Leuthen was

fought in snowy conditions.

This painting depicts a

Prussian charge with an

officer and grenadiers at

the village of Leuthen.

#### THE SEVEN YEARS WAR IN EUROPE

#### Leuthen



FORCES Austrians: 60,000 Prussians: 36,000

5 December 1757

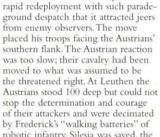
Austrians: 9,500 killed, Silesia, modern-day 12,000 taken prisoner Prussians: 2,300 killed

After Rossbach, Frederick was anxious to expel a second Austrian army, commanded by the empress's brotherin-law, Prince Charles of Lorraine, from Silesia, the immensely valuable province that he had seized from Austria in 1740. The battle of Leuthen is regarded as Frederick's outstanding

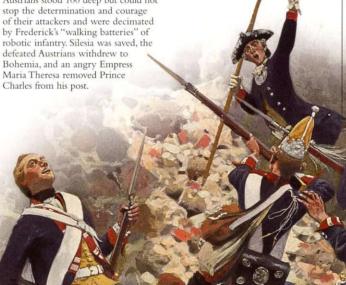
Short Land Pattern Muskets, such as this example dated 1747, would probably have been used by dragoons.

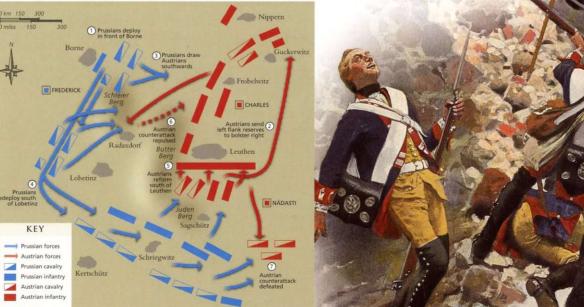
performance, "a masterpiece of movement, manoeuvre, and resolve", according to Napoleon. The Austrians held a strong position centred on the village of Leuthen, with a front nearly 8km (5 miles) wide and their flanks protected by swampy ground. Frederick feigned an attack on the Austrian right, where all attention was concentrated while, partly hidden by

a ridge, he advanced on their left.



South of Lobetinz, he completed a





THE SEVEN YEARS WAR IN EUROPE THE SEVEN YEARS WAR IN EUROPE

DATE 1 August 1759

FORCES British and

French: 44,000

Hanoverians: 37,000;

2 800 killed: French:

7 000 killed 8 000

taken prisoner

#### Minden



28km (44 miles) west of Hanover

In July 1759 French forces under the Duc de Broglie and the Marquis de Contades captured the town of Minden and the bridge over the Weser river in Westphalia. The commander of the British and Hanoverian army, Prince Ferdinand of Brunswick, could not contemplate a frontal assault, since the French were well entrenched, but with raids on

communications he attempted to provoke Contades into advancing. After some skirmishing and an artillery exchange at dawn, battle began. It was closely contested until a British brigade, acting on a mistaken order, advanced towards the French cavalry, which was protected by artillery crossfire. Such was the British momentum that they scattered the cavalry and continued against the infantry. The British cavalry was then ordered into action but, for unknown reasons, the commander Lord George Sackville failed to obey. Nevertheless, enough damage had been done, and after the British artillery had moved up front with surprising speed, the French retreated in disorder, losing many men

and abandoning 40 guns. Sackville was discharged and the verdict read out to every British regiment "so that", said British prime minister William Pitt, "officers may be convinced that neither high birth nor great employment can shelter offences of such a nature".

Plassey



Bengal on the Bhagirathi river, India

**DATE 23 June 1757** FORCES British and East India Company troops: 3,000: troops of the Nawab of Bengal,

Bengalis: unknown

In 1756 the Nawab (governor) of Bengal, Suraj ud-Daula, captured the British settlement of Calcutta after a disagreement concerning defences constructed without his permission. Irritated by British abuse of their trading privileges, the Nawab was also fearful of alien domination. A number of British prisoners (allegedly 146) were shut up overnight in a small cell. About 21 (far fewer than the number claimed by the British) died in this

Ouiberon Bay

coast between Lorent

and St Nazaire

20 November 1759

British ships of

French shins: 21

shins lost: French: 8

ships lost or captured

the line: 23:

LOCATION Off the French CASUALTIES British: 2

The battle of Quiberon Bay was one

British naval history. It was achieved

by Sir Edward Hawke, who was famous

for his success against the French off

Cape Finisterre in 1747. The French

had been planning to invade Britain

of the most brilliant victories in

Robert Clive sailed quickly recaptured Calcutta. The Nawab was forced to sign a

PUPPET LEADER After the battle of the right) as nominal leader, but kept him

under tight control.

and plotting with the French. With the support of Hindu Bengalis, the British masters of Bengal, from where, eventually, they ruled most of India.

#### "All that could possibly be done has been done."

and, although by

this time such a

plan was hardly

practicable, they

transports at the

mouth of the Loire. Hawke was sent

to blockade Brest, where the French

under orders to proceed to the Loire.

A storm forced Hawke to seek shelter

at Torbay in early November. A West

Indies squadron joined de Conflans at

Brest, and the enlarged French fleet

left on 14 November. Hawke turned

in pursuit and caught them up at the

poor light and sharp squalls, he boldly

followed the French, who had pilots,

into this dangerous bay. The French

tricky entrance to Ouiberon Bay. In

fleet of Admiral de Conflans was

had collected

Edward Hawke, November 1759

had lost four ships before nightfall but in the darkness two British ships were grounded. The

French flagship, Soleil Royal, was also lost. Several French ships escaped into the Vilaine river, where they were long confined, and the remaining eight managed to escape to Rochefort. The battle negated any remaining possibility of an invasion and drastically weakened the French navy for the rest of the war.

#### HAWKE'S ATTACK

The British fleet fired on the French in Quiberon Bay on 20 November 1759. Even the French expressed admiration for Hawke's courage and seamanship.



treaty reconfirming British trading

rights, but he was clearly unreconciled

#### THE SEVEN YEARS WAR IN INDIA



gunners: 55,000 CASUALTIES British: 65: "Black Hole of Calcutta". Troops commanded by from Madras and

> Plassey, Robert Clive's dominance of Bengal was absolute. He installed the Indian general Mir Jafar (on

British decided to replace him with Mir Jafar, a more compliant potentate. In the ensuing battle at Plassey Clive was outnumbered and also outgunned, as the Nawab had a unit of French artillery. However, many of the Nawab's commanders had been suborned by the British during preliminary "negotiations". Clive called a council of war where a majority opposed fighting but were overborne by the aggression of Major Eyre Coote. The battle itself was soon over, as most of the Nawab's commanders prevaricated. One exception was Mir Mudin, who made a disastrous cavalry charge and was killed. Ordinary soldiers unaware of their officers' dislovalty made a furious but unavailing charge, and the Nawab lost an artillery duel because rain dampened his powder Clive then made a direct attack on the Nawab's defences, and resistance crumbled. The victory made the

### ROBERT CLIVE



igniting the powder.

NORTH EUROPEAN WHEEL-LOCK PISTOL c.17TH CENTURY

WHEEL-LOCKS

The wheel-lock mechanism, invented in the

early 16th century, did away with the need

for a match (actually a slow-burning cord)

to ignite the priming powder. Instead, as in a

modern cigarette lighter, a revolving toothed

wheel caused a spark through friction with a

widespread use in military firearms.

piece of iron pyrite. Wheel-locks appealed to cavalry since firing

a matchlock while riding a horse was tricky. But the mechanism was expensive and rather delicate, making it unsuitable for

## THE EVOLUTION OF FIREARMS

EFFECTIVE FIREARMS evolved in the 1400s through two innovations: a wooden stock to help the firer hold the gun barrel and absorb the recoil, and "lock" mechanisms enabling a bullet to be fired on pressing a trigger. Until the 1800s most firearms were muzzle-loading. A soldier used a ramrod to push a ball and powder down the gun barrel and set off the charge by

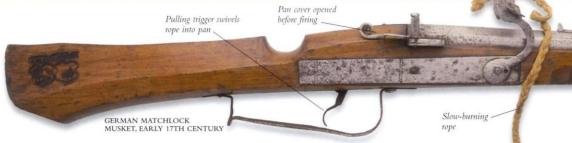
Brass and mother-of-pearl inlaid stock

#### **MATCHLOCKS**

The earliest firing mechanism was the matchlock. Before stocks were carved to fit the shoulder, early matchlocks – known as arquebuses – were held against the chest when firing. From the mid-16th century the arquebus was superseded by the musket, which originally had to be propped on a forked rest to fire.

#### MATCHLOCK MECHANISM This matchlock mu

This matchlock musket shows the match — a slow-burning rope — held by a curved lock called a serpentine. When the trigger was pulled the serpentine surivelled the match into the pan, igniting the priming powder that, in turn, set off the charge in the barrel.



#### BRITISH MATCHLOCK MUSKET, c.1640 MATCHLOCK MUSKET Matchlock of on field to fe

#### GERMAN PISTOL

Pistols such as this one were used by cavalry in the Thirty Years War (1618–48).

Matchlocks often failed to fire and were unusable in wet weather. The need for a flame in proximity to gunpowder was dangerous.

WOODEN RAMROD

#### MUSKET FIRE

A soldier usually fired standing upright, managing about three shots a minute. Muskets were inaccurate – firing at any target over 100m (330ft) away was pointless – but devastating fired in volleys against advancing infantry.

#### **FLINTLOCKS**

From the late 1600s through to the 1830s the flintlock mechanism predominated. The priming powder was ignited by a flint, held in the gun's cock, striking against steel. The cock was set in a safety position – half-cock – when loading, and pulled back to full cock before firing. By the 18th century paper cartridges, containing the powder and ball for a single shot, were

standard. The soldier bit off the end of the cartridge and rammed powder, ball, and paper down the barrel.

#### DOUBLE-BARRELLED POCKET PISTOL, c.1785

HOWDAH PISTOL, c.1850

Wooden stock stops before the end of the barrel to

#### CAUCASIAN PISTOL

PRUSSIAN CARBINE

had shorter barrels and were lighter

This flintlock carbine was used by Prussian cuirassiers -

Cavalrymen preferred carbines to muskets because they

heavy cavalry - during the Seven Years War (1756-63).

Embossed silverwork

#### FLINTLOCK PISTOLS

The flintlock mechanism replaced the wheel-lock in pistols from the mid-17th century, before it replaced the matchlock in muskets. Even the best flintlocks often failed to fire, producing only a "flash in the pan".

As expensive weapons, wheel-lock pistols were often ornately decorated. To fire, the cock with the iron pyrites was pulled down against the sprung wheel, which spun when the firer squeezed the trigger, firing sparks.

EARLY PISTOLS

#### Ivory/

Cock or "dog"

PRUSSIAN FLINTLOCK CARBINE, c,1750

Iron barrel

Brass utt-cap

nt held in

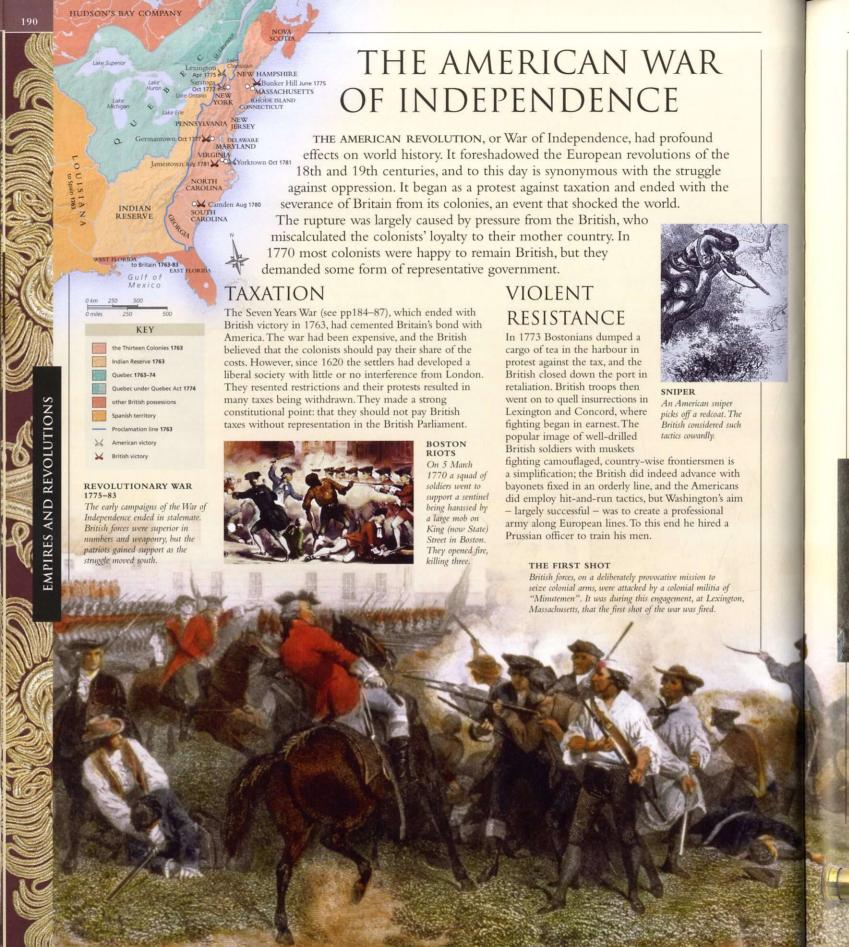
WHEEL-LOCK

Ramrod fits underneath barrel

SOCKET BAYONET

MUSKET AND BAYONET

The Long Land Pattern flintlock was the standard British musket of the 18th century. A socket bayonet fitted on the end of the barrel (bayonets had made pikes redundant).



#### WAR AT SEA

In spite of Britain's naval supremacy, the coastline of the Thirteen Colonies was so long and intricate that a successful blockade was impossible and the Americans were always able to land supplies. The colonies had a strong maritime tradition, and their lack of a war fleet was no disadvantage as Britain was unable to gain any benefit from its weight of numbers and firepower. In duels between individual ships, Americans like John Paul Jones on the Bonhomme Richard (1779) did well.

#### EUROPEAN SUPPORT

France and Spain came to the colonies' aid in the war against the British. Here the French surprise a British fleet on its way to the Cape Verde Islands, 1781.

#### ARMIES AND ALLIES

This was a civil war as well as a struggle for independence, and many American loyalists fought for Britain and King George. Some American Indians fought on both sides. The French, after their defeat in the Seven Years' War, exploited the chance to retaliate against the British, although their military efforts were comparatively minor. German (or "Hessian") mercenaries fought for the British, whose grave problems with logistics

and supply often made them slow-moving and ineffective. George Washington's army was at first unreliable and ill-disciplined, but after the winter ordeal at Valley Forge (1777–78) morale steadily improved.

#### VALLEY FORGE

General Washington visits wounded soldiers at Valley Forge, where 2,500 men died from cold and lack of food.



#### INDEPENDENCE

Although there was no doubt as to who won the war, the military results were ambiguous, as was often the case in 18th-century wars. The comparative insignificance of cavalry and the scarcity of pitched battles contributed to military stalemate. While Americans shattered the old relationship with Britain, their leaders still respected British institutions, as their own form of constitution would demonstrate. In Britain the war had always been unpopular, and by the final battle at Yorktown in 1781 most British leaders were ready to accept the Declaration of Independence. With neither side able to command the resources to bring it total victory, hostilities ground to a halt gradually.

for storage

#### MORTAR

A muzzle-loading artillery weapon in use since the 15th century (especially in sieges), the mortar had a short, stubby barrel, the length of which was little more than twice its diameter, and fired a missile in a high trajectory. It was particularly effective against "soft" targets, having a lower muzzle velocity than a howitzer but a faster rate of fire. It was also lighter and more easily transported. This 33cm (13in) gun, in use from about 1760 to 1860, was the largest in the British service.

# SPECIFICATION Origin Britain Height 70cm (28in) Length 70cm (28in) Caliber 33cm (13in) First made 1760 Weight 1,270kg (2,800lb Handles were called "dolphins"

#### MERCENARIES

Britain's Hessian troops, here on a night patrol, had little interest in the war, but they were generally reliable. Some 20,000 Hessians fought alongside the British.

This model was probably used by a British officer



to lift heavy

lower it into

bomb and

#### TELESCOPE

A "perspective glass" (telescope) enabled its user to read the enemy's flag or signals from a distance.

# BATTLES FOR INDEPENDENCE

FOR GEORGE WASHINGTON, the main aim of his under-financed Continental Army was simply to stay alive. He therefore avoided pitched battles as much as possible, assisted by the enemy's slow movement and perhaps by the private sympathies of some British officers.

19 April 1775

British: 1,700:

CASUALTIES

British: 273:

American: 95

American: 4.000

FORCES

However, the British were disconcerted by American tactics, particularly those of Daniel Morgan's Virginia riflemen, who won at Cowpens. The most significant battles were Saratoga, which encouraged French participation, and Yorktown, which ended the war.

#### MASSACHUSETTS

#### Lexington and Concord



LOCATION Lexington Massachusetts

In an attempt to quell the rebellion. General Gage, the military governor of Massachusetts, sent a small force of British troops from Boston to Concorde to seize rebel arms and

munitions. In spite of its secrecy.

however, the rebels learned of the

mission and the British were stopped

at Lexington, where the first shot of the war (the "shot heard around the world") was fired. After a brief engagement, the British marched on Concord where they were again ambushed by the rebels. Largely young and inexperienced men, the British troops were disorganised by the Americans' guerrilla tactics, and after being routed they regrouped and fought constant skirmishes during the 32km- (20-mile) retreat to Charlestown (Boston), which was soon under siege.

#### LEXINGTON GREEN

British major John Pitcairn gives the order for his troops to fire on the first day of the



NEW JERSEY

#### Trenton and Princeton



DATE 26 December 1776-3 January 1777 British: 1,200: American: 2,400

CASUALTIES British: 106 (plus 900 prisoners); American: 4

The British held the initiative throughout the summer of 1776. but Washington, in command of the Continental Army since 1775, struck back at the end of the year. Gathering what troops he could, in just over a week of skilful manoeuvres he secured two minor but convincing victories. First, he captured Trenton from its Hessian garrison, after crossing the icechoked Delaware river on Christmas night. The Hessian commander was killed, while Washington took possession of badly needed supplies and went on to rout another enemy contingent at Princeton. Coming after a series of grim defeats, including the loss of New York, this double success, while relatively insignificant in military terms, helped to restore the Americans' flagging morale.

KFY

British forces

American forces

Roston

Harbour

#### MASSACHUSETTS

#### Bunker Hill

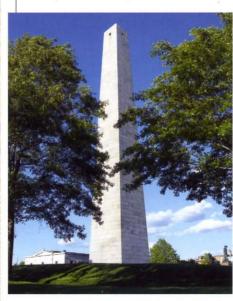


DATE 17 June 1775 FORCES Colonial militia: 1.400: British: 2,600 CASUALTIES Colonial militia: 310

(plus 30 prisoners);

British: 1.053

In spite of its name, the battle of Bunker Hill was actually fought on Breed's Hill, on the western side of the narrow strait leading to the



Charles river basin. After the outbreak of hostilities at Lexington. Boston was besieged by rebellious colonists, whose numbers were growing daily. Anticipating a British plan to capture the heights north of the city, the American commander General Artemas Ward ordered that Bunker Hill, on the Charlestown peninsula, should be fortified, but for some reason Breed's Hill was fortified instead. This may have been a mistake (it was fortified at night), but Breed's Hill was closer to the British ships and so provided a better attacking position. Nevertheless, the Americans were soon under attack from British

> William Howe, who had succeeded Gage as British commander in October. Howe had brought 9,000 reinforcements, and more followed later, among them Generals Burgoyne and Cornwallis. The British attacked in two lines and were twice driven back by the defenders. Although they finally achieved their objective and captured the hill, they lost over one-third of their number in the process a serious blow to their confidence and morale. Moreover, Britain was

#### MEMORIAL.

The Bunker Hill monument in Boston was erected in 1843. It stands 76m (221ft) high.

Charles River Basin soldiers under General under pressure elsewhere; rebels captured the forts at Crown Point and Ticonderoga (near Lake Champlain), and an American force had seized

Montreal in November 1774, though an attack on Quebec was quelled. Meanwhile the Americans had acquired a regular army - as yet an unimpressive body of men - and found a first-rate general in George Washington, a Virginian who had been appointed commander-in-chief by the second Continental Congress the previous summer. John Adams and other leaders feared that the South -

so far little involved - might stand apart from the struggle, although a voyage to the South by British nander Sir Henry Clinton in 1776, designed to encourage the numerous lovalists to rise against the newly established American government, discovered that a lovalist counter-revolt in North Carolina had been crushed at the battle of Moore's Creek Bridge near Wilmington - and in June, when Clinton bombarded the harbour at Charleston in support of local loyalists, he was driven back and defeated.

#### "Don't fire until you see the whites of their eyes."

Colonel William Prescott (American) to his troops at Bunker Hill, 1775

SARATOGA

#### Saratoga



Saratoga County New York state

British: 800 (plus 6,000 American: 1,600

DATE 19 September

FORCES

British: 10.000:

CASUALTIES

American: 15,000

and 17 October 1777

There were two engagements in the Saratoga campaign within a month of each other. In spite of Washington's much-needed success at Trenton and Princeton at the end of 1776, events in 1777 generally went against the Americans until Saratoga turned the tide. General Howe, having captured Philadelphia, defeated Washington but failed to destroy his army at the battle of Brandywine in September. This campaign went on simultaneously with another in the

north where British general "Gentleman Johnny" Burgovne, starting from Canada, attempted to cut off New England along the line of the Hudson river. He regained

Contemporary American ballad

Ticonderoga but lost about 1.000 men in a failed attempt to seize stores at Bennington Vermont. Up the Hudson, American general Horatio Gates conducted delaying tactics, reducing Burgoyne's progress to a snail's pace. Approaching Saratoga in separate columns through the woods, the British were attacked at Freeman's Farm by

under the orders of Benedict Arnold. who commanded the American left. They drove Morgan off, but not without suffering heavy casualties. Arnold sent Morgan reinforcements, and when the British in turn attacked

Daniel Morgan,

his line they were "And vain was their repelled with more losses. The British endeavour our men to lines had not been terrify, though death broken because Gates had declined was all around us, not to reinforce Arnold, one of us would fly!" who was relieved of command after the British survived a

Burgovne had suffered losses he could not afford. He fortified his position while the Americans built field fortifications further south. Burgoyne was anticipating reinforcements from General Clinton, but Clinton was in

leave because Howe,

his superior, was off

New York and could not

SARATOGA NATIONAL PARK Today a cannon stands above the Hudson river near the site of the American victory at Saratoga. The area became a national park in 1938. in Pennsylvania. The failure to reinforce Burgoyne has been blamed secretary for war, Lord George Germaine, but whatever the cause.

on many people, including the British the result was clearly a disaster. The second engagement, on 7 October. took place at Bemis Heights, where Gates was encamped with more than 12.000 fresh and eager men. Burgovne's attack was easily driven back. He had only about 5,000 fit soldiers left and supplies were running short. He started to retreat but was surrounded by Gates, whose force now outnumbered his by four to one. Ten days later Burgoyne had no alternative but to surrender. The capture of the British army with its weapons vastly increased

American prestige and led to the alliance with France.



Made at Rappahanock Forge, this pistol was used by the American Light Dragoons. American firearms were generally of very high quality.





LOCATION North Sea,

John Paul Jones was commissioned into the Continental Navy in 1776. In command of a makeshift squadron. he sailed to "distress" the British in his frigate the Bonhomme Richard. Cruising south through the North Sea, they encountered a Baltic convoy escorted by HMS Serapis, commanded by Captain Pearson. Pearson held off the squadron while the merchantmen escaped, then engaged the Bonhomme Richard. The two ships fought for two hours until the Serapis caught fire and struck her colours. Jones, with only two guns still firing, was in worse shape; the Bonhomme Richard was sinking. He transferred to the Serapis and returned to France and a hero's welcome.

#### DUEL AT SEA

Serapis fought to a fiery standstill.



23 September 1779 FORCES US frigate Bonhomme Richard, British frigate Serapis

CASUALTIES American: 150 British: 128

In the most famous naval duel of the century, Bonhomme Richard and

#### THE CAROLINAS

#### Camden



LOCATION Camden, South

American: 723 (including prisoners) British: 324

16 August 1780

American: 4,100;

British: 2 239

CASUALTIES

FORCES

In 1778 the British turned their attention to the South, which, they believed, contained a high proportion of lovalists and was economically



THE CAROLINAS

important because it supplied cotton to

British mills. They secured a foothold

in Georgia, and in May 1780 captured

Charleston. Pacification of the back

country was more difficult, but a hastily

gathered Southern army under General

Leading Gates's right flank was Baron

de Kalb, a redoubtable German officer

in French service, but the inexperienced

men on his left broke when Cornwallis

advanced against them. The British

movement to encircle de Kalb, who

was unhorsed and mortally wounded.

then executed a neat outflanking

Gates's reputation plummeted.

Carolina, by General Cornwallis.

Gates was shattered at Camden, South

#### King's Mountain

FORCES

Rebels: 900

CASUALTIES

prisoners)

Rebels: 90

Loyalist militia: 1,100;



LOCATION King's Mountain North Carolina

Following Gates' defeat at Camden, an unforgiving civil war between loyalists and rebels raged in the Carolinas, Major Patrick Ferguson took charge of the loyalist militia and advanced on Charlotte on 26 September. Hearing of an approaching rebel

force, Ferguson moved in the same direction and stopped at King's Mountain, a hill near the border. The rebels had no overall commander each unit was commanded by a self-appointed 'colonel"), but they demonstrated remarkable tactical cohesion. To surround the hill, they were split into half a dozen

#### FRONTIERSMEN

Preparing to fight uphill, rebels open fire on loyalist troops on King's Mountain

groups. When the rebels opened fire, Ferguson responded with a bayonet charge. The frontiersmen were forced to retreat down the hill, but rallied and attacked again. This pattern was repeated several times. The rebels constantly regrouped, and Ferguson's men suffered increasing casualties. When their commander, riddled with musket fire, fell dead from his horse, the loyalists lost heart and began to surrender, but many rebels, lusting for revenge, kept on firing regardless, until their officers finally regained control and took the remainder of the colonial militia into captivity. Several, accused of deserting the rebels' cause and joining the British, were subsequently hanged. The dead and wounded were left behind on the battlefield.



GEORGIA

#### Savannah



FORCES

French and American:

unknown; British and

No reliable estimates

lovalist: unknown

CASUALTIES

ower Savannah

In Savannah, Georgia, revolutionary sentiment was not strong, and in 1778 the city was occupied by British and loyalist forces. General Benjamin Lincoln, Southern commander of the Continental Army, set out to regain the key port in alliance with French admiral the comte d'Estaing, whose 22 ships-of-the-line mounted a blockade. The Continental Army surrounded Savannah on 9 September 1779, aware that the French blockade could not withstand a serious British assault. On 9 October the Continental Army attacked but was stopped short by British regulars under Colonel Maitland. As the attacking line started to crumble. Continental commander Count Pulaski was mortally wounded. Lincoln began an orderly withdrawal on 16 October, and two days later d'Estaing abandoned his blockade and sailed for France.

#### THE CAROLINAS

#### Cowpens



17 January 1781

American: 1,000;

British: 1,100

American: 73;

British: 150 (plus 830

CASUALTIES

prisoners)

FORCES

LOCATION Cowpens. north of Spartanburg, South Carolina

This battle, fought near an area occupied by cattle pens, exemplified the failure of the British campaign in the Carolinas, in particular their failure to combat the Americans' guerrilla tactics, especially when waged in cooperation with the army of the bold and resourceful

#### MORTAR SHELL

An 18th-century, 9-in mortar shell, probably French, found near a Virginia battlefield General Nathanael Greene, With smaller resources, Greene kept the British commander, Cornwallis, off balance by rapid movement and guerrilla raids. Notwithstanding Cornwallis's superiority. Greene daringly divided his army into two, sending Brigadier Daniel Morgan into western South Carolina, where he encountered a British force about the size of his own. It was commanded by Colonel Sir Banastre Tarleton, who had taken part in the capture of Charleston, the battle of Camden, and other engagements. In pursuit of

> Cowpens at 8am, and ordered his tired and hungry "Tory Legion" into battle without breakfast. Greene had stationed his sharpshooters around the area, with the rest of his men out of sight behind a hill. They succeeded in

Morgan, Tarleton began his

march at 2.30am, arrived at

gained close experience of the British army, and was unanimously chosen to command the Continental Army. His generalship was not always faultless, notably with cavalry, but probably no other man could have held the American cause together for so many difficult years: patience was among his greatest virtues. enveloping the British and rounded them up, appropriately, like cattle, suffering minimal

GEORGE WASHINGTON

The American commander-in-chief and first

president of the United States was a man

of great abilities and an impressively

powerful if austere character. Born to

Virginia gentry of English descent, he

Vernon. As commander of the Virginia

militia in the French and Indian War, he

inherited the family estate at Mount

1732-1799

"When I advance, I must either destroy Morgan's corps or push it before me over Broad River, toward King's Mountain."

Colonel Tarleton, before Cowpens, 1781

casualties themselves. Only a handful of British soldiers escaped, including Tarleton, who was by repute one of the more brutal British commanders. Tarleton was later elevated to the rank of general.

#### VIRGINIA

#### Yorktown



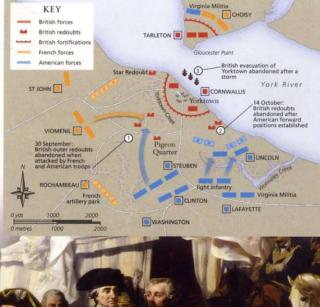
Yorktown, Virginia

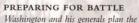
DATE September-October 1781 FORCES American: 8.845: French: 7.800: British: 7,500

CASHAITIES American: 108: French 186; British: 482 (plus 7,018 prisoners)

The Yorktown campaign, the last episode in the American War of Independence, was remarkable for the smooth co-operation of American and French forces over a wide area. The forces included a French army from Rhode Island, an American army from New York, a French fleet from the West Indies, and Lafayette's force of regulars and militiamen from Virginia. The British commander, Cornwallis, after the failure of the Carolinas campaign, declined to

leave his base at the port of Yorktown because he hoped for supplies and support from the Royal Navy. He seemed not to recognize what was obvious both to Washington and Clinton (the British commander-inchief in New York), that his 8,000 troops were vulnerable to a combined land and sea blockade. Washington hastened south to join Lafayette outside Yorktown, while the French fleet under de Grasse sealed off the sea approaches. A Franco-American attack forced the British to withdraw from their outer redoubts, and the siege of the town began in earnest on 6 October. Clinton sent a relief squadron from New York but it was repulsed by de Grasse. After a prolonged artillery barrage, with his defences crumbling, Cornwallis surrendered on 19 October. The British held on to New York until 1783, while negotiations for an armistice were requested.





disposition of their troops before the battle of Yorktown. Washington stands in the entre with Rochambeau on his left.

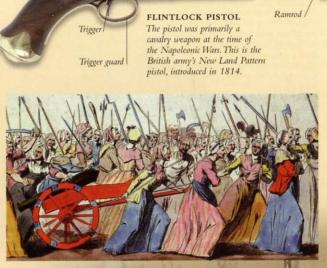
IN 1789 IN FRANCE, the demands of commoners for political rights and an end to noble privilege erupted into full-scale revolution. By 1792 France had been declared a republic, which it remained until 1804, when Napoleon was crowned emperor. The revolution ignited a series of wars, which were both an ideological conflict between the revolution and its enemies and a continuation of the power struggle between European states.

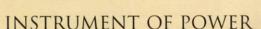
#### CITIZEN ARMY

The dominance achieved by the French army in this period was rooted in the pre-revolutionary era. A royal war councillor, the Comte de Guibert, envisaged a "citizen army" that would fight decisive

combined-arms campaigns based on mobility and aggression, and the royal army's inspector of artillery, Jean-Baptiste de Gribeauval, endowed France with mobile and accurate cannon commanded by trained artillery officers, including Napoleon Bonaparte. The most radical period of the revolution, from 1792 to 1794, made a citizen army a reality. The constitution of June 1793 declared, "All Frenchmen shall be soldiers; all shall be trained to arms." The following August 300,000 troops were raised by conscription, but it was declared the duty of every citizen to participate in the war effort.

Women armed with pike marched on the king's palace at Versailles in the French Revolution, 1789





Conscripts, revolutionary volunteers, and the old royal army were amalgamated into mass armies supplied by a rapidly expanding state armaments industry. Extreme revolutionary gestures such as the election of officers were soon abandoned in favour of formal discipline and hierarchy, but revolutionary and patriotic enthusiasm distinguished French troops from their enemies. Men of all social backgrounds were able to win rapid promotion on merit. This was the context for the rise of Napoleon, who

turned the French army into a formidable agent of personal ambition. Creating self-contained combinedarms formations, he followed an offensive strategy, seeking out and attacking the enemy in pursuit of victory.

#### MEDAL OF VICTORY

The British Waterloo medal celebrates the defeat in 1815 that marked the end of Napoleon's career.

#### NAPOLEON BONAPARTE

Born in Corsica, Napoleon was an artillery officer whose readiness to suppress street disturbances in Paris in 1795 earned him command of an army. His military successes gave him the chance to seize political power, culminating in the assumption of the title of emperor in 1804. Napoleon won almost all of the 50 battles he fought. A natural gambler, he even attempted a return to power from exile on Elba in 1815. Defeat at Waterloo led to his imprisonment on the Britishheld island of St Helena, where he died



ELITE GUARD

The Consular Guard, forerunners of

Napoleon's Imperial Guard, formed

resolute squares to hold off Austrian

cavalry at Marengo in 1800.



was a mere sergeant-major at the outbreak of the French revolutionary wars.

#### SHOCK TACTICS

Napoleon's large armies moved swiftly by forced marches, living off the country. When battle was joined, success often depended on superior manoeuvre - for example, destroying a weaker part of the enemy's army and then turning with full force on the now outnumbered remainder. Napoleon's ruthlessly aggressive application of power on the battlefield - the cannonade by heavy artillery, the infantry attack in dense columns, the mass cavalry charge ensured that casualty rates were high on both

sides. At the battle of Borodino in 1812 there were 74,000 casualties in one day. Napoleon saw no need to conserve manpower, figuring more could always be raised by conscription.

#### A CONTINENT AT WAR

The Napoleonic wars were the last military campaigns to spread across all areas of Europe - and even to other continents - before the outbreak of World War I in 1914.

Black Sea

REVOLUTIONARIES

Soldiers of the Revolution vow to fight to the last at Montelegino in 1796.

British force

French defeat

Egyptian campaigr 1798–1801

The Hundred Days'
March-June 1815

Holy Roman Empire 1797

The Peninsular War 1808–14

The war with Russia 1812

British blockade

--- frontiers 1797

FRENCH DEFEAT

#### Napoleon saw the gun as a crucial battle winner, not a support weapon. "It is with cannon that one makes war," he said.

Britain, France's most consistent enemy, remained dominant at sea throughout the Napoleonic wars, winning the fierce and costly warship battles. On land, Napoleon suffered a steady drain on his resources in the Peninsular War, where he faced Spanish guerrillas and British intervention. He overreached himself with the 1812 invasion of

Russia and the retreat from Moscow destroyed his experienced army. Learning from the French, other states enlarged their forces - though only the Prussians began conscription - and improved their tactics. Never as brilliant as Napoleon, they nevertheless became increasingly capable of taking the French on and finally won out. The French monarchy was restored in 1814, and Napoleon's desperate gamble at Waterloo the following year was a doomed effort.





# FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS

THE WARS BETWEEN REVOLUTIONARY FRANCE and a varying coalition of European powers began in 1792 as resistance to an invasion intended to restore the authority of the French monarchy, but evolved into a crusade to spread the principles of the Revolution. A by-product of this was an aggressive expansion of France's borders. From 1793, under the inspired direction of Lazare Carnot, the hundreds of thousands of new recruits raised by mass mobilization - the levée en masse - were amalgamated with old regulars to form a national army full of revolutionary enthusiasm. In Napoleon Bonaparte they found a general of genius to lead them. But the limit to French power remained the sea, where Britain was dominant.

#### FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS

#### Valmy



20 September 1792 FORCES French: 30 000. Coalition 30 000-40 000

CASHALTIES French: 300 killed Coalition: 200 killed

In April 1792 France declared war on Austria and Prussia. Coalition forces (Prussian, Austrian, Hessian, and French emigrés) advanced into France in August. The Prussian commander, the Duke of Brunswick, took Verdun on 3 September and marched on Paris. Two French armies, commanded by Charles Dumouriez and François-Christophe Kellermann, failed to stop Brunswick passing through the wooded heights of the Argonne and on into the west. With the road to Paris open in front of him, Brunswick chose to turn to engage the French, fearing to continue the advance with enemy armies across his lines of communication. Brunswick's army met French forces under Kellermann, drawn up on the heights of Valmy. Subjected to heavy artillery fire, the



French soldiers stood firm. When the coalition infantry advanced, it was the turn of the French artillery to show its effectiveness in breaking up the assault. Brunswick soon decided that, since the French were not going to run away, his best course was to withdraw while his forces, already racked by disease, were still relatively intact. Although more a drawn stand-off than a serious battle, Valmy was hailed as a great victory and the salvation of the Revolution.

#### EPOCH-MAKING BATTLE

This painting shows French positions by the mill at Valmy coming under artillery fire. The German poet Goethe, who was present at the battle, described it as the beginning of "a new era in world history".

#### FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS

#### Iemappes



eastern Belgium

DATE 6 November 1792 FORCES French: 40,000-45 000: Austrians: 13,000-25,000 CASHAITIES

French: 2.000-4.000 killed or wounded Austrians: 4,500 killed

In early November 1792 Dumouriez advanced into the Austrian Netherlands (Belgium) with the Armée du Nord. He came upon an Austrian army led by Duke Albert of Saxe-Teschen at Jemappes, outside Mons. The Austrians were heavily outnumbered but occupying strong defensive positions. The battle began with a three-hour French

artillery barrage that had little effect. Dumouriez then launched a series of frontal assaults, but the fire of Austrian cannon and Tyrolean Jägers armed with rifles, as well as cavalry counterattacks, repeatedly drove the French back. The Austrians were eventually swamped by force of numbers and retreated briskly. By the end of the year France had occupied the Austrian Netherlands

#### FIELD ARTILLERY

Due to the reforming efforts of French general Jean-Baptiste de Gribeauval (1715-89), French guns were more accurate and mobile than those of their enemies.



#### FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS

27 August-19 December 1793

FORCES Some 18,000

No reliable estimates

British, Spanish,

and Piedmontese

inside Toulon

CASHAITIES

#### Toulon



Toulon, on France's Mediterranean coast

By August 1793 the revolutionaries were at war with Britain and Spain as well as Austria and Prussia, and large parts of France were in the hands of rovalist rebels. After rovalists invited an Anglo-Spanish fleet under Admiral Hood to occupy the port of Toulon, French forces laid siege to the town. A junior artillery officer, Napoleon Bonaparte, devised a plan to drive out the fleet by seizing high ground

dominating the harbour, thus



#### NAPOLEON AT THE SIEGE

Napoleon's reputation was made at the siege of Toulon. He was promoted from captain to brigadier-general in four months.

exposing the enemy to artillery fire. The French took Fort Mulgrave, the key to possession of this ground, on 17 December. As Napoleon had predicted, the following day Hood was obliged to evacuate and pull out his fleet.

"I have no words to describe Buonaparte's merit: much technical skill, an equal degree of intelligence, and too much gallantry..."

French officer Jacques Dugommier, reporting on the siege of Toulon, 1793

#### FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS

#### Fleurus



Belgium, north of Charleroi

CASHALTIES French: 4.000 killed: Austrians: 2,300 killed

26 June 1794

French: 75 000

Austrians and Dutch: 52,000

FORCES

From the autumn of 1793 the French revolutionaries regained the initiative in their war against the coalition of foreign powers and against royalists in France. In June 1794 General Jourdan laid siege to the Belgian city of Charleroi, Austrian and Dutch forces, plus a sprinkling of British, under the Prince of Saxe-Coburg, advanced to relieve the city. Despite being fewer in number, the coalition forces attacked boldly near the town of Fleurus at daybreak on 26 June. Saxe-Coburg's forces attacked in five columns, those on the left and right driving back the French at each end of their line. Jourdan, however, had the unprecedented advantage of aerial reconnaissance, as his hydrogen balloon, Entreprenant, floated above the battlefield. The crew of two, including the mastermind of the project, Charles Coutelle, staved in the air for the duration of the battle, sliding messages about enemy movements down a cable to the ground. Aided by this impressive view of the battlefield, Jourdan was able to rally his forces on the right and left and launch an attack in the centre. The coalition forces were

#### REVOLUTIONARY COMMANDER General Jourdan, on a white horse, launched his reserves in a decisive counterattack

against the coalition at the battle of Fleurus.

obliged to retreat, although the French, short of ammunition and exhausted, did not pursue. The victory was nonetheless decisive. The French occupied Belgium. which they were to hold for the next 20 years. By relaxing the fear of foreign invasion, the victory undermined the extremists of the ruling Committee of Public Safety, which fell in July 1794.

#### AIR WARFARE

The French established the world's first air force, the Compagnie d'Aéronautique, in 1794. A hydrogen balloon, the Entreprenant was deployed at Maubeuge on 2 June 1794, and after success at Fleurus, three more balloons went into service. Napoleon did not take to the idea of aerial warfare and the company was disbanded in 1799.



#### FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS





Arcole

FRENCH REVOLUTIONARY WARS

Austrians: 17,000

Southeast of Verona,

Appointed commander of the French Army of Italy in 1796, Napoleon Bonaparte proceeded to demonstrate his genius for rapid manoeuvre and decisive attack. In April and May he defeated Piedmont and drove the Austrians out of most of northern Italy. There followed a long siege of the remaining Austrian stronghold of Mantua, while the Austrians mounted a series of relief attempts. In November Napoleon confronted an Austrian army led by Josef Alvintzy near the junction of the Alpone and Adige rivers. The French army was short of everything from boots to food, but nonetheless took the offensive. The French crossed the Adige on 14 November, after which the two armies were separated only by the Alpone. On 15 and 16 November repeated French attempts to cross this river by the bridge at Arcole were beaten back by Austrian firepower. of Campo Formio later that year.



#### BRIDGE CROSSING

Heroic images such as this one of Napoleon crossing the Arcole served as propaganda to promote Napoleon's personal popularity.

On the 17th, however, French flanking moves convinced Alvintzy that he was threatened with encirclement and he retreated. Napoleon went on to rout the Austrians at Rivoli in January 1797, forcing Austria to sign the Peace



In 1796 Spain allied itself with France. The combined strength of the French and Spanish fleets threatened to end British naval superiority and open the way for an invasion of Britain. The British Mediterranean fleet under Admiral Sir John Jervis was given the task of preventing the Spanish sailing north to join their French allies. On the morning of 14 February 1797 Jervis intercepted a Spanish fleet under Admiral José de Córdova off Cape St Vincent. Despite having numerically inferior forces, the British sailed in to attack, their line of ships splitting the panish forces in two. Commodore



#### SHIP OF BONES Prisoners of war from the French

revolutionary navy constructed this model ship, the HMS Egmont, out of bones.

Horatio Nelson blocked the escape of the larger body of Spanish ships, at one point engaging seven of them unaided. Four Spanish ships were captured, two of them by Nelson, and a number of other vessels suffered serious damage. The surviving Spanish were blockaded in Cadiz; plans for an invasion of Britain were scotched

"The roar was like heavy thunder, and the ship reeled and shook as if she was inclined to fall in pieces. I felt a choking sensation from the smell and smoke of gunpowder..."

Midshipman George Parsons on HMS Barfleur at Cape St Vincent, 1797

THE DANISH CAMPAIGN

#### NAPOLEON TAKES OVER

IN 1798 NAPOLEON BONAPARTE EMBARKED on a campaign in Egypt that brought him more military glory but was strategically negated by the strength of British seapower. Returning to France in the autumn of 1799 he seized power in a coup d'état. By then France had suffered a number of reverses at the hands of the Second Coalition formed by Russia, Britain, Austria, and

the Ottoman empire, and in Italy Russian General Sovorov had all but driven out the French forces. Russia withdrew from the war, however, and Napoleon reversed the situation with victory at Marengo. By 1802 Napoleon had bludgeoned his enemies into accepting peace largely on French terms, and by the time war resumed in 1805 he had been crowned emperor of the French.

THE EGYPTIAN CAMPAIGN

#### Pyramids



near Cairo, Egypt

DATE 21 July 1798 FORCES French: 25 000: Envotians:

20 000-30 000 (6 000 Mameluke cavalry) CASUALTIES French: 29 killed, 260 wounded: Egyptians: 4,000 killed (2.000 Mamelukes)

On 2 July 1798 Napoleon landed at Alexandria, bent on the conquest of Egypt, then an Ottoman province governed by the Mamelukes. The French infantry advanced in a series of gruelling marches towards Cairo, where an army of elite Mameluke cavalry and fellahin (peasant) infantry prepared to counter them. On 20 aly French scouts discovered the enemy camped within sight of the Pyramids. The following day Napoleon's infantry drew up in

DEFEAT OF THE MAMELUKES

Routed by the fire of French muskets and artillery, flamboyantly dressed Mamelukes flee the field at the battle of the Pyramids. squares six men deep, with artillery at each corner. Clad in gorgeous silks and heavily armed with sabres and pistols, the Mameluke cavalry hurled themselves against the squares with ferocious battle cries. According to Napoleon's official report, the cavalry

Horatio Nelson had been hunting for

it, hampered by a lack of frigates, the

'eyes" of the fleet. On 1 August 1798

their anchorage in Aboukir Bay. When

Nelson tracked the French down to

the enemy was sighted, the British

sailed in to attack, although only a

few hours of daylight remained. The

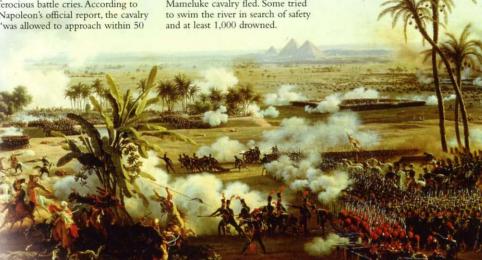
French were taken by surprise, with

many men ashore fetching supplies.

They were anchored in shallow water, but the British took the risk of sailing

round the head of their line. Although one British ship ran aground, others

paces and was then welcomed with a hail of case shot and bullets..."The French seized the initiative, advancing along the Nile bank supported by the guns of the river flotilla, and the Mameluke cavalry fled. Some tried to swim the river in search of safety and at least 1,000 drowned.



#### THE EGYPTIAN CAMPAIGN

#### Nile (Aboukir Bay)



French: 13 ships CASUALTIES French: 9 ships captured, 2 destroyed, 2,000 men British: 213 killed, 677 wounded

DATE 1-2 August 1798

FORCES British: 14 ships;

The French fleet that took Napoleon's forces to Egypt was commanded by Admiral Brueys. It was fortunate to reach Alexandria unscathed, as a British fleet under Admiral



#### MARINE SWORD

The hilt of this French marine's sword of the Napoleonic period ends in the cockerel's head, a French revolutionary symbol.

led by Goliath, anchored alongside the foremost French ships, raking them with broadsides. The French ships could not reply because all their guns were on the seaward side. Nelson, aboard Vanguard, led the other half of his fleet to anchor to the seaward side of the French ships, which were thus battered from both sides. The French put up a fierce fight, especially the three-deck 120-gun flagship L'Orient. Nelson himself was wounded in the head; Brueys was cut in two by a cannonball. L'Orient caught fire and at around 10pm its gunpowder store exploded. The sound was heard over 30km (18 miles) away and two British ships were set on fire by blazing wreckage. The fighting continued all night and by dawn the French were routed. Only three ships escaped. Napoleon was cut off in Egypt.

#### FRENCH ON FIRE

The remaining ships of the French fleet under Admiral Brueys were ablaze by the closing phase of the battle of the Nile.

#### THE EGYPTIAN CAMPAIGN Aboukir Bay



North coast of Egypt

French: 10.000: Ottomans: 15.000 CASUALTIES French: 220 killed 750 wounded: c.2.000 killed

DATE 25 July 1799

In September 1798 the Ottoman empire declared war on France. To forestall a possible Ottoman descent on Egypt, in early 1799 Napoleon marched north to Acre, the capital of Ottoman Syria. The city held out through a 63-day siege, after which Napoleon marched his army, decimated by disease, back to Egypt. On 11 July 1799 the Ottoman army of Rhodes, led by Mustapha Pasha, landed on the Egyptian coast at Aboukir. In two weeks Napoleon marched a force of 10,000 men from Cairo to confront the Turks. After the French infantry had fought its way into the midst of the Turkish troops, Joachim Murat led a ferocious cavalry charge. Under the shock, the Turkish forces fell apart, fleeing back to their ships. Despite this victory, the next month Napoleon returned to France.

#### THE ITALIAN CAMPAIGN

#### Marengo



LOCATION 2km (1 mile) east of Alessandria. northern Italy

Austrians: 9 400 killed wounded or taken prisoner: French: 7.000 killed or wounded

DATE October 1805

FORCES Austrians:

CASUALTIES

taken prisoner:

French: 1,500 killed

45 000: French: 150 000

Austrians: 10,000 killed or wounded, 30,000

DATE 14 June 1800

Austrians: 31,000

French: 32,000

CASUALTIES

FORCES

In May 1800 Napoleon, now first consul, led the newly formed Army of Reserve across the Alps by the St Bernard Pass. Cannon barrels were placed in hollowed-out tree trunks and dragged over the ice, snow, and rock. The French army came out on the Lombardy plain and marched west to engage the Austrians. In Turin, Austrian commander Baron Michael Melas decided his best course was to march east and break through Napoleon's forces, which lav across his line of communications. Not anticipating Melas's aggressive intentions, Napoleon confidently expected the Austrians to withdraw; when they attacked at Marengo his forces were scattered. with only some 22,000 immediately available to face Melas's 31,000. The French were driven back, at some

THE THIRD COALITION

Ulm



In reality Napoleon crossed the Alps on a mule. This idealized image, painted by Jacques-Louis David, was imperial propaganda.

#### MOUNTAIN PASS

The St Bernard Pass was covered in snow and ice when the French Army of Reserve crossed it in May 1800.

points in disarray, and by the early afternoon Melas believed the battle won. At around 5pm, however, a contingent some 10,000 strong led by Desaix arrived on the battlefield and launched a decisive counterattack.

Although Desaix was shot through the heart, the combined force of French artillery, cavalry, and infantry broke the weary Austrians, who were routed. The next day Melas signed an armistice agreeing to evacuate Lombardy.

Copenhagen DATE 2 April 1801 FORCES Danish: 18 ships; British: 33 ships (12 committed to battle) CASUALTIES Danish: 470 killed 550 wounded 1 779 taken prisoner British: 254 killed. 689 wounded

was the most terrible of them all!"

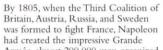
#### Copenhagen In February 1802 Denmark, Russia, Sweden, and Prussia formed an armed neutrality league in reaction to British searches of neutral shipping. Britain responded by sending a fleet to the Danish capital under Admiral Sir Hyde Parker, who sent his second-incommand Nelson with 12 ships of the line to sail into the harbour. Nelson had to negotiate sand banks while engaging a defensive line of armed hulks and floating batteries, as well as Danish warships. When the battle was at its hottest, Parker ordered Nelson to withdraw, but he claimed not to see the signal, putting his telescope to his blind eye. After four hours of intensive cannon duels, Danish resistance ceased. Nelson said of the battle, "I have been in 105 engagements, but that of today

Mack's army, still paralysed at

Ulm. Some of Mack's forces

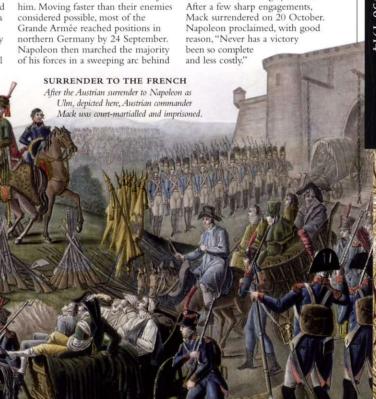
attempted to break out of the

encirclement, but largely in vain.



Armée, almost 200,000 men organized in seven corps, each commanded by a marshal. Austria and Russia planned major offensives through northern Italy and across southern Germany into France. Through September General

Mack von Lieberich led an Austrian army as far as Ulm on the Danube, where he waited for a Russian army under Prince Mikhail Kutuzov to join him. Moving faster than their enemies considered possible, most of the Grande Armée reached positions in northern Germany by 24 September. Napoleon then marched the majority of his forces in a sweeping arc behind



DATE 8 February 1807

French: 71,000;

Russians: 76.000

CASUALTIES

The Prussian defeat at Jena/Auerstadt

left the Russians to bear the brunt of

Napoleon's aggression. The French

pursued the Russians and some

Prussian remnants into Poland In

February the French and Russians

stumbled into one another at Evlau,

both sides calling in reinforcements

as battle was engaged. Fighting in

close to defeat when Augereau's

corps, making a frontal attack on

the Russian centre directly into the

fire of a 70-gun battery, was repulsed

with massive casualties. Murat saved

French cavalry, which swept through

the cannon. When reinforcements

commander Bennigsen withdrew,

although he had certainly not been

defeated. It was not until the French

victory at Friedland the following June

that the Russians were crushed, forcing

Emperor Alexander to sue for peace.

under Ney arrived, Russian

the Russian infantry and overwhelmed

the day with a costly charge by 10,000

a snowstorm, the French came

French: 25,000

killed or wounded

Russians: 15,000

killed or wounded

THE THIRD COALITION

Eylau

LOCATION

Preussische-Evlau.

#### FRENCH SUPREMACY

THE STRENGTH OF THE FRENCH ARMY and Napoleon's military genius enabled France to achieve an extraordinary dominance over Europe. The victories at Ulm and Austerlitz in 1805 were followed by the destruction of the Prussian and Russian armies in 1806-07 and another defeat for Austria in 1809. Napoleon reorganized European borders and political life at will. Only Britain remained

unsubdued; in summer 1805 Napoleon had planned an invasion, but after the British naval victory at Trafalgar this project was never revived. Instead, France attempted to impose an economic blockade through the Continental System, banning trade between Europe and Britain. French attempts to make all countries conform to this blockade were to lead to the next round of fighting.

THE THIRD COALITION

#### Trafalgar



South of Cadiz. off Cape Trafalgar

In October 1805 French Admiral Villeneuve, commanding a Franco-Spanish fleet off Cadiz, was ordered to sail to the Mediterranean. A British fleet commanded by Lord Horatio Nelson was waiting outside the port. Nelson planned to sail his ships in two columns perpendicular to the Franco-Spanish line, cutting it in the centre

DATE 21 October 1805

British: 27 ships of the

line; French-Spanish:

CASHALTIES British: 449

killed, 1,214 wounded:

French-Spanish: 4,408

killed, 2,545 wounded

33 ships of the line

#### EXCHANGING BROADSIDES

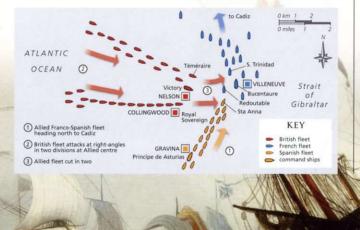
Participants at the battle of Trafalgar described the astonishing noise and appalling injuries such as dismemberment and burns.

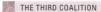
and towards the rear. In the ensuing melée superior British seamanship and gunnery would wreak havoc before the enemy could turn to join the battle. When Villeneuve sighted Nelson's fleet he turned back towards Cadiz but could not avoid battle. Nelson headed one of the British columns aboard Victory, Collingwood the other aboard Royal Sovereign. Victory sailed through the enemy line behind Villeneuve's flagship, Bucentaure, raking it with grapeshot. British vessels took heavy damage, however, from enemy broadsides that brought down rigging and masts. In the early afternoon Victory came alongside the French ship Redoutable. Marines firing down from the masts of the French ship killed many men on Victory's deck, including Nelson, who had shown a reckless disregard for personal safety throughout. The last act of the battle came when the French ship Achille caught fire and exploded, with great loss of life. Eleven French and Spanish ships made it back to Cadiz.

#### LORD NELSON

Horatio Nelson first came to prominence at the battle of Cape St Vincent in 1797 (see p199). He repeatedly ignored direct orders, but headstrong boldness was crowned by success at the battle of the Nile in 1798 and at Copenhagen in 1801. Nelson established an admirable relationship of mutual trust with his captains, who were inspired to show initiative and daring by his example. His determination to lead from the front cost him an eye in 1794, his right arm in 1797, and his life at Trafalgar.







#### Iena/Auerstadt



East of Weimar,

almost his entire Grande Armée against the Prussians, cutting off the Prussian army from Berlin, On 13 October a corps commanded by Lannes met a large Prussian force at Jena. Believing this to be the main army. Napoleon sent the bulk of his forces to join Lannes, while



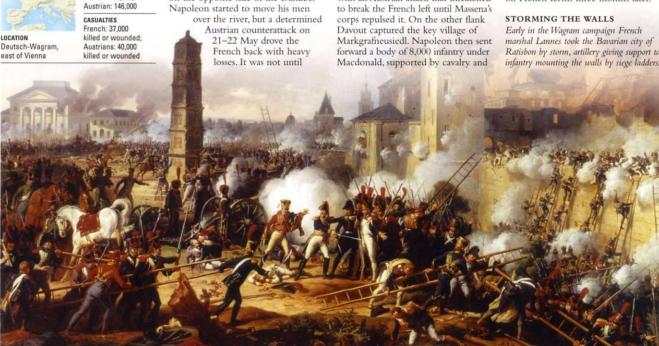
FORCES French: 170,000; commanded by Prince Hohenlohe. The main army under the Duke of were decimated as they stood on the defensive in virtual parade order. Given the French superiority of numbers, their eventual victory was assured. At Auerstadt, however, Davout found himself facing the bulk of the Prussian army, while Bernadotte wandered between the two battlefields. Davout fought

The French

but indecisive fighting up to nightfall The following morning battle resumed with an Austrian attack that threatened to break the French left until Massena's

artillery, to deliver the final blow. Macdonald drove the Austrians back, but at massive cost: around threequarters of his men were casualties. The Austrians withdrew, though not in disarray. Austria signed a peace treaty on French terms three months later.

Early in the Wagram campaign French marshal Lannes took the Bavarian city of Ratisbon by storm, artillery giving support to





occupied Vienna, Charles's army was

on the opposite side of the Danube.

RESTORED WARSHIP Today HMS Victory is in dry-dock at Portsmouth, on the south coast of England. It has been restored to the condition it was

in before the battle of Trafalgar.

#### ITS ROLE AS HORATIO NELSON'S FLAGSHIP AT THE BATTLE OF TRAFALGAR MADE HMS VICTORY ONE OF THE MOST FAMOUS WARSHIPS OF ITS TIME.

Serving from 1778 to 1812, HMS Victory was one of the largest ships in the British fleet at the time of the Napoleonic wars. She was launched from Chatham dockyard in Kent in 1765, but it was another 13 years before her commission as the flagship of Admiral Augustus Keppel in the war against France. In 1778 and again in 1781 Victory led inconclusive actions near the island of Ouessant, off the coast of Brittany, northwest France. In 1793, during Britain's war with revolutionary France, she became the Royal Navy's flagship in the Mediterranean, heading the British destruction of the Spanish fleet - Spain was an ally of France at the time - off Cape Saint Vincent, Portugal. Considered too old after this triumph, Victory sailed home to serve as a prison hospital ship. But her finest hour was yet to come: in 1803 she was recommissioned as Admiral Horatio Nelson's flagship. Two years later, at the battle of Trafalgar, she fronted Nelson's successful attempt to break the French line off Cadiz, Spain, although many of her crew - including Nelson himself, who died in the ship's cockpit - fell to French sniper fire.

#### ARCHETYPAL WARSHIP

ANCHORS AND GUNS Victory

has seven anchors - the heaviest

weighs 4.5 tonnes - and 104 guns.

Victory was a typical example of a three-decked warship, the most powerful and prestigious vessels of the day. Made chiefly of oak, around 6,000 trees were felled for its construction, the British dockyards being some of the world's largest industrial enterprises. The ship was an expensive piece of military hardware, costing an estimated £50 million in today's money to build. Firing broadsides

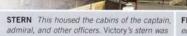


#### UNDER FIRE

The Victory at Trafalgar. Its crew suffered the worst losses of any Allied ship, totalling 57 deaths. Origin Great Britain

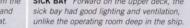
Length 57m (186ft)

of solid shot from around 50 guns, Victory might use up hundreds of barrels of gunpowder in an engagement; a skilled crew could get a shot off every minute or two. Warships like Victory continued to dominate naval warfare until the second half of the 19th century, when the introduction of steam-driven, ironclad battleships, firing explosive shells from revolving turrets, revolutionized naval warfare.



STERN This housed the cabins of the captain, FIRE BUCKETS This row of leather buckets hangs from the SICK BAY Forward on the upper deck, the admiral, and other officers. Victory's stern was edge of the poop deck. Victory's wooden construction and

less decorated than earlier ships of its type. tar-coated rigging meant that fire posed a serious threat.



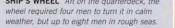
POWDER HORN Each gun captain carried a ow horn filled with powder to prime the



HOLD The hold is shown here almost empty, containing just a layer of gravel for ballast and a few barrels. However, when full it could store supplies for

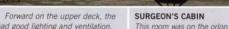




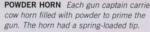




GUN LOCK Pulling the cord of the gun lock created a spark by which the gun's charge was ignited. The gun lock is











#### THE PENINSULAR WAR

IN 1807 FRANCE AND ITS SPANISH ALLIES invaded Portugal to close a breach in the Continental System by which Napoleon hoped to block Britain's trade with Europe. Then, in May 1808 the French emperor placed his brother Joseph Bonaparte on the Spanish throne. These two events sparked a war that became an ulcer draining the strength of Napoleonic France. After brutally

repressing a popular uprising in Madrid, the French faced a nationwide Spanish insurrection that turned into a bitter guerrilla war, fought without quarter on both sides. Britain meanwhile, keen to protect its trading interests, landed forces in Portugal. Led by Arthur Wellesley, the future Duke of Wellington, they were to drive the French out of the Iberian peninsula.

FORCES

British: 15,000;

British: 800 killed or

1,000 killed or wounded

CASUALTIES

northern Spain. The British forces in

Portugal were now commanded by General Sir John Moore, as Wellesley

had been recalled for an inquiry into lunot's repatriation. Moore advanced

his army into Spain, only to learn that

Napoleon had brushed aside the

spanish and occupied Madrid. The panish collapse forced the British to

PENINSULAR WAR

#### Vimeiro



DATE 21 August 1808 British and Portuguese: 18,800; French: 13.000 CASUALTIES

British and

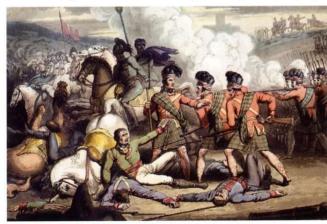
Portuguese: 700; French: 2,000

Encouraged by a French surrender to Spanish regulars at Bailen two weeks previously, in early August 1808 a British force led by Arthur Wellesley landed on the Portuguese coast near Coimbra and advanced south. Andoche Junot, the French

commander in Portugal, gathered his forces and marched north to engage Wellesley, who was positioned on a ridge stretching from the village of Vimeiro to the sea. French columns made a series of attacks along the British line, but were repeatedly thrown back by concentrated enemy fire. Repulsed at Vimeiro, Junot felt his position was untenable. He negotiated surrender terms with senior British officers under which his troops and their equipment were repatriated to France by British ships - an agreement that caused an outcry in Britain.

#### SCOTTISH TROOPS

Highland regiments fought at Vimeiro. These soldiers, wearing ostrich feather caps, belonged to the Highland Light Infantry.



PENINSULAR WAR La Coruña northwest Spain Stung by French setbacks in Iberia, in October 1808 Napoleon took personal command of a large army in

rithdraw towards La Coruña, harried by the French. Marching rough mountains in oitter winter weather, the British soldiers' norale disintegrated. But the rearguard fought successful nolding actions and, when it arrived at La Coruña, formed a defensive line from the village of Elvina to the sea. On 16 January forces under

RETREAT TO LA CORUÑA

About 4,000 British troops died during the mid-winter mountain crossing in 1808.

the French duke Nicolas-Jean-de-Dieu Soult made a frontal attack on the British line, twice capturing

> Elvina only to be driven out by the British both times. In the second counterattack, in which the British used bayonets for lack of ammunition. Moore was fatally wounded. He was buried that night on the ramparts of La Coruña. The following day the British forces were evacuated by sea.

GORGET Gorgets were piece. of armour that protected the throat and symbolized the rank of officer in the British army. This one dates from

> broke the British line, but Wellesley plugged what he called "an ugly hole" just in time. The hard-fought battle - which gained of Talavera - was followed by the withdrawal of both sides. The French that Soult was advancing from the north. Over the next two years the British remained on the defensive in Portugal, while the French suffered ever heavier losses at the hands of

"Our men suffered dreadfully on the route ... The brain fever soon commenced, making fearful ravages in our ranks, and many men dropped by the roadside and died."

Sergeant Edward Costello, 95th Rifles, on marching to Talavera, 1809

in charge of an army in northern Portugal and Napoleon's brother, CASUALTIES British and King Joseph, leading forces to the east of Lisbon. In May Wellesley drove Soult out of the city of Porto. Two 7,400 killed or wounded

by 30,000 Spanish

troops, he marched

At the start of 1809 Napoleon left Spain with a substantial part of his army because impending war with Austria required his attention (see Wagram, p205). Wellesley returned to Portugal in April with a force of around 28,000 British and Hanoverians (German subjects of the British crown), supplemented by 16,000 Portuguese. The French threatened from two directions: commander Soult

28-29 July 1809

FORCES British: 24,000;

PENINSULAR WAR

Madrid, central Spain

Talavera

east from Lisbon, pursuing the other French army as it withdrew towards Madrid. At Talavera, the outnumbered French turned to fight their pursuers. In a series of bold attacks they almost months later, joined

#### SWORD AND SCABBARD

This c. 1800 British light cavalry sabre had a heavy blade that could sever an arm or split a skull with a single blow.

Wellesley the title Viscount Wellington fell back on Madrid while the British marched back to Lisbon after learning

Spanish guerrillas

PENINSULAR WAR

#### Salamanca



South of Salamanca western Spain

DATE 22 July 1812 FORCES British and Portuguese: 52,000; French: 48.000 CASUALTIES British and Wellington began a withdrawal. Portuguese: 4.800 killed or wounded;

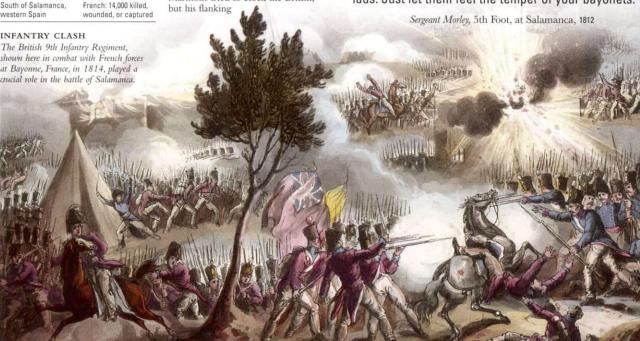
Wellington took the offensive. After the capture of Ciudad Roderigo and Badajoz on the Portuguese-Spanish border, he was well positioned to strike into Spain. In June the British took Salamanca, but the army of the French marshal Auguste-Frédéric de Marmont hovered nearby. On 22 July Marmont tried to block the British. but his flanking

From the start of 1812 Viscount

movement thinly stretched his forces across the British front. Wellington now launched an attack led by General Edward Pakenham. After British infantry had broken the French squares, a cavalry charge scattered the

rest of the French army. The battle was not a total rout, but British artillery and musket fire inflicted heavy casualties -Marmont, for example, was severely wounded - and allowed Wellington to go on to occupy Madrid.

"The fire became stronger, there was a pause ... General Pakenham approached and...said, 'There they are, my lads. Just let them feel the temper of your bayonets."



#### PENINSULAR WAR

#### Siege of Badajoz



DATE 16 March-6 April 1812 French garrison: 5,000; British: 40.000 CASUALTIES French: 5.000 killed, wounded.

or captured: British:

Portuguese border 5,000 killed or wounded In March 1812 Wellington determined to take Badajoz from the French. The British dug trenches outside the city, where they were discomfited by wet weather and French shells. By 6 April three breaches had been made in the walls and a night assault was ordered.

#### INTO THE BREACH

British troops prepare to storm Badajoz. After the city fell the British avenged their heavy losses with looting, rape, and murder.

#### **FULL HONOURS**

This service medal was awarded for action at Badajoz or Ciudad Roderigo.

The French had placed mines and sharpened stakes in the way and prepared lines of re converging on the breaches. Some of the storming parties got lost in the smoke and the darkness, and not a single

British soldier had penetrated the walls when troops under Sir Thomas Picton attacked the city's castle, using scaling ladders to mount the ramparts. The fall of the city swiftly followed

to take the offensive... but his Majesty does not realize that the smallest movement in these parts expends great quantities of resources, especially of horses...To make requisitions on even the poorest village we have to send a detachment of 200 men and, to be able to live, we have to scatter over great distances."

#### WITNESS TO WAR

#### **AUGUST MARMONT**

Marshal August Marmont, writing in 1812, attempted to enlighten Napoleon on the realities of warfare in Spain. The food shortages were due to armies stripping the land bare, while guerrillas preyed on foraging parties - hence the need for 200 men to make requisitions.

"The emperor wants me Vittoria South of Bilbao northern Spain Despite the defeat at Salamanca, the

French continued to give Wellington a hard fight. But by the summer of 1813, by now in command of a large allied army of British, Spanish, and Portuguese forces, he was ready to embark on a drive across northern Spain towards the French border. King Joseph of Spain hurried to block Wellington's path, but the British commander ordered his army to attack in four columns, turning both flanks of the enemy and breaking through in the centre. Joseph inevitably called for a retreat, which turned into a rout of his forces. The French abandoned their cannons along with wagonloads of supplies and treasure, all of which thoroughly distracted the victors from the pursuit. The following October Wellington's peninsular army invaded France.





**DATE 21 June 1813** 

French: 50,000; British

and allies: 70,000

and 150 cannon:

British and allies:

FORCES

CASUALTIES

5,000 men

# EMPIRES AND REVOLUTIONS

# NAPOLEON VANQUISHED

IN THE SPRING OF 1812 Napoleon assembled an army of 614,000 men for an invasion of Russia, which had deserted his Continental System. The force included Austrians, Prussians, Poles, Italians, Swiss, and Danes - only a minority were French. Supported by a vast supply train of 25,000 vehicles, the army advanced into Russia on 4 June, spread across a 480km (300mile) front. Achieving coherent command over this vast area, with all messages carried on horseback, proved impossible, and supply problems mounted inexorably as the Russians fell back towards Moscow. After the battle of Borodino the French occupied Moscow, but the Russians' refusal to surrender led to a nightmare winter retreat from which Napoleon never recovered.

THE INVASION OF RUSSIA

#### Borodino



FORCES French: 130,000: Russians: 120,000 CASHAITIES

DATE 7 September 1812

French: 30,000 killed or wounded; Russians: 44,000 killed or

In the first three months of the invasion of Russia, Napoleon lost a third of his force to hardship and disease and fought only one substantial engagement, at Smolensk. At the start of September the veteran Russian general Mikhail Illarionovich Kutuzov decided to make a stand at Borodino.

#### CAVALRY CHARGE

Here, French dragoons charge the Russian fortification the Great Redoubt, securing a victory at the battle of Borodino.

improving a natural defensive Russian counterattacks were similarly savaged by French firepower. The position - hills between a river French took the fortification and a forest - with extensive known as the Great Redoubt field fortifications in the centre of the Russian RUSSIAN Desperate for a decisive victory, Napoleon line but, with the way open CASE to crush the Russian launched a series of army, Napoleon frontal attacks on the refused to commit his Russian line. His 30.000-strong reserve. infantry columns suffered appalling allowing Kutuzov to stage a withdrawal of casualties against his surviving forces. massed cannon, but the



THE RETREAT FROM MOSCOW

#### Berezina River



26-29 November 1812 FORCES French: 85.000: Russians: 65.000 CASUALTIES French: 50,000 killed or captured; Russians: 10,000 killed or

On 19 October 1812, having failed to make the Russians accept defeat, Napoleon ordered his army to retreat from Moscow. Short of food and fodder, tens of thousands of soldiers were left dead by the roadside. On 23 November the French arrived at the Berezina river to find a Russian army on the far bank and the only bridge destroyed. They were trapped between the icy raging torrent and another Russian army following at their heels. Rediscovering their ingenuity, the

#### ICY CROSSING

After the retreat from Moscow and the crossing of the Berezina river, shown here, Napoleon had fewer than 10,000 fit men. "Crowds of poor wretches who were trying to cross the bridge were seen to fall into the stream and be sucked under the masses of ice."

Louis Constant, Napoleon's valet, on the crossing of the Berezina, 1812

French set about building two wooden bridges. About 400 French engineers worked chest-deep in the icy river; many died of exposure or were swept away. Between 26 and 29 November

some 35,000 soldiers crossed the bridges while desperate actions were fought on both sides of the river to defend the bridgeheads. The French engineers then destroyed the bridges.



"The roads were like glass. The horses fell down and could not get up. Our worn-out soldiers no longer had strength to their arms. The barrels of their muskets were so cold that they stuck to their hands... The men fell frozen stiff all along the road... One must have seen these horrors in order to believe them!"

#### WITNESS TO WAR I.-R. COIGNET

A French captain, Jean-Roche Coignet, describes the retreat from Moscow, when temperatures dropped to -30°C (-22°F). More than half a million men died in Napoleon's Russian campaign.

NAPOLEON VERSUS ALLIES

#### Leipzig



By the city of Leinzig Saxony Germany

FORCES French: 195,000; Allies: 365,000 CASHAITIES French: 70,000; killed, wounded, or captured; Allies: 54,000 killed or wounded

Napoleon's Russian disaster encourage Prussia, Sweden, and Austria to ally against him in 1813. Although France had rebuilt its armies with fresh conscripts, they were now thorough outnumbered. After an indecisive campaign in Germany, Napoleon took up a defensive position on the plain around Leipzig on 14 October. The Austrian army was the first to attack him on 16 October: by 18 October the Prussians, Russians, and Swedes had also arrived. Suffering heavy casualties, Napoleon embarked on a phased withdrawal across the single bridge over the Elster river. On the morning of the 19th, French engineers blew up the bridge, leaving 15,000 troops on the wrong side. Some drowned attempting to cross the river; most were taken prisoner.

#### ALLIED VICTORY

France

LOCATION

The battle of Leipzig, also known as the battle of the Nations, was the largest battle fought in Europe before 1914.

NAPOLEON VERSUS ALLIES

The Defence of



The steel cuirass of a French heavy cavalryman (a cuirassier) could stop musket balls.

general Gebhard von

29 January-31 March FORCES French: 110,000;

CASUALTIES Eastern France French: 30,000

By 1814 France faced almost certain defeat. Napoleon attempted to repeat the past success of his levée en masse (mass conscription), but only 110,000 war-weary French responded to the

call, many of them as young as 16. His enemies invaded France along three axes: the Swedish army advanced from Belgium, another under the Prussian

Blücher marched into Lorraine, and the largest force, headed by the Austrian general Karl Philipp Schwarzenberg, entered

to defeat the invaders by engaging sections of their forces in turn. It is widely agreed that he never displayed his talents more brilliantly than in this impossible situation. Between 29 January and 18 February he scored a series of limited victories over Blücher and Schwarzenberg. The

Allies offered a compromise peace, but Napoleon insisted on fighting to the end. Then, during March, the Allies' numerical strength began to tell. Blücher defeated

Napoleon at Laon on the 9th and Schwarzenberg beat him at Arcis-sur-Aube on the 20th. In a last gamble, Napoleon manoeuvred to the east of the Allies, hoping to force them away from Paris. But the Allies simply ignored him and advanced to the French capital, which surrendered on 30 March. Napoleon still wanted to fight on, but his marshals refused. On 6 April the emperor abdicated, retiring to the Mediterranean island of Elba. The monarchy was restored in France in the person of Louis XVIII.

#### FIGHTING ON

Napoleon leads his staff in the defence of France, 1814. His defeat was due to the Allies' superior numbers and the exhaustion of the French people.





# NAPOLEON'S FINAL DEFEAT

IN 1815 NAPOLEON LEFT Elba and returned to France, landing at Cannes with an army of 1,100 men and four cannon. Resentment at the country's restored monarchy led all the troops sent by King Louis XVIII to oppose Napoleon to join him instead, and he entered Paris on 20 March without a shot fired. The Allies - chiefly Britain, Austria, Prussia, and Russia -

declared the former emperor an outlaw and prepared to repeat the invasion of 1814. Assembling an army of loyal veterans and young volunteers, Napoleon gambled on an offensive against British and Prussian forces in Belgium before the Austrians or Russians could arrive. The end to the "Hundred Days" of his last bid for power was brief, however: three battles in three days.

THE HUNDRED DAYS

Ligny



70,000-80,000 CASHAITIES Prussians 16.000 killed or wounded: French: 12,000 southern Belgium killed or wounded

DATE 16 June 1815

FORCES Prussians

84 000: French:

Advancing from Paris unobserved by the Allies, on 15 June Napoleon crossed the Belgian border and occupied Charleroi. In front of him were two Allied armies: the Prussians, led by Blücher, and a British. German, Belgian, and Dutch force under Wellington, Together they outmanned the French two to one, but Napoleon intended to take them on one at a time. On 16 June he advanced to attack Blücher with his main force, while sending Marshal Ney to take Quatre-Bras between the two enemy armies. Blücher drew up

### ORDERING THE TROOPS

Following Blücher's unhorsing at Ligny, his chief of staff, August von Gneisenau, (centre) took over operations

16 June 1815

and arrived at Ligny late in the his forces along ridges on each side of the village of Ligny. At 2.30pm the day from an unexpected direction, French attacked. Napoleon wanted merely panicking the French soldiers to envelop the Prussians, but his plan rested on the arrival of the Count d'Erlon's corps. D'Erlon, however, received counter-orders from Nev (see below),

Napoleon threw forward his Imperial Guard to break the battered Prussian line. Blücher was unhorsed leading a cavalry countercharge and the Prussians withdrew under cover of darkness. Although defeated, they had not been crushed - a failing that was to rebound on Napoleon at Waterloo



# THE HUNDRED DAYS Ouatre-Bras



LOCATION Northwest of

FORCES British and Dutch 32 000: French: 24 000 CASUALTIES British and Dutch: 5.400 killed or wounded; French: 4,400

BRITISH BAKER RIFLE, c.1810

Napoleon was determined to take the crossroads at Quatre-Bras because he saw it as a major means by which the armies of Blücher and Wellington could join up - French control would recognized the crossroads' strategic

prevent the British-led force coming to the Prussians' assistance. However, the Prince of Orange, commanding one of Wellington's corps, had

> importance. On the morning of 16 June, the prince's 8,000 Dutch troops were holding Quatre- Bras when Marshal Ney approached with a force of 24,000. The disaster for Napoleon was Nev's delay in attacking: he waited until 2pm before delivering a determined assault, by which time Wellington was nearing with reinforcements. Ney had hoped for support from 20,000 men under the Count

### SMOKE OF BATTLE

In the gunpowder era, battlefields including the one at Quatre-Bras - were partially obscured by smoke as soon as fire was opened.

### INFANTRY ARMS

The Baker rifle was the weapon of British rifle regiments during the Napoleonic wars. Many of Wellington's soldiers and officers in 1815 were veterans of the Peninsular War.

SWORD BAYONET

d'Erlon, but Napoleon instead ordered d'Erlon's corps to Ligny. Ney furiously countermanded, with the result that the count marched back and forth for most of the day between the two battles. By the evening Wellington had over 30,000 men at Ouatre-Bras and Ney's increasingly frantic assaults came to nothing. At nightfall the crossroads remained firmly in British hands. The following morning, in the face of a strangely inactive enemy, Wellington disengaged, withdrawing north towards Brussels. Blücher also withdrew to the north, attempting to keep in touch with his allies. Napoleon joined Ney with the majority of his forces and pursued Wellington, while tasking Marshal Emmanuel de Grouchy with shadowing Blücher and stopping him joining up with Wellington's army.

### THE HUNDRED DAYS

# Waterloo

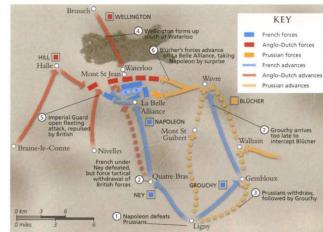


LOCATION Outside Waterloo village south of Brussels French: 74,000 CASUALTIES Anglo-Dutch: 15,000, Prussians: 7,000; French: 25,000

**DATE 18 June 1815** 

Anglo-Dutch: 67,000.

Napoleon tracked the Anglo-Dutch army to Mont St Jean, just south of the village of Waterloo. It was here that Wellington decided to fight. He took up a defensive position along a ridge, with most of his forces on the reverse slope for protection against artillery. He also manned two strongpoints, the chateau of Hougomont on the right and the farm of La Have Sainte in the centre. The French were in position to attack at dawn but, after heavy rain the day before, waited for the ground to dry before taking the offensive. Napoleon's heavy guns opened up shortly after noon - Wellington's infantry spent much of the battle lying down to avoid cannon fire. After an hour of this barrage four columns of French infantry marched against Wellington's centre, pressing forward through shattering artillery fire, only to be stopped by volleys from muskets and finally hurled back by a cavalry charge. By then the Prussian army - aided by Napoleon's delay in opening the attack - had appeared on the French



BRITISH OFFICER'S KIT The uniform of a Waterloo-era officer in the Royal Fusiliers.

right wing. Blücher had left a rearguard to cope with Marshal de Grouchy and marched most of his army across to join the battle. Marshal Nev, meanwhile, led French cavalry in a series of charges against the British infantry squares that were repulsed with heavy losses. The French almost turned the battle with the capture of La Have Sainte, but when Nev begged for reserves to exploit this advantage, Napoleon,



# **DUKE OF WELLINGTON**

Irish-born Arthur Welleslev was a practical tactician whose conduct in the Peninsular campaign made him a British national hero. He attributed his success always to being "on the spot" and "seeing and doing everything for myself" Although he never took unnecessary risks, he was a visible presence in the British lines hroughout the battle of Waterloo.



heavily engaged with the Prussians, told him there were none. In a last gamble, at about 7pm, Napoleon ordered his Imperial Guard to march upon Wellington's infantry, only to receive volley after volley of musket fire before which the Guard wavered and then broke. After that it was a rout, the French fleeing with Blücher's cavalry in pursuit. It had been, as Wellington later said, "the nearest run thing you ever saw in your life"



DATE 12-15 September 1814

US 10.000 defenders

British: 5,000 troops

IN THE 50 YEARS following the American War of Independence, the old colonial masters were banished from everywhere in the Americas bar Canada and the Caribbean. Thereafter, struggles over internal control and disputes with neighbours led to conflicts right across the new American countries.

# THE AMERICAS VERSUS EUROPE

symbol was thought Inspired by both the North American to protect the wearer. and the French revolutions, the emerging nations of Central and South America took advantage of Spain and Portugal's weakening military might to win their independence. After war against the British in 1812, the US cemented its nationhood, confidently asserting in the Monroe Doctrine its right to intervene

wherever it chose. The US seized half of Mexico, drove the Spanish out of Cuba and cleared the American Indians from productive land to become the "Colossus of the North". Despite the loss of most of their colonies, European powers continued to intervene

in the Americas. but they would be increasingly excluded by the US, which saw it as its 'manifest destiny' to dominate the New World.

# CAPITAL BURNS

In 1814 Washington DC was taken by British forces under Major General Ross. Many buildings, including the White House, were set alight



# CIVIL WAR AND REVOLUTION

With the exception of Haiti, where the French were overthrown following a slave revolt in 1791, the revolutions of independence in the Americas were won by the countries' elites as the European powers lost their

major colonies. This did not always solve questions of internal control, however, as by far the largest conflict - the American Civil War showed. While the US united and gained in power, Latin America to the south remained weak and divided, no more so than in Mexico,

where the overthrow of President Porfirio Díaz in 1911 initiated a bloody, decade-long revolution. The US played a major role in the conflict, supporting the metropolitan leaders against the rural guerrillas, and the merchant classes once more won through.

MEXICAN REVOLUTIONARIES Bristling with bullets, northern guerrilla leader Francisco "Pancho" Villa (middle) poses with his men for the camera.





# AMERICA FIGHTS BRITAIN

IN 1812, PRESIDENT MADISON declared war in response to Britain's high-handed patrolling of the seas, a move that played well with US expansionists who sought the annexation of Canada. Initially the Americans made progress, but the end of the Napoleonic Wars in Europe

freed up British reinforcements who blockaded the coast and burnt down public buildings in Washington DC. With neither side able to force a victory, the peace treaty of 1814 restored the pre-war status quo and the US forever relinquished its designs on Canada.

# AMERICAN-BRITISH WAR

# Lake Erie

ATLANTIC



US: 9 ships; Britain: 6 warships CASUALTIES US: 27 dead, 96 wounded; British: 40

Lake Erie is bordered by Ohio and Ontario dead 94 wounded

Control of Lake Erie was key to keeping supply lines to the UScontrolled Northwest Territory open. For nine months, shipwrights in Erie built the ships that the US was to use in the battle for the lake, a remarkable feat of logistics given the town's mere 500 inhabitants, Commodore Oliver Perry gathered together his crews, many of them novice sailors, and readied them for action. They engaged the British fleet, under the command of Captain Robert Barclay, near Put-in-Bay, Ohio. After an initial

reverse that saw his flagship Lawrence reduced to a defenceless wreck, Perry iumped onto her sister ship Niagara and sailed directly into the British line, firing broadsides. This bold move proved decisive and Barclay was forced to surrender. Perry's triumphant report to General Harrison included the famous lines 'We have met the enemy and they

# HIMPING SHIP

Seen here is Perry's dramatic transfer to the Niagara during the thick of the fighting

forced to abandon Detroit.

are ours."The victory ensured US

control over Lake Erie and opened

important supply lines. It was a major

reverse to the British who were then



Maryland

AMERICAN-BRITISH WAR

Baltimore

CASUALTIES Unknown, hu not heavy on By autumn 1814, the lack of progress

FORCES

was taking its toll on both sides. With Canada still unconquered, American public opinion was turning against the war. Meanwhile the British naval blockade was taking effect, especially in New England where there was talk of negotiating a separate peace. The British attempted to inflict a decisive blow on American morale by targeting pro-war Baltimore. On 12 September, 3,000 British troops landed at North Point and marched on the city. Next day, British warships bombarded Fort McHenry. But the Fort's defenders, under Major George Armistead, held out. Having failed to force a surrender, the British sailed back to North Point to pick up their now retreating troops. Stalemate had been reached, with both sides now ready for peace. The defence of Fort McHenry inspired Francis Scott Key's The Star Spangled Banner, in which he mentions the "rockets' red glare", reference to the new Congreve ockets that were used by the British.

# AMERICAN-BRITISH WAR New Orleans

# LOCATION Mouth of

8 January 1815 British: 10,000 troops; US: 5-7,000 troops CASUALTIES

British: 700 killed

1.400 wounded: US:

8 killed, 13 wounded

the Mississinni New Orleans

Weeks after the war officially ended with the signing of the Treaty of Ghent in Belgium, the news was still making its way across the Atlantic. Thinking he was still at war, British Admiral Sir Alexander Cochrane was keen to push on and capture New Orleans from the Americans, fitting out a flotilla of more than 50 ships to transport the troops from Jamaica. General Andrew Jackson, "Old



Hickory" to his men, had arrived in late autumn 1814 to defend the city. In December, advance British troops had penetrated to within a day's march of the city, where they awaited reinforcements. Jackson used this time well, retreating 5km (3 miles) to the Rodriguez Canal where he erected fortified ramparts protected on the right by the Mississippi river and on the left by an impassable swamp. The fresh troops finally arrived during the first week of January and assembled under the command of Sir Edward Pakenham, confident that they could breach Jackson's seemingly thin defensive line.

Pakenham decided to attack at dawn to take advantage of early morning fog, but his forces on the west bank were delayed and the main columns had to advance across open fields with no cover. To make matters worse, they forgot their ladders, although many

VICTORY DRUM This US army drum of 1812 depicts an

eagle battling a lion, a reference to the American victory

### CHALMETTE BATTLEFIELD

An old cannon still points at the site in New Orleans where the British were gunned down in droves.

would not make it as far as the ramparts anyway. The British were sitting ducks, falling by the score as they marched, and within half an hour Pakenham and both of his senior generals lay dead. The British hurriedly withdrew. The victory came too late to affect the war, but future president Jackson was a hero and American national pride had been restored.



# FAME AND POWER

Andrew Jackson (on the right) senses victory at New Orleans. His leadership in the battle won him fame and the presidency.



# FIGHTING AMERICAN INDIANS

IN THE LATE 18TH AND EARLY 19th centuries, the eastern United States were systematically cleared of their aboriginal peoples. It was not until after the Civil War, however, that attention turned to the Plains Indians and the conflicts that so engaged Hollywood began. These were essentially guerrilla wars in which Indian horsemen used hit-and-run tactics, at first

shooting arrows, later acquiring rifles. The conquest of the American Indian was characterized throughout by broken government promises and mass deportations to lands unwanted by the settlers. The Indians resisted, but they could not hold back the growing tide of whites who were pouring into the West, especially after the gold rush began in earnest in 1849.

THE INDIAN WARS

# Tippecanoe



7 November 1811 FORCES Expeditionary force 1,000; Shawnee: 1,000

About 200 killed on

CASUALTIES

present-day Lafavette, Indiana

In 1811 the governor of the Indiana Territory, Major General William Henry Harrison, was determined to clear the Northwest for settlers. Taking advantage of the absence of Tecumseh, leader of the Shawnee nation, who was away organizing resistance to white encroachment on Indian lands, Harrison marched up the Wabash river, camping near the Shawnee settlement of Prophetstown. The settlement had been left under the protection of Tecumseh's brother Laulewasikau, known as "the Prophet". Lacking his brother's talent for military strategy, the Prophet rashly attacked Harrison's camp. The warriors were

easily repelled by Harrison's troops, who proceeded to attack and burn the Shawnee village. His reputation as a mystic in tatters, Laulewasikau fled to Canada - where a year later the Shawnee would fight alongside British troops in the war against the US - hotly pursued once more by Harrison. In truth Tippecanoe was

fairly inconclusive, but Harrison claimed it as a great victory, using it to further his career. Thirty years later he became the ninth US president.

### FOREST FIGHTING

Harrison, on the left, is seen ordering his troops to fire. The battle was probably a lot less orderly than shown here.



THE INDIAN WARS

# Second Seminole War



DATE 1835-36

FORCES Seminole: 4,000 remaining when they surrendered: IIS: unknown

CASUALTIES US troops: 2.000: Seminoles: several

The Indian Removal Act of 1830 was used by the US government to force the remaining eastern Indians west of the Mississippi river. In Florida the Seminole nation resisted. The US had wrested control of Florida from the Spanish in the First Seminole War, but the Seminoles had no intention of leaving. Led by the wily Osceola, the Seminoles began a bloody guerrilla resistance in what was to prove the ongest of the Indian wars. Only after Osceola had been duplicitously taken nostage during peace talks were the Seminoles finally forced west.

# THE INDIAN WARS

# The Fetterman Fight



21 December 1866 FORCES Lakota Sioux. and Arapaho: 1,000; US cavalry: 80

CASUALTIES

killed

US cavalry: all 80

Just outside Fort Kearny, Wyoming

Following the gold rush of 1849, increasing numbers of prospectors were travelling through Wyoming to the gold fields in Montana. In

response, the government constructed started at around noon and was all



the Bozeman Trail, a road protected by a series of forts that cut straight through traditional Sioux hunting grounds in the Bighorn Mountains Incensed, Lakota Sioux leader Red Cloud organized an alliance of Plains Indians and began a campaign of hitand-run raids on the new forts. Their most notable success occurred when a column led by Captain William J Fetterman, sent to rescue a besieged wagon train, was ambushed by over 1,000 warriors, including a young Crazy Horse. Disobeying orders, Fetterman followed a decoy over Lodge Trail Ridge, where the Indians were lying in wait. The shooting

> over in half an hour. The bodies were found later that same day, stripped and mutilated. By 1868 Red Cloud had secured a peace treaty that would be honoured by the government for precisely six years.

# TO THE LAST MAN

Fetterman stares death in the face as Red Cloud's warriors, some armed with guns, encircle

# 1822-1909 RED CLOUD

Makhpiya-Luta (Red Cloud) was a Sioux chief who inflicted several notable defeats on the United States. He established himself in wars against the Pawnee and Crow nations before orchestrating the successful resistance to the Bozeman Trail. Where others, including his son, refused to accept any accommodation with the white man, Red Cloud laid down his arms and kept his pledge of peace. Although he continued to



THE INDIAN WARS Red River War



Oklahoma and Texas

DATE 1874-75 FORCES US troops: 3,000; Cheyenne, Comanche, Kiowa, Kataka: several thousand

CACHAITIES A few hundred dead on each side

In the 1870s white hunters were hunting the buffalo of the Southern Plains to extinction. Subsistence on meagre reservation rations prompted talk of war among the previously peaceful Indians and on 27 June 1874 the Comanche chief Quanah Parker led 300 braves in an attack on the hunters at Adobe Walls. The attack failed, but the US army used it as an excuse to clear the area for white settlement. There followed as many as 20 pitched battles against Indians well equipped with ex-Civil War rifles. The turning point came with the destruction of five villages in Palo Duro Canyon on 28 September, where over 1,000 horses were killed and the winter provisions were destroyed. The war ended in June 1875, when a halfstarved Parker surrendered. Both ndians and buffalo would soon disappear from the Southern Plains.

THE INDIAN WARS

# Little Bighorn



LOCATION The Little Bighorn river, Montana

Montana

discovered in their traditional land

in the Columbia Plateau. In 1863

their reservation was reduced to a

and Indians led Nez Percé chief

in Canada and in 1877 he took a

small band of followers on an epic

to a stalemate, but Joseph's weary

band gave up when they realized that

more government troops were on the

way. Although Joseph had won the

respect of settlers, his people were

far from their ancestral lands.

nevertheless banished to Oklahoma,

In defiance of Red Cloud's treaty, gold miners continued to settle in the sacred hunting grounds of the Black Hills. Outraged, the Sioux and Chevenne fought back under the great warrior Sitting Bull, and troops were sent in when they refused to return to the reservations. General Alfred Terry took the main body of

25 June 1876

FORCES US cavalry:

600; Cheyenne and

US cavalry: all 600

Dakota (Eastern

Sinuxl: 600

CASUALTIES

killed

men up the Yellowstone river, while Lt-Col George Custer and the 7th Cavalry were to cross the Little Bighorn river and surround the enemy. Spotting Sioux encampment, Custer ignored orders to wait and attacked. He had not counted on the rough terrain. however, and his troops lost all coordination. Major Charles Reno attacked first but was soon forced into a retreat. The Sioux then charged towards Custer's men, while a separate force led by Crazy Horse swooped in. Custer was trapped into his Last Stand. He ordered his men to shoot the horses and stack them up to form a wall, but it provided little protection and in less than an hour they were all dead. The Sioux victory was shortlived, however, as a buildup of troops forced Sitting Bull to surrender in 1881.

The soldiers were divided, one party charging right into the camp. After driving these soldiers across the river, the Sioux charged [Custer's] soldiers below, and drove them into confusion: these soldiers became foolish. many throwing away their guns and raising their hands. wooden saying, 'Sioux, pity us; take us prisoners."

### WITNESS TO WAR LAKOTA CHIEF RED HORSE

Chief Red Horse's account of Little Bighorn was recorded in pictographs in 1881. His lescription of the soldiers as 'foolish" reflects the Sioux's martial values. By contrast, he was very impressed by Custer's bravery.

between Indians armed with clubs

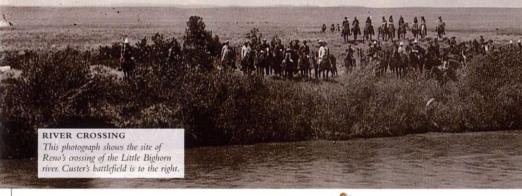
women, and children effectively

and knives and soldiers with machine guns. The resultant massacre of men.

concluded the conquest of the North

American Indian. In 1973, however,

Wounded Knee was occupied by 200



Bow made of THE INDIAN WARS Nez Percé War DATE June-December 1877 FORCES Nez Percé warriors: 250; carried abou US troops: 5 000 20 arrows in CASUALTIES Nez Percé: (including women and children): 239; US Idaho, Oregon, and

The Nez Percé ("Pierced Nose" in French after their penchant for nose pendants) led a peaceful co-existence with the whites at first, until gold was quarter of its size to permit mining An escalation of raids by both whites Joseph to decide that their future lay five-month trek north, pursued by the troops of General O. O. Howard. The made of Nez Percé were finally encircled in the Bear Paw Mountains, just 65km (40 miles) from the border. After a BOY'S BOW five-day battle both sides had fought

Nez Percé boys were expected to develop shooting

skills from a young age and targetpractised on small game such as rabb

# THE INDIAN WARS Wounded Knee



SADDLE

Though Sioux

a saddle and stirrups

gave better stability. This "pad

saddle" is stuffed with deer hair.

29 December 1890 FORCES Sioux: several hundred: US cavalry: unknown CASUALTIES Sioux:

c.150 killed, 30 Knee Creek, South wounded: US cavalry

By the late 1880s the Sioux reservation had shrunk so much that the population was no longer able to feed itself. Reaching out for salvation. the half-starved Sioux turned to mysticism and the rites of the "Ghost Dance", designed to banish the white man from the earth. The government was sufficiently alarmed by this to send in the troops and arrest the leaders. While under arrest, Chief Sitting Bull was killed, prompting a group of several hundred Sioux led by the dying Chief Big Foot to leave the reservation. They surrendered quietly, however, to the 7th Cavalry on the night of 28 December. The following morning a scuffle broke out while the Indians were being disarmed. A trooper fell to the ground and the soldiers moved in. It was a "battle"

# MASSACRE REMEMBERED

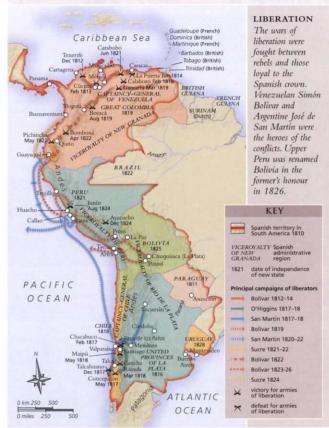
A memorial records the Wounded Knee massacre. The name became a byword for he wrongs inflicted on American Indian.

members of the American Indian Movement, A three-month siege

ensued before they surrendered

# WAR IN SOUTH **AMERICA**

THE 19TH CENTURY BEGAN WITH Spain in possession of most of South America. Less than 30 years later, after a series of wars of liberation, the Spanish had been completely driven out by the continent's emerging nations. Sadly, the newly independent countries betraved Simón Bolívar's dream of South American unity and soon began to turn on each other in an often bloody struggle for territory and power.



WAR OF CHILEAN INDEPENDENCE

# Chacabuco



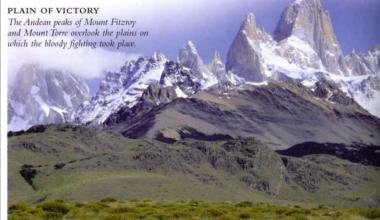
Just north of Santiago, Chile DATE 12 February 1817 FORCES Rebels: 3.000: Royalists: 1,500 CASUALTIES Rebels: 12 dead 120 injured: Royalists: 500 dead, 600 captured

After the declaration of Argentine independence in 1816, José de San Martin, the leader of the independence movement in the south, turned his attention to the liberation of Chile. In January 1817 San Martín and Bernardo O'Higgins, the Chilean liberation leader, led a force of 5,000 troops on a gruelling 20-day trek across the Andes, during which about 2,000 men succumbed to the cold and high altitude. Despite these heavy losses, San Martín was able to surprise the royalists, whose Spanish general Rafael Maroto could muster only 1,500 men to confront the advancing army. By midday on 11 February Maroto's forces had come together at Chacabuco, just north of Santiago, and San Martín resolved to attack at dawn the next day. Initially



selfless soldier of high personal integrity.

the Spanish infantry repelled O'Higgins' forces, but a grenadier charge led by San Martín against the Spanish cavalry gave O'Higgins time to regroup and attack the Spanish flank. The outnumbered royalists were routed and the victorious rebel forces were welcomed into Santiago as liberators. Victory enabled San Martín to join up with Admiral Cochrane at the coast and the liberation of Chile had begun. There would be reverses to come, including a heavy defeat at Cancha-Rayada, but after the final victory at Maipú, Chile's freedom was assured, and Bernardo O'Higgins became the country's first independent ruler.



# Boyacá



7 August 1819 FORCES CASHALTIES

Outskirts of Bogotá, Colombia

In July 1819, the struggle for control of New Granada (present-day Colombia and Venezuela) was in full swing. The rebel army, under the leadership of Generals Bolívar and de Paula Santander, defeated the Spanish

### BOYACÁ SURRENDER

The royalist army surrender to Bolívar's rebels after Boyacá. The bridge (bottom left) was a key objective in the battle.

forces in preliminary skirmishes at Gámeza on 12 July and the Vargas Tunja on 5 August. The final battle days later. Santander cut off the Spanish advance force near a bridge over the Boyacá river as Bolívar's men simultaneously attacked the bulk of the Spanish troops a kilometre away. the veteran British Legion launched a frontal assault and repulsed the Spanish cavalry. The result was a decisive victory for the rebels, with about 1,800 prisoners taken, including the Spanish commander. Three days where he was welcomed as the liberator of New Granada. He set up central Andes, there to unite with San Martin's southern army.

# FOUNDATION OF COLOMBIA

DATE 24 June 1821

including British and

Rebels: 6.500:

Irish volunteers:

Royalists: 5,000

on both sides

FORCES

# Carabobo



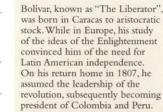
CASHAITIES Unknown but heavy

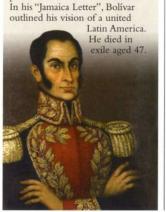
Caracas, modern-day Venezuela

Under instructions from the new liberal government in Spain, General Pablo Morillo signed an armistice with Bolívar in November 1820. Bolívar, however, broke the terms by attacking the royalist garrison at Lake Maracaibo, and the two sides confronted each other on the plains of Carabobo. The royalists, under the command of General Miguel de la Torre, were demoralized and depleted by desertion. Bolívar sent a column of llaneros (plainsmen) and British volunteers to strike the enemy from the right, while the cavalry attacked the centre. There were heavy losses on both sides, including many rebel officers, but de la Torre's men were crushed. Bolívar declared that the victory marked the birth of the republic of Colombia.

# 1783-1830

# SIMÓN BOLÍVAR





# WAR OF PERUVIAN INDEPENDENCE

# Avacucho



LOCATION The high plateau near Avacucho, Peru

Rebels: 6,000: Royalists: 9.000 CASUALTIES Royalists: 2,000 killed With New Granada to the north

DATE 9 December 1824

FORCES

and Chile to the south under rebel control, Peru was the final enclave of Spanish rule in South America. Bolívar's brilliant Venezuelan lieutenant Antonio José de la Sucre led an army gathered together from all over South America against a numerically superior Spanish force that had ten times as many artillery pieces as the rebels. Against these odds, Sucre attacked the Spanish on a plateau near Ayacucho, Peru. He

led by Colombian José Maria Córdoba, and within a short time thousands of rovalists lav dead. The viceroy and his generals were taken prisoner, and the terms of surrender stipulated that all Spanish forces be withdrawn from Peru and Charcas (Bolivia). The last of the Spanish troops sailed from Lima in January 1826, thus ending Spain's presence in South America and confirming the independence of the new republics.

opened with a daring cavalry charge

# MEMORIAL A dramatic

monument to the battle of Ayacucho rises int the sky over La Quinua, Peru.

# BATTLE OF CASEROS

# Caseros

of Buenos Aires



3 February 1852 FORCES Rosas: c.25,000; Coalition: c.25.000

CASUALTIES Rosas: 1,400 dead, 7,000 captured; Coalition: heah 008

Juan Manuel de Rosas, a bluff gaucho (cattle rancher) from Buenos Aires province, seized power in Argentina in 1835. His 17-year rule was characterized by an extreme cult of personality - his portrait adorned every public place and church. Opposition was crushed through a network of spies and secret police (the Mazorca). Rosas's autocratic manner aroused powerful opposition and in 1852 he was

confronted by a coalition force of Argentinian,

Brazilian, and Uruguayan troops under the command of General Justo losé de Urquiza, a former friend and confidant of the dictator. The ensuing battle was the largest fought in the Americas before the American Civil War. Urquiza attacked first, leading the cavalry charge himself and blowing open the right flank. After that there was a prolonged period of hand-to-hand fighting, but the result was already beyond doubt. Many of Rosas's troops had surrendered before the battle had even begun and the rest had little stomach for the fight. Rosas himself fled, along with most of his cavalry, and found sanctuary in England. Urquiza's victory led to the adoption of a US-style constitution. a move that, ironically, would have been impossible before Rosas had united the country.

### THE RED CULT

Soldiers of Rosas's federation are seen here in their distinctive red uniforms. All men were obliged to wear red in Rosas's honour.



PARAGUAYAN WAR

Paraguayan War

DATE 1 May 1865-

FORCES Paraguayans:

50,000; Argentinians,

Uruguayans: 26,000

Paraguayans: 300,000

(with civilians) killed

1 March 1870

Brazilians, and

CASUALTIES

Paraguay

This was the bloodiest conflict in Latin American history. Paraguayan dictator Francisco López, ambitious to expand his rule, built up the largest army in South America and invaded Argentina and Brazil in 1865. In response, Argentina allied itself with Brazil and Uruguay and declared war

on Paraguay. Paraguayan troops found

themselves outnumbered ten to one

suffered heavy losses in a series of fierce battles, including an early victory to Paraguay at Curupayti, and the war dragged on. Following the appointment of the Brazilian Marques le Caxias as commander-in-chief in 1868, Paraguayan defences were finally breached and the capital, Asunción, was taken. López himself was killed on 1 March 1870. For Paraguay, a small nation of half a million people, this was a war of national suicide. Of the perhaps 200,000 people left alive, fewer than 30,000 were men. In addition, large chunks of territory were lost to Argentina and Brazil.

and were soon driven back. Both sides

### BLOODY CURUPAYTI

Argentinian troops are here seen taking the offensive at Curupayti. Troops carry ladders to storm Paraguayan earthwork defences.





# INDEPENDENCE IN NEW GRANADA

Rebels: 3,000; Royalists: 3,000 Royalists: 100 dead. 1,800 captured

river on 25 July, before capturing took place just outside Bogotá two Bolívar attacked the Spanish left while later Bolívar marched into Bogotá, a provisional government before pushing on into Ecuador and the

# **MEXICO AT WAR**

WITH THE EXCEPTION OF ONE 35-year period of peaceful rule, known as the porfiriato, the century following independence in Mexico was marred by constant conflict. The central state was weak and the population deeply divided between Catholic conservatives and anti-clerical liberals. These divisions, culminating in the ten-year-long revolution, led to endemic

civil war. Mexico's problems were exacerbated by constant foreign intervention, including a catastrophic war with the United States that resulted in the loss of the northern states, and invasion by the French. The classic Mexican style of combat, used in the independence struggle and in the revolution a century later, was guerrilla warfare on horseback.

TEXAN INDEPENDENCE

### Alamo



DATE 23 February-FORCES Mexicans: 2,000-6,000; Texan volunteers: 184

"It is very true I threw up my cap for liberty

with great ardour, and perfect sincerity, but

soon found the folly of it. A hundred years to

come my people will not be fit for liberty."

Antonio López de Santa Anna, disillusioned with his

countrymen after his capture by Texans, 1836

CASUALTIES Mexicans 1.000 killed or San Antonio, Texas wounded: Texan volunteers: 184 killed

By 1830 about 30,000 US migrants had settled in the Mexican state of Texas. Seeing this as a threat to its sovereignty, the Mexican government closed the border and imposed punitive restrictions on Texas, but it was only with the new constitution of 1836, which removed the state's remaining rights, that a revolt was provoked and Texas declared itself an independent republic, sparking the Texas War of Independence. A detachment of Texas volunteers drove a Mexican force out



of San Antonio and occupied the ruined chapel of the Mission San Antonio de Valero, named the Alamo by Spanish troops after the grove of cottonwood trees in which it stood. Texan leaders, including Sam Houston, urged them to withdraw from their exposed position, but they refused and a Mexican army, under the leadership of President Santa Anna

# BREAKTHROUGH

This engraving depicts the ramatic moment when the Mexicans breached the Alamo's defences.

himself, crossed the Rio Grande river and laid siege to the chapel. The defenders. with frontier legends lames Bowie and Davy Crockett in their number, held out for 13 days until the Mexicans finally breached the outer

walls and overwhelmed them by sheer weight of numbers. Santa Anna ordered that no prisoners were to be taken, and no man was spared, with only a handful of women and children emerging alive. This setback was reversed a month later when Houston defeated Santa Anna at San Jacinto, assuring the independence of the "yanqui" settlers, although Mexico would not recognize this reality until Texas was annexed by the United States in 1845. For Texans, the Alamo and its defenders became symbols of heroic resistance.

# SANTA ANNA

Antonio López de Santa Anna was an ambitious general who rose to prominence after supporting the campaigns of two presidents in the newly independent Mexico - only to help overthrow them both. Driven from the presidency after defeat in Texas, he fought the French at Veracruz two years later, losing a leg but regaining power. He was forced into exile when Mexico was defeated by the USA in 1847. He returned home in 1874 and died two years later, aged 82.



REMEMBER THE ALAMO

flag is hoisted nearby.

The Alamo has been restored and is

preserved as an historic site. The Texan

East coast of Mexico

FORCES At Puebla: Mexicans: 2,000-4.000 French: 6 000 CASUALTIES At Puebla: rench: 1 000 killed:

DATE January 1862-March 1867

Mexicans: no reliable

By 1860 Mexico was mired in a civil war between conservatives and liberals. The treasury was virtually bankrupt and liberal president Benito Juárez suspended payments on foreign debts, prompting Britain, Spain, and France to intervene to protect their investments. By January 1862 all three powers had landed troops at Veracruz, but the British and Spanish withdrew when it became clear that Napoleon III intended to conquer the whole country. French progress towards the capital was blocked by the fortified city of Puebla, where local forces confronted the invaders on 5 May. The French unwisely launched a frontal assault on well-defended positions. The Mexicans, commanded by General Ignacio Zaragoza, drove the attackers back in a famous victory still celebrated as a national holiday. Nevertheless, Puebla was taken the following March with 30,000 French reinforcements, and the Habsburg Archduke Maximilian was crowned emperor of Mexico. A guerrilla war ensued until French troops withdrew in March 1867 and Juárez retook Mexico City. The hapless Maximilian was captured and executed.

### reluctant to push further south. With the war stagnating, Polk ordered General Winfield Scott to take an army by sea and capture the key port of Veracruz. The port was taken easily and, after important victories over Santa Anna at Cerro Gordo and Chapaltepec, Scott's forces marched on to Mexico City, which fell on 14 September 1847. The price of defeat was heavy. Santa Anna was exiled and, under the peace treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, Mexico lost about half its territory, from Texas to California. Ever since, the war has been a sore

Polk had the war he sought.

California and New Mexico were

occupied with little resistance, but US commander Zachary Taylor seemed

point in Mexican history, as its name in the respective countries illustrates: in the United States it is known neutrally as the "Mexican-American California. When they were snubbed. War" while, tellingly, in Mexico it is still called the "War of the North American Invasion"

"The fulfilment of our manifest destiny is to overspread the continent allotted by Providence."

> John L. O'Sullivan, the United States Magazine and Democratic Review, 1845

# COLT REVOLVER

The iconic Wild West weapon, the revolver, was patented in 1835 by Samuel Colt and first used a year later during the Texas revolt. It is named after its revolving cylinder. which enabled the firing of five or six shots rather than the hand-held pistol's one or two. Its success in Texas led to the US government ordering 1,000 of them during the Mexican-American War. The Colt became the most popular gun ever made. The model shown here dates from the 1860s.



CYLINDER The Colt's revolving cylinder is a design classic. It allowed the firing of up to six shots without reloading.



# THE FRENCH EXPEDITION

MEXICAN-AMERICAN WAR

DATE March-

September 1847

FORCES US: 25,000

20,000 regulars

Mexico: tens of

regulars and 70,000

volunteers: Mexico:

CASUALTIES US: 6,000:

The Veracruz

Campaign

INCATION Veracruz

Mexico

seaport, east coast of

In 1845 the US Congress voted

enthusiastically agreed. President

James Polk, eager to expand his

to Mexico City to negotiate a

purchase New Mexico and

country's territory, sent a delegation

disputed Texan border area and to

he ordered troops into the disputed

region and Mexico counterattacked.

to annex Texas, whose leaders

# The French Expedition



# THE MEXICAN REVOLUTION

# The Mexican Revolution



including governmen troops, Zapata's peasant guerrillas, Villa's guerrilla cavalry CASUALTIES About one million soldiers and civilians killed

In 1910 Francisco Madero, a voung ndowner, stood against longstanding dictator Porfirio Díaz in the presidential elections. Díaz's political nachine duly delivered him victory, but from jail Madero called for armed resistance. The rebel movement took Ciudad Juárez and Díaz fled the country in May 1911. Madero was elected president but the forces of the revolution were now beyond his control. Southern peasant leader Emiliano Zapata, demanding land

would be no better than Díaz. declared his own revolution. Madero, a democrat at heart, vacillated and was assassinated by his own chief of staff, Victoriano Huerta. With tacit support from the USA, Huerta attempted to impose his authority. Now he faced opposition not only from Zapata but from Pancho Villa's horseback ranchhands in the north and from Venustiano Carranza, a dissident member of the elite. These forces, backed by the USA, overthrew Huerta in 1914. Carranza now made a move against his two agrarian allies. Villa pressed on out was heavily defeated at Celeva in 1915 by Alvaro Obregón, Carranza's brilliant army commander, and forced to retreat. Carranza duly assumed the presidency and had Zapata killed in 1919. A year later Obregón rebelled, had Carranza murdered, and became president. The merchant classes emerged as the victors in the revolution. Villa was later killed in 1923.

reform and suspecting that Madero

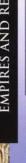


Women, too, fought as guerrillas during the revolution. Most were educated, middle class, and had their own horses and guns.

# STAGED WARFARE

Government troops are seen here manning a cannon. Both sides launched some attacks especially for the





wheeled gunboats to operate on the

Mississippi. Protected by iron armour, they

took on Confederate forts along the river.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN

Lincoln managed the problems of

a war presidency with exceptional

skill and determination. His subtle

handling of the slavery issue kept

Union, while his commitment to

Union ranks. Once he had found

the generals he needed in Grant

them to the hilt in pursuit of total

victory. His assassination at the war's

and Sherman, Lincoln backed

end was a tragedy for America.

the war rallied waverers in the

four crucial slave states loval to the

With no military experience,

form the Confederacy. In April 1861 Fort Sumter, an outpost of Federal troops in South Carolina, was bombarded. A bloody war ensued, which lasted four years and cost 600,000 lives.

# NORTH AND SOUTH

The Union had a population of 23 million to the Confederacy's nine million. It also had most of America's railroads and industries. While the North manufactured almost 1.5 million Springfield rifle-muskets in the course of the war, the South was short of everything from boots to gunpowder, despite heroic efforts to create war industries and to procure weapons from Europe. Since the regular US Army numbered only 16,000, both sides had to create fresh armies from state militias and volunteers. The South eventually raised around 1.1

million soldiers to the North's 2.8 million. The Union was also overwhelmingly superior in seapower, enabling it to blockade Confederate ports and carry out amphibious operations along the coast, the most notable of which led to the capture of New Orleans in 1862. Given the disparity of forces, the South put its faith in outside assistance, hoping Britain or France would intervene in its favour. But the issue of slavery stood in the way, sapping foreign sympathy for the Southern cause.

### BRAGG'S COAT

This dress coat and sword belonged to Confederate general Braxton Bragg. The coat is of brushed blue-grey wool with gold piping and golden rank insignia on the collar. Bragg's dress sword has an acid-etched steel blade

ATLANTIC **OCEAN** FLORIDA of

# Union states 1861 Confederate victory 12 Apr date of battle or attack

Mexico

# Southern states was resolved only after

four years of fighting. The North's superior resources made the long resistance of the South a surprising but costly achievement

US CIVIL WAR

The secession of the

# ROBERT E. LEE

A US Army colonel when the Civil War started, Lee was offered overall field command of the Union forces but as a Virginian aristocrat chose to serve the Confederacy instead. His performance as commander in the Seven Days battle in summer 1862 revealed an outstanding military talent, characterized by adopting offensive tactics as the best means of defence against numerically superior forces. Despite a costly defeat at Gettysburg, Lee earned the devotion of his troops and the respect of his enemies.

that were easy to cut and hard to defend. Infantry warfare was based on the transitional technology of muzzle-loading rifle muskets with Minié bullets (which allowed fast loading and accurate fire) More advanced firearms such as breech-loading repeater rifles played a marginal role, being used by snipers and cavalry. Cannon fired solid shot or fused shells and were only slightly improved from Napoleonic times.



### WAR PHOTOGRAPHY

Union General Joseph Hooker, captured on film by Matthew Brady, one of the first war photographers. Brady brought home the reality of the conflict to a public nurtured on more romantic views of warfare.

# A WAR OF ATTRITION

Although more war deaths in the US Civil War were caused by disease than by combat, the level of battlefield casualties was shocking. Massive losses were suffered in infantry assaults against defenders armed with rifle muskets and protected by field fortifications and batteries of cannon. Cavalry did not play a crucial role on the defence-dominated battlefield, although they were very important in raiding in depth. The difficulty of achieving decisive victory in battle led the Union to follow a coherent if brutal strategy of attrition, partly intended to undermine the will to fight of the South's civilian population. The war eventually cost the lives of 620,000 soldiers (360,000 on the Northern side and 260,000 Southerners) plus uncounted numbers of civilians - more than the losses in all the other wars in which the United States has fought.



About 13,000 Union soldiers died of neglect and disease in the Andersonville prisoner-of-war camp in Georgia. Henry Wirz, its commander, was executed for war crimes.

Individual states raised their own forces - state militias - which formed the core of the rival armies at the start of the war. Here, men of the 22nd Ner York State Militia are seen at Harper's Ferry.



# NO EASY VICTORY

AT THE START OF THE Civil War, the North might sensibly have adopted the "Anaconda" strategy recommended by General Winfield Scott, squeezing the South between a naval blockade of its oceanic ports and the seizure of key river and railroad communications in the

west. The South might have stood on the defensive while bidding for international support. But spirits roused on both sides demanded action, so aggressive operations were mounted all round - though with neither side able to find the quick victory it sought.

panic that no power

made our men turn

on earth could have...

Edwin S. Barrett, Union soldier

with an attack on the Confederate

Confederates were in no shape to

mount a pursuit. The battle was

left that drove them back on Henry

House hill, but there Jackson's brigade

stood "like a stone

wall" and the tide

counterattack by

the exhausted

of battle turned. In

THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

# First Bull Run



FORCES Confederate: 25.000 LOCATION 40km

CASUALTIES Union: 2,700 (25 miles) southwest of Washington, DC 2 000 dead

21 July 1861

The Confederates chose Richmond, Virginia, as their capital, only 160km (100 miles) from Washington. Succumbing to pressure from public opinion, the Union government

ordered General Irvin McDowell to march south from Washington and seize Richmond, McDowell's soldiers

were almost all "So thorough was the without experience of war, as were the Confederates under Beauregard, who defended the rail junction at Manassas. Delays in assembling and fight." and moving the Union army allowed

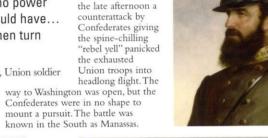
the Confederates to reinforce Manassas with troops moved

by train from the Shenandoah Valley. They were still arriving when the battle

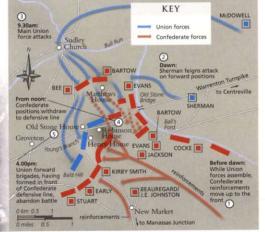
# GENERAL THOMAS I. IACKSON

Known as "Stonewall", an epithet bestowed for his brigade's resolute stand at First Bull Run, Confederate General Jackson had a firm belief that divine providence directed his actions. Intolerant of any weakness, his guiding principle was to "move swiftly and strike vigorously" in pursuit of total victory. His death to friendly fire at Chancellorsville was a disaster for the South.









CAVALRYMAN'S BELT

# THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

DATE 6-7 April 1862

Union: 48,000

Confederate:

CASUALTIES

Union: 13.000

FORCES

45 000

# Shiloh



Tennessee river, south of Savannah, Georgia Confederate: 11,000

In February 1862 Federal General Ulysses S. Grant captured Forts Henry and Donelson in Kentucky, forcing the Confederates to abandon Nashville. Grant then moved down the Tennessee river and disembarked at Pittsburg Landing, near a church called Shiloh, where he was to be joined by the Army of the Ohio under Buell. Confederate General Albert S. Johnston decided to hit Grant before the junction of the

Grant had failed to dig any field fortifications and, surprised by a dawn attack, his troops were pushed back towards Pittsburg Landing in fierce close-quarters fighting. Johnston was killed, bleeding to death after a bullet severed an artery. The Army of the Ohio arrived during the night and was ferried across the river. Grant launched an aggressive counterattack at dawn; men fought over ground littered with the bodies of the dead and wounded from the previous day. The Confederates abandoned the field in late afternoon. The defeat at Shiloh severely weakened the Confederate position in the west.

UNION BLADE This Union officer's sword is unlikely to have been bloodied. In the mid-19th CAVALRY SABRE

century an unshakeable attachment to the romance of edged weapons prevailed, but their use in warfare had practically ceased.

THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR Seven Days Battles

DATE 26 June-2 July 1862

FORCES

Union: 60.000:

Confederate

CASUALTIES

Union: 22,000

Confederate: 15,000



LOCATION

In June 1862, when Robert E. Lee took command of the Confederate forces in Virginia, a Union army had advanced up the Jamestown peninsula to within a few miles of Richmond.

Recalling Stonewall Jackson's army from a successful campaign in the Shenandoah Valley, Lee launched a bold counteroffensive in the last week of June, combining a threatened envelopment of the Federal right with frontal attacks. The Federal forces outnumbered the Confederates and were better equipped. Their artillery took a heavy toll of Lee's infantry, especially in the slaughter at Malvern Hill on 1 July. But the offensive totally unnerved the pessimistic Union commander George McClellan, who withdrew to a defensive position on the coast at Harrison's Landing, from which his army was evacuated in August.

"Under repeated orders from General Magruder both brigades hurried through the swamp, the difficulties of which...cannot be exaggerated.... General Toombs reached the plateau first, and advanced directly towards the enemy's batteries.... These movements had been made under a murderous fire, which these brave troops endured without the opportunity of returning a shot."

# CONFEDERATE GENERAL D. R. JONES

17 September 1862

Union: 12,000; Confederate: 11.000

30 April-6 May 1863

FORCES

60.000

Union: 120,000

Union: 80,000;

CASUALTIES

FORCES

40,000

The Confederate attack at Malvern Hill on 1 July 1862 was a costly failure. Union artillery firing canisters decimated ill-coordinated infantry. Lee. appalled by the carnage, asked General John Magruder why he had persisted in the attack, receiving the retort, "Because of your orders, twice repeated."



# THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

### Antietam



This drawn battle (known in the South as Sharpsburg) was the costliest day's fighting of the war. After another Confederate victory at Second Bull Run on 30 August 1862, Lee gambled on an invasion of the North. Aware of Lee's plans through a captured document (General Order 191),

### BLOODY LANE

This sunken road at Antietam was valiantly defended by Confederate infantry before they were overwhelmed by Union firepower.

McClellan saw a chance to crush the Confederate army. He was too slow, however, allowing Lee to regroup his forces behind Antietam Creek. McClellan still had overwhelming superiority when battle was joined. but his caution stopped him from committing the full weight of his forces. The Confederate left barely held in the face of an onslaught across a cornfield, while in the centre rebel infantry fought a costly delaying action in Bloody Lane. Thousands of Union troops were held up for hours, trying to cross a narrow bridge over the creek under rifle fire. Lee might still have been overwhelmed but for the arrival of a division under A. P. Hill, force-marched from Harper's Ferry, who struck the Union flank in the late afternoon. The following day McClellan allowed the Confederates to withdraw without pursuit, a failure that cost him his job. Strategically, Antietam was a Union victory, as it put an end to Lee's invasion of the North

# THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR



13 December 1862 FORCES Union: 120,000;

Fredericksburg, south of Rappahannock river

After Antietam, General Ambrose Burnside took command of the Union Army of the Potomac. He



planned to capture Richmond through a rapid advance across the Rappahannock. But the pontoons for the river crossing were put at the rear of the marching column, causing a delay that was exacerbated as sharpshooters harassed the bridging operation. By the time Burnside's forces made it across the river, Lee was ready. The Confederate artillery, massed on Marve's Heights, dominated the battlefield. Repeated frontal assaults by Union infantry were cut down by cannon fire and by Confederate infantry firing from behind stone walls. A flank attack on the

Confederate right at least succeeded in penetrating the defensive line, but was repelled by a fierce counterattack. Lee said of this victory, "It is well that war is so terrible; we should grow too fond of it." Next day, the Union army retreated back across the river.

### REBEL DEAD

Confederate soldiers lie dead at the foot of Marye's Heights. They held the position against repeated attacks.

# THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR Chancellorsville



CASUALTIES Virginia, south of Rappahannock river Confederate: 13.500

After Burnside's failure at Fredericksburg, it was General Joseph Hooker's turn to lead the Army of the Potomac. He devised a brilliant plan: part of his forces would pin Lee at Fredericksburg while his main

force advanced through the forests of the Wilderness to the Confederate left and his cavalry cut Lee's

WAR DAMAGE

These dead horses after Chancellorsville show how losing vital supplies as much as losing men damaged the war effort.

with Richmond. However, Hooker had underrated the boldness of his adversary. Lee left a small holding force at Fredericksburg and marched into the Wilderness, blocking Hooker at the Chancellorsville crossroads. Jackson was sent on a flanking move to attack Hooker's right, a blow delivered to devastating effect on the afternoon of 2 May. Concussed by rebel artillery fire, Hooker ordered his forces to withdrew to a defensive line and then pulled back across the Rappahannock. For the Confederates, the taste of victory was soured by the loss of Jackson, who died of his wounds on 10 May.

WILLIAM T. SHERMAN

# VICTORY THROUGH ATTRITION

THE UNION VICTORIES AT GETTYSBURG and Vicksburg in July 1863 placed the Confederacy irreversibly on the defensive. The South's last hope of avoiding defeat - by holding out until the North became weary of the fighting - was lost with Lincoln's re-election in 1864. The president found in Ulysses S. Grant a general who shared his commitment to victory at whatever cost.

Lincoln and Grant did not seek a war of attrition - they would have preferred the swift annihilation of rebel armies - but they did regard crippling the Southern economy and intimidating its population as a legitimate strategy. The late stages of the conflict exemplified Sherman's maxim: "War is cruelty. There is no use trying to reform it; the crueller it is, the sooner it will be over."

### THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

# Vicksburg

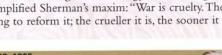


DATE 19 May-4 July 1863 FORCES Union: 70,000: Confederate:

CASUALTIES Confederate: 9.000

The Confederate stronghold at Vicksburg, on the east bank of the Mississippi, controlled passage along the river. Surrounded by unhealthy swamps, it long defied capture. In April 1862, however, Grant sent

ironclads (armour-plated ships) downriver, running the fortress's batteries, and ferried an army across from the west bank south of Vicksburg. Living off the land, he defeated the Confederate army of John Pemberton at Jackson and then drove it back into Vicksburg. After frontal assaults failed, Grant settled down for a siege. Starving and under constant bombardment from siege guns and river gunboats, Pemberton surrendered the garrison on 4 July. The 30,000 Confederates taken prisoner were released on parole. Lincoln proclaimed that the Mississippi now "flowed unvexed" to the sea.



# **ULYSSES S. GRANT**

Grant resigned from the US Army in 1854. after serving in Mexico. A binge drinker, he might have lived in obscurity but for the Civil War. A string of victories on the Tennessee front persuaded Lincoln that he was the man to win victory - "He fights", was the president's comment. Union commander-inchief from 1864, Grant directed the campaign of attrition that brought down the Confederacy and coined the phrase 'unconditional surrender"





.58 CALIBRE RIFLE MUSKET

Civil War infantry used muzzle-loading muskets with rifled barrels, such as this Confederate copy of a Union Springfield. The charge was ignited by a percussion cap.



### THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

# Wilderness and Spotsvlvania



FORCES Union: 120,000: Confederate: 60,000

DATE 5 May-21 May 1864

Spotsylvania County,

CASUALTIES Union: 32.000: Confederate: 20.000

In spring 1864 Grant ordered a threepronged offensive towards Richmond, Virginia, and a simultaneous attack against Atlanta, Georgia. The main thrust in Virginia was delivered by the Army of the Potomac, which crossed the Rapidan river and advanced into the area of dense vegetation known as the Wilderness. There, on 5 May, they encountered Lee's Army of Northern Virginia. The terrain tended to break



up the fighting into a confused melée. The scene was obscured by smoke from gunpowder and from fires lit by exploding shells in the dry brush. In two days' brutal fighting the

Union forces suffered heavy casualties, but Grant refused to retreat. Instead he sent his

# REBEL DEAD

At the Wilderness and Spotsylvania, Lee suffered over 20,000 casualties, losses he could ill afford.

# WAR FRENZY

The uniforms of the Yankees attacking this rebel position at Spotsylvania contrast with the homespun clothing of their opponents.

men forward on a flanking march that brought them up against Lee for a second time at Spotsylvania Courthouse on 8 May. Dug into a V-shaped line of field fortifications, the Confederates held off a series of frenzied attacks over ten days. Unable to break through, Grant called off the battle on 21 May and set off on a flanking march aimed at Petersburg.

# THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR Cold Harbor



of Richmond, Virginia

Confederate: 10km (6 miles) north

CASUALTIES Union: 7,000; Confederate: 1,500

Union: 109 000:

FORCES

By the start of June 1863 Grant was convinced that Lee's hungry and exhausted army was "really whipped". Grant had problems of his own, though. On top of the heavy losses suffered at Spotsylvania, volunteers who had joined the Union army at the start of the war for a three-year term were disappearing in droves. These pressures may explain Grant's decision to fling his troops into a desperate frontal assault on Confederate trenches at Cold Harbor. Poor reconnaissance - the Union side was unaware of the strength of the Confederate defences made matters worse. Federal troops advanced with names and addresses pinned to their uniforms, so high was their expectation of death. Even where the Yankees did reach the first trench line, the rebels fell back to a second line and butchered them from there. Grant admitted it was a disaster, saying, "I regret this assault more than any one I have ever ordered."

THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

# March to the Sea

DATE 15 November-

21 December 1864

Union: 68,000;

Confederate: no

reliable estimates

CASHALTIES

FORCES



From Atlanta to Savannah, Georgia Confederate: unknown nion: losses minimal

In early May 1864 Sherman led three armies in an advance on Atlanta, Georgia, The outnumbered Confederate Army of Tennessee fought a series of skilful delaying actions, holding off Sherman's advance so effectively that the Union forces did not arrive in Atlanta until late July. It took a further five weeks for Sherman to occupy the John B. Hood withdrew westwards. believing that Sherman would be forced to pursue in order to protect Union supply lines.

city. The Army of Tennessee under

### KETCHUM GRENADE The Ketchum grenade was issued to Union forces. Rebels would try to catch a grenade in a blanket and throw it back.

Sherman's men laid the

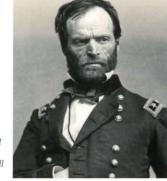
of necessity, since they

William Tecumseh Sherman was running a Louisiana military Instead, Sherman detached academy when the Civil War broke one of his armies to cope out. Of a depressive temperament, with Hood and led the rest he found wartime command a eastwards. Advancing virtually torture to his nerves, but his unimpeded on a wide front. political connections ensured promotion. He struck up a close country waste, both out working relationship with Grant based on a shared view of the were living off the land, necessary harshness of war, a and as a deliberate attack on principle Sherman applied the South's capacity to fight. ruthlessly in his March to the Sea. The civilian and military infrastructure in their path was destroyed, damaging the

Confederacy's ability to continue the war. Having marched 450km (280 miles), Sherman's army seized the port of Savannah on 21 December, in time to offer it to Lincoln as a "Christmas gift". By then Hood's Army of Tennessee had been omprehensively defeated at the battle of Nashville (15-16 December 1864).

### EARTHWORK FORT

Fort McAllister, a fortress made of mud and sand situated outside the port of Savannah, repeatedly fought off Union ironclads but fel to an assault by Sherman's infantry.



the devastation of the Shenandoah

# THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

DATE 18 June 1864-

FORCES Union: 96,000

(rising to 106,000);

Confederate: 55,000

(falling to 47,000)

# Siege of Petersburg



40km (25 miles) south of Richmond, Virginia

CASUALTIES Union: 42 000 Confederate: 28,000

After the rebuff at Cold Harbor, Grant sent his Army of the Potomac across the James river to attack Richmond from the south. He failed, however, to seize the vital fortified town of Petersburg in mid-June. Lee rapidly strengthened the earthworks: Grant had no choice but to dig his own trenches and settle down for a long

made on 28 July when 320 kegs of gunpowder were detonated in a tunnel under the Confederate lines, making a crater 10m (30ft) deep and killing hundreds of rebel soldiers. But Union troops trying to break through the gap blown in the line found themselves trapped inside the crater under Confederate fire. For nine months shelling and raids failed to break the stalemate. While the Union troops were regularly reinforced and supplied, the Confederates grew ever

siege. The most notable attempt to

### PETERSBURG TRENCH

THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR pierce the Confederate defences was

# hungrier and more demoralized.

A captured trench outside Petersburg shows the spiked barriers that performed the same function as barbed wire in later wars.

Defeat of Lee

Union: 120,000; Confederate: 35,000

9 April 1865

DATE 28 March-

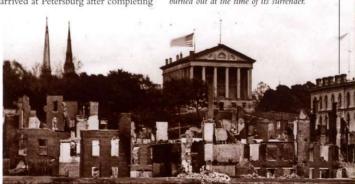
CASUALTIES Union: 6.500: Confederate: 10.000

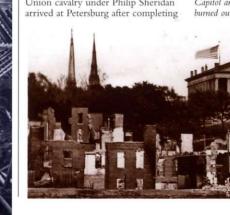
By late March 1865 Lee had decided his position in front of Petersburg was untenable. He needed to abandon the defence of Richmond and withdraw southwards to join up with the army of Joseph E. Johnston, who was still resisting Sherman's advance through North Carolina. But a Confederate assault on Fort Stedman, on the right of the Union line at Petersburg, failed to create the opportunity Lee had noped for to slip away. On 29 March Union cavalry under Philip Sheridan

Valley and immediately went into action, sweeping around the west of the Confederate line. On 2 April Union infantry broke through the trenches in front of Petersburg. Lee managed an orderly withdrawal, but he could not evade pursuit. Sheridan's cavalry blocked his path at Appomattox Courthouse on 8 April, and when Grant's infantry began to arrive in force the following day, the game was up. Lee surrendered the Army of Northern Virginia at 3:45pm on 9 April. The following day, Lincoln was ssassinated. Sherman accepted Johnston's capitulation at Durham Station, North Carolina, on 26 April. With the surrenders of Lee and Johnston, the Confederacy was finished and the long war was effectively over.

# REUNITED

The Union flag flies over the Virginia State Capitol amid the ruins of Richmond, burned out at the time of its surrender.





# "A house divided against itself cannot stand."

Divided" speech in Springfield,

WITNESS TO WAR

Letter from James

Booker at camp in Williamsport.

Maryland, to his

cousin Chloe Unity

Blair, 11 JULY 1863

describing the battle of

Gettysburg

# AMERICAN CIVIL WAR

Tf the American Civil War began in a clash of apparently incompatible views of how I the liberty of states might be reconciled with the liberty of individuals, it was individuals on both sides who put flesh on the bones of those competing philosophies with their blood and their suffering. The Civil War is often cited as the first industrial war, but it was also among the first conflicts where a mass of letters and diaries survive from rank-and-file soldiers to give a human insight to a battlefield where modern technology and tactics created carnage on an unprecedented scale.

66 We went into Pennsylvania and stayed for some time and had a hard Battle

near Gettysburg.... We went in the 3 day [of July] and got nearly all of our Division killed & wounded.... Myself and Jon come through safely.... There was a ball passed through my sleeve though it did not hurt my arm. Me and Jon came very near being taken.... When I saw we were nearly surrounded I told Jon that we would run and try to get away from them and we made our escape by doing so,

while several of our boys that was with us let the Yankees take them. ??

Many soldiers on both sides presumed that the war would be brief. Indeed, in the Union army most had initially enlisted for only a 90-day period. By the time of Gettysburg, the key battle of the war, however, it had for the majority already been a two-year nightmare of march, countermarch, and countless fallen comrades. James Booker enlisted with his twin brother, John, in the 38th Virginia Infantry in May 1861. The 38th fought right through the war, seeing action at Sharpsburg and Gettysburg - where 40 per cent of its soldiers were numbered amongst the casualties - and ended up just 3km (2 miles) from Appomattox at the time of Lee's surrender in April 1865. It was a long, harrowing road, and James's twin died in August 1864 of

66 The enemy massed their troops in wounds suffered at Drewry's Bluff. front of the second Brigade & at daylight charged the second, drove them from their breastworks & following them closely captured many.... The air seemed filled with the laden messengers of death.... The Yanks have fought with more desperation than they ever fought before. ??

Letter from William Francis Brand to Amanda Catherine Armentrout, about the battle of Spotsylvania, 16 MAY 1864

ARMY CAMP The Army of the Potomac, shown

major Union force in the Eastern Front during the Civil War.

As well as the full-blooded butchery of battle, the Civil War figured the less dramatic but equally fatal engagements of scorched earth and siege. From the slow naval strangulation of Vicksburg to the final, heroic, and pointless Confederate resistance in the Petersburg trenches, soldiers daily faced death from disease, cold, starvation, and the pounding of enemy artillery. William Francis Brand, a miller, enlisted in the Confederate 66 Then came the scorching Army in April 1861, witnessing both the start and end of the war. He fought at Manassas, Cold Harbor, Cedar Mountain, Gettysburg, the Wilderness, and ended up at the siege of Petersburg in April 1865. Three times wounded, he lived to the age of 92.

heats of summer, when the blood dried up in our

Hubbard, article in the Mendon Dispatch, c.1904, recounting his experiences at Andersonville Prison Camp

veins, when almost disembodied spirits walked with creaking joints and rattling bones, when hundreds became insane or idiotic, and many others, who feared insanity, deliberately crossed the dead line

and sat down, awaiting their turn to be shot. ??

For those who were not killed or maimed in battle, there was another form of living death. The Civil War, which gave the world trench fighting that prefigured the sunken killing fields of World War I, also bequeathed it the prison camp. Andersonville, for Union prisoners, was a place of particular notoriety, so much so that its greatly loathed commander, Captain Wirz, was hanged for war crimes in Washington in November 1865.

66 What a cruel thing war is... to fill our hearts with hatred instead of love for our neighbors."



# MACHINE GUN

British a huge

colonial conflicts.

advantage in

### PATRIOTISM AND NATIONALISM The Maxim gun, below, vave the

Many Europeans genuinely believed that imperial wars were a regrettable side-effect of an otherwise benevolent process bringing civilization to "savages" - and not an exercise of power for the benefit of the home country. Empire-building drew upon strong feelings of nationalism that, in turn, stemmed from the French and American revolutions

and the Napoleonic wars, conflicts that led to new demands for freedom and self-determination. Although people were often discontented with social and economic conditions, the mass of Europeans of all classes were inspired by loyalty to the flag. This loyalty was one reason why, in countries such as Britain, conscription was not necessary until

1914. The other reason was that, for many recruits, the army was the least unattractive of the few, unpromising, alternatives.

# **GUERRILLA WARFARE** AND TACTICS

In spite of the overwhelming technological superiority of the western powers, conquest did not always come easily. In some cases - in Afghanistan, for example - it did not come at all. Imperial forces sometimes achieved victory only at heavy cost in money and lives, or after preliminary defeats. Although doomed in a pitched battle almost regardless of their numbers, non-European forces were often far more effective when they adopted guerrilla tactics, such as smallscale attacks on civil as well as military targets. Notable

DESPERATE MEASURES Facing a 500,000-strong British force, the Boers, with about 90,000 men, adopted guerrilla tactics in the Second Boer War.

exponents of guerrilla warfare included the Berbers during the French conquest of Algeria (1830-47) and the Boers in the Second Boer War (1899-1902).



RESISTING RULE Aggressive empire-building by the

vestern powers led to armed resistance

particularly between 1880 and 1920.

across Africa, Asia, and Europe,

### The badge of a German unit that, in the late 1800s, defended British

anti-Ottomai

Other revolts and revolution

FOREIGN RECRUITS

# MARSHAL LYAUTEY

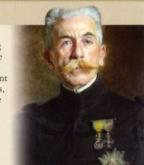
A statesman and a soldier, Louis-Hubert-Gonzalve Lyautey was France's outstanding colonial administrator. He played a key role in the French conquest of Madagascar (1896-98) and later served as a commandant in Algeria. From 1912 to 1925 Lyautey was, with intervals, governor of the protectorate of Morocco, expanding its territory and combating the rebellion of the Rif people. He strove to create a system of colonial government that co-operated with local interests and was independent from Paris.

OFFICER'S HELMET

This typical British officer's helmet of the

mid-1800s features a top-mounted ball,

above which is a socket for a plume.



# ZULU WARRIORS

The rest of the world was not, of course, peaceful before the advent of European imperialism. Just as in Europe, individual

used warfare to assert their interests and ways of life. In southern Africa,

Admiration often existed among both Europeans and indigenous peoples for the fighting qualities of their opponents. European armies frequently turned to traditional warrior peoples to provide a cutting edge to their own forces, while necessity often motivated large-scale recruitment among the local people. British India was won and maintained mainly by Indian troops known as sepoys. The sepoys' success was in large part due to their adoption of British drill, which turned the predominantly Hindu soldiers into excellent infantry. In North America, the local knowledge of the American Indians made them, with modern weapons, superior fighters in the forests. In the 19th century one of the most famous colonial

military units was the Zouaves. members of the Zouaoua people of Algeria and Morocco, who helped the French conquer Algeria, as well as other parts of North Africa.

# FIGHTING FOR FRANCE

The Zouaves, who served in the French army as light infantry, wore baggy trousers, a braided jacket, and a fez. Their name and uniform were later adopted by native French units.



IMPRESSIVE WARRIORS Zulu tribespeople, shown here performing a hunting dance, refused to accept Britain's extension of its borders of Natal in South Africa, triggering the Zulu War of 1879.

for instance, the Zulu leader Shaka turned his people into a nation of warriors that won an empire. Along with brutal violence, Shaka introduced superior strategies, such as the three-pronged assault based were eventually overcome by the British with their guns, but not before winning the enemy's admiration for their fighting ability.



nations in the Americas, Asia, and Africa

on the head of a buffalo, and tactics, adopting the traditional shield as an offensive weapon to throw an opponent off balance, and introducing a round-headed club and the assegai (a short, stabbing spear). The Zulu

NATIVE SOLDIERS

# **BRITISH INDIA**

THE ORIGINS OF BRITISH RULE in India lie with the British East India Company, Although it was founded as a trading group, the decline of the Muslim Mogul empire in northern India in the mid-1700s and the ensuing unrest forced the company to hire sepoys (Indian troops) to garrison its bases. What began as a unit of security guards became a private army as the company was

drawn into the Indian power struggles, as well as into rivalry with French interests. In 1757, when the British defeated a French and Mogul army at Plassey, the way was open to expand British control over India. This control was challenged, however, first by the Maratha confederacy of Hindu princes and later by the sepoys themselves during the Indian Mutiny (1857–58).

SECOND MARATHA WAR

# Assave



FORCES British and Indian: 13 500: Marathas: 40.000 CASHAITIES

British: 1 500:

Marathas: 6,000

day Maharashtra state, central India

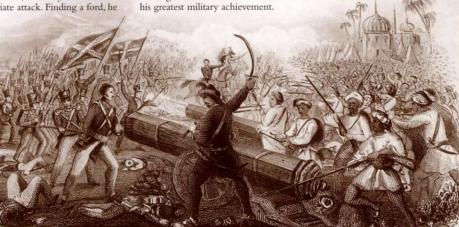
The Maratha wars resulted from British attempts to exert influence over the Maratha confederacy. The first war (1775-82) ended with the British returning all the gains they had made in the fighting. The second war (1803-05) began when the governor-general of India, Richard Wellesley, offered protection to an ousted peshwa (Maratha chief minister), thus offending the other Maratha princes. Wellesley sent his younger brother, Arthur, the future duke of Wellington, against the French-trained forces of the powerful

Maratha princes of Sindhia and Berar. Welleslev encountered the enemy unexpectedly, camped on the other side of the Kaitna river. Although his British and sepoy army was outmanned three to one, Wellesley decided on an immediate attack. Finding a ford, he

crossed the river and attacked the enemy's left flank. The Marathas fought back fiercely, but the British captured their cannon and defensive position in the village of Assaye. In later years Wellington described the battle as

SEIZING THE GUNS

British forces capture the Maratha guns at Assaye. The Duke of Wellington, who led the assault, described the battle as "the bloodiest for the numbers that I ever saw"





BITTER END

Thousands of men, women, and children -

Anglo-Afghan War as resistance broke

out across the country. By 1841 the

position of British and Indian troops

William McNaghten, the head of the

British mission in the Afghan capital,

Kabul, opposed evacuation, but when

freezing temperatures they set out on

6 January 1842, only to be harassed

by Afghan irregulars. All but a handful

Kabul left bitter memories among the

British, which the Second and Third

were massacred. The retreat from

Afghan Wars did little to heal.

he was murdered in December, the

British decided to withdraw. In

in Afghanistan was precarious. Sir

along with British and Indian troops -

died on the retreat from Kabul.

FIRST ANGLO-AFGHAN WAR

# Retreat from Kabul

6-13 January 1842

FORCES



Afghans: unknown; British and Indian: 4.000 CASUALTIES

Kabul and Jalalabad, British: 3,800 Afghanistan Seeking to expand its territory into

Afghanistan, and fearful of Russian influence, the British looked for an alliance with the country's ruler. In 1839, when their first efforts failed, the British decided to restore the unpopular Shah Shuja to the Afghan throne by force. This led to the First

# FIRST AND SECOND SIKH WARS Sikh Wars



uniab.

FORCES Sikh (including Muslims and Hindus): 66.000: British and Indian: 30,000 CASUALTIES Sikh: 13,000: British and

Indian: 6,000

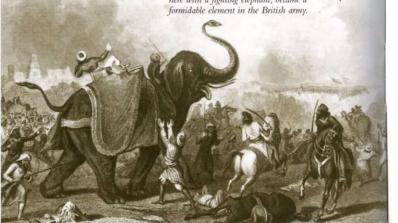
DATE 1845-46; 1848-49

Numbering about 50,000 infantry, 10,000 gunners, and 6,000 cavalry, the Sikhs were the most formidable opponents of the British in India. In 1845 the First Sikh War began after

Sikh troops crossed the Sutlej river into British territory. The British commander in chief, Sir Hugh Gough, fought one bloody and indecisive battle against the Sikhs at Mudki and another at Firuzshah. At Sobraon, however, Gough was victorious - although at heavy cost. In 1848 another outbreak by mutinous Sikh troops led to the Second Sikh War. The main battle, fought at Chillianwala on 13 January 1849, on heavily forested terrain, was won by Gough's superior artillery. The Sikhs surrendered that March and the British annexed the Punjab.

### DANGEROUS OPPONENTS

After the Sikh wars, Sikhs troops, shown here with a fighting elephant, became a



# THE INDIAN MUTINY

# Delhi



north-central India

The Indian Mutiny began in 1857 when rumours spread among the sepoys of the British East India Company that cartridges - the ends of which had to be bitten off before loading - for the newly introduced Enfield rifles were greased with pig and cow fat. Such cartridges offended Hindus and Muslims alike, but the sepovs' objections expressed a wider

July-September 1857

British officers and

loyal sepoys:

CASUALTIES

unknown: rebe

senovs: unknown

No reliable estimates

FORCES

### BRITISH REVENGE

Two alleged mutineers, hanged in Delhi by the British when they retook the city. After the mutiny the territories and soldiers of the East India Company passed to the crown.

dislike of British modernization and the predominance of Christianity. When objectors in the Bengal Light Cavalry were arrested on 9 May in the town of Meerut, in northern India, their comrades decided to free them. Events got out of hand and ended in a massacre of British officers, their wives, and children. The violence spread rapidly and was especially fierce in Delhi, to where the Meerut sepovs marched and restored the elderly Mogul emperor to power. They sepoys then joined forces with the garrison in Delhi, leading to a two-month siege. When the British eventually recaptured the



garrison they enacted a terrible revenge, killing many of the rebels and many other able-bodied men. In one incident the emperor's three sons were murdered in cold blood by a British officer and their bodies

thrown on a rubbish heap. British soldiers also set up artillery in the city's main mosque and destroyed nearby buildings, including the homes of rich families containing many cultural treasures.

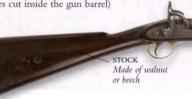
# ENFIELD RIFLE

The invention of the Minié bullet in when fired, greatly increasing accuracy. effective rifles. Instead of a lead ball, the Minié bullet was long and conical, with a hollow base that expanded to grip the rifling (spiral grooves cut inside the gun barrel)

1849 led to the development of more Britain's Royal Small Arms Factory in Enfield, Middlesex, quickly utilized the new technology, producing in 1851 the 702-in Pattern Minié rifle, which British troops used to deadly effect in

the Crimean War (1854-56). In 1853 the factory manufactured a smallercalibre version of the weapon, shown below. This firearm was extensively adopted by British and American soldiers: both sides in the American Civil War (1861-65) had Enfields.

Range 914m (1000 vds Length 140cm (55in) Calibre .577 inches Date of Launch 1853 Weight 2.6kg (5.8lb)



These secured the harrel to the stock

MUZZLE-LOADING / This was a rifled musket hullets were pushed down the barrel

of Allahabad. On leaving, however,

the sepoys massacred them, men first,

BAYONET ATTACHMENT A triangular cross-section bayoner could be fitted at the end of the gun

### THE INDIAN MUTINY

# Lucknow



Uttar Pradesh state,

June-November 1857 FORCES British and loyal sepoys: 1,712; Rebel sepoys: 6,000

CASUALTIES British and loyal sepoys: 1,050;

Lucknow, the chief city of Oudh province and the headquarters of the British commissioner Sir Henry Lawrence, came under siege at the start of the Indian Mutiny. The fate of the British inhabitants of the frontier station of Cawnpore, less than 80km (50 miles) away, bore heavily on Sir Henry's mind. Cawnpore, too, had been swiftly besieged. The British had held out against bombardment for several weeks before surrendering on the promise of free passage to the city

then women and children later. The troops at Lucknow consisted of one European battalion plus a number of sepovs. With many women and children to protect, Lawrence decided to make his base at the hospital buildings, close to the route that the anticipated reinforcements would take, even though it meant sacrificing the armoury to the rebels. An unwise sally against the rebels resulted in illafforded British casualties and the loss of several outposts. Lawrence himself was fatally injured on 4 July. Reinforcements finally arrived on 25 September, enabling the garrison to enlarge the area it held. Then, on 14 November, the British commande in chief, Sir Colin Campbell, reached Lucknow. Although his force was outnumbered ten to one, it evacuated the British, bringing the most famous episode of the Indian Mutiny to an end.

following May. STILL STANDING

A British force stationed

outside Lucknow

recaptured it the

An early photograph shows the battlescarred residence at Lucknow. The flag that flew over it during the siege remained flying until 1947

# SECOND ANGLO-AFGHAN WAR

# Siege of Kandahar



1 September 1880 FORCES Afghans: 13,000; British and Indian:

South-central

CASHAITIES No reliable

During the Second Afghan War (1878-80) the British occupied Kandahar, Afghanistan's second city where they were besieged by Avub Khan, the governor of Herat and claimant to the Afghan throne, Sir Frederick Roberts, the outstanding British general of his time, was in command in Kabul. He marched about 480km (300 miles) between 9 and 31 August 1880. Ayyub Khan raised the siege before Roberts

> arrived, retiring a short distance to the west, where Roberts, having collected extra artillery from

Kandahar, engaged and defeated him.

### STAR OF INDIA

The British awarded this medal to Indian subjects who served the colonial government well. FIRST USED DURING THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR, GATLING GUNS WERE THE PRECURSORS OF A NEW TYPE OF MACHINE GUN.

By the second half of the 19th century improvements in engineering had made it possible to manufacture reliable multiple-fire weapons. The gun patented by Richard Gatling in 1861 employed multiple barrels, as would all early machine guns. It also took advantage of the new brass bullet cartridge; earlier paper cartridges were dangerous, being liable to combust unpredictably. The barrels - at first six, later ten - were arranged around a cylindrical shaft. A hand-operated crank made the barrels revolve, and cartridges dropped into place from above as each barrel came around. A firing pin then struck and fired the bullet; the barrel turned and the process was repeated. As each barrel descended, its cartridge shell was ejected. The gun was produced in 1in to 0.65in calibres.



### INFLUENTIAL DESIGN

After seeing very limited use in the American Civil War, the gun was adopted by the US Army in 1866. Firing about 400 rounds a minute in practice, it was devastatingly effective against enemies such as Plains Indians or, for the British, the Zulus. It was also much used as a naval weapon. After a 15-year heyday, the Gatling gun and other

### RICHARD GATLING

Richard Jordan Gatling (1818-1903) was a peace-loving individual who fondly believed that his new weapon would deter countries from going to war.



ZULU WAR

gun during the 1879 Zulu War.

The oun increased Europeans'

advantage in colonial wars.

MAGAZINE SLOT Top: groove to help

removal of a jammed magazine. Bottom:

the 40-round magazine cartridge-feeder

rotating-barrel machine-guns were superseded from the 1880s by single-barrel British soldiers crew a Gatling guns such as the Maxim, which used the recoil of the barrel or combustion gases to produce continuous fire without the need

for a crank. In the late 20th century Gatling-style guns reappeared in weapons systems on board military aircraft and ships, such as the US Mk 15 Phalanx system, which uses a rotating cluster of six 20mm barrels.

PLAQUE The gun was manufactured at the armoury of Samuel Colt - most famous for his revolver - in Hartford, Connecticut, which made hundreds of thousands of firearms for the Union side in the American Civil War.



LOWERING GEAR This wheel was used to raise and lower the barrels.

CRANK When rotated, the brass crank handle turns

the barrels inside the cylinders. Each barrel is then

loaded and fired once during a complete rotation.



TRAVERSING HANDSPIKE STOWAGE on the side of

the gun, used to damage the barrels and disable the

gun to prevent its use by the enemy.

WHEEL HUB with a towing ring secured by a cottered crank (a wedge-shaped fastener). The towing ring enabled easier transportation.







Pivot for revolving

Magazine - contained

cartridges and fed them into

the barrel as they were needed

1-IN CALIBRE GATLING GUN Early models of the Gatling gun were mounted on carriages, just like conventional field guns. It was not until lighter versions could be mounted on tripods that their true potential could be realized.

> Ring through which handspike went - to swing gun left and right

Weight Up to 1,000kg

Trail stabilized gun and allowed it to be towed

ANTI-ROTATION PAWL and breech plugs containing firing pins. Each pin has a small cam head to catch hold of the gun body.

Length 3.25m (13ft)



FORESIGHT and main shaft front bearings. The foresight enabled adjustments to be made to the gun's targeting.







# THE CONQUEST OF AFRICA

Africa and a few small coastal regions. Within 20 years almost the whole continent had come under European rule. This scramble for African colonies was largely driven by European rivalries, and some events - such as the Zulu War - stemmed from the actions of ambitious officials on the spot. The pace of occupation soon

IN 1880 EUROPEAN CONTROL in Africa extended only to South quickened. Belgian King Leopold acquired the Congo as a vast personal estate in the 1870s. Ottoman weakness allowed France and Britain to take over much of North Africa by 1882. Germany seized a string of African territories in 1884. Finally, in 1885 the Berlin Conference sanctioned and accelerated the division of Africa between Britain, France, and the other European powers.

# REVOLT OF ABD EL-QADIR

# Revolt of Abd el-Qadir



FORCES Algerian: around to 100,000

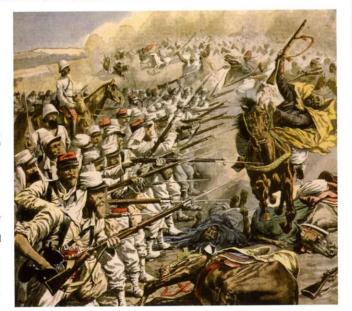
DATE 1832-47

No reliable estimates

In 1830 the French invaded Algeria, putting an end to Ottoman Turkish rule and deposing its ruler, the dev. They claimed to be acting to end the longstanding problem of Algerian piracy and to liberate the country from the Turks, but trade and prestige were more pressing motives. French rule was harsh, and widespread resistance broke out. In the west, this was led by Abd el-Qadir (1808-83), who united local tribes under his leadership, and was proclaimed amir of Mascara (in western Algeria) in 1832. He was an astute, but not very successful, guerrilla leader, and the French accorded him conditional recognition in 1837. However, when it appeared the French were, despite this treaty, bent on total conquest, Abd el-Qadir declared a holy war. The French waged a brutal campaign, burning crops and seizing cattle, before occupying Mascara and destroying Abd el-Oadir's arms depots. The sultan of Morocco intervened, but the French defeated the Moroccan army in 1844. Abd el-Oadir finally surrendered in 1847 and was briefly imprisoned in France. A courteous foe, and a devout Muslim, he once released prisoners whom he could not feed. He later became a hero in France, receiving the Légion d'Honneur after saving 12,000 Christians from slaughter by a fanatical Muslim crowd in Damascus in 1860.

### LEGIONNAIRES IN ACTION

The French Foreign Legion was founded in 1831 for the Algerian campaign. Here the legionnaires battle with Berber tribesmen.



# MANGLO-ASHANTI WARS

# Second Ashanti War



Modern Ghana,

DATE June 1873-13 February 1874 FORCES

British and West African allies: 4,000: Ashanti: 20,000

CASUALTIES British and allies: 1.700: Ashanti: unknown

By the 1870s the powerful Ashanti kingdom dominated the Gold Coast (modern Ghana), while the British controlled a string of coastal forts. Ashanti king Kofi Karikari's efforts to re-establish his authority on the coast

provoked a war. In November 1873 British expedition under Sir Garnet Wolseley checked Ashanti progress. Then, in January the British moved into the interior with 7-pounder guns and rocket launchers. The Ashanti had no guns, and their strongest ally was disease. On 31 January Wolselev won a battle at Amoafu and then burned down the Ashanti capital, Kumasi. Kofi agreed peace terms on 13 February. His kingdom splintered, and by 1901 was a British protectorate.

# RECRUITING GROUND

British officers check the equipment of local recruits for the Ashanti War. As well as soldiers, the British employed 6,000 porters for the march into the interior.



# REVOLT OF ARABI PASHA Tel el-Kebir



13 September 1882 British: 11,000 infantry 2,000 cavalry; Egyptians: 31,000 CASUALTIES

British: 460: Egyptians

up to 3.000

LOCATION About 100km

Following a British and French takeover of the government of Egypt - which was unable to pay its massive debts - a revolt erupted, led by Arabi Pasha. British citizens died in riots in Alexandria and on 11 July 1882 British gunships bombarded the port in retaliation. A British army under Wolseley defeated the Egyptians at Tel el-Kebir in a

pattle Britain then occupied Egypt.

EGYPT STAR The Bronze Star was awarded to all British soldiers taking part in the Egyptian campaigns

between 1882

and 1885.



# IMPERIAL CONFLICTS

# Adowa

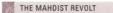


LOCATION

DATE 1 March 1896 FORCES Italians: 17,000: **Ethiopians**: CASUALTIES

Italians: 7,300; Ethiopians: 10,000

In the 1890s the Italians, who already occupied Eritrea and Somalia, sought to add Ethiopia to their north African empire. Although Ethiopian emperor Menelik II had a large superiority in numbers, some of his forces were armed only with spears. The Italians, under General Oreste Baratieri, advanced into Tigray province but, neld by Menelik at Amba Alagi in December 1895, they fell back to Adowa. Both sides were running low in supplies when, on 29 February 1896, Baratieri launched a night attack. But his plans had been betrayed by Ethiopian agents; moreover, the Italians were divided into small groups and, in the darkness and rough terrain, communications were poor. Menelik, who received reinforcements during the night, defeated the Italian contingents separately and won the greatest victory ever inflicted by an African force on a European army.



# Siege of Khartoum

Anglo-Egyptian

his mission were

unclear. Gladstone

thought he was to

Khartoum, which

he promptly did. The

Khedive believed he

should evacuate all the

evacuate the

civilians from

2.000: Mahdist



CASHAITIES Anglo-Egyptian: 2,000; Khartoum, Sudan Sudanese: unknown

In 1881 Muhammad Ahmad, a Muslim religious leader in the Sudan, declared himself the Mahdi ("Expected One"). He began a holy war against Egyptian rule and gathered a large number of followers, the Ansar (dervishes), intent on establishing a purified form of Islam in the Sudan. In 1883 his forces exterminated an Egyptian army of 10,000 men led by a British officer,

### GORDON'S LAST STAND

This romanticized view of Khartoum's fall shows Gordon facing down an oncoming mob of Mahdist Ansar. None of the parrison lived to give an impartial account of his end. "Khartoum all right; could hold out for years.-C. G. Gordon, December 29."

Charles George Gordon, in a letter received by steamer by the relief expedition, five days before the fall of Khartoum 21 January 1885.

Colonel William Hicks, In Britain there was a clamour for action against the Mahdi, who now threatened Khartoum. British prime minister Gladstone reluctantly agreed to send General Charles George Gordon to Khartoum. Gordon had suppressed the Taiping Rebellion in China in 1863-64 and had served in Khartoum as the governor-general of the Khedive (the Egyptian ruler). The terms of

Egyptian garrisons in the Nile valley. Gordon, however, became trapped in Khartoum as the Mahdi's Ansar advanced. The siege began in March. Gordon had no staff, and the Egyptian garrison was weak. Somehow it held out until January, when the falling level of the Nile weakened its defences. The Ansar broke through.

annihilated the garrison. and hacked Gordon to death. A relief expedition, led by Sir Garnet Wolseley, finally arrived three days later.

> SUDAN SHIELD Made of bamboo hoops and covered in cotton, this shield was of doubtful efficacy against bullets.

# THE MAHDIST REVOLT

# Omdurman



Omdurman, Sudan

(5 miles) north of

British and allies: Mahdists: 50 000 CASHAITIES British and allies: 430;

Mahdists: 30,000

2 September 1898

FORCES

Gordon was not avenged for 13 years (see above). An Anglo-Egyptian army invaded the Sudan in 1898, led by General Hubert Horatio Kitchener, commander-in-chief of the Egyptian army and an admirer of Gordon, with whom he shared many characteristics. The Mahdi had died in 1885, but his movement flourished under his successor, the Khalifa al-Taashi. Kitchener stationed his men in an arc, with cavalry on the flanks, backed by gunboats on the Nile. His advance was spearheaded by the 21st Lancers. The one-sided battle was won by machine guns and artillery, agains which spears and some old muskets offered little contest. The battle began at 6am with about 16,000 Mahdists, or Ansar, advancing against the centre. The British artillery

inflicted many casualties even before the Ansar came within range of the deadly Maxim guns, and none came within 45m (50 yards) of the British trenches. Kitchener advanced on Omdurman with the 21st

# Lancers, who included CAVALRY CHARGE

The 21st Lancers' charge swept away the last Sudanese resistance. Winston Churchill's vivid account of it in The River War showed admiration for the Mahdists' spirit

# DERVISH CHARGE

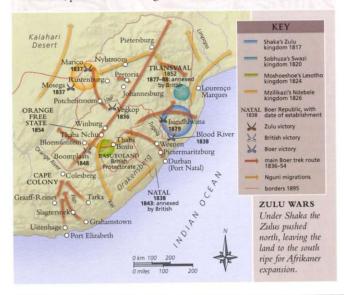
The British line lets off a volley against the onrushing mass of Mahdists. The slaughter inflicted on the Sudanese was appalling and the Mahdi's cause never recovered.

Winston Churchill, doubling as war correspondent of The Morning Post and captain of cavalry, leading the van in one of the last British cavalry charges. They unexpectedly encountered a substantial and particularly ferocious band of Mahdists concealed in a wadi, and won three Victoria Crosses (the top British award for gallantry). That apart, there was almost no close-quarters fighting and the battle was over before noon. Kitchener occupied Omdurman, the Mahdist capital. The Khalifa escaped but was killed the following year.





EUROPEAN EXPANSION IN SOUTH AFRICA was facilitated by political divisions and warfare amongst the African groups they encountered. Small groups linked to single leaders, often fighting against their own neighbours, were unable to resist the organized forces of the British and Afrikaners. The rise, under Shaka, of a Nguni-speaking clan into a great warrior nation, the Zulu, posed the most significant threat to the Europeans.



ZULU WARS OF CONQUEST

# Conquests of Shaka



Natal, South Africa

Zulus: 150,000; Others: unknown

DATE 1818-28

FORCES

CASUALTIES Unknown, but in tens of thousands

Shaka, whose name comes from an intestinal beetle and is sometimes known as "Africa's Attila", earned his reputation as a protégé of Dingiswayo, paramount chief of the Zulu. A man of impressive physical strength and military stature, Shaka rose to power after the murder of Dingiswayo (1816) and an ensuing contest for power with Zwide, the king's assassin. At first Shaka escaped defeat only through his adroit use of spies and a policy of "scorched earth" retreats. In 1819, Shaka's young warriors outmanoeuvred Zwide's exhausted and starving men in the Mhlatuze valley. Zwide escaped, but other survivors were incorporated in Shaka's army. From 1821 Shaka overran the whole of Natal, largely depopulating it in the process. The ripples spread, as defeated opponents carried the social dislocation further into central Africa. By 1824 Shaka ruled about 500,000 people (his original tribe numbered

about 2,000), and commanded 15 impis, or regiments. In 1827 he slaughtered thousands of people in a rage at the death of his mother. His attempts to contact European powers were thwarted, and he was considering an attack on European settlers in 1828, when he was murdered by his two half-brothers, one of whom, Dingaan, succeded him.

### ZULU WARRIORS

Three of Shaka's soldiers in battle dress. They carry the characteristic short stabbing spear and large shield.



# THE ZULU-BOER CONFLICT

# Blood River



16 December 1838 FORCES Zulus: about 10,000; Voortrekkers:

Natal, South Africa

CASHALTIES Zulus: about 3.000: Voortrekkers: 3 wounded

The Dutch colony at the Cape of Good Hope, founded in the 17th century, had within 150 years given rise to a new nation, the Afrikaners, with few links to Europe and speaking a language no longer quite Dutch. The British captured the Cape in 1793, and from 1820 British immigration increased rapidly. The Afrikaners (also known as "Boers") resented British legal restrictions and more liberal attitudes to black Africans. In 1835, determined to regain freedom from British control, about 12,000 men, women, children, and their servants the voortrekkers - embarked on the Great Trek. Both the high veldt and Natal appeared suitable for white settlement, their populations sparse as a result of the predations of Shaka. However, having been attacked in the

### VOORTREKKER MEMORIAL

The monument to the battle of Blood River features a reconstruction of the voortrekkers's wagon laager. The Zulus failed to penetrate it.

high veldt, the *voortrekkers* pressed on to Natal. In February 1838, a party of about 100 led by Piet Retief went to discuss the cession of land with Shaka's successor Dingaan, only to be brutally massacred. The battle of Blood River was the response to this disaster. When scouts reported the approach of a Zulu host, the voortrekkers, led by Andries Pretorius, drew up their wagons in a defensive circle (laager) on a skilfully chosen site near Blood (then Ncome)

"People will die, praises will remain, They will remain exposing them, They will remain mourning for them in the deserted kraals."

Magolwane ka Makhathini, Izibongo (praise-poem) on King Dingaan

river. They were vastly outnumbered but, apart from their toughness and determination, the voortrekkers had European rifles and guns. The Zulu, led by Dambuza and Nhlela, made a

series of attacks only to incur heavy casualties. Pretorius then took the offensive with a party of horsemen, and was one of the few voortrekkers hurt. The Zulus retreated, chastened.



### THE ANGLO-ZULU WAR

# Isandhlwana



Natal, South Africa

to consolidate all their possessions in southern Africa in one federation. The plan was pursued by Sir Bartle Frere, high commissioner in Cape Town. 22 January 1879 His ultimatum to Cetshwayo, the Zulu king, provoked a war. Lord British: 1,700 regulars, Chelmsford led a substantial armed 500 Africans; Zulus:



FORCES

22 000

In the late 1870s the British decided



### ISANDHLWANA

The British camp which the Zulus overran was sited at the foot of the hill. The terrain offers little cover, save for a spur to the north.

expedition into Zululand. He then divided his forces. leaving the veteran troops of the 1st

Battalion of the 24th Regiment at an unfortified advance camp at Isandhlwana, Scouting parties failed to establish the strength of the Zulus, some of whom had rifles. Led by Chiefs Ntshingwayo and Mavumengwana, the Zulus attacked and overwhelmed the British. No prisoners were taken and the 1st Battalion were slaughtered almost to the last man. Too late, Chelmsford arrived with reinforcements that evening at the scene of the disaster. For the Zulus it was not an unmitigated success, as they lost a large proportion of their young warriors.

# THIN RED LINE

Zulus close in for hand-tohand fighting with the British. The artist of this view of Isandhlwana has made the hill resemble the badge of the 24th Regiment.

# THE ANGLO-ZULU WAR Rorke's Drift



1879 FORCES British: 139; CASUALTIES

22-23 January

crossing, west of Ishandhiwana, Natal Zulu: 550

When Lord Chelmsford arrived at Isandlwana (see above), he could hear gunfire and see a red glow to the west where he had left 140 men to guard

the crossing at Rorke's Drift. They included patients in the column's hospital, a few unruly soldiers of the Natal kaffirs, who fled on sight of the enemy, and a handful of European civilians. About 100 men defended the post, including Lieutenant Bromhead of the 24th and Lieutenant Chard of the Royal Engineers. As the senior, Chard took command to face an attack by a large Zulu force led by Prince Dabulamanzi, which included

### HOSPITAL ABLAZE

The evacuation of the hospital at Rorke's Drift. Two privates were awarded the Victoria

men who had fought earlier the same day at Isandhlwana, With no chance of withdrawing, the British hastily created a 1.25m (4ft) rampart of grain bags and wagons. Charge succeeded charge and the British rifles inflicted many casualties, but their perimeter was steadily reduced to a circumference of about 150m (500ft). Hand-to-hand fighting, with long bayonets against spears, continued for

# VICTORIA CROSS Eleven Victoria Crosses were

awarded to the defenders of Rorke's Drift, the largest number given for any single engagement.

several hours. Although the British were defending from a higher level, they eventually began to tire. However, after ten hours' fighting, the Zulus retired shortly before dawn on 23 January. The extraordinary defence of Rorke's Drift cost just ten British lives.



# REVOLUTIONS

# THE SECOND BOER WAR

AFRIKANERS, OR BOERS ("FARMERS"), from Cape Colony founded the Orange Free State and Transvaal republics in the 1850s. Initial recognition by Britain was replaced by friction when gold and diamonds were discovered. Britain's annexation of the Transvaal in 1877 caused the First Boer (or Transvaal) War. In 1881 Transvaal regained its independence, but the European

scramble for colonies in Africa prompted further British annexations that left it isolated, Transvaal's President Kruger withheld the vote from uitlanders (foreigners), who thronged the booming state, leading Cape governor Cecil Rhodes to organize the Jameson Raid to support a non-existent uitlander rebellion. The outbreak of the Second Boer (or South Africa) War followed in October 1899.

# THE BOER WAR

# Boer Offensive



DATE October 1899-January 1900 FORCES Varied throughout campaign

southern Africa

CASUALTIES Heavier on

In 1899 Britain despatched 10,000 troops to quash a growing Boer revolt in Cape Colony. The Boer cavalry attacked before the reinforcements arrived, intending to spread the uprising and win a negotiated settlement. The Boers had no army, only mounted units called commandos. But they had been training for years, were disciplined, with elected officers and up-to-date artillery, as well as superior rifles (many provided by Germany). When the Boers invaded Natal, the outnumbered British forces withdrew to Ladysmith, which was cut off. Kimberley and

### ARTILLERY BOERS

Afrikaner troops man a howitzer outside Ladysmith in 1899. The town was subject to bombardment by 22 guns. It was relieved after a 4-month siege.

Mafeking were also besieged.

Sir Redvers Buller, although over 60, had wide experience of colonial wars and, being popular with his men, was the obvious choice to command the South African corps. His reputation was ruined for ever in "Black Week" of December 1899, when his forces, illprovided with cavalry and divided into three columns (each to relieve one of the three besieged towns), all suffered defeat. Buller was later replaced as commander-in-chief. The war had become a civil war, with many Afrikaners in the Cape taking up arms against the British. but the Boers were thinly spread and by the beginning of 1900 their offensive was running out of steam.



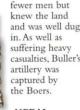
# THE BOER WAR Colenso



15 December 1899 FORCES British: 20,000: Afrikaners: 6,500

CASUALTIES miles) south of Afrikaners: 50

Of Buller's three columns (see above) one, bound for Mafeking, was defeated at Stormberg; the second, approaching Kimberley, at Magersfontein; the third, led by Buller himself in Natal, was defeated the same week by Louis Botha at Colenso, Botha had far



# MEDAL

The Queen's South Africa Medal was given to all the British soldiers who fought in the Boer wars.

# THE BOER WAR Spion Kop



OCATION About 30km CASUALTIES (20 miles) west of British: 2,000: Ladysmith, Natal Afrikaners: 200

Buller, the British commander in the Cape, made another attempt to relieve Ladysmith in January. He divided his large force into two, one part under General Sir Charles Warren. Speed

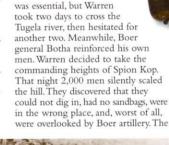
24 January 1900

British: 30,000;

Afrikaners:

FORCES

5.000







# MAUSER PISTOL AND HOLSTER The Mauser C-96 was manufactured in

Germany and supplied in large numbers to the Boers. It had a telescopic sight and a range of over 1,000m (1,100yds).

British came under heavy fire, to which they had no reply. Communications were poor, and Warren had little idea of what was happening. Reinforcements kept the hill in British hands, but at terrible cost. The Boers also lost heavily as they climbed the hill to engage at close quarters. By 4.30pm ooth sides were exhausted and both believed they were losing. Each withdrew from the hill, but Botha rallied his men, who then retook the summit, now manned only by corpses and Mohandas Gandhi - the future Indian leader - with his Indian stretcher-bearers. The Boers allowed Buller to retreat. He finally relieved Ladysmith on 28 February.

# DEAD ON THE HILL

Corpses of British dead lie in heaps on Spion Kop. Boer snipers picked off hundreds. THE BOER WAR

# Paardeberg



miles) SE of Kimberley Orange Free State

CASUALTIES British and Canadian: 1.100: In December 1899 Lord Roberts of

FORCES

British and

Boers: 5,000

Canadian: 6,000;

DATE 18-27 February 1900

Kandahar took over as British commander-in-chief in South Africa. with Kitchener as chief of staff. After relieving Kimberley (15 February). Roberts decided to strike at the Boer capitals. Kitchener trapped 5,000 Boers in a bend of the Modder river. where they were dug in on Paardeberg Hill. Kitchener ordered a direct attack on the Boer lines, despite a lack of on 5 June. After a victory at Komati

### CROSSING THE VELDT

British forces and supplies crossing the Modder river near Paardeberg, Robert's command of logistics has been criticized, but he was an extremely effective commander.

cover. The Boers opened fire at 100m (100vds), inflicting over 1,000 casualties and forcing a withdrawal. Roberts then resumed command and subjected the Boers to an eight-day artillery barrage. after which they surrendered. Roberts was undaunted by immense distances, lack of fodder, and a typhoid outbreak that caused 2,000 casualties. He was in Bloemfontein on 13 March, arrived at Johannesburg on 31 May, and Pretoria Poort (25 September), he returned to England, leaving Kitchener to tidy up.

was in such short "For 217 days the supply that the Africans, whose Boers tried to obtain rations were smaller Mafeking's surrender, than Europeans', were digging up but their strategy was dead horses to eat. futile owing to its Baden Powell set up a soup kitchen noble defender." that, oddly, ran at a profit, while a press William McGonagall,

The Relief of Mafeking

all ages... standing in lines, each olding an old blackened can...,

**BOER WAR RIFLES** 

that war with the British empire

republic was unprepared. Despite

a legal requirement, many Boers

rifles and 10 million cartridges

from Krupp, the German arms

was inevitable, and that his

THE BOER WAR

LOCATION

Northern Cape,

Relief of Mafeking

DATE 17 May 1900

British: 2,000

CASHAITIES

FORCES

2.000

Having relieved Kimberley in February

1900, Roberts detached a column to

siege since the beginning of the war.

It was to join with Rhodesian and

had organized the defence with the

élan that he would later bequeath to

conditions were growing grave. Food

Canadian cavalry on the way. In

the Boy Scout movement, but

undertake the relief of Mafeking, under

Mafeking itself, Colonel Baden Powell



# MAFEKING MONE

A £1 note issued during the siege of Mafeking. The gun depicted is a 4 1/2-in howitzer improvised from a drainpipe and nicknamed "The Wolf"

awaiting their turn to crawl painfully up to the soup kitchen..." When the relief column approached, Botha sent a force to intervene, but they were brushed aside, while the numbers of

Boers besieging the town had been reduced. A final Boer attack on the town on 11 May failed, and on 17 May Mafeking was relieved. The news set off almost hysterical celebrations in Britain, giving rise to the term "to maffick", or celebrate extravagantly. Baden Powell returned

'human frameworks of both sexes and home a hero and became the youngest major-general in the British army.

# THE BOER WAR

# Guerrilla War

captured, small detachments

ambushed. Boer leaders



May 1902 FORCES Varied throughout campaign

CASUALTIES Unknown, but high among Boer civilians

By mid-1900, with the conventional war lost, the Boer commandos turned to guerrilla warfare, harassing the British at every turn, Railway communications were constantly sabotaged, isolated outposts

BOER COMMANDOS

such as De Wet - who surrounded

Botha, De la Rev. Bevers, and the young Jan Smuts operated with

the outbreaks localized, adopted

harsher tactics. Kitchener, Roberts's

successor most notoriously moved

civilians into concentration camps.

Chains of blockhouses successfully

The guerrilla leaders evaded the

protected targets such as the railways.

a whole brigade at Frederickstad -

impunity. The British, unable to keep

From 1900 the Boers fought on as guerrillas. The British confiscated their property and placed their families in imps, where 28,000 died. and superior to the British Lee-



correspondent

described the

horror of the

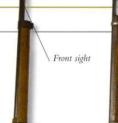
1897. First adopted in Germany, the Mauser was by far the most successful rifle of its day. The South African model 95 proved extremely accurate at long range

ROFR RIFLES

numbers to the Boers.

Mauser model 1895 rifle made by Loewe & Co for the Orange Free State (left). Krag Jørgensen model 1894 rifle manufactured for export to the Boer Republics (right).





# WARS OF IMPERIAL EXPANSION

OVER THE COURSE OF THE 19TH CENTURY the British and French extended their influence right around the globe, fighting a series of successful colonial wars in Asia, Africa, and Australasia. By the end of the century, their empires had reached their greatest extent. Meanwhile, the United States was asserting its dominance over regions it considered its

own. While the US did not seek a formal empire in the European manner, the Philippines, Puerto Rico, Cuba, and Panama were all under US control by the beginning of the 20th century. All three great powers shared a belief in their mission to spread their own particular versions of civilization across the world.

TASK FORCE

Seen here is the

large British force

### MPERIAL CONFLICTS

# First Burma War

1823-26

FORCES

British and Indian: 50 000: Burmese: 60 000



LOCATION Burma and Assam, India

CASUALTIES British and Indian: 20 000-Burmese: 10.000

In 1823 Burmese forces crossed the border into British-controlled India, capturing Assam. They were pursuing exiled rebels from the Burmese-held former kingdom of Arakan. Britain responded by declaring war on Burma on 24 February 1824. Assam was quickly retaken, and an Anglo-Indian force of 11,000 men was sent under General Archibald Campbell to



attack the Burmese capital, Rangoon, by sea, using a steamboat in war for the first time. Rangoon was taken and the Burmese forces fled into the jungle. From there, Commander Maha Bandula prepared to retake the capital and on 1 December stood before the city with 60,000 men, who were defeated two weeks later and forced to withdraw. Bandula was pursued and

landing at Rangoon on 11 May 1824.

of Lower Burma. In

year the Burmese sued for peace and lost Arakan to the British East India Company. This was the first of three conflicts, after which Britain would hold hegemonic sway over the Bay of Bengal.



# FRENCH CONQUEST OF VIETNAM

# Cochinchina



FORCES

Southern Vietnam

1858-62 French and Spanish force: unknown; Vietnamese:

CASHAITIES No reliable estimates

Known to the Vietnamese simply as Nam Ky (southern region), Cochinchina was invaded by the French emperor Napoleon III in 1858. The excuse was provided by the murder of French missionaries, but Napoleon was intent on building his empire and the region was strategically important for trade. French forces landed in the port of Tourane (present-day Danang), and from there marched on Saigon, which was taken a year later. Resistance against the invaders continued for another three years, but Vietnamese leaders had long been torn between adherence to a strict Confucianism and modernization, and as a result the country was weak and lacking in modern equipment. The simple weapons of the Vietnamese proved no match for western arms and they had little choice but to surrender. In 1862, Emperor Tu Duc signed over Nam Ky to the French, who renamed it Cochinchina in 1867. By 1882 the French had control over the whole of Vietnam, which

became, along with Laos and

Cambodia, part of French Indochina.

# PHILIPPINE-AMERICAN WAR

# US Conquest of Philippines



archipelago

DATE 1898-1902 FORCES US troops: unknown: Filining rebels: unknown CASUALTIES US troops

4.234 killed, 2.818 wounded; Filipino c.20,000 rebels killed

During the Spanish-American War of 1898, a US naval squadron entered Manila Bay on the morning of 1 May and trounced the Spanish fleet anchored there. By August US troops had occupied Manila itself, and December's Treaty of Paris, which ended the war, saw the islands bought from Spain by the US for \$20 million. A month later there began an insurrection against the new masters by Filipino rebels who had fought the Spanish and believed they had been promised independence. Led by Emilio Aguinaldo, the rebels fought a two-year campaign, which was brutally put down and ended when the captured Aguinaldo appealed to his countrymen to accept US rule. In 1902 President Roosevelt declared the insurgency over, although sporadio fighting continued for four years.

### BATTLE OF MANILA BAY

This picture captures the drama of the US fleet steaming into Manila Bay, guns blazing, and catching the Spanish off guard.

"To die today for cowardly Spain! This implies not only want of dignity... but also gross stupidity in weaving a sovereignty of frightened Spaniards over the heads of brave Filipinos."

> Emilio Aguinaldo, criticizing those who argued for siding with Spain against the US, 1898





### BRITISH VERSUS MAORI

# Maori Wars



LOCATION North sland. New Zealand

FORCES At Gate Pa: British: 1,700; Maori: CASUALTIES

At Gate Pa: British:

120; Maori: fewer than a dozen The First Maori War against British rule (1845-47) was suppressed by Governor George Grey, and the

### BATTLE OF GATE PA

The Maori were outnumbered and outgunned but their wily strategy suckered the British into complacency and defeat.

peace lasted 13 years. In 1860 the

Maori still owned most of North Island, but when Maori leader Te Teira sold his land in Taranaki without the consent of his people, war broke out. The war consisted of a series of sieges of Maori pas (fortified villages), and ended in Maori surrender, but hostilities broke out once more in Waikato. On 27 April 1864, the British mounted a siege on the Gate Pa, perhaps the strongest pa ever constructed, Maori general Rawiri Puhirake ordered his men to fire only occasional shots, leading the British to believe that Maori defences had been destroyed. The British stormed in. only to be overwhelmed by Maori warriors. It was a great victory and led the British to seek peace, but guerrilla warfare continued until 1872, when vast tracts of Maori land were confiscated.

### SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR

# US Victory in Cuba



LOCATION The island of Cuba in the

610 killed: Spanish forces: unknown US intervention in Cuba came after three years of civil war. This was Cuba's second war of independence led by the charismatic poet José Martí, and was notable for the use by

DATE February-

August 1898

the Spanish of concentration camps for the civilian population. By the 1890s the US had become Cuba's most important trading partner, and despite President McKinley's reluctance, gung-ho press coverage made intervention inevitable. The

excuse to invade was provided on 15 February 1898 with the sinking of the USS Maine in Havana harbour. The cause was unclear, but the effect was an immediate declaration in the US Congress of war on Spain. The war was pitifully one-sided, no more so than in the battle of Santiago in July, Land forces including Roosevelt's 1st Volunteer Cavalry, a mixture of adventurers known as the "Rough Riders", and African American regiments, the so-called "Buffalo Soldiers", captured Kettle Hill, then seized San Juan Hill. Surrounded, Spanish Admiral Pascual Cervera led his fleet out of Santiago harbour, and every single Spanish boat was sunk by US naval squadrons. Five months later Cuba officially won independence. In reality, and fulfilling Marti's worst fears, the island would be dominated by her giant neighbour, and effectively became a US protectorate.

# 1858-1919

# THEODORE ROOSEVELT

Teddy Roosevelt, the asthmatic son of a prominent New England family, was both a daring soldier and an accomplished naturalist. He secured his reputation fighting in Cuba, after which he was made William McKinley's running mate in the 1900 election. When McKinley was assassinated a year later, Roosevelt became president. True to his belief in America's duty to "civilize" the world, his years in office were characterized by forceful intervention abroad: 'Speak softly and carry a big stick



### ROUGH RIDE IN CUBA

Theodore Roosevelt is seen here with sabre drawn, leading a detachment of Rough Riders in a charge.



Edo (Tokyo) in 1853 and, backed by

trading treaties with Japan

onsiderable naval might, enforced US

# CHINA IN TURMOIL

THROUGHOUT THE 19TH CENTURY China's Qing dynasty was in terminal decline. Encroachments by European aggressors left China powerless to control its own economic policies and led to the loss of Vietnam to France and Hong Kong to Britain. Peasants were starving by their millions and the government was losing authority over its subjects, leading to open rebellion.

offer. The British East India Company

solved the resultant trade imbalance

opium imported into China iumping

through illegal sales to China of

Bengali opium - the amount of

from about 200 chests in 1729 to

rising numbers of addicts, the Oing

40,000 in 1838. Alarmed by the

The ultimate indignity came with defeat against Japan and the loss of influence in Korea and Taiwan. By the end of the century, all major ports and trade routes were under foreign control. Japan, not China, was now the great economic and military power in East Asia, and the Qing empire's days were clearly numbered.

FIRST OPIUM WAR Opium War



LOCATION Numerous

areas along the

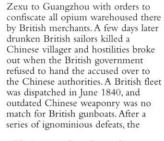
Chinese coast

September 1839-August 1842 FORCES Chinese: 1 million: British and Indian: 10.000

Indian: 10.000

government sent commissioner Lin CASUALTIES Chinese: 30,000: British and

By the 18th century a tremendous demand had developed in Europe for Chinese tea, silks, and pottery, but there was little desire in China for any of the goods Europe had to



conscience?"

Queen Victoria, 1839

"Let us ask, where is your



A British ship enters the port of Lintin, China, laden with opium. Britain's policy was profit-led and morally blind.

CHINA IN TURMOIL

Chinese were compelled to agree to the Treaty of Nanking whereby Hong Kong was handed over to British control, a humiliation that would be ended only when the island was given back to China in 1997. In addition, British subjects would now be tried under British law, not Chinese, for crimes committed on Chinese soil. Meanwhile, Lin was banished to Turkestan in disgrace. With all restrictions on British commercial activity lifted, the next three decades would see the opium trade more than double in value.

### THE STORMING OF AMOY

The 18th Regiment of Foot capture the port of Amoy as British forces progress along the Chinese coast.

# SECOND OPIUM WAR Arrow War



October 1856-August 1860 FORCES Chinese: 2 million; British and French: 50.000

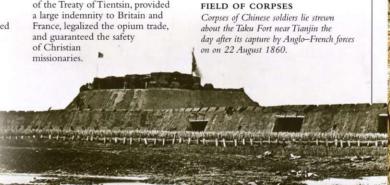
CASUALTIES Chinese: LOCATION Eastern China French: 4,000

Despite the lifting of trade restrictions after the First Opium War, opium officially remained illegal, and on 8 October 1856 Chinese officials boarded the Arrow, a ship flying the British flag and suspected of drug smuggling. This provided the British with the pretext to mount an invasion. Using the murder of a French missionary as an excuse. French forces joined with British under the command of Admiral Sir

Michael Seymour to occupy Guangdong. The Second Opium War had begun. The coalition sailed north and Seymour launched an attack on forts near Tianjin. Once more the Chinese were no match for the technologically superior Europeans, and the first phase of the war ended with the 1858 Treaty of Tientsin, A year later, China broke the truce by refusing to allow foreign legations in Beijing, prompting an Anglo-French assault on the city. Emperor Xianfeng fled and the Summer Palace was set alight on the orders of British commander Lord Elgin. Xianfeng now had little choice but to sign away further sovereignty in the Convention of Peking,

which ratified the terms

of the Treaty of Tientsin, provided a large indemnity to Britain and France, legalized the opium trade,



vastly outnumbered, Japan's modern

army scored overwhelming victories

on land and at sea. The battle of Yalu

river in August 1894, the largest naval

# Taiping Uprising



LOCATION 17 provinces of eastern China

more than 1 million; Government army: number unknown CASUALTIES Taiping, government, and civilian combined deaths: c.20 million

DATE 1850-64

FORCES Taiping army:

Rural China in the mid 19th century was fertile ground for cults preaching salvation from the "foreign" Manchu (Qing) regime. Hung Hsiu-chuan, the son of a poor farmer near Canton, was to provide the focal point for this discontent. After studying under a Southern Baptist preacher, Hung proclaimed himself to be Christ's younger brother, sent by God to rid the earth of demons. Soon afterwards he founded the God Worshippers' Society among the impoverished peasants of Kwangsi, and proclaimed a new dynasty, the Taiping Tien-kuo (Heavenly Kingdom of Great Peace). Promising the overthrow of the Qing government, the Taiping ranks soon

welled from a few thousand to an

army of over a million disciplined and fanatical soldiers, which swept north through the Yangtze river valley and captured the great central city of Nanking. There, Hung banned gambling, drugs, and prostitution, and declared men and women equal. There was dissent in the ranks, however, and Hung, now called Tien-wang or Heavenly King, faced repeated challenges to his authority. Yang, the Taiping minister of state, attempted a coup and he and thousands of his followers were murdered. Another general, Shih, fearing for his life, fled taking tens of



thousands with him. In 1860, in an attempt to regain unity and power, the Taipings attacked Shanghai, where they were repulsed by the Chinese, western-trained "Ever-Victorious Army" under US General Frederick Ward. When Ward was killed, the Beijing authorities asked British General Charles Gordon to replace him, and it was under Gordon's command that government forces laid siege to Nanking in 1864. At least 100,000 Taiping soldiers preferred death to capture, and Hung himself took poison. The rebellion was finally quashed, but Qing authority had been

large parts of the country. Both the Chinese Communists and the Chinese Nationalists of the 20th century trace their origins to the Taipings.

# PEOPLE'S HEROES

A memorial in Beijing depicts scenes of the Taiping Rebellion and of Lin Zexu destroying opium. The pioneers in the foreground are suitably respectful.

### 1835-1885

(see p241).

# GENERAL CHARLES GORDON

Charles Gordon served in the Crimea before seeing service in China. After leading government forces in the suppression of the Taiping Rebellion, the emperor promoted Gordon to the prestigious rank of titu after his recapture of Nanking, earning him the nickname "Chinese Gordon". A varied career followed involving service all over the British empire. In 1885 he was killed in Sudan while defending Khartoum against the



DATE August 1883-June 1885

At Fuzhou: French: 6

cruisers; Chinese: 6

CASUALTIES Chinese: 6

cruisers sunk with

heavy casualties

FORCES

cruisers

CRUISER CLASH

TONKIN WAR

Northern Vietnam

With the southern Vietnamese

provinces of Cochinchina already

into areas under Chinese control.

China responded by sending forces

under their control, in the 1880s the

French began to encroach northwards

Tonkin War

Here, the French machine gunship Revolver has blown up a Chinese cruiser in Tuyen Quang province, Vietnam. core of Tonkin in northern Vietnam. Both sides accused the other of aggression, and French captain Henri Laurent Rivière was sent into Hanoi, the administrative centre of Tonkin, to evict the "Black Flag Pirates", Chinese irregular troops who were occupying the city. Rivière expelled the Chinese but was killed in a counterattack. French reinforcements arrived and quickly won a series of battles, forcing the Chinese viceroy to negotiate an agreement under which the area would become a joint Sino-

French protectorate. When the

agreement was rejected in Paris,

China declared war, confident that

into the river delta that formed the

its newly equipped army would repel the invaders. Chinese ground forces led by Chang Chih-tung held off French incursions into southern China, but the hard reality about Chinese modernization was exposed in the battle of Fuzhou in August 1884. In the space of half an hour, an entire new fleet of Chinese cruisers was utterly destroyed by French naval firepower and

torpedo boats. China had no choice but to surrender both Tonkin and Annam further south to the French. SINO-JAPANESE WAR

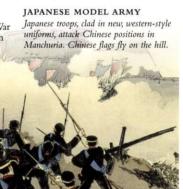
# Sino-Japanese War



LOCATION Korea and Manchuria

DATE August 1894engagement, was typical of the conflict. The Chinese were ill-April 1895 prepared, their munitions old and FORCES .lananese: badly maintained. Two of their boats 8,000; Chinese: burst into flames as a result of too number unknown but much paint and varnish having been much larger applied to them. General ineptitude CASUALTIES No reliable combined with superior Japanese tactical awareness to seal the Chinese fleet's fate. Japan's victory heralded the

Just 20 years after it had begun to modernize, Japan was ready to flex its military muscles. Korea, a Chinese protectorate, had long been attractive to the Japanese, and the failure of a pro-Japanese coup there in 1894 prompted Japan to send in troops. War was declared on China and although



# BOXER REBELLION

# Boxer Rebellion



LOCATION Beijing and consurrounding area 2

November 1899— August 1900 FORCES Multinational force: 18,000; Rebels: number unknown

CASUALTIES Foreigners: 229 killed; Rebels: no reliable estimates

The "Boxers" was a name given to a secret society known as the I-ho chuan ("Righteous and Harmonious Fists") after their use of boxing rituals that they believed would make them impervious to bullets. The Boxers

targeted foreigners - especially missionaries - and their strength in northern China grew along with foreign aggression in the area. Their message soon made its way to Beijing. In 1898, the new government persuaded the Boxers to support the Qing dynasty against foreign influence. By 1899, bands of Boxers were roaming the countryside around Beijing and, with the implicit backing of the Dowager Empress, Christians were attacked and churches burned. In June 1900 a multinational force was sent in to quell the rebellion. They were repelled by imperial troops and the Empress Dowager ordered the killing of all foreigners. Among others, a German minister and a

Japanese diplomat were killed. A larger force finally captured Beijing in August, saving the foreigners and Chinese Christians who had been holed up inside the city's Catholic cathedral. The Dowager Empress fled to the country and left her princes to negotiate a itter peace. All antiforeignism was to be suppressed and foreign troops would now be stationed at every important junction

between Beijing and Shanghai. The Qing empire's humiliation was total.



FOREIGN INTRUSION

The sight of American troops marching through the Fobidden City in Beijing was a severe blow to Chinese national pride.

### SWORD AGAINST BULLET

These ornate Chinese swords date from the time of the rebellion. Sadly, neither swords nor faith made the Boxers impervious to bullets.



# BATTLE OF TZAKI

This fresco depicts the repulsion of the Taiping by the Ever-Victorious Army at the battle of Tzaki, August 1862. The

# THE RISE OF JAPANESE POWER

THE RESTORATION OF THE JAPANESE EMPEROR in 1868, after centuries of rule by the Tokugawa shogunate, was followed by reforms aimed at building a strong centralized administration. These changes, and in particular the abolition of the samurai monopoly of arms and the establishment of a European-style army, led to rebellions even among those who had helped

overthrow the Tokugawa. Opposition to the new order was ruthlessly crushed. Once the country had been unified, the new conscript army's first targets were mineral-rich neighbour Korea and Chinese Manchuria. Japan defeated first China and then Russia to secure them. Its transformation from a closed feudal society into an industrialized world power was complete.

# WARS OF THE MEIJI RESTORATION

September 1877

Imperial: 34,000 plus

marines and police; Satsuma: 20-40,000

Satsuma: only 400

samurai survived

DATE January 1868-May 1869

Shogunate:

Choshu: 5.000

15,000; Satsuma and

FORCES

CASUALTIES

# Satsuma Revolt



LOCATION Southern Kyushu

The Satsuma clan played a key role in the Meiji Restoration (see below) but refused to accept plans for a standing army structured along European lines. In early 1877 Saigo Takamori, their leader, angry at the rejection of his proposal for an invasion of Korea, marched on Kumamoto Castle in

southern Kyushu. The government responded swiftly, sending a unit to disarm the rebels, then, when they refused to back down, the full army to crush them. The conflict dragged on for six months, until the battle of Shiroyama in September. The mainly conscript Imperial army was well equipped and organized. Saigo's troops, with just a white cloth tied to their arms to identify themselves, fought with their swords. They also had Enfield rifles, but these were no match for modern heavy artillery and they were blasted to pieces. The

### WARRIORS FROM KAGOSHIMA

old samurai order was finished.

The Satsuma, hard pressed by Imperial forces, recruited a female army, who fought with the naginata, a traditional bladed weapon



### WARS OF THE MEIJI RESTORATION

# Boshin War



LOCATION Islands of onshu and Hokkaido,

CASUALTIES No reliable

Sporadic conflict between the ruling Tokugawa shogunate and reformist elements intent on restoring the emperor to power had dragged on for years. By September 1867, armies loyal to the Bakufu (the Tokugawa's central administration) were hard pressed by reformist forces. To avoid civil war, the Tosa clan proposed a compromise whereby the shogun Yoshinobu would step down, but retain his privileges in a new parliament responsible to the emperor. Yoshinobu seeing a chance to avert war while keeping de facto control, promptly resigned. Concerned that the Tokugawa would dominate the new parliament, the heads of the rebellious clans, Saigo Takamori of the Satsuma and Kido Kion of Choshu, informed four other clans the Owari, Echizen, Tosa and Hiroshima - of their intention to

# seize the palace in NOGI MARESUKE

The new Japanese army had officers such as Nogi, who fought at Port Arthur.



Kyoto. Saigo's troops took the palace on 3 January 1868 and responsibility for the country's government reverted immediately to the Meiji emperor.

Yoshinobu attacked Kyoto but, despite outnumbering the Satsuma and Choshu armies and support from French military advisers, his forces were routed in the first battle near Toba and fled to Edo. During the weeks that

followed, an evergrowing Imperial army advanced eastwards, securing oaths of loyalty from local daimyo (barons) as they went. Faced with such opposition,

### MANCHURIAN MARCH

Japanese troops during the 1894-95 war with China, which left Port Arthur briefly in Japanese hands, before its lease to Russia.

Yoshinobu surrendered before a shot was fired. The seat of government was moved to Edo (now renamed Tokyo) and the Meiji era began. The Aizu clan still resisted, however. Despite the mismatch between the Imperial army's western-made arsenal and the Aizu's Japanese blades, it took a month of fighting to suppress them, ending with the mass suicide of the Aizu's elite warriors. The final resistance was ended in May 1869 when the selfdeclared republic of Ezo, set up on Hokkaido by a former Bakufu official, was crushed by Meiji forces.

# RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR

# Siege of Port Arthur

August 1904-

January 1905



ushun, Liaotung eninsula Manchuria

Russian: 40,000 CASUALTIES Japanese: 60,000 Russian: 40,000

At the end of the Boxer Rebellion (see p251) Russia was left in occupation of the Liaotung peninsula, including Port Arthur. In 1903, when Russia eneged on an agreement to withdraw from the area, Japan, fearful of further encroachments and growing in military confidence, decided to attack. In a tactic that would be repeated at Pearl Harbor in 1941, the Russo-Japanese War began with a Japanese torpedo attack on Russia's Pacific Squadron at Port Arthur. Land forces under General Nogi Maresuke encircled Russian positions and a long siege began. The harbour was surrounded by 22 Russian forts protected by lines of trenches. barbed wire, and Maxim guns. Search lights, grenades, and poison gas were used for the first time by the Japanese. Unused to this new style of mechanized warfare, both sides floundered until Nogi finally realized that the key lay in taking the hill overlooking the harbour. Wave upon wave of Japanese were mown down by machine gun fire as they climbed the steep hill, which was eventually taken at a cost of nearly 20,000 lives. A month later, in January 1905, the

Russian garrison finally surrendered.

### RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR

# Mukden



LOCATION Modern-day CASUALTIES Japanese: 71,000; Shenyang, southern Manchuria, China Russians: 89,000

While the siege of Port Arthur dragged on, Japanese land forces quickly overran Korea and pushed northwards into Manchuria, Defeat at Fuhsien and Liaovang in the summer of 1904 forced the Russians back to Mukden, the capital city of Manchuria, where they were reinforced via the Trans-Siberian Railway. In March the following year, when Japanese reinforcements arrived after the taking of Port Arthur, the decisive battle for Mukden began. Fresh troops of the

10 March 1905

Japanese: 270,000;

Russians: 330,000

FORCES

### MOSIN NAGANT RIFLE

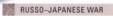
This style of rifle, introduced in 1891, saw extensive service in the Russo-Iapanese War. It was still in use in the 1960s.

### WINTER WAR

An assault on a bridge during the Battle of Mukden. The freezing conditions in the Manchurian winter claimed many lives.

Japanese Fifth Army crossed the mountains west of the city and attacked the Russian left flank. A few days later the main attack on the centre of Russian lines began and the Japanese Fourth Army appeared on the Russian right flank. The fighting lasted for 19 days as huge numbers of Japanese were repelled by Russian machine-gun fire. A distinctive feature in this and other battles in the Russo-Japanese War was the use of forward observers linked by telephone to gunners who would fire on targets beyond their visual range. It was no longer necessary to see the enemy in order to kill him. Unable to resist the flanking armies, the Russian defensiv line was curved backwards. The Russian commander, General Kuropatkin, anxious not to be totally surrounded, ordered a general retreat to the north. Mukden was evacuated and the retreat broke the stalemate in the land war, which had now effectively been won by the Japan





# Tsushima



and Japan

FORCES Japanese: 4 battleships, 27 cruisers Russian: 11 hattleshins

over 20 other ships CASUALTIES Japanese: 117 dead: Russian: 4.380 dead, 21 ships sunk

Hoping to overwhelm the Japanese navy through sheer numbers, the Russian government despatched its entire Baltic fleet to the Far East in October 1904. The old problem of

Manchuria being such a huge distance from European Russia, which had plagued the Russians' war effort oughout, resurfaced again. The coalfired warships were not designed for long voyages, and the 144,000km-(18,000-mile) journey took seven months, by which time Port Arthur had fallen and the only harbour the

the Japanese-

enemy at Okinoshima. Through poor seamanship, Rozhdestvenski failed to form his fleet into a single battle line Russians still held was and when the two forces engaged Togo Vladivostok. To get there was easily able to outmanoeuvre him. before the coal ran out, The Japanese fleet was faster and better armed and two-thirds of the Russian the commander of the Russian fleet, Admiral fleet was sunk. Its navy in ruins and Rozhdestvenski, decided faced with increasing political unrest at home, the Russian government to sail right through was forced to sue for peace. Russia withdrew from Manchuria and Japan Strait, With lights regained control of Korea.

dimmed, the fleet pushed deep into the straits unnoticed until the hospital ship Orel, lit up as international law demanded, was spotted by a Japanese MANCHURIA RUSSIA patrol. Admiral Togo, commanding the Japanese fleet, sailed out to engage the KEY Qing China



# NAVAL DISASTER

Here, Russian warships are shown sinking. The Japanese sunk more than 20 Russian ships at Tsushima, leaving the fleet crippled.

# MODERNIZATION

The Prussians set the pace for military modernization with the development of a highly professional general staff responsible for the planning and execution of large-scale warfare. All European armies were forced to follow their example. Far from being reactionary, most European military leaders sought new technologies that would give them the edge in battle. The development of airships and winged aircraft in the early 20th century, for example, was to a large extent driven by the armed forces' interest in their military potential. Great arms factories such as Schneider in France and Krupp in Germany mass-produced ever more powerful artillery pieces and ever more efficient rifles and machine guns. High explosive shells and smokeless propellants took over from solid shot

### 1820-1910

### FLORENCE NIGHTINGALE

British nursing reformer Florence Nightingale won fame as the "Lady with the Lamp" who improved the conditions of wounded soldiers in hospitals at Scutari during the Crimean War. She campaigned relentlessly for the reform of army sanitary arrangements, taking a special interest in the British army in India. Her influence stretched far beyond Britain and she was associated with the International Red Cross after its foundation in 1864. Thanks to her achievements, combat deaths in the 20th century for the first time exceeded deaths



# EARLY ZEPPELIN

and gunpowder. Naval forces were

transformed from wooden sailing

ships with cannon to steam-driven

ironclads with guns mounted in

rotating turrets.

An early version of the Zeppelin airship is tested. The military implication of such machines was immediately appreciated.



# The Dreyse breech-loading

rifle was adopted by the Prussian army in 1841.

# UNLIMITED ENDS

The European wars of the 1848–71 period were in some ways deceptive. Prussia's swift victories over Austria in 1866 and France in 1870–71 appeared to show that modern armies could be effective instruments for fighting limited wars for limited political ends, in line with contemporary thinking. But the battle of Solferino and the battles of the Crimean War showed another side of the coin – how improved firearms and artillery were already making infantry or cavalry attacks on defensive positions increasingly costly, and how the expanding scale of battles could make decisive manoeuvres hard to accomplish and effective command almost impossible to exercise. Rather, the policies of Europe's major powers after 1871 implied a belief

in sheer numbers (hence the stress on larger and larger conscript armies) and the industrial might to back them up.

### ARMS FACTORIES

The Krupp armament factories at Essen, Germany, pioneered the manufacture of steel artillery.



# SLIDE TO WAR

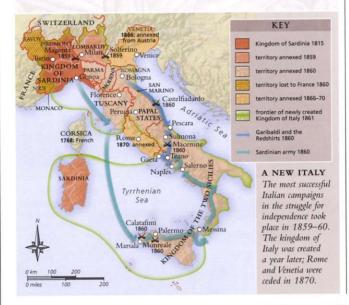
Maintaining peace and limiting the destructiveness of war were subjects much discussed in Europe before 1914 – the time of the Hague peace conferences and the first Nobel Peace Prize, but European states were thoroughly geared up for conflict. The Franco-Prussian War of 1870–71 was the pivotal point of the period. The creation of a dominant German state via the calculated use of Prussian military.

state via the calculated use of Prussian military power left France desperate for revenge and desperately aware of weakness. Once France was allied with Russia, and Germany with Austria, the scene was set for a general conflict that many European leaders came to view as inevitable.

### PEACE DELEGATES

Delegates from 26 countries meet for a peace conference at the Hague in 1899. They discussed issues such as banning the use of poison gas and aerial bombardment.





WARS OF ITALIAN INDEPENDENCE

# First Custoza



FORCES Austrians: 33,000; Piedmontese: 22,000 CASUALTIES

northern Italy

In March 1848 Milan staged an uprising against Austrian occupation and King Carlo Alberto of Piedmont declared war on Austria. Venice also

declared its independence of Austria. The Austrian marshal Josef Radetzky withdrew his forces from Milan but took up a defensive position based on the four forts known as the Quadrilateral: Verona, Mantua, Peschiera, and Legnano. The Piedmontese succeeded in taking Peschiera after a siege, but Radetzky meanwhile received substantial reinforcements. In July Alberto led an army across the Mincio river and set out to occupy the hill town of

Custoza, Radetzky responded with a

crushingly superior concentration of

The two sides met

village of Magenta.

attacked from the

west across a canal

forces under

while larger French

General MacMahon

Limited French forces

in an unplanned

encounter at the

forces; in a two-day battle he inflicted a painful defeat on the Piedmontese, the Austrians taking Custoza at bayonet point. Radetzky went on to reoccupy Milan and drove the Piedmontese out of Lombardy, When war was resumed in March 1849 after an armistice, Radetzky again defeated Piedmont at Novara, causing Carlo Alberto to abdicate in favour of his son Vittorio Emanuele. Venice also fell to the Austrians after a siege in August 1849, restoring Austrian authority throughout its Italian territories. Radetzky's generalship so enthused the Austrians that Johann Strauss I wrote a famous march in his honour.



BATTLE SCENE

This impression of the first battle of Custoza depicts a Piedmontese fieldcannon battery in operation.

# WARS OF ITALIAN INDEPENDENCE



REVOLUTION

DATE 4 June 1859 FORCES French and Austrians: 58.000 CASUALTIES French and Piedmontese: 4,600

Lombardy northern Italy French emperor Napoleon III made a secret treaty with King Vittorio Emanuele II of Piedmont to support him in a war against Austria. In April 1859 the

Austrians stumbled into a confrontation with Piedmont killed, wounded, or missing; Austrians: 58.000 that gave France a pretext for military intervention. The efficiency of the French railway allowed Napoleon to move 130,000 men and a similar number of horses to the war zone, the

# "The battle of Magenta will count among the most glorious victories of the French army."

General MacMahon, reporting to Napoleon III, 5 June 1859

approached from the north. However, MacMahon's progress was slow and confused, leaving French troops on the canal bridges to hold off far superior Austrian forces through most of the day. The élan of the French soldiers overcame the chaos of command and late in the day MacMahon's men fought their way into Magenta, clearing the Austrians out in house-to-house fighting. The French victory was followed by the capture of Milan.

# WARS OF ITALIAN INDEPENDENCE

# Siege of Rome



9 February-3 July 1849 FORCES Roman republic 20,000; French: 8,000 CASHAITIES

In February 1849 Italian radicals declared a Roman republic, deposing Pope Pius IX as ruler of the city. The king of Naples and French president Louis Napoleon - the future emperor Napoleon III - sent troops to reinstate the pope. The republic installed a ruling triumvirate, including the famous Italian nationalist Giuseppe Mazzini, to organize the defence of the city. On 27 April they were joined by Giuseppe Garibaldi's legion, a force of irregulars armed with muskets, lances, and daggers. Garibaldi's imposing presence inspired the defenders, who prepared to defend Rome against the French army under General Nicolas Oudinot. On 29 April an initial French infantry assault was repulsed; the forces of the king of Naples were equally driven off. After a month's passive siege, the French resumed the battle for the city on 3 June. A final assault broke through the defences on the night of 29-30 June. Garibaldi led 4,000 volunteers out of the city before the French formally entered on 3 July.

### WARS OF ITALIAN INDEPENDENCE

# Solferino



Piedmontese: 160,000; Austrians: 160,000 Piedmontese: 17.300.

DATE 24 June 1859

FORCES French and

After their defeat at Magenta, Austrian bridges to slow the French and Piedmontese pursuit. over formal command of the army from Gyulai. Early on the morning of 24 June French troops unexpectedly encountered Austrians around the village of Solferino; Napoleon III had believed the enemy was on the other side of the Mincio river. A confused but bloody conflict ensued, spread over a wide area. French foreign legionaries and Zouaves played a prominent part in fighting that lacked any clear overall plan or control. In the village of Solferino itself, Austrians

### ZOUAVES IN ACTION

French Zouaves advance with bayonets fixed at Solferino. Immediately recognizable by their exotic uniform, Zouaves were an elite light infantry in the French army.

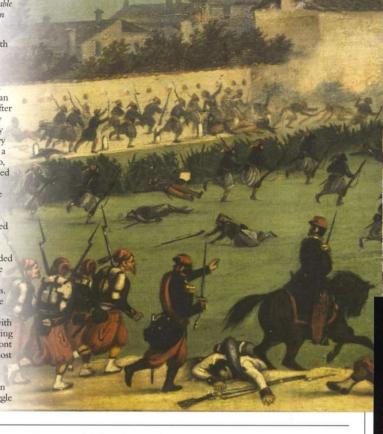
costly assaults. The rifle muskets with which both sides were equipped firing Minié bullets - showed their deadly effectiveness. The French deployed around 400 rifled cannon that proved far more destructive than the Austrian smoothbore artillery. After nine hours of savage combat (many defenceless wounded were allegedly

shot or bayonetted where they lay). Franz Joseph ordered a retreat across the Mincio which was accomplished with competence. Happening upon the battle scene, Swiss

businessman Henri Dunant was horrified by the spectacle of the wounded lying untended. This provided him with the impulse for founding the International Red Cross. Japoleon, in part because he was sickened by the slaughter, made peace with Franz Joseph the following month, allowing Piedmont to take possession of most of Lombardy. France's

limited achievement outraged Italian nationalists, who continued the struggle for independence from Austria.

acceptance of this



### 1807-1882

# GIUSEPPE GARIBALDI

The son of a sailor, Guiseppe

Garibaldi fled Piedmont after participating in an unsuccessful insurrection at Genoa in 1834. The next 14 years of his life were spent in South America, where he gained plentiful experience of guerrilla warfare. In 1848 he returned to take part in the Italian nationalist revolution. His role in the defence of the Roman republic in 1849 and, above all, in the invasion of Sicily in 1860 is legendary. He last fought as head of an Italian legion supporting the French republic in the Franco-Prussian War of 1870-71.



# WARS OF ITALIAN INDEPENDENCE

# Garibaldi's Redshirts

No reliable

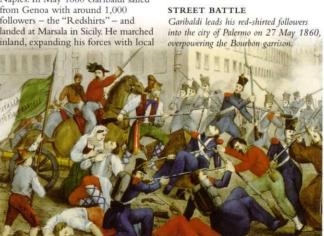


LOCATION Sicily and

estimates Sicily and southern Italy were ruled by the Bourbon king Francis II from Naples. In May 1860 Garibaldi sailed from Genoa with around 1 000 followers - the "Redshirts" - and anded at Marsala in Sicily. He marched

force at Calatafimi before occupying Palermo. Support from the British navy allowed Garibaldi to cross back to the mainland in August. Naples fell almost without a fight and Garibaldi defeated the Neapolitans again at Volturno on 26 October. The Redshirts then joined Piedmontese forces advancing south to besiege Francis II's remaining troops in Gaeta, which surrendered in February 1861. The next month a united kingdom of Italy was established under Vittorio Emanuele II, but still excluding Rome and Venice.

volunteers, and defeated a Neapolitan



DATE 24 June 1866 FORCES CASUALTIES LOCATION

The Italians seized the opportunity

WARS OF ITALIAN INDEPENDENCE

Second Custoza

northern Italy

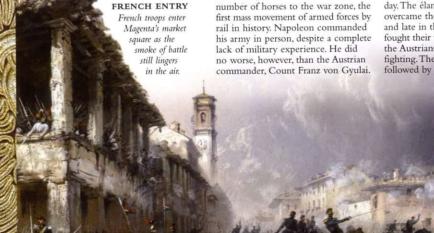
presented by the Prusso-Austrian War to declare war on Austria in 1866, with the intention of annexing Venetia. The Italian army was a composite force that included a contingent of Garibaldi's troops. Commanded by King Vittorio Emanuele and his general Alfonso La Marmora, the Italians crossed the Mincio to invade Venetia. Austrian troops under Archduke Albert marched west from Verona to the north of the Italians, attempting to wheel behind them and cut them off from the rear. This manoeuvre failed and a confused battle resulted. The Austrians' rifled artillery outperformed the Italian smoothbore guns, and an improvised charge by Austrian lancers sustained heavy losses but unnerved the Italians. The Austrians were victorious, but neither this nor an Austrian naval

victory at Lissa made any difference,

Austrians to cede Venetia in any case.

since defeat by Prussia obliged the

Italians: 125,000; Italians: 8,000 killed, wounded, or missing; Austrians: 5,600 killed, wounded, or missing





Northern Italy

CASHAITIES French and of which 2,500 killed: Austrians: 22 000 of which 3 000 killed

forces retreated eastwards, destroying Emperor Franz Joseph took

FRANZ JOSEPH Emperor Franz Joseph. youthful at Solferino. was still Austria's ruler took up position behind a thick

during World War I. cemetery wall from which they were dislodged only after repeated and

# RISE OF THE GERMAN EMPIRE

BETWEEN 1864 AND 1871, Prussia's chief minister Otto von Bismarck led his country into three wars that resulted in the unification of Germany under the Prussian king. First came a brief, one-sided conflict with Denmark in which Prussia took over the duchies of Schleswig and Holstein; then, in alliance with Italy, the Seven Weeks War with Austria in 1866 that gave Prussia dominance over the smaller German states; and finally a war with France that concluded with the provinces of Alsace and Lorraine integrated into a new German empire. The main instrument of Prussian victory was an army led by a professional general staff, skilled in mobilization via railway networks and committed to decisive offensive warfare.

move. Its onslaught from the flank

forced Benedek to withdraw. The

sought a ceasefire three weeks later.

needle guns, mow down Austrian infantry

in the Svib Forest on the Prussian left.

Austrian emperor Franz Joseph

Prussian troops, firing their Dreyse

SPIKED HELMET

Prussia adopted the "Pickelhaube"

purely decorative. This headgear

was worn until World War I.

caught up with the

battle. The Prussians

cut off the Verdun

to withdraw

road and Bazaine

ordered his men

eastwards towards

FAST-FIRING RIFLES

SEVEN WEEKS WAR

# Sadowa



LOCATION Between Königgrätz and Sadowa, Bohemia

FORCES Austrians and allies: 240,000; Prussians: 245,000 CASUALTIES Austrians and allies: 38,000 killed or wounded: Prussians: 9,500

DATE 3 July 1866

When Austria declared war on Prussia in June 1866, Prussian chief of staff Helmuth von Moltke set in motion a bold offensive. Making maximum use of railways, the Prussians rapidly advanced over 200,000 men to the border. On the principle of "march divided, fight united", Moltke split his forces into three field armies - the Army of the Elbe and the First and

Second Armies. The Austrians, commanded by Ludwig Benedek, dawdled indecisively while the heavy losses on Austrian infantry Austrians positioned on high ground near the fortress of Königgrätz, Moltke's plan was for his Elbe and First Armies to restrain the Austrians while his Second Army delivered a crushing blow to the right flank. The day of the battle brought driving rain and near disaster for the Prussians. Through a breakdown in communications, the Second

"This policy cannot succeed through speeches and songs; it can only be carried out through blood and iron."

Chancellor Otto von Bismarck, 1886

Prussians thrust southwards. Armed with breech-loading rifles and fighting in small units, the Prussians inflicted attacking in dense columns. The three Prussian armies converged upon the

Army did not receive the order to attack. The Elbe

# FRANCO-PRUSSIAN WAR

# Metz



FORCES Prussians and allies: 188,000; French: 113,000

CASUALTIES Prussians and allies: 21,000 killed or wounded French: 13,000 killed

DATE 16-18 August 1870

After Bismarck manipulated French emperor Napoleon III into a declaration of war against Prussia in July 1870, the Prussians and their German allies mobilized rapidly, concentrating 300,000 men in three armies on the French border by the end of the month. The French forces, assembled in confusion to meet this threat, were armed with the Chassepot rifle, with an effective range of 1,500m (4,920ft) to the German Dreyse rifle's 600m (1,970ft). and the Mitrailleuse, an early

# DEATH RIDE

Prussian cavalry under von Bredow charge the French guns at Marsla-Tour on 16 August 1870. Half the force of 800 failed to return.

machine gun. However, Prussian breech-loading artillery was far superior to French muzzle-loaders. In early encounters the Prussians suffered substantial casualties but forced the French to retreat through outflanking moves. Bazaine, in command of the French left wing in Lorraine, was a courageous officer out of his depth. In mid-August his forces west of Metz withdrew towards Verdun to avoid being encircled. As they headed westwards,

they ran into a corps of the Prussian Second Army at Mars-la-Tour. Taken by surprise and greatly imbered, the Prussians risked annihilation if the French pressed von Bredow disrupted

and First Armies attacked at dawn but

were greatly outnumbered. By 11am

their attack had stalled and they were

driven back. The Prussians were saved

by Benedek's inertia in failing to press

superiority of their rifles and artillery.

home a counterattack and by the

In the early afternoon the Second

Army at last received the order to

from any bold initiatives until the

main Prussian forces

helmet in 1842. The spike was an attack. A desperate cavalry charge under French artillery and deterred the French

> Metz, taking up a strong defensive osition from Gravelotte in the south to St Privat in the north. On 18 August the Prussians attacked in force, suffering appalling losses advancing over open ground nto French infantry fire. But Bazaine failed to organize a counterattack as the Prussians faltered. Eventually, with Saxon troops taking St Privat and threatening to outflank the French right, Bazaine withdrew into Metz. The French had won a defensive battle on balance of casualties but suffered a decisive strategic defeat. Besieged inside Metz, Bazaine's forces were in effect removed from the war and

> > capitulated in October 1870.

FRANCO-PRUSSIAN WAR

# Sedan



Sedan, on the Meuse river

1-2 September 1870 FORCES Prussians: 200,000: French: 120,000 CASUALTIES Prussians: 9.000 casualties: French: 200 000 killed, wounded. or taken prisoner



### DEFENDING THE FLAG

A French engraving celebrates the heroism of the country's soldiers in defeat. They were badly let down by their senior officers. The French Army of Châlons under Patrice MacMahon, with Emperor Napoleon III in attendance, set out to relieve Bazaine in Metz. However, they were driven into a loop of the Meuse at Sedan and there encircled by Moltke. On 1 September Prussian guns positioned on hills overlooking Sedan mercilessly battered the French from beyond the range of any artillery response. The wounded MacMahon was replaced first by Auguste Ducrot,

then by Emmanuel de

Wimpffen, but neither could co-ordinate attempted breakouts. French cavalry distinguished themselves by their bravery in charging the Prussian lines near the village of Floing, but these were futile gestures in the face of concentrated infantry firepower. An observer commented of the slaughter of one body of horsemen that "so thorough a destruction by a single volley" had never been witnessed.

"Who can describe the consternation written on every face...the siege of the newspaper kiosks, the triple line of readers gathering around every gas lamp?... Then there is the menacing roar of the crowd, in which stupefaction has begun to give way to anger. Next there are great crowds moving along the boulevards and shouting, 'Down with the Empire!""

### WITNESS TO WAR

# **EDMOND DE GONCOURT**

Famous diarist Edmond de Goncourt describes the reaction of the Parisian people as news of the defeat at Sedan filters through. The capitulation at Sedan was followed on 4 September by the overthrow of Napoleon III's Second Empire and the proclamation of a republic in Paris.

With his forces suffering heavily under the relentless artillery bombardment, Napoleon III decided on surrender to end the slaughter.

The following day the emperor met Bismarck to agree terms and was then taken off into captivity, along with the entire army.



The French Chassepot bolt-action rifle was superior to the Prussian Dreyse.

CHASSEPOT RIFLE

# FRANCO-PRUSSIAN WAR

# Siege of Paris



DATE 19 September 1870-28 January 1871 French: 420,000; Prussians and allies: 700,000

CASUALTIES French: 4,000 killed. 24,000 wounded

After their victory at Sedan, the Prussians headed for Paris. A defence of the capital was prepared under the leadership of General Louis Trochu.

Although Trochu's forces were poor, the fortifications around Paris were formidable. In early October firebrand Léon Gambetta left Paris by balloon to organize the Armies of National Defence in the provinces. The Prussians were obliged to mount campaigns against these forces, while their lines of communication came under attack from guerrillas (francs-tireurs). provoking reprisals against the civilian population. Trochu mounted a series of sorties from the Paris defences that were all repulsed. On 5 January the Prussians began bombarding Paris with heavy siege guns, but this if anything stiffened the morale of the population.

Famine was taking hold, however, and a last major breakout attempt on 18 January failed with heavy losses. The provincial armies were also being routed after a few spirited successes. An armistice was agreed on 28 January. In the ensuing peace agreement the newly founded German empire, proclaimed at Versailles, took Alsace and most of Lorraine from France and extorted massive reparations payments from the defeated country.

### SIEGE GUNS

The bombardment of Paris by Krupp guns played little part in deciding the siege, although it destroyed forts around the city.

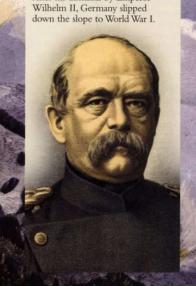
Known as the "Iron Chancellor". Bismarck was a diplomat before being appointed chief minister by King Wilhelm I in 1862. His skilful diplomatic manoeuvres and ruthlessly calculating use of military power achieved the unification of Germany under Prussian leadership. As German Chancellor from 1871 to 1890 he maintained peace and ensured German security by playing off

other powers against one another.

After his dismissal by Emperor

OTTO VON

BISMARCK



# THE CRIMEAN WAR AND RUSSIA IN ASIA

BY THE 19TH CENTURY RUSSIAN EXPANSION was coming into conflict with an increasingly weak Ottoman empire and, in Siberia, with the frontiers of a series of Muslim powers illequipped to oppose Russian military might. Where outside powers viewed the prospect of further enlargement of the tsar's domains with alarm, as in the case of Ottoman Turkey, Russia's ambitions could be opposed. The Crimean War, which resulted from this, stymied Russian ambitions to seize the remains of Turkish territories in the Balkans. In the Caucasus and central Asia, however, despite some residual British interest in keeping the Russian frontier from touching that of British India, local Muslim powers fought long, hard, and ultimately in vain.

# THE CRIMEAN WAR

# Alma



Alma river, Crimea.

In 1853 a quarrel between Russia and Ottoman Turkey over the tsar's right to protect the Orthodox church in Turkish territory flared up into war. Russia occupied two Turkish provinces and defeated a Turkish fleet at Sinope. In March 1854 Britain and France stepped in to prevent a total Ottoman collapse. Allied forces under Lord Raglan and Marshal St Arnaud landed 50km (30 miles) north of Sebastopol, and encountered the Russians well

DATE 20 September 1854

7 000 Turks

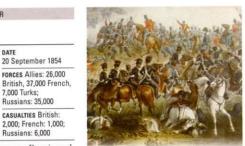
Russians: 35.000

CASUALTIES British:

2 000: French: 1 000:

Russians: 6,000

FORCES Allies: 26,000



# ALMA ASSAULT

In the background can be seen the smoke from Russian guns on Telegraph Hill.

dug in on the Alma river. The British faced the main Russian positions, and although they were soon across the river, they suffered heavy casualties and had to give ground. Defective leadership and inferior muskets, however, forced the Russians to retreat.

British and Allied infantr

British and Allied cavalry

from a series of misunderstandings

and resulted in huge casualties from

the Russian artillery as the brigade

indecisive. The British force returned

to Sebastopol; the Russians retained

charged uphill. The battle was

their guns and their positions

British redoubt
Russian forces

Russian cavalry
Russian artillery

# THE CRIMEAN WAR Inkerman



5 November 1854 Allies: 8,500 British: 7,000 French; Russians: 35,000 CASUALTIES British:

2,357; French: 1,700; Russian: 11,800

CATION Near kerman, northeast rimea Ukraine

CANNON

Field artillery, like

this muzzle-loadi

and field battles in

cannon, played a key

After Alma, the Allies pressed on inland, occupying a strategic ridge commanding the approaches to Sebastopol, which the Russians had left undefended. Wave upon wave of Russian assaults, supported by artillery, failed to dislodge the Allies. In the fierce fighting, British casualties reached more than one in four. Exhausted, they were on the brink of retreat, and saved only by a timely intervention by the French under General Bosquet.



THE CRIMEAN WAR

Sebastopol

West coast of Crimea Ukraine

The final phase of the Crimean War centred around the year-long siege of Sebastopol. Menshikov, the Russian commander, strove, with limited effect, to relieve it. Many of the city's

9 September 1855

Allies: 40,000

Sardinians)

CASHAITIES

(including 15,000

Russians: 40,000

defenders were sailors, and was the military engineer DATE 17 October 1854which they were illprepared, the Allies embarked on naval raids in east Crimea. A successful attack on outworks in June No reliable estimates the British - now commanded by General Simpson - at the Great Redan. But, after a last, unsuccessful, effort by the

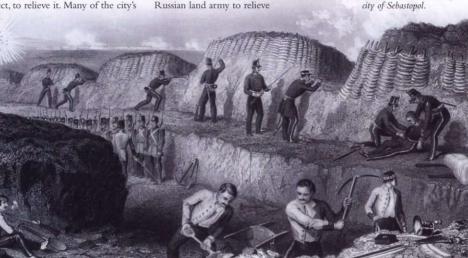
the "genius" of the defence Colonel Todleben (see box). After surviving a winter for that opened the Sea of Asov was followed by a check to Russian land army to relieve

CRIMEA MEDAL This British medal has a Sebastopol bar for the Brigade of Rifles. Sebastopol and a second, expensive, British assault of the Redan, the French, commanded by Marshal Pélissier, overwhelmed the vital strongpoint of Malakof and a Russian surrender

# COLONEL FRANZ TODLEBEN

Franz Todleben was a Russian of German descent who learned his trade in the school of engineers in St Petersburg before entering the army in 1836. He served in the Caucasus with forces fighting Shamyl's guerrillas before being sent to assist Menshikov in the Crimea. He was responsible for maintaining and reconstructing fortifications at Sebastopol, well protected to seaward but vulnerable on the landward side. His reinforcement of the defence works greatly prolonged the city's resistance. Only a colonel in 1853, he became the leading spirit of the defence, and by the end of his career he





# commanded the whole Russian army

# THE CRIMEAN WAR

# Balaclava



25.000 CASUALTIES British: Light Brigade of Crimea, south of

In October Russian forces advanced on the Allied base at Balaclava. Three incidents marked this otherwise minor engagement: the defence of the Highlanders ("The Thin Red Line") against a determined Russian charge; the successful charge of the British Heavy Brigade against great odds; and the charge of the British Light Brigade under Lord Cardigan, which arose

Russians:

# FATEFUL CHARGE

The Light Brigade charge as Russian artillery scythes through their lines. The guns on the heights in the foreground ere silenced by French chasseurs.



- Russian cavalry attack Argyll and
   Sutherland Highlanders 3 Charge of the Heavy Brigade drives
- Charge of the Light Brigade against Russian artillery: driven off with heavy losses

"...with a cheer that was

death-cry, they flew into

the smoke of the batteries.

gaps in our ranks, but ere

they were lost from view

HOWARD RUSSELL

Russell was sent in 1854 by The

Times to cover the Crimean War,

so becoming the first ever war

correspondent. This is his account

of the Charge of the Light Brigade.

the plain was strewed

with their bodies..."

WITNESS TO WAR

WILLIAM

many a noble fellow's

(5) French Chasseurs attack Fedioukine Heights in support of Light Brigade Charge

extracting

unfired charge

rom gun barre

Elevating wheel for changing angle Northern Caucasus

During the Crimean War Russia was also engaged in a morale-sapping guerrilla war beyond the Caucasus mountains against Muslim (primarily Chechen) rebels. Earlier in the century Russia had won suzerainty over the Daghestan from Persia, and the Russian grip on the Caucasus was further strengthened by Turkey's retreat from the Black Sea in 1829. A Muslim resistance movement against Russia arose, led by Ghazi Mollah, who was succeeded on his death in 1817 by his disciple, Imam Shamyl. Shamyl was

THE CAUCAUSUS WAR

Uprising

Shamyl's Caucasus

1817-59

Russians: varied

Muslim guerrillas

No reliable estimates

FORCES

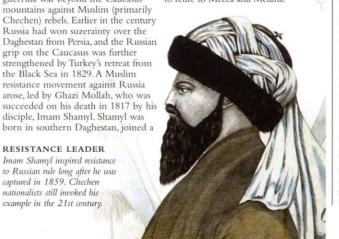
Varied

CASUALTIES

### RESISTANCE LEADER

Imam Shamyl inspired resistance to Russian rule long after he was captured in 1859. Chechen nationalists still invoked his example in the 21st century.

learned Sufi (mystic) order and made the hajj (pilgrimage to Mecca) in 1828, where he met the Algerian nationalist Abd el-Qadir (see p240), from whom he probably learned much about guerrilla warfare. Using these tactics against the Russians, he also managed to unite the notoriously fractious Caucasian peoples against Russia and won many victories. The Russians resorted to employing an enormous army, allegedly 500,000 men strong, which crushed the resistance and captured Shamyl. He was imprisoned in August 1859, exiled to Kaluga near Moscow and later, having met the Tsar, was allowed to retire to Mecca and Medina.



# RUSSIA IN CENTRAL ASIA

Russians: Unknown;

Unknown

No reliable

became inevitable.

DIGGING IN

British Guardsmen are

seen here working on the

trenches outside the besieved

# Conquest of Bokhara 20 May 1868



LOCATION Uzbekistan, 150km (100 miles) west of Samarkand estimates

The nomads of central Asia, who had produced great conquerors in the distant past, were little match for the disciplined regular armies of the 19th century. Raids by Muslim guerrillas encouraged local Russian governors to take the initiative in subduing the central Asian khanates of Khiva and Bokhara. Envoys from Russia and Britain to Bokhara were treated with arrogance and contempt, and in 1842 two British officers were imprisoned and killed. In the early 1860s the Bokharans managed to fend off Russian advances, but in May 1866 they were defeated. The Russians then established a governor-general of Turkestan, on the Jaxartes (Syr-Darya) river. The war resumed in 1868, when the emir was forced to accept vassal status. Khiva was formally annexed by the Soviet Union in the 1920s.

# RUSSIA IN CENTRAL ASIA Conquest of Khiva Khanate



Khivans:

A revolt against Russian exploitation, or, from another point of view, the frequent raids of fanatical Muslims on Russian garrisons, provoked a series of expeditions against the khanates of Bokhara, Khiva, and Kokand. In 1839 a large Russian expedition led by General Prevosky against Khiva, which lay south of the Aral Sea, had ended, like previous attempts, in disaster. But in 1847 the Russians built a fort at the mouth of the Syr-Darva river and occupied some Khivan territory. Khiva's fate was sealed after the Russian capture in 1865 of Tashkent. the commercial centre of the region. A large-scale expedition under General Kaufmann, starting from three separate points, took over the khanate almost without a fight in 1873. The rulers were expelled and Khiva became a protectorate of Russia

1873 FORCES Russians: 10,000: Unknown CASUALTIES 37km (25 miles) west No reliable of Amu-Darva river



# OTTOMAN DECLINE AND THE BALKANS

FROM AROUND 1700 THE DECLINE OF THE Ottoman empire became increasingly apparent. The Sultan was no longer able to recruit good soldiers, rampant inflation undermined the economy and fuelled social unrest, and, perhaps most critically, technological progress lagged behind Europe. Napoleon conquered Ottoman Egypt (1798), and Russia took Moldavia and Wallachia in the

Russo-Turkish War of 1828-29. Mahmud II (1808-39) attempted army reform and massacred the corrupt Janissaries, who had formed the elite of the Turkish army, but he lost Greece (1829) and Serbia (1839). By the late 19th century the "Eastern Question" - what would happen to the Ottoman empire as it collapsed - dominated European diplomacy.

RUSSO-TURKISH WARS

# Izmail



22 December 1790 FORCES Russians: Turks: 35,000

CASUALTIES

Turks: 26,000

Russians: unkn

river, 70km (110 miles) southwest of Odessa

Izmail, a Turkish fortress that guarded the Danube and the route to Constantinople, changed hands several times during the Russo-Turkish Wars of the late 18th century. In 1790, after a siege, it was finally taken by assault and the garrison,

RUSSIAN GENERAL

and many Turkish

Mikhail Kutuzov fought with distinction at Izmail and would later force Napoleon's retreat from Moscow in 1812.

civilians, were slaughtered.

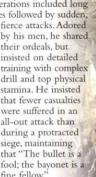
# A FORTRESS FALLS

Russian troops approach Izmail by boat as the town burns. The Turkish garrison fought to the bitter end.

The victorious commander was

the military genius Alexander Suvorov, the greatest of all Russian generals. Throughout his long career, he never lost a battle, though unhappy relations with Tsar Paul I held his career back for several years. Suvorov's innovative offensive operations included long rapid marches followed by sudden,

their ordeals, but insisted on detailed stamina. He insisted that fewer casualties were suffered in an all-out attack than during a protracted siege, maintaining that "The bullet is fool: the bayonet is





# THE GREEK WAR OF INDEPENDENCE Missolonghi



LOCATION North coast of Gulf of Patras.

CASUALTIES Estimates unreliable but Greek losses very high The expectations created by revolutions

DATE 7 May 1825-

Turks: 4,000 (and 5,000

22 April 1826

Egyptians);

Greeks: 5,000

in America and France, the success of an Albanian uprising in 1807, and growing awareness of their history and culture, strongly encouraged by the Greek Orthodox Church, inspired the Greeks to begin a struggle for independence from Ottoman Turkey in 1821. The nationalists soon gained control of the Peloponnese, declared a Greek republic and, despite an outbreak of civil war in 1822, fended off Turkish counterattacks. In 1825 an Egyptian army led by Ibrahim Pasha intervened at the sultan's request. The Turks, under Reshid Pasha, were already

### POET'S OATH

The English poet Lord Byron takes an oath on the tomb of Botzaris, a Greek nationalist leader. Byron fought on the Greek side but died of fever at Missolonghi in 1824.

"If we are not taken off with the sword, we are like to march off with an ague in this mud basket... better [to die] martially than marsh-ally..."

Lord Byron, letter to Charles 5 FEBRUARY 1824



besieging the Greek stronghold of Missolonghi. Ibrahim joined Reshid later that year, and when the Greeks lost command of the sea after a naval mutiny, it was no longer possible to keep Missolonghi supplied. Condition in the town began to deteriorate

rapidly. Outlying



### ISLAND MASSACRE

In 1822 the inhabitants of Chios joined the anti-Turkish uprising. In retaliation up to 20,000 were killed.

were gradually captured and, with hunger and disease taking hold, the garrison staked everything on a last, desperate sortie in April 1826. It was a forlorn effort. rendered entirely hopeless when a misunderstanding over orders caused chaos, and the Turks rushed into the town. Some defenders reached the forests on Mount Zygos, where most were later killed. The struggle of the Greeks aroused widespread ympathy throughout Europe, inspiring volunteers, including the poet Byron.

### THE GREEK WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

# Navarino



LOCATION Off southwest Pel©ponnese, Greece

British: 660 Turks: up to 10,000 By a treaty of 1827, Britain, France, and Russia agreed to demand an

CASHAITIES

17 frigates: British: 7

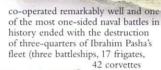
hattleshins 10 frigates

immediate armistice in the Greek War of Independence. The British commander in the Mediterranean, Admiral Codrington, with his French opposite number, put the proposition to the Greeks, who accepted. Ibrahim Pasha, with the Turco-Egyptian fleet in the harbour of Navarino (Pylos), rejected it but

### THE SEA ABLAZE

Turkish warships burning at Navarine Losses at the battle crippled the Turkish fleet and left their land forces isolated.

agreed verbally not to attack without further orders from the Turkish court. Codrington later heard that Ibrahim Pasha's ships were preparing to leave harbour; Ibrahim apparently considered his promise applied only at sea, and did not prevent him burning Greek villages on land. When the Turks rejected an Allied ultimatum, Codrington drew up his forces outside Navarino Bay in an impressive show of strength. The Turco-Egyptian fleet formed a horseshoe formation, but Codrington sent his ships in two lines to anchor alongside the enemy. His orders were to intimidate, not fight, but when the captain of a British frigate was fired upon, fighting pecame general. The three Allies



plus auxiliaries) vithout losing a single Allied ship. The battle, the last major engagement

BACK FROM THE WAR

A Russian soldier returns from

the Russo-Turkish war,

between wooden warships, effectively

assured Greek independence.

"The Turks were clumsy sailors; they felt ill at ease... but above all, they felt a dread of Greek fire-ships. which made them imagine every vessel that approached them to be one. "

Samuel Gridley Howe, 1828

This ornate piece, inlaid with mother of pearl, would have been more suitable for ceremonies than for action.

# DATE 21 December 1832

Turks: unknown



Konva

EGYPTIAN-OTTOMAN WAR

LOCATION 200km (120 miles) south of Ankara, Turkey

unknown CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

Egyptians:

Muhammad Ali was probably born in Albania, in about 1769. He accompanied Ottoman forces to Egypt in 1798 to face the French invaders and there gained high repute as commander of the Albanian troops, and in the chaos following the French withdrawal he was sufficiently popular in Cairo to be acclaimed ruler in 1805. The weakness of the Turkish government meant that the khedive. the governor of Egypt, was in effect independent. Muhammad Ali claimed to be merely the sultan's representative, but he disposed of the previous rulers, the Mamelukes, and extended his authority into Arabia, capturing Mecca and Medina, and took over the Sudan. He also supported the sultan against the Greek nationalists. Muhammad Ali reformed the Egyptian army along European lines. He set up military and naval schools, sending promising students to Europe, and boosted industry. He showed his ability as a general in the field when he marched his army through Syria into Anatolia in 1832 and easily defeated Reshid's Turkish forces at the battle of Konya. The war resumed in 1839, but Muhammad Ali once again defeated the sultan. Afraid of a total Ottoman collapse, the British forced him to leave Syria in 1841, but he was confirmed as the independent ruler of Egypt.

# RUSSO-TURKISH WAR

# Plevna



LOCATION Pleven, 120km (75 miles) SW of Bucharest, Romania

Russians: 30 000 1877 saw the 12th Russo-Turkish war in 200 years. The Turkish general Osman Pasha was on his way to assist his forces besieged by the Russians at Nicopol, but on hearing that they had already surrendered (on 17 July). he proceeded to the town of Plevna, which had a small Turkish garrison but no fortifications. The move went undetected by Russian spies, and Osman began building defences and gun emplacements (he had up-to-date Krupp guns) and

Turks: 7 000:

### A KING WATCHES

Alexander, king of Romania, commander of the Russian forces, watches the final action at Plevna which forced Osman Pasha's retreat.

assaults. As Russian numbers swelled still further, their weight of numbers, together with the arrival of surrendered on 10 December. His holding of the town for five months had wrecked the Russian war strategy.

### both his uniform and expression careworn. carrying out detailed mapping of the area. General Schuldner's LOCATION Edirne. 225km (140 miles) Russians were NW of Istanbul ordered to

occupy Plevna, but arrived too late. A long siege ensued, involving enormous

Russian and allied forces - over 100,000 - which, badly led, launched numerous unsuccessful and costly

General Todleben, hero of Sebastopol (see p261), eventually told, and Osmai



Enver Pasha heads the 1913 revolution that ought the Young Turk movement to power. He led Turkey in the Second Balkan War.





THE BALKAN WARS

Turks: unknown Bulgarians and Serbs: unknown

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

In the Balkan Wars of 1912-13, an alliance of Serbia, Montenegro, Greece, and Romania conquered large portions of remaining Ottoman territories in Europe, including Thrace, and then fought each other over the spoils. In the First Balkan War, Bulgaria and Serbia took Edirne from the Turks after a siege that included possibly the world's first aerial bombardment. The great powers, nervous about the Balkan conflict, tried to end the fighting, but, following a revolution in Turkey in January 1913, war was renewed, with Turkey allied with Serbia and Romania against Bulgaria. Turkey retook



# GLOBAL WARFARE

THE OUTBREAK OF WAR BETWEEN THE major European powers in 1914 initiated a struggle for world domination that lasted until the late 1980s. Vast resources were devoted to weapons, both in terms of technological development and mass production, creating a destructive potential on a terrifying new scale. The very destructiveness of modern warfare deterred major powers from fighting all-out war with one another after 1945, but smaller-scale conflicts proliferated.

> The two mighty global conflicts that dominated the resources of modern states mobilized in pursuit history of the 20th century, World War I (1914-18) and World War II (1939-45), were in many ways linked. In Europe, both could be seen as a single struggle by Britain, France, and Russia to resist German domination, a struggle that could only be won with the additional involvement of the United

States. But World War II also developed war waged by the United States, sided ideological battle between extreme nationalist regimes, liberal democracies, and communists had great powers. The scale of the world wars was monumental - more than 70

of victory. And if the whole of a nation's economy and civilian population was devoted to the war effort, it followed logically that factories and civilians were legitimate targets for military action. In World War II the number of civilian deaths far exceeded that of military personnel.



The development of military technology in the 1914-45 period was mostly an offshoot of general scientific and technological progress. Many of the weapons that shaped the character of the world wars were in place before 1914, including rapid-fire rifles, machine-guns, artillery firing high explosive shells, and submarines and mines at sea. The advent of aircraft - which, like motor vehicles and the radio, was not specifically intended for military purposes - was probably the single most radical innovation during the world wars. If air power failed to achieve the independent war-winning potential its most enthusiastic advocates envisaged, it

a Pacific and Asian dimension in the Britain, and China against Japan. Whereas World War I at least started as a straightforward conflict between states, by the time of World War II a threecomplicated the struggles between the

million people lost their lives in the two conflicts. Nuremberg, Germany, in 1933. It was the age of "total war", with the entire

nonetheless had a dramatic effect both on land and sea battles, as well as in the strategic bombing of enemy populations and industrial centres.

### HOT AND COLD WARS

The period after 1945 was shaped by two factors: the introduction of nuclear weapons - the power of which was demonstrated in the destruction of the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki in August 1945 - and the confrontation between the United States and the Soviet Union as the Americans dedicated themselves to stopping the global spread of communism. By the 1950s both "superpowers" had nuclear weapons and were engaged in a race to build more powerful warheads and more effective delivery systems. The destructive power of each side's nuclear armoury was soon so great that, under sane leadership, they had to agree on avoiding full-scale war. But this Cold War stand-off left plenty of scope for superpower involvement in "hot wars" at a regional level, from Korea in the 1950s to Vietnam in the 1960s and Afghanistan in the 1980s. In principle, much of the new technology made warfare more impersonal and distant - from the dropping of bombs on an unseen target to the pressing of a button that launched a missile against a city thousands of kilometres away but most of the fighting in the Afghan mountains or the Vietnamese jungle remained as much a face-to-face infantry battle as ever.

# NEW WORLD ORDER

The disintegration of the Soviet Union in 1991 left the United States as the undisputed world superpower. With no major enemy to counter-balance its power, the United States and its allies have, rightly or wrongly, been tempted to intervene in regional or civil conflicts in order to prevent massacre, punish aggression, or effect regime change. These enterprises have been hampered by the increasing intolerance of the public in western countries for casualties on their own side, which has led to a growing reliance on aircraft with precision-guided munitions and remote-controlled drones as a way of projecting power. Highly developed arms industries have deluged the world with mass-produced automatic weapons, fuelling a chronic state of permanent warfare in some areas. Since 1945 one of the worst regions for ongoing conflict has been Africa, where, as in Europe in the Middle Ages, it has often been hard to distinguish war from violence. In the 21st century the western response to Islamic terrorism has presented the possibility of permanent war on a global scale, in which major powers are unable to locate an enemy against whom to deploy their high-tech weaponry. The potential for a nuclear Third World War, at least for the moment, has vanished. But, predictably, there is still no prospect of peace on earth.



READY TO STRIKE A UK-built Rapier surfaceto-air missile launcher and tracker from the 1970s. Although now obsolete, this system represented cutting-edge Cold War era technology.







ASSASSINATION VICTIMS

Archduke Franz Ferdinand, heir to the throne of Austria-Hungary,

and his wife Sophie were shot

dead by Bosnian Serb Gavrilo

Princip on 28 June 1914,

precipitating World War I.

ON 28 JULY 1914, Austria-Hungary declared war on Serbia after the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand by a Serb extremist. Within a week the major powers of Europe were at war; as Russia mobilized in support of Serbia,

Austria-Hungary's ally Germany mobilized against Russia and its ally France, and Britain entered the conflict in support of France and Belgium. By the time the war had ended, four years later, it had cost an estimated 15 million lives.

# MASS WARFARE

The causes of World War I have been endlessly debated, but it perhaps suffices to say that if states are divided into hostile alliance systems and engaged in an arms race, as the European powers were, then war is highly likely. The scale of the conflict was vast from the outset - in the first week Germany alone mobilized 3.5 million

men. The soldiers were swiftly moved to frontier zones by train and thrown into the attack. The unprecedented firepower of artillery, machine guns, and rapid-fire rifles brought to bear upon these mass armies produced awesome casualties even before stalemate set in at the end of 1914. The long haul that followed allowed modern industrialized nations to demonstrate the enormous killing power they could generate through the mass-manufacture of artillery shells and other munitions. The war soon spread, and the Ottoman empire joined Germany, and Italy joined Britain and France. But it was the entry of the United States into the war in April 1917, provoked by German submarine warfare, that gave the conflict pretensions of being a "world war"

# NETHERLANDS GERMANY LIXEMBOLING

STALEMATE

The Schlieffen Plan, by which the Germans would capture Paris, swiftly ended in stalemate. Strategically, little changed over the

### PROPAGANDA

Britain's Field Marshal Kitchener appeals for volunteers to join the British army in a famous poster. New techniques of advertising, developed to goods, were applied to selling the war.

# **TECHNOLOGY**

Technologically, the war was a mix of old and new Even if cavalry failed to find an effective role where trench warfare prevailed, horses were still crucial for hauling supplies and artillery. Away from rail lines, armies advanced as fast as a man could march. Tanks began to appear in the Allied forces on a significant scale towards the end of the war. Other new land weapons, such as poison gas and flamethrowers, made war more gruesome but were of

limited effect. Aircraft took over the reconnaissance role from cavalry and provided aerial spotters to direct artillery fire.

Hundreds of fighters battled for air superiority over the Western Front and German airships dropped bombs on London and Paris. By 1918 aircraft were increasingly used in support of troops, while submarines and mines proved their worth in naval warfare, upstaging even the muchtouted Dreadnought battleships.

NETHERIANDS

DREADNOUGHT AND

Airships were among the latest

reconnaissance was one of the

functions of German Zeppelins.

military technology. Naval



# TRENCH WARFARE

Generals on the Western Front have been much criticized for launching offensives that achieved little gain at the expense of huge casualties. The combination of barbed wire, machine guns, and rapid-fire rifles gave defence the upper hand. The use of artillery bombardment on a massive scale to prepare the way for infantry attacks proved largely ineffectual once troops were dug into deep trenches, although improvements in tactics, such as the use of creeping barrages, did help. Communications,

> mostly by telephone land line, were thoroughly inadequate for the proper command and control of such large armies. Both sides found it difficult to exploit any breakthroughs that they achieved. However, tactics evolved that permitted a return to more fluid warfare in 1918.



GERMAN FIGHTER

The Fokker D. VII was a late-

war single-seat fighter. Its top

as goggles and a hood.

# THE COST OF WAR

THE WAR ENDS

After a final German offensive and

hostilities ended with still no Allied

Allied counteroffensive in 1918,

troops in Germany territory.

The strain on morale, both at the front and among civilians, became a crucial factor in a long war with very high casualties. Those states that could not command the loyalty of their citizens eventually fell apart under the pressure of total war. The Russian empire was first to collapse in the two revolutions of 1917. Austria-Hungary disintegrated into its various national components in the last stages of the war. In Germany, now reduced to near-starvation by a British naval blockade and clearly facing defeat in the field by autumn 1918, Kaiser Wilhelm II was forced to abdicate, replaced by a republic founded amid political chaos. The Ottoman empire was the last to go, falling shortly after the war's end. The carnage on the battlefields of the Great War was unprecedented, combat deaths alone totalling between 8.5 and 10 million. Around 2 million German soldiers, 1.8 million Russian, 1.4 million

French, 1 million Austro-Hungarian, 900,000 British empire, and 50,000 Americans died in the fighting. The outcome of the war was not peace and stability but more conflict.

ARMISTICE DAY American soldiers and

French civilians celebrat victory over Germany or 11 November 1918.





# 1914

GERMANY HAD LONG PLANNED ITS STRATEGY for a war on two fronts against Russia and France. Assuming that the Russians would be slow to mobilize, the Germans intended to win a lightning victory over France and then transfer their forces to the Eastern Front. The Schlieffen Plan envisaged fighting a holding action on the Franco-German border while the main

THE WESTERN FRONT

# German invasion of Belgium



FORCES Belgians: 117,000 Germans: 750,000 CASUALTIES Belgians: 30,000

DATE 4-25 August 1914

Germans: 2.000

LOCATION Belgium, northwest

On 4 August an advanced force of six German brigades crossed the Belgian border and attacked Liège. The city itself was quickly taken, but the fortresses around it held out for long enough to threaten the Germans' tight timetable. Bombarded by heavy howitzers, including a couple of huge 420mm (16.5in) siege guns, the forts were subdued by 16 August. The main German invasion began the next day, 48 hours behind schedule. Von Bülow's Second and Third Armies advanced down the Meuse river, taking Namur, while the First Army, commanded by General Alexander von Kluck. occupied Brussels on 20 August. The king and his government retreated to Antwerp, however, where elements of the Belgian army held out until October. The stiffness of Belgian resistance outraged the Germans, who adopted a pre-planned policy of schrechlichkeit the cowing of the population through

terror. Groups of civilian hostages were executed whenever the Germans judged that

# SHELL

vital infantry support.

A 420mm high explosive shell was too much for Belgian steel-clad

BIG BERTHA been guilty of sabotage. At Dinant 612 civilians were rounded up and The 420mm (16.5in) shot in the town square. Louvain, Mörser howitzer, the a famous Belgian city of culture, original "Big Bertha" used at Liège, is was looted and burned in medieval fashion. These actions outraged readied for action. world opinion and hardly needed exaggeration by Allied propagandists. Belgians had HOWITZER

THE WESTERN FRONT

# Battle of the Frontiers



Ardennes to Lorraine

Eastern France from

Germans: 725,000 CASUALTIES French: 200,000 Germans: also heavy

7-25 August 1914

French: 1 million

FORCES

France's plan for the war required an all-out offensive across its eastern border to regain the lost provinces of Alsace and Lorraine. French generals believed the attacking élan of their troops offered the best prospect of victory. At first the Germans fell back - it was part of their plan to allow the French to advance, the better to trap them by encirclement. Then the French infantry and cavalry sustained massive casualties from German machine-gun and artillery fire. A French captain, Charles de Gaulle, wrote, "It had become clear that not all the courage in the world could withstand this fire." With the French decimated, German commander Crown Prince Rupprecht could not resist going on to the offensive, which was also costly, as the French held a line in front of Nancy and Verdun.





RETREAT

Western Belgium and northeast France

THE WESTERN FRONT

Mons and Le Cateau

23-26 August 1914

British: 150,000

CASUALTIES

Germans: 8,000

Germans: 320,000

FORCES

In line with pre-war planning for co-operation with France, the British Expeditionary Force (BEF) was sent across the Channel to take up position on the right of the French line, Advancing into Belgium, the BEF found itself directly in the line of march of von Kluck's First Army. The two forces met in front of Mons. where the British fought a brief nolding action that showed the effectiveness of their rapid rifle fire. Retreating, the BEF's II Corps, under Smith-Dorrien, fought a more substantial day-long rearguard action at Le Cateau. At the expense of heavy casualties, this allowed the British retreat to continue relatively inmolested. Marching 30-40km (18-25 miles) a day in hot weather, they continued south with the French on their left, arriving east of Paris at the start of September.

German forces advanced into France through neutral Belgium.

Victory over France was to take six weeks, after which Germany

would transfer its forces to the Eastern Front. Instead, the invasion

of Belgium brought Britain into the war and French and British

forces pushed the Germans back from the Marne, while on the

Eastern Front a smaller German army was unexpectedly victorious.

Austro-Hungarians. The First and THE EASTERN FRONT Second Russian armies invaded East Prussia, where, in accordance with Tannenberg the Schlieffen Plan, the Germans stood on the defensive. Failing to 22-29 August 1914 stop the First Army at Gumbinnen on 20 August and threatened with FORCES Russians: 150,000 encirclement by the Second Army Germans: 210,000 to the south, German Eighth Army CASUALTIES commander Prittwitz proposed Russians: 140,000 LOCATION abandoning East Prussia. He was East Prussia, Germans: 20,000 instantly dismissed and replaced by northeast Europe Hindenburg, with Ludendorff The Russian army mobilized far more transferred from Belgium as his quickly and efficiently than its enemies chief of staff. The Germans were had believed possible. However, its fully informed of Russian forces were split between taking on movements, both through aerial the Germans and the reconnaissance and through listening to Russian radio transmissions. Exploiting the excellent railway The winter hat network of East Prussia, almost the had an oval entire German Eighth Army was cockade in transferred southwards to face the Russian Second Army, leaving only a screening force in front of the

RUSSIAN

UNIFORM

Khaki was adopted by

as early as 1907. The

knife was carried by

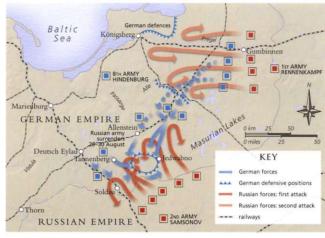
a gunner, to be used

at close quarters,

instead of a bayonet.

the Russians as the

First Army. Second Army commander General Alexander Samsonov, advancing to encircle the German forces that he believed to be far to the north, marched straight into a trap. Even when he was attacked on both flanks on 27 August, he continued to press forwards, hoping to break through the Germans' centre. colour for their uniform The consequence was the complete encirclement of his forces, which were soon in total disarray, shattered by German artillery. Fewer than 10 per cent escaped the cordon around them. Samsonov shot himself.



PAUL VON HINDENBURG Hindenburg was called from retirement in 1914 to command the German Eighth Army.

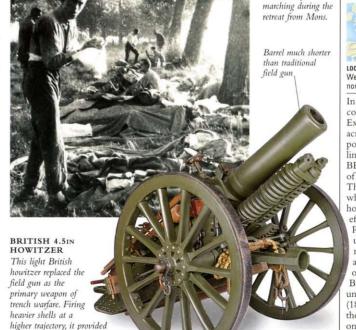
1847-1934

His victory at Tannenberg, in partnership with chief of staff Erich von Ludendorff, made him a national hero. Hindenburg was placed in command of the German armed forces in 1916. but Ludendorff exercised real control. German president from 1925 to 1934, Hindenburg



RUSSIAN CAPTIVES

Estimates of Russian prisoners taken at Tannenberg range from 95,000 to 125,000. Between 300 and 500 ussian ouns were also captured



# First Marne



6-9 September 1914 FORCES French: 1 million Germans: 1,275,000

East of Paris, northeast France

CASUALTIES

By early September the German armies that had force-marched for a month through Belgium and France were exhausted and their lines of command and supply were overextended. Von Kluck's First Army, scheduled to circle west of Paris, changed direction to pass east of the city. When General Joseph Gallieni, in command of the Paris garrison, received confirmation of this through aerial reconnaissance, he asked French commander-in-chief Ioffre to authorize an attack on von Kluck's exposed flank. Joffre was already vigorously preparing



COMBAT DEATH

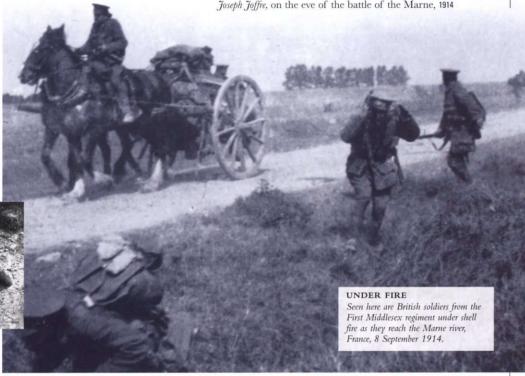
By the end of 1914 over half a million soldiers had been killed on the Western Front.

Germans south of the Marne. On 6 September the French Sixth Army carried out the flank attack, catching von Kluck by surprise and forcing him to turn to face the onslaught. This opened a gap between his army and the rest of the German forces. British commander Sir John French was prodded reluctantly to advance into this gap, along with more enthusiastic

French armies. The fighting was evenly of touch with the fighting and balanced, the French Sixth Army at shocked by the level of casualties, one point receiving reinforcements had lost the will to direct the battle. from Paris ferried in taxis. But German On 9 September one of his staff chief of staff Helmut von Moltke, out officers ordered a general retreat.

"A soldier who can no longer advance must guard the territory already held, no matter what the cost. He must be killed where he stands rather than draw back."

Joseph Joffre, on the eve of the battle of the Marne, 1914



# THE WESTERN FRONT



DATE 13-18 September 1914 FORCES Numbers unknown CASUALTIES

LOCATION Northeast of Paris, France

Falling back from the Marne, the German right wing dug in along the north bank of the Aisne river, where the Chemin des Dames ridge provided a natural defensive position. Pursuing French and British forces crossed the river under fire, but attempts to take the ridge by frontal assault were repulsed by a German counterattack. It was a brutal demonstration of the costly ineffectiveness of frontal attacks on entrenched troops with artillery support, a lesson being learned all along the front. The land between the Aisne and the Channel, however, was still open country. During the autumn Allied and German armies made a series of attempts to outflank one another in this area, drawing ever closer to the coast in the "Race to the Sea".

# THE WESTERN FRONT

# First Ypres



FORCES CASUALTIES British: 55.000

DATE 19 October-

Flanders, northeast France and Belgium

The Race to the Sea ended in carnage at a salient in front of the town of Ypres, which was held by the BEF with French support. The Germans launched a series of attacks that repeatedly threatened a breakthrough against the British, but the rapid rifle fire of experienced British soldiers inflicted heavy losses on German troops, many of whom were volunteers with only eight weeks' training. The death of 25,000 student volunteers earned the battle its German name, Kindermord ("Massacre of the Innocents"). The British also suffered appalling casualties that effectively wiped out the pre-war professional army. As winter set in, the opposing armies dug in; three years later, they were still there.

# TRENCH COMBAT





# THE WESTERN FRONT, 1915

IN 1915 THE COMBATANT COUNTRIES began to marshal their resources for a long war. While waiting for industries to gear up for the mass-manufacture of munitions, both sides ran short of artillery shells. Britain and France drew on the manpower reserve of their empires to supplement their armies at the front. Neither side was committed to passive defence or a war of

THE WESTERN FRONT

22 April-25 May 1915

Allies: unknown;

CASUALTIES

Germans: unknown

FORCES

# Second Ypres



Flanders, northeast Germans: 38.000 France, and Belgium

The only major German offensive of the year, carried out by the Fourth Army against the Ypres salient, was intended to take advantage of Germany's new weapon, chlorine gas. After a heavy artillery bombardment, on the afternoon of 22 April the gas was released from almost 6,000 canisters and drifted towards the Allied line on an east wind. With no protection, the French colonial troops holding the sector stumbled to

REINFORCEMENTS

the rear in a choking

A truck mounted on railivay tracks carries German soldiers to the front at Ypres.

panic. German infantry advanced through the empty trenches but did not have sufficient reserves to exploit the breakthrough effectively. The sector next to the gap in the line was held by troops of the Canadian Expeditionary Force, which had egun fighting on the Western Front in February. By the time they were attacked with chlorine gas, on 24 April, they had improvised protection with water- or urine-soaked cloths around their mouths. The battle developed into a costly series of attacks and counterattacks in which the Canadians played a distinguished role. The Allies eventually withdrew to a line closer to Ypres.

attrition. The Allies in particular were keen to retake the areas of France and Belgium that were under German occupation, But the line of trenches that stretched from the Channel to the Swiss border left no room for flanking manoeuvres, while frontal attacks repeatedly failed against trenches fronted by barbed wire and defended by machine guns.

# CHEMICAL WARFARE

From April 1915 poison gas - including chlorine, phosgene, cyanide, and mustard gas - was extensively used by both sides in the war. Although much feared and hated - especially mustard gas, which caused temporary blindness, blistered skin, and ruined lungs - gas was responsible for fewer than 5 per cent of war casualties, killing around 91,000 soldiers.



Shells were a much more effective way of delivering gas to enemy lines than depending on the wind. Liquid gas in the shells evaporated on impact.

# THE WESTERN FRONT

# Artois-Loos



25 September 4 November 1915 FORCES Numbers unknown CASUALTIES

British: 50,000

Germans: 25,000

French commander Joffre planned a grand offensive against the vast salient of German-occupied French territory

south of Flanders. While half a million of his men attacked in Champagne, on the southern side of the salient, his Tenth Army would strike on the northern side at Vimy. British commander Sir John French reluctantly agreed to support the Vimy operation by attacking in the adjoining sector around Loos. The British infantry advanced behind a cloud of chlorine gas, but its effect was partly negated when gas drifted back to the British lines. Nonetheless, the British and French made considerable gains on the first day. As so often happened, however, reserves were not moved up

quickly enough to exploit the advantage. When British reserves did arrive, on the second day, thousands were mown down as they marched into German machine-gun fire. It was another case of small gains for heavy losses, and it cost French his job; he was soon replaced by Sir Douglas Haig.

GAS ATTACK

British troops advance behind a cloud of chlorine gas, released with smoke to make its direction visible.



# "In Flanders field the poppies blow..."

John McCrae, In Flanders Fields, 1915

WITNESS TO WAR

# IN THE TRENCHES



Tf the Somme was the Via Dolorosa of the British army, Passchendaele was very nearly its A Calvary. Wishful thinking led Haig, the British commander-in-chief, to believe that the German army was finally at breaking point and so he ordered an offensive that he thought would smash its will to fight. By now the idealism of 1914 had passed away, along with hundreds of thousands of soldiers on both sides. Inured to suffering though they might be, the LAny dent in the ground troops who fought at Passchendaele would be inducted into a whole new theatre of horror.

vou'd stick vour head

down as far as you could ram it. There might be a shell-hole, there might not, but you had to lay flat on the ground when these creeping barrages came, and they were terrible things. You don't think you're coming out of it. There's the blast of them, you know, and you can hear the steel, awful sound, piece of steel as it goes by you. It would cut you in half, a piece of that shell. You can't imagine it - every night, every night, every night. ??

Private W. G. Bell, 9th Battalion Army Cyclist Corps, 1917

66 Darkness alternates with light as

bright as day. The earth trembles and

shakes like a jelly... And those men

The offensive began in July 1917. Half-crazed by the sound of shelling, the scarcely trained, bewildered soldiers on both sides were often reduced to dehumanized husks, barely able to comprehend their surroundings, let alone act effectively as fighting troops. Advancing over the top, following in the wake of the steel rain of their own creeping barrage, the infantry faced a many-headed death, by shell splinters, exploding mines, machine-gun fire, the slice of cold steel, or the lung-choking agony of gas. The first few days of fighting won control of a tiny salient beyond Messines Ridge, a sliver of land that served only as a more effective killing field for the German defenders.

who are still in the front line hear nothing but the drum-fire, the groaning of wounded comrades, the screaming of fallen horses, the wild beating of their own hearts, hour after hour, night after night. Even during the short respite granted them, their exhausted brains are haunted in the weird stillness by recollections of unlimited suffering. They have no way of escape, nothing is left them but ghastly memories and resigned anticipation... The battle-field is really nothing but one vast cemetery.??

Gerhard Gurtler, a German soldier and former theology student from Breslau in a letter four days before his death, 14 AUGUST 1917

OVER THE TOP Canadian troops ince into action from their trench. The chances of reaching the German

lines alive were slim

Along the Menin Road, the British columns marched to their doom. The deadly storm of the preliminary bombardment snapped the spine of German resistance, but it also reduced the canal-crossed terrain to a pock-marked, churned-up slurry of mud. With unseasonal rains added to this quagmire, the Allied assault became hopelessly enmired. Nobody could pass to the front except over duck-boards and the troops thus channelled became all the more easy targets for German shells and snipers. Those

who strayed from the path met an awful end, literally drowning in the mud, their lungs clogged with filth, and little or nothing could be done to save them. 66 It was one of our infantrymen and he was sitting on the ground, propped up on his elbow

with his tunic open. I nearly vomited. His insides were spilling out of his stomach and he was holding himself and trying to push all this awful stuff back in. When he saw me he said, 'Finish it for me, mate. Put a bullet in me. Go on. I want you to. Finish it!' He had no gun

himself. When I

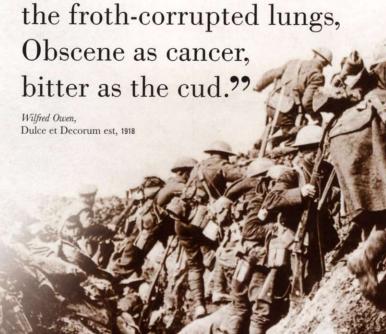
66 If you could hear, at

every jolt, the blood

Come gargling from

did nothing, he started to swear. 99

Three blood-soaked months later, the original objective of Passchendaele village was almost in the Allies' hands. On 26 October a new push was made, spearheaded by the Canadian divisions. In just one day they suffered 12,000 casualties, for a gain that could measured at an inch for each man fallen. Haig's great gamble had barely dented the German line and nearly another year would pass and a string of "final offensives" be launched before the agony of the two armies would end. Only the rows of white crosses, the swaying blood-red fields of poppies, and a host of diaries, letters, and poems bear witness to those who fell.



# 1916-1917

IN 1916 THE VAST BATTLES OF Verdun and the Somme killed soldiers in their hundreds of thousands, while generals struggled vainly to find a tactical approach that would allow them to achieve and exploit a breakthrough. By mid-1917 the Germans stood on the defensive on the Western Front, the French were ruled by caution, and the British army continued to grow and

rapidly through two lines of trenches

a number of forts protecting Verdun.

Joffre put Pétain in command and

ordered him to hold Verdun at all

costs. All troops and supplies into

of the air - crucial, since aircraft

up a heroic resistance until overrun

defensive. The French retook Fort

Douaumont in

October and by

Falkenhayn had

been sacked.

December the

Verdun had to travel along a single

and took Fort Douaumont, one of

THE WESTERN FRONT

# Verdun



18 December 1916 Germans: 1,000,000 French: 200,000

21 February-

CASUALTIES Germans: 355,000 195km (120 miles) east French: 400 000 of Paris

General Erich von Falkenhayn, German chief of general staff in succession to Moltke, planned an attack on the French fortified city of Verdun in order, he later wrote, "to bleed the

French army white" Von Falkenhayn intended Verdun to be a killing ground on which French infantry would be slaughtered by his artillery. After an initial bombardment in which a million shells were fired in 21 hours, the Germans advanced

# DOUAUMONT

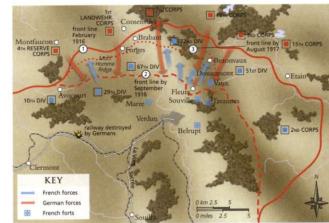
A doonway and bunker at Fort Douaumont, one of the most heavily armed forts at Verdun.

# GENERAL PÉTAIN

Henri-Philippe Pétain's role at Verdun made him a national hero. Appointed commander-in-chief of the French army in spring 1917, he succeeded in quelling mutinies with a judicious mixture of concessions and punishments. He was a cautious and methodical commander who believed "artillery now conquers a osition and infantry occupies it".

Head of the ollaborationist Vichy regime ter France's feat in 1940. was sentenced death at the d of World was later reprieved

attempt ambitious offensives. Meanwhile, as Germany suffered under naval blockade by the British fleet, the German high command took the momentous decision to resort to unlimited U-boat warfare in February 1917. This brought the United States into the war the following April, though it was a year before the Americans had an impact on the battlefield.



road (soon named the Voie Sacrée, or "Sacred Way") under German artillery fire. Above the battlefield, squadrons of fighter aircraft fought for command acted as spotters for artillery. On the ground, the garrison of Fort Vaux put on 7 June. After a last supreme effort in July, the Germans fell back on the front was more or less back where it started. By then CARNAGE AT VERDUN Around half a million men died at Verdun in 1916. The Germans proved incapable of inflicting massive casualties on the French without suffering similar losses themselves.



# **Iutland**



120km (74 miles) off the Danish coast

Despite the pre-war excitement over competition in battleship-building, Jutland was the only major encounter between the British Grand Fleet and the German High Sea Fleet in the war. Battle-cruiser squadrons from both sides, commanded respectively by Admiral Sir David Beatty and Admiral Franz von Hipper, set out into the North Sea followed by their main fleets, commanded by Admiral Sir John Jellico and Admiral Reinhard Scheer.

**DATE 31 May 1916** 

FORCES (British and

ships: 274; seamen:

CASUALTIES British: 14

ships sunk, 6.784 men

killed: Germans: 11

ships, 3,039 men

Germans in total)

cruisers made contact, Hipper drew the British southwards towards the High Sea Fleet, Having taken a battering. Beatty reversed the manoeuvre. drawing the Germans north to meet the more powerful Grand Fleet, heading at

When the battle

full steam towards the action. Twice the two main fleets engaged one another, but the Germans managed to slip away to safety. Cheated in its expectations of a new Trafalgar, much of the British public was outraged by Jellico's caution at Jutland. But, even if the balance of losses favoured the Germans, the battle in effect confirmed Britain's naval superiority.









Rheims and Soissons eastern France

> General Robert Nivelle replaced loffre as French commander-in-chief in December 1916. He claimed to be able to "win the war in 48 hours" by concentrating his forces in a

DATE 16 April-9 May 1917

French: 1.2 million:

Germans: unknown

FORCES

CASUALTIES

French: 187,000

Germans: 167,000

single massed attack and applying new tactics. After a "light bombardment of enemy lines, his infantry would advance on a wide front behind a rolling barrage, supported by tanks. Nivelle's plan suffered its first setback when the Germans unexpectedly withdrew to the strong Hindenburg Line defences. The offensive was then repeatedly postponed because of bad weather. By the time the attack went ahead on 16 April, the Germans were fully prepared. The French tanks were picked off by artillery fire and the rolling barrage was too far ahead of the infantry, who were consequently cut down by machine guns and shells.







### 1852-1931

DATE 1 July-18 November 1916

Allies: 750,000

on first day

CASUALTIES

British: 420,000;

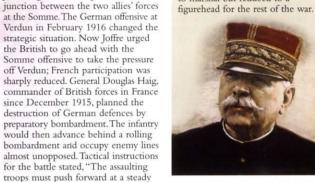
French: 200,000;

Germans: 500,000

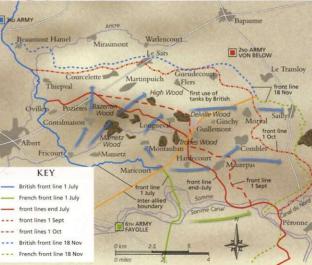
FORCES

# JOSEPH JOFFRE

An officer of engineers, Joseph Joffre became chief of the French general staff in 1911. He was committed to the principle of "offensive spirit" and adopted the disastrous plan for all-out attack with which the French army started the war. The failure of costly offensives in 1915-16, culminating at the Somme, lost him political support and led to his replacement by Nivelle in December 1916. He was promoted to marshal but reduced to a



commented that the assault "only failed of success because dead men can advance no further". On the southern wing of the offensive, the French did better. Over following days and months gains were made. The battle certainly achieved its objective of drawing German artillery and troops away from Verdun. It provided the British army with an effective, if bloody, education in warfare. It also exacted a heavy toll from the German army, whose own attacks met the same fate as those of the Allies. But the Somme had not been intended as part of a war of attrition; it was supposed to achieve a decisive military advantage. Yet the last action of the Somme campaign, on 13 November, was the capture of Beaumont Hamel, which had been one of Haig's first-day objectives.





LOCATION 12km (7.5 miles) northeast of Arras CASUALTIES Canadian: 3.598 killed: Germans: 10.000 captured

DATE 9 April 1917

British Canadians

and Germans:

unknown

The British launched an attack in front of Arras in April 1917 as their contribution to the Nivelle Offensive.



The first day of the British operation was a notable success, especially for the Canadian Corps, commanded by General Sir Julian Byng. The Canadians target was the formidable German defensive system on Vimy Ridge. A five-day artillery bombardment heralded the coming offensive, but the defenders were taken by surprise when Canadian troops emerged from tunnels that had been dug to bring them closer to the German line. Advancing through snow, they were almost on top of

the defenders before the Germans

responded. Many were captured in

their bunkers. Although the initial

LOCATION 15km (9 miles) southeast of Ypres

THE WESTERN FRONT

Messines

Germans: 5 divisions (plus 4 in reserve) CASHAITIES Germans: 25.000: Allies: 17,000

FORCES British and

empire: 9 divisions

(plus 3 in reserve)

The British Second Army, commanded by General Sir Herbert Plumer, carried out a successful attack on the German salient at Messines Ridge through effective use of mining. Starting in January 1917, more than 8,000m (26,200ft) of tunnels were dug under the German lines. German engineers dug counter-mines and succeeded in destroying one of the British tunnels, but 19 others were ready and packed with explosives on the morning of 7 June. Their simultaneous explosion at 3.10am was clearly heard in London, Some 10,000 German soldiers were killed and Allied infantry were able to advance and obtain all their kev objectives by the afternoon. The Germans launched a series of counterattacks over the following days, but these were repulsed with heavy losses. By 14 June the whole Messines salient was in Allied hands



BREATHING APPARATUS Working underground demanded special breathing equipment. The bags on this British kit contained compressed oxygen, which was released through air tubes.

THE ITALIAN FRONT

# Caporetto



Isonzo river.

CASHAITIES Italians 40.000: Germans and Austrians: 20,000

Italy entered the war against Austria-Hungary in 1915. After a series of engagements along the Alpine frontier, in August 1917 the Italians at last achieved a breakthrough. Seriously weakened by massive losses in their

Eastern Front war against Russia, the Austro-Hungarians appealed to Germany for military support. Seven divisions from Hutier's Eighth Army at Riga were transferred to the Italian Front, combining with Austrian divisions to form a new army under German General Otto von Below. Italian commander General Luigi Cadorna was aware of this move and put his numerically superior forces on the defensive. By concentrating his forces, however, von Below achieved local superiority at the point of attack,

### MOUNTAIN ARTILLERY

Alpine mountains were difficult terrain for fighting. The Austro-German victory at Caporetto shifted the war down to the plains.

forcing a general Italian retreat. The Italian forces were probably saved from a complete rout by the Austro-German forces' lack of cavalry or motorized vehicles. A line was stabilized along the Piave river, where British and French troops arrived to join the Italians.

### **HUTIER TACTICS**

Pioneered by German commander Oskar von Hutier, these tactics involved infiltrating small units of elite stormtroopers between enemy strongpoints after a brief "hurricane" artillery barrage. Heavily armed with mortars, flamethrowers, and machine guns, the stormtroopers sought maximum penetration in depth, leaving ordinary infantry to mop up enemy troops behind them. Used at Caparetto, Hutier tactics later helped the Germans re-create mobile warfare on the Western Front in the fighting of spring 1918.

20 November-7 December 1917 FORCES British: 8 divisions with 476 tanks: German: 20 divisions

LOCATION Southeast of Arras northeast France

Cambrai

THE WESTERN FRONT

CASHALTIES British 45.000: German: 50.000

Cambrai was the first battle in which tanks were used effectively on a large scale. British Tank Corps chief of staff Colonel John Fuller was allowed to mastermind an attack led by tanks with infantry following. There was no preparatory bombardment to alert the German defenders. Instead a thousand guns opened up as the tanks lumbered towards the German lines in early dawn light. Operating in pairs armed respectively with 6-pounder guns and machine-guns, the armoured vehicles rolled through the barbed wire, opening the way for the infantry. Many Germans surrendered. Although 179 tanks were lost, along much of the front they reached their objectives, in places advancing 8km (5 miles). Church bells were rung in Britain to celebrate a great victory, but the success was not followed up. Using their new Hutier infiltration tactics, the Germans counterattacked so effectively that ultimately the honours were even.

# THE WESTERN FRONT

# Passchendaele



WORLD WARS

LOCATION Ypres salient.

The Third Battle of Ypres, popularly known as Passchendaele, was a Britishled Allied offensive planned by General Haig, who had long believed in the potential for a decisive breakthrough

31 July-10 November

Allies: unknown;

Germans: unknown

Allies: 250,000 (70,000

killed); Germans: similar

"Men with serious

holes, and now the

to move, they were

slowly drowning."

Edwin Vaughan,

FORCES

CASUALTIES

in Flanders. Haig gained grudging authorization for the wounds...crawled for operation from safety into new shell sceptical British prime minister David Lloyd George, partly water was rising about through arguing that it might lead to the them and, powerless seizure of German submarine bases at Blankenberghe and Ostende on the Flanders coast. The success at Messines 8th Warwickshire Regiment was taken by Haig as

confirmation of his view that the German army was near to breaking point. After a preparatory bombardment lasting 15 days and delivering 4 million shells, the offensive began along an 18km (11-mile) front at dawn on

31 July, with the British Fifth Army under General Sir Hubert Gough flanked by supporting British and French formations, Commanded by Crown Prince Rupprecht, the Germans village on 6 November, after which had prepared a defence in depth, with a a halt was called. The cost of the relatively lightly held front line backed by powerful counterattack divisions. After small initial gains, the Allied forces found themselves bogged down in low-lying terrain that had been rendered virtually impassable by a combination of artillery bombardment and heavy rain. In September and early October, with General Sir Herbert Plumer now in command, the British achieved a series of limited

but real successes with "bite and hold" tactics - infantry making small-scale advances and never outrunning their artillery support. By 4 October they had taken Polygon Wood and Broodseinde, Instead of taking this chance to declare a victory and stop, however, Haig continued the offensive against Passchendaele Ridge, telling his officer,

"The enemy is faltering...a good decisive blow might lead to decisive results."This was not apparent to his troops, mostly Anzac and Canadian, who carried out the final stages of the offensive, floundering in mud as weather

worsened and facing fresh German reserves liberally supplied with mustard gas. The Canadians finally captured the remains of Passchendaele battle was a subject of controversy at the time and has remained so ever since. Clearly, if Allied forces suffered heavy casualties and were demoralized by fighting in such conditions, the same was true for the Germans. However, the distinguished British military historian John Keegan has written, "The point of Passchendaele...defies explanation.'



DESTRUCTION AT YPRES Allied troops in the ruins of the city of Ypres, devastated many times over by shell fire. St Martin's Church and the Cloth Hall can be seen in the background.



# DOUGLAS HAIG

One of the most controversial figures in British military history, Sir Douglas Haig became commander-in-chief of the British army in December 1915. His unshakeable self-confidence was based on religious belief: "I know quite well that I am ... a tool in the hands of the Divine Power." His persistence in costly offensives in 1916-17 was at times stubbornly unimaginative, but his grasp of the open warfare of 1918 made him the architect of victory.



### SHELLED LANDSCAPE

Australian troops pass along duckboards at Passchendaele. There were many instances of heavily laden troops slipping off such boards and drowning in mud.

# OTTOMANS IN WORLD WAR I

IN 1913 THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE came under the control of Turkish nationalist generals led by Enver Pasha, who took the empire into the war as an ally of Germany in October 1914. The defence of the Dardanelles in 1915 stirred national pride, but other campaigns

in the Caucasus, Mesopotamia, and Palestine overstretched the empire's resources. Mounting Turkish nationalism created problems in the multinational empire, especially with the Armenians and Arabs. Defeat in 1918 was followed by the disintegration of the empire.

DARDANELLES

# Gallipoli



DATE 19 February 1915-9 January 1916 EDRCES Allies: 480 000 Turks: unknown CASUALTIES British and imperial: 205 000: French and French colonial: 47,000:

The Gallipoli campaign started as an Allied naval operation aimed at breaking through the Dardanelles Straits into the Sea of Marmara and capturing Constantinople, knocking Turkey out of the war and opening the sea route to Russia's southern ports on the Black Sea. Begun on 19 February 1915, the naval operation was largely inspired by British First Lord of the Admiralty Winston Churchill. It proved a predictable failure. British and French battleships could not progress until Turkish mines had been cleared, but clearing the

mines was impossible under the threat of Turkish shore batteries. A last attempt to force the straits with 16 battleships on 18 March was abandoned with four vessels either sunk or beached and two severely damaged. A fallback plan to land troops on the Gallipoli peninsula and seize the Turkish forts dominating the straits was by then already in hand. British General Sir Ian Hamilton was put in charge of a landing force of 75,000 men that included the Anzac Corps from Australia and New Zealand, the

British 29th Division, and a French colonial division. The landings on 25 April were almost a success. British troops arriving at one beach were shot up by Turkish machine guns, but most of the forces got safely ashore. Subsequent confusions and hesitation.

however, ended up with the Allies

### GALLIPOLI STAR

medal was awarded to iurkish Gallipoli veterans. The battle excited Turkish national pride after decades of Ottoman decline.

AUSSIE GRIT

restricted to shallow beachheads as

An Australian soldier carries a wounded colleague. Of the 322,000 Australians who served in the war, 280,000 were casualties.

a result of Turkish counterattacks. Under the overall command of German general Liman von Sanders. the Turkish defenders performed with skill and determination, Mustafa Kemal Pasha playing a prominent and inspiring role. Suffering from heat and dysentery, the Allied troops held onto their toehold into midsummer while reinforcements were organized. In early August a new offensive was launched On 6-7 August, Anzac, British, and Gurkha forces staged an assault on the Sari Bair mountains, while fresh British troops landed further north at Suvla Bay. The mountain assault narrowly failed to take the peak of Chunuk Bair and was thrown back



### ANZAC COVE

Anzac troops at Gaba Tepe, where they landed on 25 April 1915. They made little







by a counterattack led by Kemal. The forces at Suvla Bay failed to act quickly enough, allowing the Turks to create a defensive line that successfully resisted the British on 21 August. By the autumn, the only question was how to extract the Allied forces. Troops were filtered out over a period of a month without the Turks realizing what was happening and with hardly a single casualty.

headway over the mountainous terrain.



MUSTAFA KEMAL

Known as Atatiirk ("Father of the

People"), Mustafa Kemal Pasha was

the founder of modern Turkey. His

inspiring role at Gallipoli made him

a national hero, and he went on to

fight in Palestine and the Caucasus.

After the defeat of the Ottoman

empire, he set up a revolutionary

government in May 1919. He led

Turkey, won a war against Greece

in 1921-23, and founded the

Turkish republic in 1924.

the fight against the partitioning of

(ATATÜRK)

### MESOPOTAMIA

# Siege of Kut



LOCATION Between modern-day Baghdad

When the Ottoman empire entered the war, an expeditionary force of the British Indian army was sent to invade southern Mesopotamia (Iraq), then under Ottoman rule. After occupying Basra the expedition's commander sent a divisional strength force under General Sir Charles Townshend north to capture the town of Kut al-Amara

Turks: 10.000

in September 1915. Townshend was then ordered to continue north to take Baghdad. His force came within 32km (20 miles) of the city before it encountered substantial Turkish resistance. Feeling his lines of communication were overstretched Townshend withdrew to Kut, and by December he was encircled by the Turks. After failing to take Kut by assault, the Turks dug a trench system strong enough to keep Townshend's men in and keep a relief force out. Between January and April 1916 the British made four attempts to break through the Turkish lines with troops sent north from Basra, but on each occasion they were repulsed. Ravaged by hunger and disease, the forces inside Kut surrendered on 30 April. More than a third of those marched off to

# PALESTINE

# Megiddo



CASUALTIES British and Commonwealth: 853: Turks: unknown

In early autumn British commander General Allenby launched a major offensive against the Turks north of Ierusalem, Surprise enabled his forces to break through trenches held by General Liman von Sanders' Turkish and German troops on Palestine's coastal plain. Fleeing Turkish forces surrendered in their thousands.

### THE MIDDLE EAST

# The Arab Revolt



CASUALTIES No reliable estimates The increasingly nationalistic

Ottoman government in Constantinople alienated many of the empire's Arab subjects, Britain encouraged Sherif Hussein ibn Ali of Mecca to declare an Arab revolt against Ottoman rule in June 1916. Support for the revolt wavered until December 1916, when Hussein's son Feisal, aided by British adviser Colonel T. E. Lawrence and a British warship, successfully defended the port of Yenbo from a Turkish attack. In July 1917 Feisal captured Agaba, which became

### 1888-1935

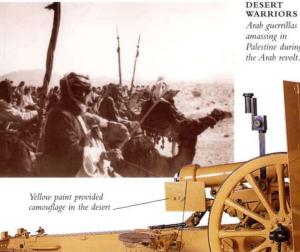
# LAWRENCE OF ARABIA

captivity died in Turkish labour camps.

T. E. Lawrence was an archaeologist before World War I transformed him into an intelligence officer. He was instrumental in obtaining British backing for Feisal ibn Hussein and fought with Feisal in the campaign from the defence of Yenbo in 1916 to the entry into Damascus in 1918. He subsequently became convinced that the Arabs had been betrayed in the post-war peace settlement. He wrote several accounts of his experiences, the most famous being The Seven Pillars of Wisdom.

the base for operations north into Palestine. The Arab guerrillas operated in support of British regular forces commanded by General Sir Edmund Allenby, which broke through the Turkish Beersheba-Gaza line into Palestine in autumn 1917 and occupied Jerusalem the following December. The Arab guerrillas carried out raids on

Turkish road and rail communications and tied down large numbers of Turkish troops. In 1918 they carried out combined operations with British regular forces, using armoured cars as well as camels and horses. British and Arab cavalry occupied Damascus on 1 October 1918. Some isolated Turkish strongholds were still resisting Arab forces in 1919. Many Arabs felt betrayed by post-war arrangements in the Middle East, which saw Syria and Palestine come under French and



Relatively light, the gun On average, gun

crews fired six to ten

rounds per minute

could be towed by horses

This British 10-pounder mountain gun, primarily used India, saw extensive use in Mesopotamia and Palestine.

amassing in British rule respectively (mandated by Palestine during the League of Nations), rather than the Arab revolt. under Arab control. DESERT ARTILLERY



# THE EASTERN FRONT

THE FIGHTING ON THE EASTERN FRONT never developed into the static stalemate seen in the west. Yet, although the Germans repeatedly defeated the Russians, who were hampered by problems with supply, organization, and command, victories proved impossible to exploit to any decisive effect. The Germans easily defeated Serbia and Romania, but Russian troops continued to

EASTERN FRONT

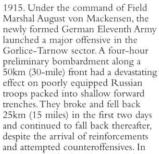
# Gorlice-Tornow



Galicia, modern-day

90.000: Russian: heavy The weakness of the Austro-Hungarians led Germany to transfer substantial forces to the Galician Front in spring

Marshal August von Mackensen, the launched a major offensive in the Gorlice-Tarnow sector. A four-hour preliminary bombardment along a effect on poorly equipped Russian troops packed into shallow forward trenches. They broke and fell back 25km (15 miles) in the first two days and continued to fall back thereafter, despite the arrival of reinforcements and attempted counteroffensives. In seven weeks the Russians were driven out of Galicia, Lvov falling on 22 June.







fight well into the spring of 1917. Meanwhile, Germany's ally

Austria-Hungary was becoming a liability, theatening to break

apart into its national components under pressure of war. The

the Russian soldiers' will to fight, allowing the Germans to

impose a punitive peace at Brest-Litovsk in March 1918.

political disintegration of the Russian empire eventually undermined



4 June-20 September

FORCES Russian:

573.000: Austro

Hungarian: 448,000

CASUALTIES Both sides:

500.000-1 million killed

1916

DATE 2 May-22 June

FORCES German:

120 000 Austro-

Russian: 56,000

Hungarian: 120.000:

CASUALTIES German.

Austro-Hungarian:

# EASTERN FRONT

# Brusilov Offensive



Pripet Marshes south to Czernowitz

wounded or imprisoned In summer 1916 General Alexei Brusilov, commander of the Russian Southwest Front, advocated new

offensive tactics. Instead of attacking "I received hundreds of on a narrow front telegrams... All wanted after a prolonged preparatory to let me know that the bombardment great heart of the ensured the enemy would know the country was beating in attack was coming sympathy with the welland have reserves in position to counter loved soldiers of my any breakthrough, victorious armies." he wanted a coordinated offensive General Alexei Brusilov, on the along a broad front,

support for the offensive, 1916 each army attacking with only brief

artillery preparation. The Russian high command reluctantly authorized him to proceed on 4 June. Brusilov's Austro-Hungarian empires.

four armies faced Austro-Hungarian troops comfortably dug in to deep trenches. Attacking at points along a 550km (340-mile) front, the Russians achieved total surprise. The initial bombardment was unusually accurate and many of the Austrians were still cowering in their deep shelters when taken prisoner. By the end of June the Russians had advanced 100km (60 miles) in Galicia, while also making significant gains further north. The Austro-Hungarian Seventh Army was virtually destroyed. Throughout the summer, however, the Russians suffered from lengthening supply

> lines and the loss of surprise. By August German reinforcements were arriving in quantity from the Western Front; the German high command also took effective control of the Austro-Hungarian army. The offensive came to halt having ultimately made small gains

at high cost. The scale of the losses put immense strain on the morale of the Russian and

EASTERN FRONT limit of Austro-German advances, 1915–16 Rrusilov offensives 1916 Armistice line Dec 1917 RUSSIAN **4** 1914 **4** 1916

ROMANIA

AUSTRIA-HUNGARY

SERBIA

### EASTERN FRONT

# Kerenski Offensive



Galicia, modern-day

abdicated in the face of mass southern Serbia in November, but by then the Serbs were cut off in Kosovo. In appalling winter weather, hundreds of thousands of Serbian soldiers and civilians retreated across the mountains to the Albanian coast, many dving of

# hunger, cold, and disease. WINTER OPERATIONS

by typhus, the Serbs retreated

southwards. French troops entered

Austro-Hungarian troops advance along a Serbian mountain road. Snowfall brought military operations to an end in November

Russian advances, 1914

German landings, 1917-18



# 1 July-3 August 1917 FORCES

CASUALTIES Russian: severa hundred thousand killed, wounded, or taken prisoner In March 1917 Tsar Nicholas II

demonstrations in Petrograd, A provisional government took power, committed to continuing the war as a patriotic defence of the nation. In May a moderate socialist, Alexander Kerenski, became minister of war. He appointed General Brusilov as commander-in-chief, with the task of mounting a major summer offensive.

Russian soldiers kneel before Tsar Nicholas II. The tsar's decision to assume command of the armed forces meant that he was held personally responsible for military reverses.

Kerenski believed that a successful offensive would restore the morale of the army and align patriotic sentiment behind the provisional government. He seriously underrated the decline in discipline in the armed forces, where soldiers' councils (soviets) challenged the authority of officers and peasant soldiers were keen to get home to seize land from large estates. Launched on 1 July after a two-day preliminary barrage the offensive at first made progress, especially against the Austrians in the south, but quickly ran out of steam as German reserves came into play. When the Germans mounted a counteroffensive in the second half of July the Russian armies disintegrated.

"Even if we are not fully confident of success, we should go on the offensive... The faster we throw our troops into action, the sooner their passion for politics will cool".

Russian General Mikhail Alexeev, before the offensive, 30 MARCH 1917



# EASTERN FRONT

# The Bolshevik Revolution



November 1917-March 1918 FORCES

Rolshevik Tsarist no reliable estimate of CASUALTIES

No reliable estimate

After the abdication of Tsar Nicholas II in March 1917, even the most extreme revolutionaries at first accepted the need to continue the war to protect the revolution against "German militarism". In April.

however, Bolshevik leader Vladimir Ilyich Lenin returned from exile (with German help) and committed his party to a policy of immediate peace. After the failure of the Kerenski Offensive (see above), Russia had no effective army with which to defend itself. At the start of September,

German forces captured the port of Riga and advanced along the Baltic, posing a direct threat to Petrograd. General Lavr Kornilov, who had



the defence of the country, but his bid to take control of Petrograd in mid-September failed. Lenin's Red Guards - armed workers and politicized soldiers and sailors -

were more successful. On 7-8 November they seized control of the capital and Lenin assumed power at the head of a revolutionary government. He immediately declared Russia at peace, in the context of a general appeal to soldiers in all countries to rise up against their capitalist rulers and end the war. More practically, the Bolshevik government asked Germany for an armistice, which was agreed on 16 December. Peace negotiations followed at the German military headquarters of Brest-Litovsk. The Germans were keen to take maximum advantage of

### ARMED PARADE

Armed workers parade in Petrograd on May Day 1917. The Russian capital's name had been patriotically hanged from the too Germanic St Petersburg early in the war.

Russia's weakness. When the Bolsheviks stalled, following Leon Trotsky's line of "neither war nor peace", Germany launched a largely unopposed offensive in mid-February 1918 that carried them hundreds of kilometres further east. On 3 March the Bolsheviks bit the bullet and signed a peace treaty that lost Russia around 30 per cent of its pre-war population.

1914-PRESEN

# 1870-1924

# VLADIMIR LENIN

When World War I started, Russian revolutionary politician Vladimir Lenin was in exile in Switzerland, where he denounced the war as an imperialist" venture. After the fall of the tsar, he accepted a German offer of transport to Russia. His single-minded devotion to world revolution led him to accept the peace of Brest-Litovsk in March 1918, but also to wage ruthless war against his enemies in the Russian Civil War and the Russo-Polish War





## 1918

THE LAST YEAR OF THE WAR brought titanic battles on the Western Front as the stalemate of the trenches finally broke. The Germans' gamble on unlimited submarine warfare had brought the United States into the war, but they believed defeat and political collapse, Germany was

DATE 21 March-3 June 1918

German: 74 divisions.

British: 30 divisions

arrived in force. Large-scale German offensives begun in March 1918 achieved substantial gains but no knock-out punch, and from July the Allies counterattacked. Facing military victory was still possible before American troops forced to accept armistice terms in November.

FINAL OFFENSIVES

## Spring Offensives



LOCATION Western Front from Flanders to

CASUALTIES Allied: 500,000; German: 400,000

the Marne river

Ludendorff planned "to deliver an annihilating blow to the British before American aid can become effective". The Kaiserschlacht, or Michael Offensive, began at 4.40am of 21 March 1918, when some 6,600 guns - many firing gas shells - and 3,500 trench mortars opened up a hurricane of fire on British trenches at the Somme. Stunned by the intensity of the bombardment, the British troops were in poor shape to resist German infantry infilitrating their positions in thick mist and attacking from the flanks and rear. Although some British units fought to the last man, many surrendered or retreated in confusion. The Germans took 21,000 prisoners on the first day. By 27 March they had advanced 65km (40 miles) through an 80km-(50-mile-) wide gap punched in the Allied line. But the offensive then ran out of momentum. Hungry German troops stopped to plunder food stores,

while French forces joined in to



INFANTRY ADVANCE Germans troops advance during the Kaiserschlacht offensive. Many carried

grenades, flamethrowers and machine-guns.

stiffen British resistance. On 9 April Ludendorff launched a new offensive in Flanders. Attacking a sector held by a Portuguese corps and exhausted British units transferred from the Somme for a rest, the Germans advanced 5km (3 miles) on the first day. In response to

"Every position must be held to the last man.. With our backs to the wall... each of us must fight on to the end".

General Haig, order of the day, 11 APRIL 1918

the emergency, Marshal Ferdinand Foch was appointed Allied Supreme Commander to co-ordinate defensive operations. Once again the offensive ran out of steam and by 29 April both sides had fought to a standstill. A further offensive on the Aisne in late May brought the Germans within 90km (56 miles) of Paris.

The combined effect of these offensives was to exhaust and demoralize the German army, using up irreplaceable manpower, and without achieving any decisive objective.

STORMTROOPERS

Elite stormtroopers spearheaded the Kaiserschlacht offensive, pressing deep into enemy lines.

FINAL OFFENSIVES

## Belleau Wood



6-26 June FORCES

LOCATION Between the Aisne and the Marne river, east of Paris

Numbers Unknown American: 9,777 German: numbers killed unknown 1 600 taken prisoner

By May 1918 around half a million American soldiers had arrived in France. On 6 June the US 2nd Division was given the task of recapturing Belleau Wood. The 4th Marine Brigade attacked across an open field swept by German machine-gun fire, taking neavy casualties. The Marines and 3rd Infantry Brigade succeeded in taking the wood, but it was then reclaimed by the Germans, who were not definitively evicted until 26 June. The battle showed the fighting qualities of American troops, but also their inexperience which was to cost them dearly.

#### 1860-1948

## **IOHN PERSHING**

A veteran of wars in the Philippines and Mexico, General John Pershing was selected to lead the American Expeditionary Force and persuaded US politicians of the need for an army numbering millions. Once in Europe, he mostly kept American troops unified under his command, leading them through a costly learning process in the final offensives He believed the armistice was a mistake and that the Germans should have been totally defeated.

PARIS SHELL DAMAGE The spring offensives brought German guns within 90km (56 miles) of Paris, which was hit by over 300 shells.

FINAL OFFENSIVES

## Second Marne



15 July-3 August 1918 FORCES Numbers unknown CASUALTIES French: 95,000: British: 13 000: American: 12,000;

Germans: 168,000

Just as it did four years earlier, the tide of the war in 1918 turned at the Marne river. On 15 July the Germans launched the last of the series of offensives that they had begun on 21

March, striking on a front from the

Marne to Rheims. However, Allied

commander Foch was already preparing his own attack further west. The German offensive at first went well, troops establishing bridgeheads across the Marne, but it was already stalled when the Allied counteroffensive opened at dawn on 18 July. Commanded by the aggressive French general Charles Mangin, it was primarily a French operation, although American divisions played a prominent role. With over 500 tanks and more than 1,000 aircraft committed, the Allies fought their way forwards, progressing 10km (6 miles) in the first two days. The Germans were forced to stage a general withdrawal over two weeks, falling back behind the Aisne to the positions they had held before the spring offensives.

## FINAL OFFENSIVES

## Final Allied Offensives



8 August-FORCES Allied / German: no

CASUALTIES No reliable estimate

At dawn on 8 August 1918 British, Canadian, and Australian infantry advanced behind over 400 tanks against German positions in front of Amiens. They were supported by some 800 aircraft carrying out ground-attack missions and dropping ammunition to advancing troops. By the afternoon the Allies had achieved a major breakthrough, progressing about 12km (7 miles) on what Ludendorff called the "black day of the German army". Although the Amiens offensive quickly ground to a halt, it was a sign of things to come. The strength of the German army was failing while, with the arrival of the Americans, Allied numbers were

## GUN CREW

American infantry press forwards among hell-shattered trees. Two men are operating a 37mm machine-gun.

increasing. The British naval blockade was nflicting immense hardship on German civilians and causing mounting supply problems for the

army. German aircraft were hopelessly outnumbered and German tanks were few and cumbersome. The effectiveness of US forces was demonstrated on 12 September, when the First American Army attacked the St. Mihiel salient, taking more than 13,000 prisoners in a day. In the last week of September, when Allied forces broke through the formidable Hindenburg Line defences, Ludendorff told his superiors that it was necessary to seek an armistice. Many German troops were demoralized and unready to fight to the death - 340,000 Germans surrendered in the last four months of



the war - but stiff fighting continued through weeks of political and diplomatic manoeuvring, On 30 October sailors of the German High Seas Fleet mutinied at Kiel, sparking uprisings in many German cities. On 9 November Germany became a republic and an armistice was agreed two days later, coming into effect at 11am on 11 November.

#### CANAL CROSSING

British troops are addressed by their brigadier after crossing the St. Quentin Canal, a part of the Hindenburg Line,



# **ERICH LUDENDORFF** Victories at Liège and Tannenberg

made the previously obscure staff officer Ludendorff a German national hero. He masterminded the German war effort from August 1916, creating a centrally controlled war economy and ruthlessly pursuing total victory. After the war he promoted the myth that the German army had been "stabbed in the back" by socialists and Jews, and became a leading figure in the early Nazi movement.





# MARK IV TANK

TANKS WERE FIRST USED BY THE BRITISH DURING THE SOMME OFFENSIVE ON 15 SEPTEMBER 1916. EARLY MODELS WERE SLOW AND UNRELIABLE BUT SHOWED THE VEHICLE'S OVERWHELMING POTENTIAL.

In 1915 the British began designing a secret new vehicle, using the American Holt caterpillar tractor as the basis for its chassis. The Mark IV, introduced in 1917, incorporated thicker armour plating than the Mark I, unveiled the year before. Like all the early models, the Mark IV was a heavy tank in which mobility was sacrificed to armour. It was employed to lead infantry across no man's land, smashing a path through barbed wire and trenches.

## STRENGTHS AND WEAKNESSES

Although they defied machine guns, heavy tanks were still vulnerable to artillery fire. When operated over muddy ground pitted with shell holes, they constantly bogged or broke down. At the battle of Cambrai in 1917 about 324 British heavy tanks, authorized to carry out a mass attack on firm ground, demonstrated what the vehicle could achieve if properly used. Lighter, quicker tanks such as the British Whippet and the French Renault FT-17 - which introduced the rotating gun turret - proved their worth in the more open warfare of the war's later stages.



## HELL ON TRACKS

Over 1,000 Mark IV tanks were built, more than any other model of its day. The tank went from concept to successful design over the course of World War I.

SPECIFICATION Speed Up to 6.4kph (4mph) Origin Britain Date of Launch 1917 Horsepower 105 Weight 28 tons DITCHED TANK Mark IVs frequently failed to cope with the mud, trenches, and enormous shell craters of the Western Front battlefields.





at the front of the Mark IV. The driver had to bring the tank to a halt to turn it, which made it an easy target.



LEVER This secured the escape hatch - on the roof of the tank - from the inside.



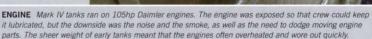
TRACK PLATE The tank moved on two loops STEEL PLATE Mark III of metal links running around rollers. On uneven ground this was far superior to wheels.



VISION PORTS Enemy troops quickly learned to train their fire on tanks' vision ports, so crews began to wear face masks.



and IV tanks had thicker armour than earlier models to withstand German armour-piercing bullets. Even so, the impact of bullets on the outside sent splinters flying on the tank's inside, so the crew had to wear protective clothing.





SHELLS These rounds were shelved by the sponson for easy access. Some are spent.



# BETWEEN THE WARS

IN 1918 THE PIOUS HOPE was expressed that World War I would prove to have been a war to end wars. An international organization, the League of Nations, was set up in the war's immediate aftermath to preserve peace and promote disarmament. This impulse was maintained through the following decade: in August 1928, 15 countries, including Britain, Germany, France, the United States, and Japan, signed the Kellogg-Briand Pact, solemnly outlawing war. Yet within less than five years of that agreement, Germany had a Nazi government dedicated to rearmament and aggressive expansionism, and Japan had already embarked on the first of the military adventures that would lead to World War II.

SOVIET STATUE

Vera Muhkina's worker and

farmer statue was made for

the Soviet pavilion at the

Paris Exhibition of 1937.

an inspiring example

worldwide.

1000

## AFTER WORLD WAR I

Germany never shook off the bitterness of defeat or accepted the financial sacrifices it was forced to make by the terms of the peace treaty. When reparation payments fell behind in 1923, Franco-Belgian forces occupied the industrial Ruhr; Germany's economy, already heavily in debt, hyperinflated. Meanwhile the



establishment of the first communist government in the Soviet Union created an ideological division that complicated power relations between the states. Although much of public opinion had shifted against the

glorification of warfare - as shown by a surge of antiwar literature in the late 1920s - some ex-servicemen came out of World War I with a devotion to militarism and nationalism, exemplified by the fascists, who took power in Italy in 1922, and the German Nazi Party, which attempted a coup in 1923.

SineBillion

At the peak of the hyperinflation in Germany in 1923, a note

not have bought a cup of coffee.

for nine billion marks would

Erich Remarque's 1929 novel All Quiet on the Western Front was one of the books that established the image of World War I as a "futile slaughter"

## CIVIL AND COLONIAL WARS

Between 1918 and 1923 the major armed conflicts were essentially a settlement of leftover issues from World War I. In Russia a complex and immensely destructive civil war left the Bolsheviks in control of most of the fomer Russian empire, while a short, sharp war with Poland established Russia's western border. Turkish nationalists defied a carveup of Anatolia decreed by a peace treaty imposed on the old Ottoman empire and fought a successful war with Greece to establish the state of Turkey. Colonial powers devoted some of the air power developed in World War I to "imperial policing" operations - the Italians against rebels in Libya, the French and Spanish against Abd el-Krim in Morocco, and the British against Kurds and Shi'ites in Iraq. The use



of aerial bombardment sometimes with poison gas – to intimidate tribal peoples was regarded as n economic way of upholding authority.

## TALIAN INVADERS

Italian troops with local eople during the invasion f Ethiopia in 1935. European democracies failed



## NAZI LEADER

Adolf Hitler displays the Iron Cross he won in World War I on his Nazi uniform. His early experience of war shaped his brutal world view of life as the survival of the strongest.

The 1930s was a decade of widening warfare, culminating in World War II. The collapse of German democracy under the impact of economic depression allowed Adolf Hitler's Nazi Party to come to power in 1933. Hitler's mission was to reverse the verdict of World War I. He greatly enhanced German power by joining Austria and the Sudetenland area of Czechoslovakia to the Reich. In Japan, militarists gained control of the government and followed an expansionist

> policy in Asia, seizing Manchuria in 1931 and embarking on a full-scale invasion of China in 1937. Italy's conquest of Ethiopia - a League of Nations member state - in 1935-36 produced such a timid response that "collective security" was dead. When civil war broke out in Spain in 1936, Italian fascists and German Nazis fought for the Nationalist side.

> > while the Soviet Union backed the Republican government.



## BENITO MUSSOLINI

Blustering Italian dictator Mussolini came to power in 1922 after threatening to march on Rome with his black-shirted paramilitary fascist combat squads. The hostility of Britain and France to his invasion of Ethiopia in 1935-36 led him to form an alliance with Hitler. Italian troops participated in the Spanish Civil War, but Mussolini hesitated to enter World War II until June 1940. Driven from power when the Allies invaded Italy in 1943, he was seized by the Germans and set up as a puppet ruler in northern Italy. Italian partisans





in the increased role of air power. The heavy casualties caused by the Japanese bombing of Nanking in China and the German air force's destruction of Guernica in Spain suggested that a war between the major powers might begin with the immediate laying waste of

cities from the air. As rearmament got under way in the second half of the 1930s, the key focus was on aircraft. Only the Germans devised tactics for using aircraft in conjunction with tanks and other ground forces.

## BACK TO WAR

British munition workers stack up artillery shells in November 1939 as Europe is once more plunged into a major war.



# RUSSIA AND CHINA AT WAR

THE AREA OF THE GREAT EURASIAN LANDMASS stretching from the Baltic to the Pacific was the site of upheaval and wars in the early half of the 20th century. In the former Russian empire, the Soviet Union was founded after extensive warfare defeated enemies of the revolution and established new borders. In China, a Kuomintang (nationalist) government struggled to establish its

rule nationwide, resisted by warlords and communists. Exploiting China's weakness, the Japanese encroached on northern China in a series of military operations between 1931 and 1933, occupying Manchuria and forcing the Chinese to withdraw all troops north of Beijing. But their full-scale invasion of China in 1937 failed to achieve a swift victory, despite the capture of major cities.

RUSSIAN CIVIL WAR

## Russian Civil War



LOCATION Former Russian DATE May 1918-November 1920 ENRCES Rolsheviks 800 000 (October 1920) Whites: c.300,000 (end 1918); foreign forces: 180,000 (end 1918) **CASUALTIES** Total

In mid-1918 the Russian Bolshevik government was threatened by a variety of forces: Czech former prisoners of war, who took control of the trans-Siberian railway: forces from Britain, France, the United States, and Japan, who occupied areas around key ports; nationalist groups in Ukraine and other ethnically distinct areas; and the

"White" armies led by tsarist officers - most prominently General Anton Denikin and Admiral Alexander Kolchak - who wished to suppress the revolution. Bolshevik leader Leon Trotsky built up the Red Army from scratch. Like the White armies, it was commanded by former tsarist officers, the most effective of whom was Mikhail Tukhachevsky. Trotsky exercised control from an armoured train that travelled between the various fronts. Cavalry came into its own in a war of raids fought by relatively small formations spread over vast areas. Great barbarity was shown by both sides as they terrorized the peasantry to extract conscripts and



grain. The White forces were poorly led, crippled by internal divisions, and could not rally popular support. Kolchak was captured by the Bolsheviks and executed in February 1920. Most of Denikin's forces were

headed by the French general

Maxime Weygand, were dispatched

evacuated from Black Sea ports the following month. White general Peter Wrangel attempted a final offensive from the Crimea in June to coincide with Russia's war with Poland, but he too was forced to flee in November.

A detachment of the Bolshevik First Cavalry Army advances across Russia. Led by Semyen Budenny, the Red cavalry played a major role both in the Russian Civil War and the Polish-Bolshevik War.

POLISH-BOLSHEVIK WAR

## Warsaw



Outside Warsaw

CASUALTIES Russians: c.80,000 killed or wounded, 60,000 taken prisoner: Poles: 50,000 killed or wounded In May 1920, with the support of Ukrainian nationalists led by Simon Petlyura, Polish forces under Jozef Pilsudski invaded Ukraine and seized Kiev. It was Pilsudski's aim to push the borders of newly independent Poland as far as possible to the east. The

Russian Red Army counterattacked

in force, retaking Kiev on 12 June.

The Bolsheviks continued with the

offensive, hoping to win Poland for the revolution. Military advisors,

DATE 7 May-

12 October 1920

FORCES Russians:

200.000; Poles: 200.000

to Warsaw by the western European powers, who feared that a Bolshevik capture of Poland would lead to further Russian incursions into Germany. By 13 August the Red Army's Western Army Group under Tukhachevsky was enveloping Warsaw to the north and south while the Southwest Army Group was engaged in front of Lvov. On 16 August Pilsudski personally commanded a surprise counteroffensive of around 20,000 troops into a weak spot identified by Polish intelligence between the Bolshevik armies. A simultaneous blow against the northern flank of Tukhachevsky's forces threatened to trap his army in a pincer movement. The Russians were forced into a disorganized withdrawal eastward over the Niemen River into Belorussia and Ukraine,

where further fighting saw the Polish

army victorious. Under heavy pressure from the western European powers, an armistice was agreed on 12 October. Both the Bolsheviks and the powers of western Europe considered Poland to be on the verge of defeat before the Battle of Warsaw, also

known as the Miracle at the Vistula: the unexpected Polish victory crippled the Bolshevik forces. The Treaty of Riga, signed on 18 March 1921, gave a securely independent Poland western Ukraine and Belorussia, which they held for the next 18 years.

## MARSHAL IOZEF PILSUDSKI

Before World War I, Pilsudski took part in Polish agitation for freedom from Russian rule. During the war he led the Polish Legion, which fought with the Austro-Hungarian army against Russia. As ruler of Poland from 1918 he launched the war with the Bolsheviks that left Poland in control of western Ukraine and Belorussia. After retiring in 1923, he returned to rule with dictatorial powers in 1926.



CHINESE "BANDIT SUPPRESSION" The Long March

20 October 1935

from Jiangxi

CASUALTIES

FORCES 80,000 in initial

Communist outbreak

Unknown, but 9,000

arrived at Wugizhen



LOCATION 10,000km (6,200 miles) from Ruijin to Wugizhen

Until 1927 the Chinese Communis Party supported the Kuomintang under Jiang Jieshi (Chiang Kai-Shek) in unifying China under a nationalist government. The Kuomintang then turned on the communists, however, massacring many and forcing the survivors to flee the major cities. In the early 1930s Jiang Jieshi launched a series of campaigns to destroy their remaining bases. Communist-controlled Jiangxi was encircled by government troops and placed under blockade. Communist leaders, including Mao Zedong, decided to stage a breakout to the southwest. Short of supplies -

## GUERRILLA LEADER

Mao Zedong emerged as the leader of the communists during the Long March. He advocated a peasant revolutionary war.

only one in three troops spearheading the march had rifles - the communists nonetheless broke out of encirclement and headed west then north in search of a safe base. Intermittent small-scale fighting was a constant drain on manpower, but hardship and disease caused most losses as the march crossed high mountains and trackless swamps.

## JAPAN INVADES CHINA Japanese Invasion



DATE July 1937-January 1938 FORCES Chinese: 2 150 000: Jananese Manchurian: 450,000 CASHALTIES Total at Shanghai: c.200,000 Chinese at Rape of Nanking: c.250,000

On 7 July 1937 a clash between Japanese and Chinese troops at Beijing's Marco Polo bridge precipitated a full-scale war in which the Kuomintang and the communist Chinese fought as allies against the Japanese. The heaviest fighting occurred at Shanghai, where Japanese troops carried out

amphibious landings with strong naval and air support from 13 August. By 12 September Japanese forces were inside the city, but fierce Chinese resistance continued from street to street. In early November Chinese forces carried out a fighting withdrawal. With Shanghai in their hands, the Japanese advanced on Nanking, where Chinese soldiers failed to put up substantial resistance, despite outnumbering their enemy. The Japanese subjected the city to aerial bombardment and then unleashed six weeks of brutality and massacre upon civilians and prisoners of war alike. Between 200,000 and 300,000 people were killed, many after rape or torture.

## SWARMING THE WALL

A regiment of Japanese infantry marches onto a section of the Great Wall of China near Beijing in November 1937.

## THE NOMONHAN INCIDENT Nomonhan

## 28 May-16 September 1939 FORCES Soviet and Mongolian: 65,000;

LOCATION Border hetween Manchuria and Outer Mongolia

CASUALTIES Soviet: 24,000; Jananese: 18 000

Japanese: 28,000

Japan pushed troops from Manchuria into a region disputed with the Soviets across the Khalkin-Gol river. Soviet general Georgi Zhukov was sent to repel the intrusion with a well-equipped force dominant in numbers. On 20 August he launched an attack near the small village of Nomonhan with armoured brigades and mechanized infantry. Remnants of the Japanese forces retreated into Manchuria, after which a ceasefire was agreed. The victory freed the Soviets from the threat of fighting on two fronts when Germany invaded in 1941.

## SOVIET ARMOUR

The Red Army prepares for battle. With the outbreak of World War II in western Europe, Nomonhan attracted little world attention



DATE 15 December

FORCES Unknown

or taken prisoner:

Nationalists: 50 000

killed, wounded, or

CASUALTIES Loyalists:

60,000 killed, wounded,

1937-20 February 1938

# SPANISH CIVIL WAR

IN JULY 1936 ARMY OFFICERS tried to overthrow Spain's leftwing Popular Front government, but the attempted coup was successfully resisted by workers' militias. The resulting civil war lasted for three years and cost at least 600,000 lives. Around 40,000 volunteers fought in the International Brigades for the government, or Loyalist, side, which also received arms and aircraft from the Soviet Union. Over 60,000 troops from fascist Italy and the German Condor Legion fought for the rebels, or Nationalists, led by General Francisco Franco. Britain and France maintained a strict neutrality that contributed to Franco's victory.



## SPANISH CIVIL WAR Advance from Africa



August-September FORCES Army of Africa: 34,000

No reliable estimates

CASHALTIES

Spanish Morocco, Badaioz, Toledo

The Spanish army's rebellion launched on 18 July 1936 at first looked like failing. Its most experienced forces were the Foreign Legionnaires and Moroccans in Spanish Morocco. As the navy was loval to the government, these troops could not cross to Spain.

The head of the African forces, General Franco, requested assistance from fascist Italy and Nazi Germany. The arrival of German Junkers Ju-52 transport aircraft at the end of July allowed Franco to fly 15,000 troops across to Seville in 10 days, the first airlift in history. With air cover provided by Italian Savoia-Marchetti bombers, other troops were ferried by boat across the straits. The Army of Africa marched north to Badajoz and west to Toledo, massacring thousands of militiamen and suspected Lovalist sympathizers along the way. At Toledo on 28 September it relieved the Nationalist garrison in the Alcazar fortress, which had been under siege for 10 weeks. The next target was Madrid.

## MESSERSCHMITT BF 109

Messerschmitt Bf 109 fighter planes



## SPANISH CIVIL WAR

## Defence of Madrid



FORCES Nationalists: c.50,000; Loyalists: unknown CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

In October 1936 Madrid was under threat from the Army of Africa in the south and General Emilio Mola's forces in the north. The first arrival of Soviet military supplies was followed on 8 November by the first detail of

the International Brigades. By then, Nationalist troops were already in the suburbs and the government had fled to Valencia, leaving General José Miaja in command. Madrid came under artillery and aerial bombardment, but remarkably its defences held. The 11th International Brigade, a variety of makeshift militias - including anarchist, communist, and women's brigades loyal army units, and a small quantity of Soviet tanks and aircraft fought the Army of Africa to a standstill. Madrid stayed besieged for the rest of the war.

## IMPROVISED DEFENCES

Spanish Loyalists establish a machine-gun post behind a barricade of rice sacks, ready to resist the Nationalist penetration of Madrid.



## SPANISH CIVIL WAR Guadalajara



8-16 March 1937 FORCES Loyalists: Nationalists: 45,000 CASUALTIES Loyalists: 7,000;

Italians and

65km (40 miles) northeast of Madrid, Spain

Nationalists: 5.000

In February 1937 the International Brigade held Franco's Nationalists in desperate fighting in the Jarama valley, east of Madrid. Italian general Mario Roatta decided to attack towards Guadalajara, intending to join up with Franco's forces. The initial advance on 8 March, spearheaded by over 100 light tanks supported by artillery, proke through the thinly held Loyalist line, but the Italians were hampered by snow and sleet, for which they were ill prepared. Franco remained bassive, allowing the Loyalists to transfer orces from the Jarama front. These included the Garibaldi Battalion, largely composed of anti-fascist Italians, who ound themselves fighting an Italian civil war on Spanish soil. On 12 March the Loyalists mounted a counterattack, deploying Soviet T-26 tanks that outgunned the Italian armour. Loyalist ircraft carried out ground-attack



A Loyalist poster calls for unity in pursuit of victory - a vain hope given the political divisions within the Republican camp.

missions to devastating effect, and the Italians were driven back in disarray. A small defensive victory, Guadalajara gave a boost to Loyalist morale and dented the prestige of fascist Italy.

"A battle is in progress not merely to defend a people from a savage aggressor, but to destroy something that...will eventually crush the people of all democratic countries."

Bill Paynter, British International Brigade member, MAY 1937

SPANISH CIVIL WAR

## Guernica



Basque country northern Spain

The Basque area of northern Spain supported the Republic because it offered them regional self-government In spring 1937 General Mola launched a campaign against the Basque country, threatening to raze it to the ground "if submission was not immediate". The

26 April 1937

Basque: none

Germans: none:

CASUALTIES

Germans: 43 aircraft;

Basque civilians: c 300

Basques put up a brave fight, but in late April they were falling back towards Guernica, a market town of symbolic importance as the "cradle of Basque culture". The German Condor Legion under Wolfram von Richthofen was carrying out air attacks in support of the Nationalist offensive officially attacking military targets, but expressly "without regard for the civilian population". On the afternoon of 26 April the Condor Legion struck at Guernica. They might

have been delivering a blow against Basque morale, or they might have been seeking to destroy a bridge to block the withdrawal of Basque forces. Either way, the effect was devastation. SPANISH
The Heinkel He-51s MERIT MEDAL

went in first, followed

by Junkers transports roughly adapted for bombing missions. In wave after wave of "shuttle" attacks, dropping a mix of incendiaries and 250kg (550lb) bombs, they destroyed two-thirds of Guernica's buildings. Basque spokesman Father Alberto Onaindaia, who arrived at Guernica at the same time as the aircraft, described seeing He-51 fighters

strafe civilians: "The planes 1 descended very low, the machine-gun fire tearing up the woods and roads, in whose children." Hundreds of civilians were killed; the

of the raid was not hit. Reports from foreign journalists who witnessed the

## bombing of a civilian population.

Picasso's painting for the Paris Exhibition of 1937 helped fix Guernica as a symbol of the inhumanity of aerial bombardment.

gutters, huddled together, lav old men, women, and bridge said to be the primary target aftermath ensured that Guernica would become synonymous with the ruthless

## PICASSO'S GUERNICA



SPANISH CIVIL WAR Teruel

eastern Spain

taken prisoner By the winter of 1937 the Nationalists had overrun the Basque country and were preparing a decisive offensive against Madrid. To forestall this attack, General Vicente Rojo launched an offensive against the Nationalist-held city of Teruel. The attack achieved complete surprise, trapping a Nationalist garrison inside Teruel. Franco responded as the Loyalists had hoped by transferring forces to the Aragon front. The fighting took place on bleak, rocky terrain during one of the coldest winters on record. Many soldiers on both sides froze to death. On 8 January, after house-to-house ighting, Teruel fell to the Loyalists, but they were themselves threatened with encirclement as the major Nationalist forces began to arrive. Amid recriminations between rival political factions, the Loyalists achieved fighting withdrawal under aerial and artillery bombardment, once more

worsted by the Nationalists' growing

materiel and numerical superiority.

## SPANISH CIVIL WAR

## Ebro



Spain

16 November 1938 FORCES Loyalists: 80,000 n original offensive CASUALTIES Loyalists: 70,000 killed or wounded: Nationalists: 36.500

killed or wounded

In summer 1938, facing almost certain defeat, the Loyalists launched a major offensive across the Ebro river, hoping that, if they demonstrated their ability to fight, the western democracies might yet come to their aid. Under General Juan Modesto, troops crossed the river by boat on the night of 23-24 July, the rest of the force crossing on pontoon bridges the following day. By 1 August they had advanced 40km (25 miles), but the Nationalists held a strong position at Gandesa. Both sides suffered heavy casualties in frontal assaults on entrenched positions. Nationalist artillery and air strikes by German Ju-87 Stuka dive-bombers wore down the Popular Army, the remnants of which were driven back to their start point by mid-November, A Nationalist victory in the war was now

## VICTORIOUS NATIONALISTS

Spanish Nationalist troops enter Barcelona in lanuary 1939 in Italian-made mini-tanks. The city's Loyalist defenders fled to France



# HITLER'S WAR

WORLD WAR II CONSISTED OF two more or less distinct conflicts, one fought in Europe and North Africa, the other in the Pacific and Asia, Between them they are reckoned to have caused the deaths of over 50 million people. The European war was a conflict of Hitler's own making, planned and, to a great extent, executed by him.

## NAZI TRIUMPHS

The war in Europe began on 1 September 1939, when Germany invaded Poland, so provoking a declaration of war by Britain and France. A pact with the Soviet Union, signed just days earlier, allowed Hitler to concentrate on the Western Front after Poland's defeat. Germany was not superior to the Allies in numbers of tanks, but it had developed Blitzkrieg tactics, combining air power and armoured divisions to achieve rapid victory in mobile warfare. In a series of lightning campaigns between 1939 and 1941, Hitler extended German control over most of Europe, with only Britain remaining undefeated. When Germany invaded the Soviet Union in June 1941, the war took on an unprecedented scale and savagery. The following December, after the Japanese attack on

Pearl Harbor, Hitler declared war on the United States, which was already heavily involved in support of Britain.

#### SS INSIGNIA

The SS was a Nazi elite formation that performed well in battle but was responsible for many atrocities. In particular, SS personnel played a key role in the administration of death amps where millions of Jews and others were murdered.

# Sea

GERMAN IET

NAZI LEADERS

The world's first operational

jet fighter, the Messerschmitt

Me 262, was used in the defence

Top German Nazi leaders and senior

officers visit the West Wall (also known

as the Sieofried Line), which was built

to defend Germany's western border.

Those present include Hitler himself

(far right) and SS chief Heinrich

Himmler (centre, with glasses).

of Germany from July 1944.

## ADOLF HITLER

Austrian by birth, Adolf Hitler served in the Germany army in World War I and was decorated for bravery. After Germany's

defeat in 1918. ne entered right wing nationalist circles and, in 1923, as head of the Nazi Party, led a failed oup in Munich. The Great Depression turned the Nazis

largest single political party. After becoming chancellor in 1933 with the support of German conservatives, Hitler instituted a personal dictatorship. His goals were to make Germany dominant in Europe, destroy the Jews, and reduce the Slavs to servitude. Although early in the war he supported Blitzkrieg tactics, his personal control over the German war effort was disastrous. He survived an assassination attempt in 1944 but committed suicide the next year amid the ruins of Berlin.

## GERMAN SOLDIER

Despite technological advances, much of the war was fought by soldiers such as this German infantryman, with rifles, machin guns, and other weapons little different from those of World War I

## THE TIDE TURNS

After December 1941 Germany's hopes of victory rested on crushing the Soviet armies and reducing Britain to submission by a submarine blockade, which would leave the United States confronted by a "fortress Europe" impossible to assault. But from the end of 1942, the tide of battle on the Eastern Front turned with the German defeat at Stalingrad, while in 1943 the U-boat menace was tamed. Victorious in

North Africa, Allied troops landed in southern Europe in 1943, taking Germany's main ally, Italy, out of the war. Hitler was thrown back on his belief in secret weapons that might swing the war around, but although Germany developed the first operational jet aircraft and cruise and ballistic missiles - the V1 and V2 - these were created too late to have a decisive effect on the war's outcome.



## **IOSEF STALIN**

Born in Georgia, Stalin was one of the leaders of the 1917 Bolshevik Revolution. Throughout the 1920s he extended his power inside the Soviet Communist Party, building up a personal dictatorship. In the 1930s he purged potential rivals, including much of the Red Army officer corps. His pact with Hitler in 1939 paved the way for World War II. After the German invasion of 1941, which Stalin refused to see coming, he rallied the people with appeals to Russian patriotism. His conduct of the war was resolute but hugely wasteful of soldiers' lives.



## RED VICTORY

Soviet soldiers advance through the centre of Berlin in May 1945. By this time, street fighting and aerial nbardment had reduced much of

# **ALLIED VICTORY**

Gradually, the United States and the Soviet Union brought their manpower and industrial potential to bear - a remarkable achievement for the Soviets, who had lost most of their industrial regions to German occupation. The Allies produced weapons that were sometimes less sophisticated than their German equivalents but sturdy and manufactured in vast numbers. The German airforce - the Luftwaffe - was worn down by the British and American strategic bombing offensive that reduced

German cities to ruins. By the time of the D-Day landings in June 1944 it could no longer provide effective air support, while Allied airforces had developed an impressive ground-attack capability. None of the major combatants broke under the strain of war; despite a revolt by German generals, the German people fought for Hitler to the last. The alliance led by US president Franklin D. Roosevelt, British prime minister Winston Churchill, and Soviet dictator Josef Stalin also held firm in pursuit of "unconditional surrender". The war ended in 1945 with the Western Allies and the Soviet Union occupying Germany.







design around the eye, showing the recipient that they could trust the letter's contents.

THERE WAS A STARK CONTRAST in attitudes between the two sides at the outset of World War II in Europe. Britain and France had not wanted war and had little enthusiasm for offensive action. In the 1930s the French had spent a large proportion of their military budget on the Maginot Line, a series of fortifications on the border with Germany intended for a static,

defensive war. Nazi Germany, on the other hand, was imbued with a spirit of ruthless aggression. German Blitzkrieg tactics were based on speed and decisiveness, hitting the enemy hard at his weakest points and exploiting breakthroughs with maximum mobility. Tanks and aircraft were the key weapons that would enable Germany to win this "lightning" war.

THE POLISH CAMPAIGN

## Defeat of Poland



DATE 1 September-5 October 1939 FORCES

Germans: 1.25 million: Poles: 800 000

CASHAITIES Germans 14.000 killed, 30.000 wounded; Poles: 66,000

At dawn on 1 September 1939 German forces invaded Poland without a declaration of war. Poland was exposed to attack in the north from East Prussia and to the south from Slovakia - a German puppet state - as well as along its long western border. Under-equipped and thinly spread, Polish forces were sliced apart by German armoured spearheads supported by bomber aircraft. The

## POLISH CAVALRY

In 1939 the Polish army had 40 cavalry regiments, none of which was able to make any impact on the fighting. The Germans still relied heavily on horses for transport.

Polish airforce was quickly wiped out, most of its aircraft destroyed while still on the ground. On 3 September Britain and France declared war in response to the invasion but remained passive, doing nothing to relieve pressure on Poland. Polish forces

withdrew to the Vistula river,

concentrating around Warsaw.

capital was surrounded; two days

By 15 September, the Polish

later, at German invitation, the Soviet army occupied eastern Poland. On 27 September, after ten days of aerial bombardment, Warsaw

surrendered, although pockets of resistance held out until 5 October. Tens of thousands of Poles escaped to continue the war as armed forces in exile.



## HEINZ GUDERIAN

A staff officer in 1918, Guderian became an expert in armoured warfare and in the mid-1930s persuaded his superiors in the German army - the Wehrmacht to let him form the first panzer (tank) divisions. He developed and applied the theory of Blitzkrieg and led tank forces in the invasion of oland and the ttle of France. ismissed in December 1941, when the invasion of Russia ran into difficulties, he was recalled in 1943. Hitler's chief of



## The Winter War

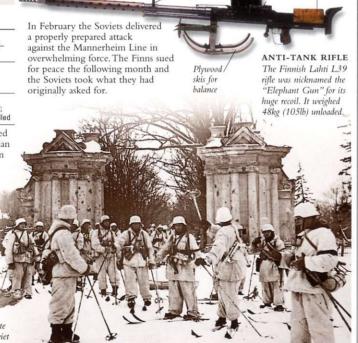


30 November 1939-12 March 1940 FORCES Finns: 175,000: Soviets: 1 million

CASUALTIES Finnish-Soviet border Finns: 25.000 killed: Soviets: 127,000 killed

In November 1939 Stalin demanded that Finland cede part of the Karelian Isthmus to the Soviet Union. When the Finns refused, the Soviets launched a hasty attack, expecting the operation to be a formality. But led by veteran Marshal Carl Mannerheim, the Finnish army held their fortified line north of Leningrad, inflicting heavy casualties. Soviet columns soon became bogged down in snow and freezing conditions, and were cut apart by Finnish ski troops, who enjoyed unhampered mobility.

Finnish troops operating on skis in white winter camouflage ran rings around Soviet units, most of which had no winter equipment Thousands of Soviet soldiers died of cold.



THE NORWEGIAN CAMPAIGN

## The Norwegian Campaign



8 April-9 June 1940 FORCES Germans: 10.000: Allies: 24.000 (Norwegians: 12,000)

CASUALTIES Germans: 5,500; Allies: 7,300 (Norwegians: 1,800)

Neutral Scandinavia was a vital source of iron ore for Germany. Britain and France made plans to invade Norway, but Germany acted more decisively. On 8 April British ships laying mines in Norwegian waters ran into German convoys carrying troops to Norwegian ports. Next day the Germans occupied enmark unopposed and paratroopers seized Oslo, Allied landings to counter the German invasion began on 14 April but failed to take German-held Trondheim: Allied troops there were evacuated by 3 May. At Narvik the Royal Navy inflicted heavy losses on German ships, but it took until 27 May to drive the Germans from the port. Military disaster in France then led to the withdrawal of all Allied troops from Norway.



and the Blitz

The Battle of Britain

Southern and central Britain

HITLER'S WAR

DATE Battle of Britain: Jul-Oct 1940; Blitz: Sep 1940-May 1941

RAF: 900 fighters CASUALTIES B. of Britain: Luftwaffe: 1,887 aircraft;

After defeating France, Hitler hoped bombers with that the British would sue for peace. fighter escorts were but, under the leadership of Winston Churchill, Britain instead adopted a posture of defiance. Hitler then ordered preparations for a cross-Channel invasion and instructed the Luftwaffe "to overcome the British air force with all means at its disposal". The British Fighter Command was well prepared to meet a German air offensive. A chain of radar stations was in place to pass warning of approaching enemy aircraft to operations rooms, where the progress of the air battle could be monitored. Pilots at fighter bases were in constant readiness for take-off. After Poles, and other Europeans. Most preliminary clashes over the Channel dangerous to the British were German attacks on fighter airfields, in July 1940, Luftwaffe operations began in earnest in mid-August. but these were rarely pursued with Whenever weather permitted, fleets of sufficient concentration. In general,

FORCES Luftwaffe: 1,464 fighters, 1,380 bombers;

BAF: 1.023 aircraft: Blitz: 43,000 British civilians

> sent across in daylight from airfields in France. In clashes over southern England, RAF Spitfires took on the German escorts, while Hurricane fighters attacked the German bombers. Fighter Command chief Hugh Dowding had a clear objective: to keep his fighter force in operation. The British aircraft industry could make up for aircraft losses, but trained pilots were in short supply; the RAF fighter squadrons depended on a mix of nationalities, including British, Canadians, New Zealanders, Australians, South Africans, Czechs,

the Germans had the edge in air combat but lacked clear objectives. On 7 September the main focus was arbitrarily shifted from bombing airfields to mass raids on London. By late October, all thought of an invasion had been abandoned. Air operations then focused on night bombing raids. The Germans wreaked devastation on London and other

British cities, but they failed to develop a viable heavy bomber, limiting the impact of attacks, which never exceeded 500 tons of bombs dropped a night. The "Blitz" showed no signs of breaking the British will to resist. The raids passed their peak by the end of May 1941. as aircraft were withdrawn for the

"Let us therefore brace ourselves to our duties and so bear ourselves that, if the British empire and the Commonwealth last for a thousand years, men will still say: 'this was their finest hour'."

Winston Churchill, 18 JUNE 1940





## WINSTON CHURCHILL

British war leader Winston Churchill was a soldier before he was a politician, seeing action against the Mahdi at Omdurman in 1898. His role in promoting the Gallipoli operation when First Lord of the Admiralty in World War I earned him a reputation as an impulsive adventurer lacking in judgement. During the 1930s, as a maverick Conservative MP, he led opposition to the policy of appeasement of Hitler and pressed for rapid rearmament. In 1939 he returned to control of the Admiralty and, despite bearing much of the responsibility for the debacle in Norway in 1940 (see p298), became prime minister at the head of a coalition government just as the German invasion of France began. His defiant speeches helped to rally the British people behind a policy of "no surrende

through the most difficult days of the war. In July 1945 he was evicted from office by British voters just months after victory in Europe.



## LONDON'S BURNING

St Paul's Cathedral stands surrounded by smoke and fire after an air raid on London in December 1940 during the Blitz. As well as 40,000 killed, 50,000 civilians were injured in the bombings.

# WAR IN THE MEDITERRANEAN

ITALY'S ENTRY INTO THE WAR in June 1940 turned the Mediterranean into a theatre of conflict. Defeats for the Italians - by the British in North Africa and the Greeks in Albania drew German forces into the region. In the end Germany paid heavily for its commitment to

the desert war in North Africa, but when the Allies invaded Italy it utterly failed to prove itself the "soft underbelly" of Europe that Churchill had hoped. When Italy surrendered to the Allies in 1943, the Germans continued a vigorous resistance on the Italian peninsula.

THE BATTLE FOR CRETE

## Crete



20 May-1 June 1941 FORCES Allies: 42 500: Axis: 22 000 men. 600 Ju-52 transports. 80 aliders CASUALTIES Allies: 2,000

killed, 12,000 prisoner;

Axis: 4,000 killed

Crete eastern

OF WORLD WARS

In April 1941 German forces overran Yugoslavia and Greece. Allied troops mostly from Australia and New Zealand - were evacuated to Crete. German general Kurt Student devised an airborne operation to seize the island, but the Allies knew, from Enigma codebreakers (see p305). every detail of his plans. As the Seventh Airborne Division dropped on 20 May, the Germans suffered more than 50 per cent casualties. But Allied forces were poorly equipped, with no air cover.



They mistakenly let the Germans take control of an airstrip at Maleme, allowing elite mountain troops with heavy equipment to land. The Royal Navy evacuated about half the Allied force via the port of Sphakia.

## BEFORE THE DROP

German paratroopers fly towards Crete. The death rate suffered in the jump, and by German glider troops, was so high that Hitler banned further large-scale airborne operations for the rest of the war.

Zealand, Indian, South African,

and Free French formations, the

Eighth Army faced a formidable

enemy position consisting of

extensive minefields defended

by infantry and anti-tank guns,

the rear. The German forces had

serious supply problems, however,

and Rommel himself was ill.

would prepare the way for infantry

to advance through the minefields,

would follow. Montgomery intended

it to be "a killing match" rather than

the "tip-and-run" mobile warfare at

which Rommel excelled. Resisting

pressure from Churchill for haste,

600 guns opened up in the largest

switching to a creeping barrage as

Montgomery set the offensive for the

night of 23 October. At 9.40pm some

preparatory bombardment since 1918,

infantry advanced into the minefields

with bayonets fixed. Sappers worked

to clear anti-tank mines and mark

taped corridors for the armour to

follow. The fighting was bloody,

confused, and inconclusive. As the

offensive became bogged down,

his tank commanders to advance

hrough uncleared minefields. On

27 October, with Rommel back.

the Germans launched an

Montgomery struggled to persuade

clearing a path along which tanks

Montgomery planned a

frontal offensive closer in

spirit to World War I than to

Blitzkrieg. An artillery barrage

with panzer divisions held in

THE NORTH AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

## Gazala



26 May-21 June 1942

Western Desert,

FORCES Axis: 110,000 men 560 tanks: Allies: 125 000 men 850 tanks

CASUALTIES Avis: 60 000: Allies: 88 000

German general Erwin Rommel's Afrika Korps and their Italian allies engaged in a struggle for control of North Africa that swayed back and forth across the Western Desert. In spring 1942 the British were holding defensive line stretching south from Gazala, near Tobruk. Rommel decided to lead his tanks round the southern end of the line and drive up to the coast, cutting the British Eighth Army off from the rear. At first this bold manoeuvre went badly, newly delivered Grant tanks taking a heavy toll of Rommel's armour. The German tanks were trapped on the eastern side of the British line, with British minefields behind them and tanks in front of them. But a screen of German 88mm anti-tank guns prevented British armour coming in for the kill. With consummate skill, Rommel broke the stranglehold and turned the tables, driving the British back into Egypt. The Germans advanced to the key port of Tobruk and took it in a day, capturing 33,000 prisoners.

El Alamein

THE NORTH AFRICAN CAMPAIGN



LOCATION 100km (60 miles) west of Alexandria, Egypt

DATE 23 October-4 November 1942 FORCES Axis: 104,000 men, 489 tanks; Allies: 195 000 men 1.029 tanks

CASHALTIES Axis: 25,000 and 30,000 prisoner; Allies: 14,400

By July 1942 Rommel's Panzerarmee Afrika had driven the British Eighth Army deep inside Egypt and were threatening the naval base at Alexandria and the Suez Canal. Their advance was halted at a defensive line stretching

## GEORGE CROSS

This is Britain's highest medal for bravery not under enemy fire. Two seamen got it after El Alamein for recovering vital codes from a U-boat.

from El Alamein south to the impassable Oattara Depression. Despite olding this line, General Claude Auchinleck was dismissed as Eighth Army commander and replaced by General Bernard Montgomery. The new commander set about building Composed of British, Australian, New

up his forces for a major offensive.

## 1891-1944

## **ERWIN ROMMEL**

Rommel first commanded tanks in May 1940 during the invasion of France. He took to the role with such flair that he was chosen to lead the Afrika Korps the following year. His desert victories made him a legend - Churchill praised him as "a daring and skilful opponent". In command of Normandy at the time of D-Day, he was badly wounded when an RAF fighter strafed his car. In October 1944, he committed suicide to avoid trial in connection with the plot to assassinate Hitler.



## DESERT SURRENDER



Gripping images such as this surrender of a German tank crew were achieved by re-enacting El Alamein battle scenes shortly after the event for the cameras - an effective contribution to Allied propaganda.



## THE ITALIAN CAMPAIGN

## Invasion of Sicily



Sicily, Italy

Axis: 260,000 CASUALTIES Axis:160.000 (including prisoners)

After the surrender of the remaining Axis forces in North Africa in May 1943, the Allies set their sights on crossing to Sicily from where they intended to launch an invasion of the Italian mainland, Around 3,000 ships were assembled for the operation, codenamed Husky. General George

The landings in Sicily revealed the Allies' skill at seaborne operations, which would be crucial to the invasion of Normandy.

Patton's US Seventh Army was to take the west of the island while Montgomery's British Eighth Army took the east. The weather was bad on invasion day, with high winds and rough seas. Airborne landings went badly, and many troops in gliders drowned. Amphibious landings generally went well, however. The island's defences were well managed by Field Marshal Albert Kesselring, who escaped with 100,000 Axis troot from Messina to mainland Italy. Allie commanders were distracted by an unseemly race to reach Messina first a contest won by Patton.

## THE ITALIAN CAMPAIGN

## Monte Cassino



120km (75 miles) south Axis: 80.000 of Rome, Italy

The Allied invasion of mainland Italy in September 1943 was followed by a grim fight northwards up the Italian peninsula, contested by the Germans at every point (Italy itself having surrendered). The strongest German defensive position was the fortified

Gustav Line, which at its western end ran along a ridge on which stood the historic monastery of Monte Cassino. Despite Allied landings at Anzio, behind the Gustav Line in January 1944, the defence continued to hold. On 15 February 1944 the monastery was destroyed in a raid by Allied bombers. Despite this, New Zealand troops failed in an assault on the ridge over the following days. It was eventually taken the following May in a costly assault by Polish troops under General Anders.

#### RUINED MONASTERY

The remains of the monastery of Monte Cassino after the war had moved on in May 1944. The decision to bomb the monastery has remained a controversial one



## BERNARD LAW MONTGOMERY

Montgomery was put in charge of the Eighth Army in August 1942 after Gott, the first choice, died in an air crash. He skilfully restored morale, while his insistence on heavy reinforcements before taking the offensive thoroughly paid off. Commanding Allied land forces in the Normandy invasion, he showed the same taste for a methodical application of force. However, his relations with American generals, including Eisenhower, were poor, and his belief that the war could be won with a Ruhr offensive led to a disastrously risky airborne operation at Arnhem in autumn 1944.

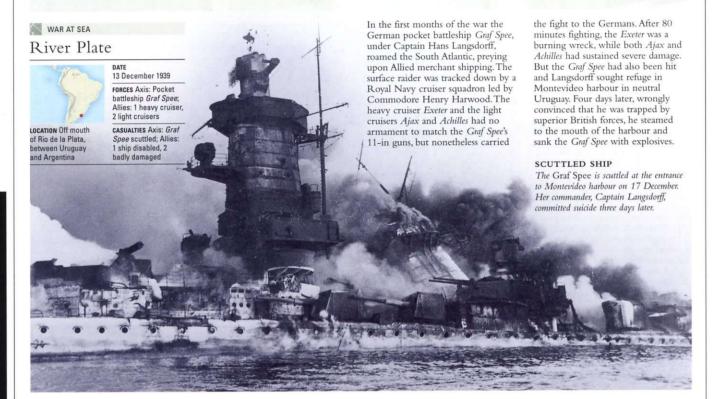




# WAR AT SEA

COMMAND OF THE SEAS WAS ESSENTIAL to the Allied war effort in the European theatre. Without it the Atlantic supply line to Britain would have been cut and crucial operations - from the evacuation of Dunkirk to the Normandy invasion - could not have taken place. Despite some spectacular operations by German surface vessels, Allied naval dominance was contested more

effectively by mines and submarines. This came close to throttling the Allied war effort, just as had been the case in World War I. Where they had sufficient range, the Luftwaffe's land-based aircraft constituted the most intractable menace to the Royal Navy, the carrier aircraft of which achieved some spectacular offensive successes, but were unable to provide effective fleet air defence.



## WAR AT SEA

## Sinking of the Bismarck



FORCES Axis: 1 heavy cruiser, 1 battleship; Allies: 2 aircraft carriers 55 other shins CASUALTIES Axis: 2,100 dead on Bismarck, Allies: 1,500 dead

In May 1941 the German battleship

Bismarck, then the world's most

powerful warship, slipped out of

was to destroy Allied merchant

and Greenland. There they were

devastatingly effective. One shell

North Sea and

Gdynia, Poland, accompanied by the penetrated the Hood's deck and blew heavy cruiser Prinz Eugen. Its mission it up - there were only three survivors. shipping. The German ships were The Prince of Wales was also severely damaged. Bismarck separated from sighted in a Norwegian fjord by a Prinz Eugen to head for a port in British reconnaissance aircraft and were occupied France. The Royal Navy tracked to an area between Iceland assembled all available forces to give intercepted by the battleship Prince of chase. Bismarck was twice attacked by Swordfish biplanes. The second Wales and the battle cruiser Hood. The Bismarck's accurate 15-in guns proved

May, scored a hit that wrecked the



attack, delivered from Ark Royal on 26

## BISMARCK SURVIVORS

Some of the 110 survivors from the sinking of the Bismarck are taken on board British cruiser Dorsetshire.

Bismarck's steering mechanism. No longer able to escape its pursuers, trapped under fire from battleships Rodney and King George V, the blazing Bismarck was finally sunk by two torpedos from the cruiser Dorsetshire.

## WAR AT SEA

## **Taranto**



11 November 1940 FORCES British: 21 aircraft: Italians: 6 battleships, 9 cruisers, 8 destroyers

CASUALTIES British: 2 aircraft; Italians: 2 battleships, 1 cruiser

The British raid on Taranto was the irst exclusively air-sea battle in history. The aircraft carrier Illustrious launched 21 Fairey Swordfish biplanes in a night attack on the Italian fleet in harbour. The first wave of 12 aircraft reached Taranto at around 11pm, and a followup wave attacked from the northwest an hour later. Although flares dropped by the aircraft to illuminate their targets also helped Italian gunners, only two of the slow-flying Swordfish were shot down. Torpedos released at low altitude struck three Italian battleships, while a cruiser was damaged by bombs. The raid was carefully studied by the Japanese before Pearl Harbor.

## WAR AT SEA

## Battle of the Atlantic



North Atlantic

August 1940-May 1943 FORCES August 1940: 1943: over 400 U-boats CASUALTIES Allies: 3,500 merchant ships, 175

warships; Germans:

room enough to crack our eardrums." Heinz Schaeffer, U-977 - 66 Days Underwater

783 submarines

The battle of the Atlantic was an attempt on a vast scale by Germany to blockade Britain, crippling its war effort. The battle began in earnest in

summer 1940, after the fall of France. The German Uboat forces, commanded by Admiral Karl Dönitz, were then able to operate from bases on France's Atlantic coast. The British responded with a convoy system, with groups of merchant ships escorted by naval warships. Using sonar to detect submarines and depth charges to sink them, escort vessels succeeded in limiting losses of merchant shipping. After the United States entered the war in December 1941, Allied losses rose steeply. Operating just off the American coast, U-boats sank over 150,000 tonnes

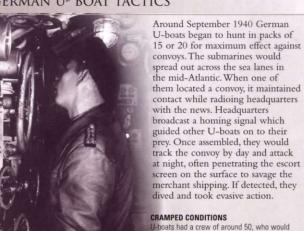
of shipping in one month. They could now refuel at sea, giving them almost limitless range. They were also growing in numbers, since Dönitz had won Hitler's backing for the submarine war. The U-boats reached the peak of effectiveness in March 1943, sinking 260,000 tonnes of Allied shipping. Then, with startling rapidity, the tide turned. In April and May U-boat losses were so heavy that they were withdrawn from the North Atlantic. The causes of this reversal included ocean patrols by Allied long range B-24 Liberator and Sunderland aircraft, the use of escort carriers to provide convoys with their own air cover, and improved radar to spot submarines on the surface. But most

> importantly, decoded radio traffic allowed groups of frigates to attack U-boats where groups ("wolf packs") were forming. Thereafter losses to Uboats were at a level that did not seriously threaten the Allied war effort.

## ENIGMA MACHINE

The prime means of communication in World War II was the radio, so codes were vital to stop an enemy listening in. With the aid of captured German Enigma encoding machines, the Allies deciphered enough German naval messages to make a vital difference to the submarine battle in

## GERMAN U- BOAT TACTICS



# SUBMARINE ATTACK

at sea for weeks at a time. Consequen

ons aboard could be horribly cramped



## INVASION OF THE SOVIET UNION

THE CONFLICT INITIATED BY HITLER'S invasion of the Soviet Union in June 1941 was both a racial war waged by Germany upon Slavic peoples viewed by Nazi ideology as inferiors and a fight to the death between Europe's two most powerful dictatorships. Warfare took on an unsurpassed savagery. Hitler ordered the German army to conduct a "war of annihilation"

against communists and Jews. The Soviet response was pitiless in its determination and ruthless expenditure of soldiers' lives. Hitler planned a short war - the last blitzkrieg - but the Soviets refused to give in when seemingly beaten. In the long haul they organized war production better than the Germans and found commanders who counterattacked with flair and won a string of victories.

28 MINE BYELORUSSIA U SI S

Black Sea

UKRAINE

GERMAN INVASION OF SOVIET UNION

## Barbarossa



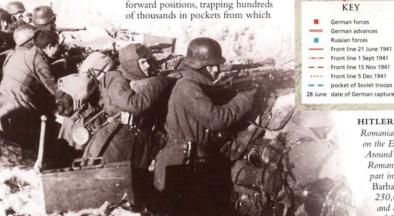
LOCATION Western Soviet Union (modern Ukraine, Belarus, Russia)

DATE 22 June-September 1941 FORCES Axis: 4 million men 3 600 tanks: Soviets: 2.3 million

CASUALTIES Axis: 400,000; Soviets: 1 million (plus 3 million taken prisoner)

The German invasion of the Soviet Union (Operation Barbarossa) was one of the largest military operations in history. Only a fifth of the immense force that Hitler assembled consisted

of armoured or motorized formations; there were 3.600 tanks assigned to the invasion but 700,000 horses. The invasion force was divided into three: Army Group North, striking towards Leningrad; Army Group Centre, advancing on Smolensk and Moscow; and Army Group South, heading for Kiev, in the Ukraine. Soviet dictator Joseph Stalin had clear warnings of the invasion from intelligence sources but chose to ignore them. Soviet forces were badly deployed in forward positions, strung out along the length of the border. The German onslaught began early on the morning of 22 June with a massive artillery bombardment and air attacks on Soviet airfields. German panzer groups and motorized infantry swiftly enveloped Soviet forces in forward positions, trapping hundreds



HITLER'S ALLIES Romanian troops fight on the Eastern Front. Around 300,000 Romanians took part in Operation Barbarossa, alongside 250,000 Italians, and other allies of Germany.

there was no escape. These pincer movements continued as the Germans drove deep into Soviet territory, with around 300,000 Soviet troops captured in the Smolensk pocket in mid-July and over 600,000 at Kiev in September. Yet, despite these vast military disasters, Soviet resistance remained fierce. Hitler had envisaged total victory in three months; Barbarossa was falling far behind its timetable.

GERMAN INVASION OF SOVIET UNION

## Moscow



2 October 1941-7 January 1942 FORCES Axis: around 1.5

around 1.5 million CASHALTIES Axis: 250,000:

Soviets: 700,000

In early October 1941 the Germans launched a belated drive to capture Moscow. It seemed for a time that the capital might be abandoned, but the Soviet leadership recovered its nerve and stiffened resistance. The German offensive ground forward, with much of October spent overcoming Soviet forces in the Vyazma-Bryansk pocket.

As autumn rains turned earth roads to mud, the German army literally bogged down. The onset of winter in mid-November froze the mud and the German advance regained momentum, but by then General Georgi Zhukov had organized a defensive line in front of Moscow. Advance German units reached the outskirts of the city on 30 November, but their forces were in bad shape, having no winter clothing or equipment.

Meanwhile Zhukov prepared a counteroffensive. Attacking north and south of Moscow on 5 December, fresh Soviet reserves struck the exhausted Germans, while airborne troops and partisans carried the fight behind the German lines. By early January the Germans had been driven back halfway to Smolensk.

#### WINTER WARFARE

POLAND

In December 1941 alone around 133,000 German soldiers suffered from frostbite. They had not been given winter equipment because the Soviets were supposed to have





GERMAN INVASION OF SOVIET UNION

## Siege of Leningrad



CASUALTIES Axis: INCATION Legiporad (now St Petersburg). unknown: Soviets: western Russia around 800,000 dead

Leningrad was Germany's Army Group North's prime objective in Operation Barbarossa. As the Germans advanced from the south, the city was also threatened by the Finns, who occupied the Karelian peninsula. Leningraders

#### SIEGE CITY

Soviet armoured vehicles patrol a Leningrad street. Street signs warned pedestrians which side to walk on to avoid German shellfire.

forces in the salient. The attack on the

northern sector would be made by

worked feverishly to construct lines of anti-tank defences and Zhukov was sent to the city in August to galvanize resistance. Nonetheless, Leningrad would probably have fallen but for Hitler's preference for subjecting the city to a slow death by blockade. The city was surrounded by mid-September, under constant artillery fire and air attack, with inadequate reserves of food and fuel. In late November Lake Ladoga, to the east of Leningrad, froze over. An "Ice Road" was improvized over the frozen lake and through forests and swamps to bring at least minimal supplies into the city. Despite these heroic efforts, hundreds of thousands died of starvation and cold in the first winter of the siege. Supplies improved

through 1942, using boats across the

combined offensive by Soviet troops inside and outside Leningrad opened up a land corridor to enable supply by road and rail. German forces remained in place on the southern edge of the city for another year before they were driven off in the general westward advance of Soviet forces.



GERMAN INVASION OF SOVIET UNION Kursk

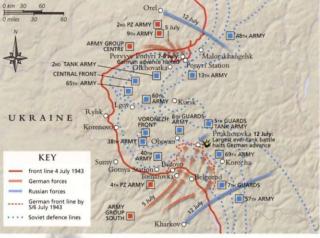


DATE 5-15 July 1943 FORCES Axis: 900,000 men, 2,700 tanks; Soviets: 1.3 million men. 3.500 tanks

Axis: 210,000; Soviet: 178,000

By the summer of 1943 rapid Soviet advances in the wake of Stalingrad (see p308), followed by German counterattacks, had left a large Soviet salient bulging into German-held territory around Kursk. The Germans massed around two-thirds of their entire armoured forces and aircraft on the Eastern Front for a pincer attack, intending to destroy all the Soviet

Walther Model's Ninth Army while Erich von Manstein commanded the assault from the south. Soviet leaders were fully informed of the offensive by the Lucy spy ring in Switzerland. Zukhov prepared a defence in depth, with minefields, trenches, and antitank guns, backed up by massed tank formations. Intelligence from German prisoners told the Soviets the timing of the attack, so they opened the battle early on 5 July with a bombardment of the assembling German forces. The Soviet air force also launched a preemptive strike against Luftwaffe airfields, triggering air battles involving thousands of aircraft. Advancing into the Soviet defences, the German army in the northern pincer stalled in the face of fire from anti-tank guns





this arm of the offensive petered out. In the south, Hoth's Fourth Panzer Army did better, hammering a way through to Prokhorovka, 30km (20 miles) inside the Soviet defences. Soviet reserves, the Fifth Guards Tank Army, were rushed forward. The two forces clashed on 12 July, Around 800 Soviet T-34s streamed forward, seeking to close with the heavier German Tiger and Panther tanks and Ferdinand self-propelled guns, which were trying to pick off the Soviet tanks at long range. By the end of the day the Soviets had lost around 300 tanks, the Germans less than 100, but the Soviets could better afford the losses. Hitler called off the offensive and by 15 July the Soviets were pressing forward towards Kharkov, leaving behind the battlefield littered with burntout tanks and charred bodies. SOVIET MEDAL

The Order of the

Red Star was instituted in 1930 for valour in defence of the Homeland. The image in its centre shows a soldier with fixed bayonet.



LOCATION Stalingrad (now Volgograd) on Volga river, Russia

(290,000 inside Stalingrad); Soviets: more than 1 million CASUALTIES Axis:

FORCES Axis: 500,000

DATE September 1942-

2 February 1943

500.000: Soviets: 750,000

In late June 1942 German Army Group South launched an offensive in the Caucasus to capture the vital Baku oilfields and so cripple the Soviet war machine. At Hitler's insistence the offensive also struck at Stalingrad, a major industrial centre on the Volga. While Army Group A advanced into the Caucasus, Army Group B, comprising Friedrich Paulus's Sixth Army and Hermann Hoth's Fourth Panzer Army, headed for Stalingrad.

was entrusted to 62nd Army under General Vasili Chuikov, a young officer with no experience of wartime command. From 13 September the Germans attacked the Stalingrad perimeter with great ferocity, driving the Soviets

The city's defence

back to an irregular strip along the west bank of the Volga. Soviet troops clung on, fighting for every building. Supplies and reinforcements were ferried across the Volga each night under German artillery fire. Half-destroyed apartment blocks and factory buildings - the Dzerzhinsky Tractor Works, the Red



TAKING AIM

A German soldier lines up a target in Stalingrad. Snipers on both sides took a particularly heavy toll on officers, necessitating a steady stream of replacements.

October Factory were defended like fortresses. When the Germans got inside, fighting continued room by room and

floor by floor. Hitler declared publicly that the Germans would never leave the city; Stalin ordered Stalingrad to be held at any price. A second push in October took the Germans to within 200m (220vds) of the Volga; in November they reached the riverbank. But still the Soviets

fought on in pockets of resistance, the two armies, in Chuikov's phrase, gripping each other in a deadly clutch". Meanwhile, Zhukov viewed the massive German effort to take Stalingrad as an opportunity to encircle them. On 19 November, he launched Operation Uranus, attacking in strength from north and south of Stalingrad, smashing through Italian, Romanian, and Hungarian troops on the German flanks. The Soviet pincers met on 23 November, snapping shut a trap behind Paulus's Sixth Army. Instead of allowing the German forces inside Stalingrad to attempt a breakout, Hitler decided to keep them supplied by an airlift, a task that proved utterly beyond the Luftwaffe's capacity. Receiving no more than 10 per cent of the supplies they needed, the Germans inside Stalingrad began slowly to starve. Fending off an attack by a German relief force, Zhukov's

forces ground forward through

SNIPER RIFLE Soviet sharpshooters used a 7.62mm Mosin-Telescopia Nagant infantry rifle with a telescopic sight. Top sniper Vasili Zaitsev was credited with killing 149 Germans at Stalingrad.

December, tightening the noose

around the city as freezing winter

weather set in. No help came from

Army Group A, which was forced

by Soviet pressure to extricate itself

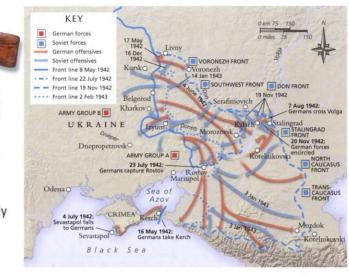
from the Caucasus and withdraw

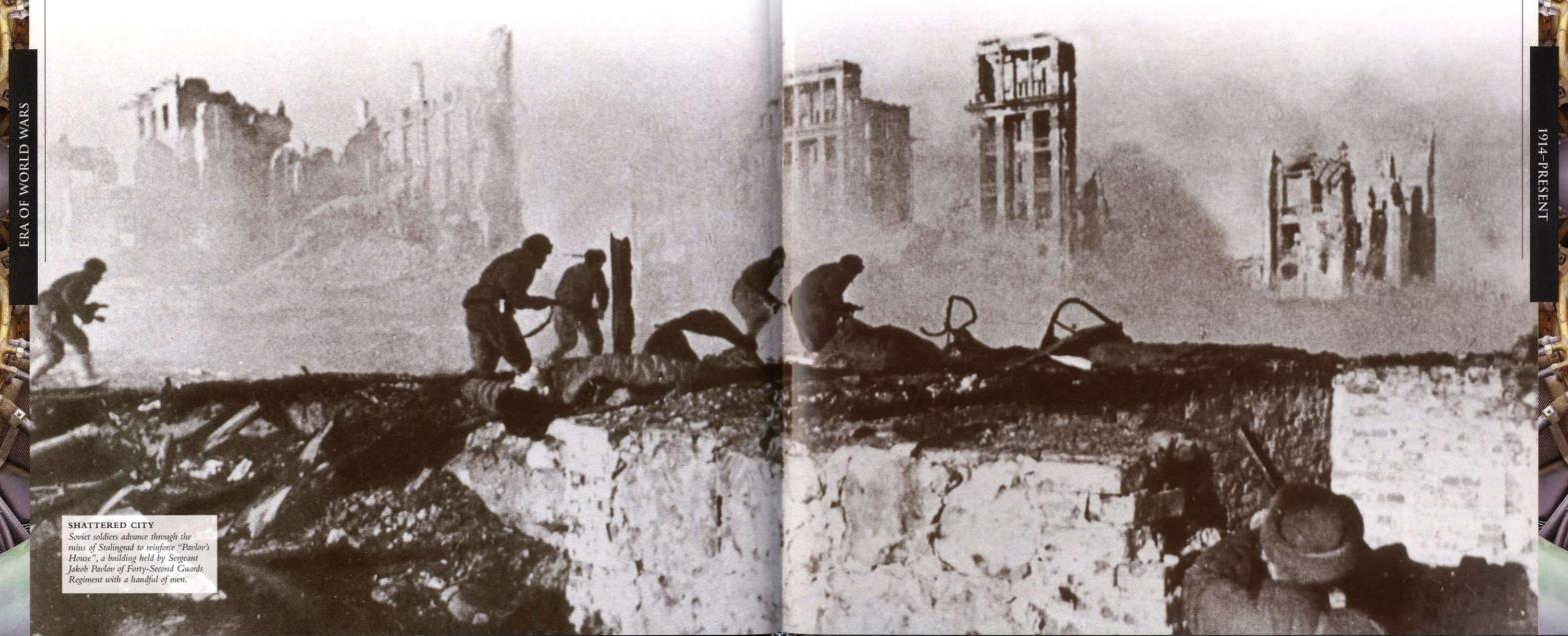
Tortured by frostbite and

malnutrition, through January 1943 the Germans were driven back into the centre of Stalingrad, fighting on despite a desperate shortage of ammunition. On 30 January Hitler promoted Paulus to field marshal. That day, the German headquarters in Stalingrad was overrun and some 250km (160 miles) to the west. Paulus surrendered. All resistance ceased on 2 February.

"We have fought for 15 days for a single house... Already by the third day 54 German corpses are strewn in the cellars, on the landings and the staircases."

An officer of 24th Panzer Division, October 1942





# **BOMBER OFFENSIVE**

THE BRITISH AND AMERICAN BOMBER OFFENSIVE in Europe was, according to Allied chiefs of staff, intended to achieve the "destruction and dislocation of the German military, industrial, and economic system, and the undermining of the morale of the German people". In daylight raids from 1942 to 1945 the USAAF's Eighth Air Force lost 26,000 killed; RAF Bomber

Command's night bombing cost 56,000 lives - half of all aircrew who took part. But the Germans were forced to devote massive resources to home defence, including a third of their artillery and the cream of the Luftwaffe. German armed forces were deprived of essential supplies, especially fuel. And hundreds of thousands of German civilians died in their ruined cities.

BOMBER OFFENSIVE

## Hamburg



LOCATION Hamburg, northern 24 July-3 August 1943 FORCES British: 791 bombers; American: 127 bombers

CASUALTIES German: 50,000 Allied: 108 bombers lost Britain's RAF adopted night-time bombing because their aircraft could not survive over Germany in daylight. Incapable of hitting a target with any accuracy, they launched mass attacks with fleets of heavy bombers against cities, hoping the sheer scale of destruction would deliver a decisive blow. By contrast, the USAAF was committed to precision raids on industrial and military targets. The attacks on the port city of Hamburg in summer 1943 were a combined effort by the RAF at night and American B-17s by day. The Germans had

developed a sophisticated system of Aided by the weather conditions, this defence against night bombing; radar intensive bombardment generated a operators on the ground tracked the firestorm that swept through the city, killing an estimated 46,000 people. bombers and guided night fighters on to their targets. Anti-aircraft fire was also directed by radar. Over Hamburg the RAF deployed a new countermeasure known as "window". Bombers

scattered strips of aluminium foil,

leaving the night fighters and flak

guns blind. On the night of 27-28

July, 735 British bombers dropped

2,326 tonnes of explosives and

incendiaries in just over an hour.

which confused German radar,

"In spite of all that happened at Hamburg. bombing proved a comparatively humane method. For one thing, it saved the youth of this country and of our allies from being mown down by the military as it was in the war of 1914-1918."



Head of RAF Bomber Command from 1942 to the end of the war in Europe, Harris was an unwavering advocate of the bombing of enemy cities. He believed that his bombers could have won the war outright if they had been given the resources with which to conduct raids on a large enough scale.





BOMBER OFFENSIVE

## Dambusters

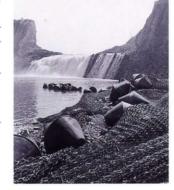


Germany

DATE 16-17 May 1943 FORCES British: 19 Lancaster bombers, 133 aircrew

CASUALTIES British: 8 bombers lost, 53 aircrew killed, 3 taken prisoner: German: 1,200 drowned

British scientist Dr Barnes Wallis devised a way of breaching dams in the Ruhr, Germany's industrial heartland. He created a "bouncing bomb" that would skip across the water, hopping over an anti-torpedo barrier, and sink straight down after hitting the dam, detonating underwater against the concrete wall. Lancaster bombers were adapted to carry the special bombs under their fuselage. The RAF created an elite force, 617 Squadron, specifically for the mission. They had to release the bombs at a precise altitude and distance from the dams while flying through dense anti-



## BREACHED DAM

The Möhne dam shows a gaping cavity after the Lancaster bombing raid. An official German report described the aftermath as "a dark picture of destruction".

aircraft fire. Led by wing commander Guy Gibson, they attacked by night and breached the Möhne and Eder dams and damaged two others.





Bavaria, southern

bombers; German: 250 fighters CASUALTIES American: 167 hombers 482 aircrew: German: 27

FORCES American: 376

DATE 17 August 1943

Dedicated to attacking German war industries, the USAAF decided

to bomb a ball-bearing factory at Schweinfurt and an aircraft factory at Regensburg. These two missions were combined in the hope of overstretching German air defences. The targets were deep inside Germany, far beyond the range of US escort fighters. The Regensburg force, equipped with extra fuel tanks, was to fly on to North Africa after the bombing; the Schweinfurt bombers had to make it back to their bases in eastern England. As soon as the glistening fleets of B-17s crossed into Germany, Messerschmitt 109s and Focke-Wulf 190s swarmed to attack them. The bombers took heavy punishment before reaching their targets and then were expected to fly a steady course through flak to achieve an accurate drop. Not surprisingly many went far astray, even bombing open countryside. The Schweinfurt target, masked by a smokescreen, was

virtually undamaged. By the time survivors mped in to land n North Africa or East Anglia, over a quarter of the original bomber force had been lost.

## BLACKOUT

A German poster tells itizens that "the enemy sees your light" as ombers swoop overhead.

BOMBER OFFENSIVE

## Berlin and Big Week



18 November 1943-25 March 1944 FORCES Berlin: 900 RAF bombers; Big Week: 1 000 USAAF hombers

No reliable estimates

Germany

In the winter of 1943-44 the RAF launched 16 mass night raids on Berlin, accompanied by diversionary raids on other cities, driven by the belief that destruction of the capital would

force a German surrender. General Carl Spaatz refused to devote he USAAF's bombers to the Berlin offensive, instead preparing attacks on specific sectors of the German war economy, culminating i the mass daylight raids of Big Week. Both air forces were hampered by bad

to the defence of Germany's borders.

decided to attack communications

centres in eastern Germany, where

the German army was retreating in

the face of advancing Soviet forces.

Dresden was on a list of cities where.

evacuation from the East but will also

hamper the movement of [German]

troops from the West." In February

At the end of January 1945 the Allies

## "We can wreck Berlin from end to end if the USAAF will come in on it. It will cost us between 400 and 500 aircraft. It will cost Germany the war."

Sir Arthur Harris, in a letter to Churchill, November 1943

"pathfinder" aircraft, but the Americans now had fighter escorts: the Mustangs not only enabled the bombers to do their job, but also shot down large numbers of German day fighters.

weather, but otherwise the Americans

were the more successful. The accuracy

of British raids had improved through

using De Havilland Mosquitos as

## MUSTANG FIGHTER

The North American P-51 Mustang was a high-performance long-range fighter that for the first time gave Allied bombers effective escort to targets deep inside Germany.

BOMBER OFFENSIVE

## Ploesti



LOCATION Ploesti Romania **USAAF** bombers CASUALTIES Total losses: 305 USAAF hombers and 3,000 air crew

In summer 1944 Allied air forces made a concerted attempt to destroy German oil supplies. The most important target was the Ploesti oilfield, Germany's largest single source of oil. Over a five-month period the US Fifteenth Army Air Force's B-24 Liberators carried out 24 raids on Ploesti, flying out of bases in Italy. The oilfields were heavily defended and bomber losses were high, but large areas of Ploesti blazed

through the summer, and by mid-August oil production had ceased.



#### a British memo stated, "a severe blitz will not only cause confusion in the

13-14 February 1945 FORCES RAF: 796 Lancasters and 9 Mosquitos; USAAF 311 B-17s CASUALTIES 30,000-

60,000 civilians;

LOCATION Dresden, Saxony, southeast

BOMBER OFFENSIVE

Dresden

9 Lancaster bombers By early 1945 the loss of fighter aircraft in air combat and shortages of fuel had eroded Germany's ability to defend its airspace. Much artillery had been diverted from anti-aircraft duties

RUINED CITY

The decision to bomb Dresden was widely criticized on the grounds that it was not a military target and that the war was in any case already virtually won.

#### the target of only two relatively small raids by the USAAF. On the night of 13-14 February, the RAF attacked in two waves, 244 aircraft bombing at low level at NORDEN BOMBSIGHT around 10.15pm and the main The USAAF's sophisticated Norden force of 529 aircraft following up at 1.30am. The mix of incendiaries bombsight allowed an experienced bombardier to achieve accurate bombing



# **BOEING B-17 FLYING FORTRESS**

A SLEEK FOUR-ENGINED BOMBER, THE BOEING B-17 WAS THE PRINCIPAL AIRCRAFT USED BY THE USAAF IN ITS WORLD WAR II BOMBING CAMPAIGN IN EUROPE.

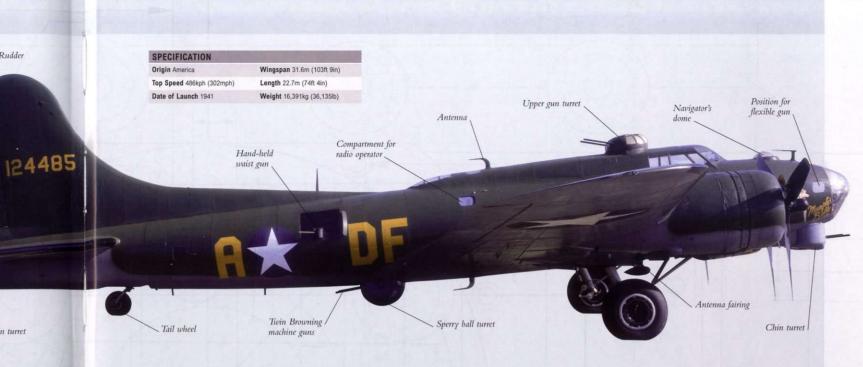
The B-17 was a complex war machine that required ten men to operate; a pilot, co-pilot, navigator, radio operator, bombardier, flight engineer, and four gunners. It was bristling with guns (hence the "Flying Fortress" soubriquet), capable of flying at high altitude,



PROPELLORS Measuring 3.5m (11ft 6in) in diameter, the

These features were expected to make it capable of carrying out daytime missions without fighter escort. The B-17s flew in a tight pattern calculated to make their guns give mutually supporting fire against enemy fighters while avoiding shooting one another. Nonetheless, in practice the bombers suffered heavy losses to German fighters whenever their missions were unescorted. Flak also took its toll. The Norden bombsight, with which B-17s were equipped, took over control of the aircraft in the final stage of the bomb run, giving a good chance of an accurate drop in good visibility, but allowing no evasion of enemy fire. Flying in a B-17 at high altitude was not a comfortable experience. The aircraft was not pressurized and it was freezing cold. The rear gun turret could only be reached on all-fours, but the most uncomfortable position was that of the ball-turret gunner, sitting in his bubble underneath the fuselage with his knees drawn almost up to his chest. Yet the B-17 was a popular aircraft with its crews, who respected it as a sturdy, reliable machine that could take a lot of punishment and still get safely home. In addition to its bombload, it was equipped with 13 Browning machine guns.

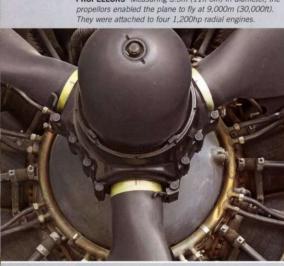
Tail gun turret



OXYGEN RESERVES Some 18 bottles of oxygen were kept in

reserve for flying at high altitudes. Each bottle could keep a

man alive for five hours at 9,000m (30,000ft).



TURBO ENGINES A turbo supercharger system allowed the engines to run at full power between 6,000 and 9,000m (20,000 and 30,000ft).



WAIST GUN Two hand-held machine guns guarded the "waist" of the craft. In the cramped conditions gunners could barely stand.



COCKPIT The pilot and co-pilot were afforded excellent front and side

visibility from the cockpit. The most important flying instruments, used

TAIL GUN The tail gun was manned in a kneeling position. As well as providing powerful protection, the gunner had



cockpit to the tail and wings of the plane to manipulate the rudder and wing flaps.

ELEVATOR WIRES Cables ran from the









LOCATION Coast of Normandy, northern

CASUALTIES
Allies: 4,500 killed
(2,500 American);
German: unknown

DATE 6 June 1944

FORCES Invasion force:

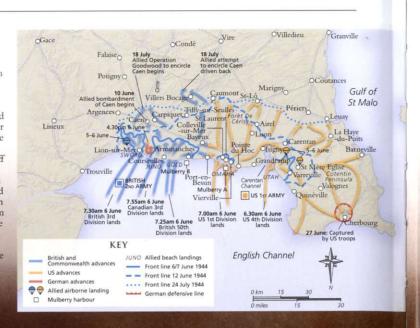
154.000 men. 6.500

German: unknown

ships, 13,000 aircraft;

The Allies planned the invasion of northern Europe, Operation Overlord, for May 1944. They selected five beaches in Normandy as the landing point while mounting an elaborate deception operation to make the Germans believe the blow would fall further east on the Pas de Calais. Eisenhower was appointed

Allied supreme commander, with Montgomery as commander of land forces. Montgomery's insistence on increasing the number of troops and landing craft devoted to the operation forced a postponement to 5 June. Everything was ready for that date except the weather; a gale blew up and the invasion had to be halted. Faced with an uncertain weather forecast for the following day, Eisenhower took the brave decison to go ahead regardless. The vast armada of landing craft set off across the Channel in the middle of the night while American and British airborne troops ahead of them carried out parachute and glider landings, with mixed success, inland from the invasion beaches. The German defences on the Normandy coast were only partially complete and manned mostly by second-rate troops. The defenders were



"The beach was strewn with wreckage, a blazing tank, bundles of blankets and kit, bodies and bits of bodies. One bloke near me was blown in half by a shell..."

British Gunner Charles Wilson, Gold Beach, 6 June 1944

taken totally by surprise when Allied warships opened fire on the coastal fortifications. Although troops of 12 nationalities took part, the invasion force was primarily American, British, and Canadian. The bad weather had caused a higher tide than usual, creating unexpected problems getting ashore –

## OPERATION OVERLORD

The Allied invasion of France was the largest shore-to-shore invasion in history; eight divisions were supported by 6,500 ships and 12,000 aircraft. Artificial "Mulberry" harbours were floated across the Channel.

many heavily laden soldiers sank without trace exiting their landing craft in too-deep water. Nonetheless, the American landing at Utah beach and the British and Canadian landings on Sword, Juno, and Gold went more or less to plan. The American landing at Omaha beach did not. Most of the Americans' tanks and artillery sank without reaching shore. Lightly equipped infantry were pinned on the beach under fire from concrete bunkers on the cliffs above. By the end of a long day the Americans had fought their way off the beach, but at heavy cost.

# DWIGHT D. EISENHOWER

In 1942 Eisenhower was appointed commander of US forces in Europe over the heads of hundreds of more senior officers. He acquitted himself well during the Allied invasions of North Africa, Sicily, and mainland Italy in 1942-43, justifying his selection as supreme commander for the Normandy invasion. He showed fine diplomatic skills, although his decision to advance into Germany on a broad front was hotly contested by Montgomery. Eisenhower never shirked responsibility for decisions he took, however, and deservedly received much of the credit for Germany's defeat. After the war he was NATO's first commander-in-chief and Amercian president

from 1953 to 1961.







## GERMANY DEFEATED IN THE WEST

THE FAILURE OF AN ATTEMPT to assassinate Hitler in the wake of the D-Day landings ensured that the war would have to be fought to a finish. Once the Allies had broken out of Normandy they rapidly liberated most of France and Belgium, and hopes were high for victory before Christmas. But Allied supply lines were stretched to the limit and German resistance once more

stiffened. There were delays in bringing Antwerp into use as a supply port and Montgomery's attempted breakthrough at Arnhem failed. Hitler's winter counterattack in the Ardennes gave the Allies a nasty shock, but the balance of forces meant the Germans had no realistic chance of avoiding defeat in 1945. On the Western Front, at least, the end of the war was near.

## ALLIED INVASION OF FRANCE Normandy



Normandy, Northern France

wounded: German: 240 000 killed or wounded The D-Day landings were followed by a tough battle to break out of the Normandy beachhead. The British and Canadians were stuck short

DATE 6 June-

25 July 1944

FORCES Allied: 2 million;

German: 1 million

CASUALTIES Allied:

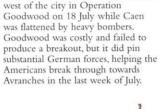
40.000 killed, 170.000

of Caen while the Americans struggled up the Cotentin peninsula towards Cherbourg. The balance of the battle shifted inexorably in favour of the Allies because they were more capable of reinforcing their positio

## TAKING COVER

The fighting in Normandy was a hard slog in which small gains were dearly bought. The woody terrain favoured the defence.

Mulberry floating harbours handled a continuous flow of men and supplies from England. The Germans, by contrast, had great difficulty bringing up troops and armour along a bombdamaged transport network under constant Allied air attack. After a failed attempt to outflank Caen to the west in the last week of June, Montgomery threw forward three armoured divisions | MALLIED INVASION OF FRANCE west of the city in Operation Goodwood on 18 July while Caen was flattened by heavy bombers. Goodwood was costly and failed to produce a breakout, but it did pin Americans break through towards



## Falaise



FORCES German: 250,000; Allied: unknown casualties German:

DATE 25 July-20

August 1944

100 000 killed or wounded; Allied: 40,000 Southern Normandy killed or wounded

On 25 July US Twelfth Army Group launched an offensive west of St-Lô that turned into the long-awaited breakout from Normandy. Patton's US Third Army debouched into open country and turned east, intending to ink up with British and Canadians advancing from Caen and trap German forces in a pocket south of Falaise. Instead of allowing a withdrawal to the Seine, Hitler ordered a counteroffensive on 7 August. This only carried more tanks deeper into encirclement. Over the following days attacks by Allied aircraft pulverized German panzers and trucks. Though 100,000 German troops escaped, their losses were shattering

## OPERATION MARKET GARDEN



outheastern Netherlands

17-26 September 1944 FORCES Allied: 30,000 airborne troops CASUALTIES British: 6,800; American: 4,000; Polish: 400; German: 3.300

Montgomery was convinced that a concentrated thrust into the Ruhr, under his command, would win the war. Denied the full resources he wanted by Eisenhower, who was committed to a "broad front" approach, "Monty" devised Operation Market

BREN GUN This British light machinegun weighed just 10kg (22lb), giving it potential for use by airborne forces.





ARDENNES COUNTEROFFENSIVE

## Bulge



Ardennes, southern

DATE 16 December 1944-15 January 1945 FORCES American: 80.000: German: 200.000 CASUALTIES Allied: 80,000 (including risoners); German 70,000-100,000 (including prisoners)

In winter 1944 Hitler gambled on a counteroffensive in a last desperate attempt to turn the war around. It was intended as a repetition of the great German success of 1940, with tanks emerging unexpectedly from the Ardennes, punching holes in a weak sector of the Allied line. Launched on 16 December, the offensive achieved complete surprise. Bad weather

prevented the Allies using their airpower, but troops of US 1st Army fought courageously to slow German progress. Sepp Dietrich's SS panzer divisions soon ran out of steam, but further south Erich von Manteuffel's Fifth Panzer Army swept around Bastogne towards the Meuse, On 22 December the weather cleared and Allied aircraft hammered German forces that were already running out of fuel. Patton's Third Army reached Bastogne on 26 December, where heavy fighting continued into the New Year. The failed offensive cost both sides dearly, but the Allies could afford the losses, while the Germans could not.

## GERMANS SURRENDER

forces under US

do better than

command were keen

to show they could

Montgomery. Patton

spearheads of his US

Third Army to batter

sent the armoured

a way through the

Eiffel region and

7 March. On the

reach the Rhine on

the Rhine at Remagen, which they

blown up. This bridgehead was only

boldly seized before it could be

US troops guard German prisoners at Malmedy, Belgium, in December 1944. Malmedy was the site of a German massacre of Allied prisoners earlier in the month



## ALLIED INVASION OF GERMANY Rhineland

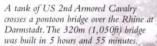


DATE 8 February-28 FORCES Allied: 1.25 million: German: 150,000

CASUALTIES German: 60,000, plus 250,000 prisoners; Allied: 22,000

In the spring of 1945 the Allies had to fight their way through to the Rhine and then across the river itself into the heart of Germany. In the north, British, Canadian, and American troops under Montgomery had a hard fight forwards in atrocious February weather. The Germans released the water from the Schwammenauel dam, blocking all progress at the southern end of this sector for two weeks. Further south,

## RHINE CROSSING



"Thousands of white parachutes dropped through an inferno of flak, while Dakotas crashed in flames..."

US Pilot Pierre Clostermann, airborne assault on the Rhine, 24 March 1945

support, on 22 March. same day part of US Ninth Armored Montgomery's sledgehammer blow Division found an intact bridge over was delivered the following day. With a series of bridgeheads established on the east bank, by the end of March the German position was indefensible.

grudgingly exploited

Montgomery with a

daring amphibious

crossing, without

air or artillery

as Montgomery methodically prepared GEORGE S. PATTON a massive Rhine crossing further Charismatic and headstrong, General north at Wesel. Patton embodied the aggressive Patton upstaged

1885-1945

spirit of mobile tank warfare. He was relieved of command after striking a shell-shocked soldier when leading the US Seventh Army in Sicily in 1943 but reemerged as commander of the US Third Army in the breakout from Normandy Always at odds with Montgomery, he





# GERMANY DEFEATED IN THE EAST

by their ever-expanding war industries and by deliveries from the United States, were getting stronger all the time. From June 1944 the Germans had to divide their resources between the Eastern and Western Fronts, as well as fighting in Italy and defending their cities against air attack. Despite mutual

IN THE FINAL STAGES OF THE WAR Soviet forces, well supplied suspicions, no major fissure opened up between the Western Allies and the Soviet Union that the Germans might have exploited. After years on different sides, when Soviet and American troops met on the Elbe river in central Germany on 25 April 1945, it was as friends. Fearful of Soviet vengeance, the Germans fought for Hitler to the end.

EASTERN FRONT

## Operation Bagration



23 June-28 July 1944 FORCES Soviet: 1.7 million men. 2.700 tanks; German: 800,000

CASUALTIES Soviet: 178,000; German: 350,000 By the summer of 1944 Germany and its allies had suffered around five million casualties in three years of fighting on the Eastern Front. The Red Army now prepared to drive German forces off Soviet soil. Three army groups, or "fronts", were to attack north and south of the Pripet Marshes, aiming to catch the German Army Group Centre in their pincers. They would then clear the Germans out of Belorussia and advance into Poland. The offensive struck simultaneously on six

axes along a 1,000km (620-mile) front, crushing understrength German formations. Using maximum speed and aggression the Soviet armies repeatedly cut off and annihilated Germans committed to static defence by orders from Hitler for "no retreat". In the rear, around 250,000 Soviet partisans mopped up German remnants and cut supply lines. The Third Belorussian Front from the north and the First Belorussian Front from the south met at the city of

Minsk on 3 July, trapping a large part of German 4th and 9th Armies to the east. Pressing on through the rest of July, the First Belorussian Front reached the Vistula river at the end of the month. Germany had suffered a catastrophic defeat.

#### STALIN ORGANS

Katyusha multiple rocket launchers, known as "Stalin Organs", could deliver a salvo of 4 tonnes of explosives. The Germans feared them more than conventional artillery.



EASTERN FRONT

## Warsaw Uprising



DATE 1 August-2 October 1944 FORCES Polish Home

Army: 20.000-40.000 German garrison in Warsaw: 10,000 CASUALTIES Polish

Home Army: 50,000; civilians: 220,000

Warsaw, Poland

On 1 August 1944. with the Soviet First Belorussian Front approaching Warsaw, the Polish Home Army nounted an armed uprising against the German occupation forces. ed by General Tadeusz

## POLISH CROSS

This cross was awarded servicemen who isplayed exemplary ourage in battle.



Bor-Komorowski, Polish fighters soon took control of more than half the city. For reasons that remain controversial, the Soviet army halted its advance on 2 August. Undoubtedly Soviet forces needed to regroup after headlong progress, but it was also true that Stalin intended to install his own communistdominated Polish government and had no love for the anti-Soviet Home

RESISTANCE FIGHTERS Members of the Polish Home Army defend an improvised position. The resistance fighters were only lightly equipped but of indomitable spirit.

to concentrate on suppressing the uprising, which they did with consummate brutality and ruthlessnes On 2 October the last remnants of Army. The pause allowed the Germans the Home Army surrendered.

## EASTERN FRONT Budapest



DATE 26 December 1944-14 February 1945 FORCES Numbers unknown CASHALTIES Soviet: 80,000 killed, 240,000 wounded; German and Hungarian: 40,000 killed, 62,000 wounded

Between August and October 1944, Soviet forces swept through Romania and Bulgaria. A thrust north from Belgrade forced a passage over the Danube in late November and Budapest was put under siege at Christmas. Hitler ordered the city held at any cost and transferred panzer divisions south from Poland in a failed attempt to break the siege. Troops within the city tried a breakout on 11 February but were slaughtered in the attempt. After some of the most vicious fighting of the war, Budapest fell to the Soviets on 14 February.

EASTERN FRONT

## Berlin



1896-1974

750,000 Berlin, Germany

CASUALTIES Soviet: 305 000 killed or wounded: German

DATE 16 April-2 May 1945

FORCES Soviet: 2

million: German:

In late March 1945 Eisenhower informed Stalin that he did not intend to race for Berlin. The Soviets could have the honour of taking the Nazi capital – and the casualties. Instead, Stalin set up his own race for Berlin between the First Ukrainain Front under Marshal Ivan Konev and the First Belorussian Front under Zhukov. Zhukov's offensive, led by Chuikov's Eighth Guards Army, opened on 16 April with a fiasco at

**GEORGI ZHUKOV** 

Of lowly origins, Marshal Zhukov rose to be an officer through the

Russian Revolution. He became

1930s and masterminded the victory

over the Japanese at Nomonhan in

January 1941 and deputy commissar

for defence in August 1942, he was

associated with every major Soviet

1939. Appointed chief of staff in

known as a tank specialist in the

Seelow Heights, where Soviet forces became stuck in a traffic jam under German fire. Koney made smoother progress and both fronts were in the Berlin suburbs by 21 April, After a moment when rivalry got out of hand and Zhukov's troops fought Konev's, Stalin determined that Zhukov take the centre and the credit. The remaining German forces fought tenaciously, taking a toll of Soviet armour with their anti-tank panzerfaust. Artillery shells rained down on the centre of the city. where Hitler prepared for defeat in his bunker under the Reich Chancellery. On 30 April a Rifle Corps Division of Eighth Guards Army broke into the Reichstag building, fighting up through the floors to raise the Red Flag on the roof. Hitler committed suicide on the same day. On 2 May, after futile prevarications, the German commander in Berlin surrendered.

Bagration and the battle for Berlin.

His most valuable

quality was his

up to Stalin.

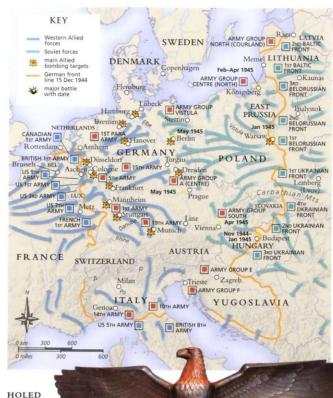
proper voice

readiness to stand

ensuring military

expertise had a







EAGLE

A bronze eagle,

symbol of the Nazi

Yevgeny Khaldei's famous image of a Soviet soldier raising the Red Flag on the Reichstag was shot from an aircraft, a daylight re-creation of an event that appened on the night of 30 April



# JAPAN'S HIGH TIDE

IN 1941 JAPAN'S WAR PLAN WAS to invade southeast Asia and some Pacific islands while simultaneously attacking the US Pacific fleet in its base at Pearl Harbor in Hawaii. This attack. the Japanese reasoned, would stun the Americans and give Japan time to consolidate its conquests and establish a defensive perimeter from the Aleutian Islands, off the coast of Alaska, to

Burma (now Myanmar). It was a risky plan that, to a remarkable degree, succeeded in its initial aims. Through cracking Japanese codes, the Allies knew of the enemy's general intentions but were sent reeling by the speed and shock of the Japanese onslaught. Japan, its admiral Chuichi Nagumo declared, had "woken a sleeping giant and filled her with a terrible resolve."





Oahu Island, Hawaii

FORCES Japanese: 353 planes; Americans: 90 ships, 300 planes CASUALTIES Japanese:

130 pilots, 29 planes; Americans: 2,403 soldiers and civilians 18 ships, 186 planes

DATE 7 December 1941

On 26 November 1941 a fleet of 31 ships, including six aircraft carriers, sailed from Japan under the command of Admiral Chuichi Nagumo. US

#### BLAZING WARSHIPS

A rescue launch looks for survivors from US warships in Pearl Harbor. Japan had meticulously prepared for the attack, developing special armour-piercing bombs. intelligence, monitoring Japanese war preparations, missed the fleet, which maintained strict radio silence. At dawn on 7 December the first wave of Japanese aircraft took off from the carriers 400km (250 miles) north of Hawaii. Despite the threat of war with Japan, peacetime Sunday routines were being observed at the US base, which was completely unprepared for the Nakajima torpedo bombers that skimmed in at low altitude and the Aichi dive-bombers that plunged from above. These planes were followed by horizontal bombers flying steadily through anti-aircraft fire to blast already blazing ships, and Zero fighters that strafed American aircraft on their airfields. The story

MITSUBISHI A6M ZERO FIGHTER on the ground was one of individual courage amid collective chaos. Despite the DEADLY FIGHTERS immense damage caused, the Pearl

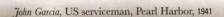
Harbor attack was a partial failure,

because US fleet carriers were out

of port and therefore survived.

Japanese Zero fighters escorted the bombers to Pearl Harbor. Fast - up to 560kph (350mph) - and highly manoeuvrable, they could outperform any US aircraft of the time.

"I was asked to go into the water and get sailors out that had been blown off the ships. Some were unconscious, some were dead... I brought out I don't know how many."





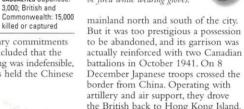
## Hong Kong



LOCATION Hong Kong, southern China FORCES Japanese: 40,000; British and Commonwealth: 15,000 CASUALTIES Japanese: 3.000: British and Commonwealth: 15 000

8-25 December 1941

Reviewing its military commitments in 1940, Britain concluded that the colony of Hong Kong was indefensible, since Japanese forces held the Chinese



the straits were repulsed, but on the night of 18-19 December they established a bridgehead Thrusting across the island. they split the defending forces in two. One half surrendered on Christmas Eve, the

Japanese troops ride into Hong Kong after the surrender of the British garrison. They occupied the city until the end of the war.



December Japanese troops crossed the border from China. Operating with artillery and air support, they drove the British back to Hong Kong Island. The first Japanese attempts to cross

other on Christmas Day. TAKING POSSESSION

## THE JAPANESE OFFENSIVE

## Singapore

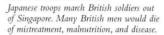


LOCATION Malaysia southeast Asia

On 8 December 1941 Japanese forces landed in Thailand and the Malay peninsula. Two days later the British warships the Prince of Wales and the Repulse set out from Singapore to impede the landings, but both were attacked by Japanese aircraft and sank with the loss of over 800 lives. Meanwhile Japanese troops advanced

killed, 130,000 captured

## BRITISH SURRENDER



down both sides of the peninsula Although outnumbered by British and Commonwealth troops, their speed of movement and superiority in the air created an impression of overwhelming force. The British commander General Arthur Percival prepared a last-ditch defence of Singapore, blowing up the causeway linking it to the mainland. On 9 February, however, the Japanese succeeded in landing on the island. Believing that he faced far superior forces. Percival surrendered on 15 February. The British prime minister Winston Churchill called it "the worst disaster... in British military history."

## THE JAPANESE OFFENSIVE

## The Philippines



Philippines,

southeast Asia

55,000; Americans and

Filipinos: 130,000 CASUALTIES Japanese: 12,000; Americans and Filipinos: 100,000 captured

1941-6 May 1942

FORCES Japanese:

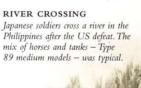
The Philippines were defended by American and Filipino forces under General Douglas MacArthur. He had

## GENERAL MACARTHUR

Defeat in the Philippines was a low point in General Douglas MacArthur's distinguished career. As Supreme Allied Commander in the southwest Pacific from February 1942 he masterminded the "island-hopping" strategy,

advancing to Japan island v island and bypassing apanese strongholds. This strategy took him back to the Philippines in October 1944. After the Allied rictory, Douglas

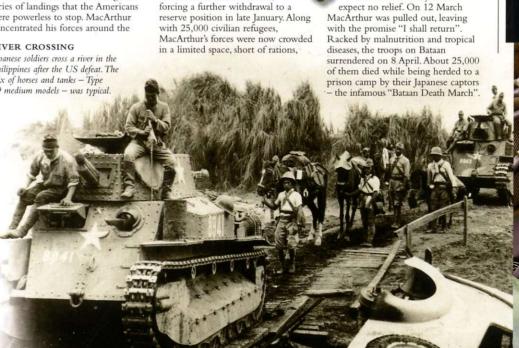
around 200 aircraft that were expected to play a key role in the defence, but on the first day of the war an attack by Japanese bombers and fighters from Formosa (now Taiwan) destroyed most of this air force on the ground at Clark Field, on Luzon island. With the Japanese in control of the air. American naval forces withdrew and the surviving B-17 bombers were evacuated. Japanese troops under General Masaharu Homma began a series of landings that the Americans were powerless to stop. MacArthur concentrated his forces around the



capital, Manila, and in late December carried out a skilful fighting withdrawal to a defensive line on the Bataan peninsula. Some 83,000 American and Filipino troops took up positions on either side of jungle-clad Mount Natib, terrain that was considered impassible. But the Japanese infiltrated the jungle around the defenders' flanks,

This medal was the 7th in eight grades of the Order of the Rising Sun, awarded to Japanese civilians or soldiers. harassed by air and artillery bombardment, and fighting off amphibious landings behind their lines. US president F. D. Roosevelt made it clear they could

HONOURING IAPAN



## JAPANESE OFFENSIVE Midway



Japanese: 2,500 men, 5 ships; US: 307 men,

In spring 1942 Japan's Admiral Yamamoto, who felt that his naval aircraft and pilots were superior to those of the US, sought to advance Japan's defensive perimeter in the Pacific and draw the US Pacific Fleet into battle. Yamamoto planned joint attacks on the Aleutian islands in the northern Pacific and on the US base at Midway Island, to which he sent four aircraft carriers and 16 other warships. US intelligence, having had great success with codebreaking, provided the Pacific Fleet commander Admiral Chester Nimitz with details of the Japanese plan. Nimitz chose to ignore the attack in the Aleutians and focus

his forces on Midway. He had three carriers at his disposal - the Enterprise, the Hornet, and the Yorktown - and sent two battle groups to Midway. The morning of 4 June began with a heavy raid by Japanese naval aircraft against airfields on Midway. They were preparing a second raid when they came under attack from American naval aircraft. Devastator torpedo bombers from the Hornet found the Japanese carriers first, but all 15 were shot down by Zero fighters. A wave of torpedo bombers from the Yorktown was similarly savaged, although US Wildcat fighters did their best to keep the Zeros occupied. Concentrating on the lowflying torpedo bombers, however, the Japanese fighters missed the arrival of Douglas Dauntless dive-bombers from the Yorktown and the Enterprise, which plunged down on the Japanese carriers. Within five minutes three of the Japanese carriers were burning hulks. The fourth carrier delivered a counterstrike against the Yorktown before being destroyed in turn by dive-bombers from the Enterprise. It was an overwhelming US victory.



"I saw this glint in the sun and it just looked like a beautiful, silver waterfall, these dive-bombers coming down. I'd never seen such superb dive-bombing."

US pilot Jimmy Thatch, recalling the battle of Midway, 1942



## FIGHT BACK

IN 1942 THE JAPANESE NAVY continued its offensive in the Pacific instead of standing on the defensive as initially planned. This policy led to the heavy losses at Midway that marked a turning point in the Pacific War. From then on, the Americans advanced from island to island towards Japan, achieving overwhelming naval superiority in large-scale carrier battles and

exploiting the expertise of US Marines in amphibious warfare. "Island-hopping" eventually brought Japan within range of American bombers that devastated its cities. The belated entry of the Soviet Union into the war against Japan, coinciding with nuclear bombings, brought Japan to surrender in August 1945 without the need for a costly invasion of the Japanese mainland.

degrees relativ

PACIFIC WAR

## Coral Sea



DATE 4-8 May 1942 FORCES US: 2 carriers, 21 other warships; Japanese: 3 carriers. 13 other warships

CASUALTIES US: 1 carrier. LOCATION South of the 74 aircraft: Jananese: Solomon islands Pacific Ocean 1 carrier, 80 aircraft

In April 1942 American intelligence informed Admiral Nimitz of a Japanese plan to seize Tulagi island in the Solomons and Port Moresby in New Guinea, A US naval force under Admiral Frank Fletcher, including fleet carriers Yorktown and Lexinoton. was sent to contest the landings, which were supported by a Japanese naval force under Admiral Takeo Takagi, with fleet carriers Zuikaku and Shokaku and light carrier Shoho. Skirmishes



## PRAYER FLAG

All Japanese servicemen carried prayer flags, which took the form of the flag of Japan, with them into battle. On the background friends and relatives wrote prayers and blessings.

between naval aircraft and warships began on 4 May, but the main forces at first failed to locate one another. On 7 May American aircraft sank Shoho. causing the Japanese to cancel the Port Moresby landing. On 8 May a longrange duel was fought between the

## CARRIER LEADER

USS Essex heads into action in the Philippine Sea in 1944.



fleet carriers. American Dauntless

dive-bombers scored three hits on the

Shokaku, which barely stayed afloat,

while Lexington was struck by two air-launched torpedos and a bomb

exploded on Yorktown's flight deck.

Yorktown remained operational, but

Lexington could not be saved. Fires on

board caused two massive explosions

PACIFIC WAR

## Guadalcanal



DATE 7 August 1942-7 February 1943 FORCES US: 19.000 rising to 50,000: Japanese: 3,000 rising CASUALTIES

US: 6,100;

Pacific Ocean

After the victory at Midway (see p325), American commanders in the Pacific were keen to take the offensive. They targeted the island of Guadalcanal when it was discovered that the Japanese were building an airstrip there later to be known as Henderson

Field. On 7 August 1942, after an air

went ashore unopposed, taking the lightly defended airstrip the following day. But at sea the battle went badly at first for the Americans. On the night of 8-9 August a Japanese naval force sank four US cruisers off Savo island, forcing a withdrawal of American warships that left the Marines cut off from supplies and with no naval support or air cover. The arrival of Marine aircraft at the airstrip only marginally improved their position. But the Japanese failed to exploit the opportunity to land troops in sufficient numbers before the US Navy returned in strength. A prolonged battle followed on land and sea. Japanese warships sailed down the "Slot" to Guadalcanal each night to land reinforcements and shell Henderson Field - a manoeuvre the

and naval bombardment, US Marines

Americans called the "Tokyo Express" US Marines fought desperate battles against suicidally courageous Japanese infantry, holding a perimeter around the airstrip in unhealthy, difficult jungle conditions. Crucially, the Americans now had much the better of a series of naval battles in which both sides suffered substantial losses. From mid-November they were able to reinforce and supply the forces on Guadalcanal. At the start of February 1943 Japan successfully evacuated most of its surviving troops, taking off 13,000 men for the loss of only one destroyer.

#### MORTAR SQUAD

US Marines bombard Japanese positions on Guadalcanal. The American ability to resupply their troops with ammunition was critical to their ultimate success.



PACIFIC WAR

## Burma



FORCES British and Japanese: 30 000

DATE January 1942-

August 1945

CASUALTIES (initial invasion) British: 13,000; Japanese: 4,000

The Japanese invaded British-ruled Burma in January 1942, chiefly to cut the supply line to Chinese Nationalist forces in Kunming. Despite an

intervention by Chinese forces organized by US General Stilwell, General Slim's British, Indian, and African troops could not prevent the Japanese from occupying the country. The terrain was ideal for Japanese infantry to show their prowess at jungle warfare, although Brigadier Orde Wingate's Chindits and General Frank Merrill's Marauders would later show that the British and Americans were also capable of fighting in the ungle. In January 1944 the Japanese renewed their advance, crossing the border into India, but were repulsed at Imphal and Kohima, where Britishled forces showed a fresh resolve. The

VOUGHT F4U CORSAIR

pilots a fighter that could trounce

speed was 710kph (440mph).

the Japanese Zero. Its top

WINGATE'S CHINDITS

following December Slir launched a major offensive As his Fourteenth Army advanced southwards, the Japanese set out to hold Mandalay at all costs, but were defeated there in March 1945. The follows May the Burmese capital, Rangoon, fell to combine sea and airborne landings.



PACIFIC WAR

Burma

## Philippine Sea



15-20 June 1944 FORCES US: 20,000 Marines, 15 carriers; Japanese: 32,000 men, 9 carriers

LOCATION Marianas islands. Pacific Ocean

CASUALTIES US: 16.500 men, 129 aircraft; Japanese: 31,000 dead

invaded the Marianas, aiming to put

American bombers. In support of the

landings, the US Navy sent an imposing

fleet including 15 aircraft carriers and

12 battleships under the command of

Admiral Raymond Spruance. After a

four-day bombardment, US Marines

went ashore at Saipan on 15 June.

fierce counterattacks from strong defensive positions. At sea, too, the Japanese fighting spirit remained

into the Philippine Sea, intent on destroying naval forces by combined

the waves of aircraft from Japanese

Navy fighter aircraft directed on to

them by combat controllers aboard

survived were either shot down by

destroyed as they tried to land on

300 aircraft in a single day, in what

became known as the "Marianas

the Japanese mainland in range of

In June 1944 the United States

extreme range. They sank a fleet carrier and damaged other warships for little loss, but on the night-time return journey many aircraft ran out of fuel and ditched. Mitscher ordered the fleet "to turn on the lights" - an extremely dangerous ploy with enemy submarines around - so that the pilots could find their way home. Eighty aircraft were lost, although most of the crews were saved. Meanwhile on Saipan a tough battle continued into July, ending with mass suicides by Japanese soldiers and civilians.



"The sky was just a mass of black and white puffs, and in the midst of it planes already hit, burning and crashing into the water below."

Lieutenant Don Lewis, US navy bomber pilot's account of an attack, 20 June 1944



## CRUISER AT BAY

A Japanese heavy cruiser under attack in Manila Bay from US carrier-based bombers. Despite its frantic evasive manoeuvres, it was sunk.

WORLD

KAMIKAZE PILOTS

give recruits proper flight training before sending them into action. The few surviving experienced fliers provided a fighter escort.



after city was subjected to such attacks.

the population fled to the countryside

and industrial production plummeted.

The bomb dropped on Nagasaki was nicknamed "Fat Man". The destruction it wrought on the city was slightly mitigated by the hills that blocked blast and radiation

maximum load of incendiary bombs.

frighteningly effective. On 9-10 March a raid by 279 B-29s caused a firestorm that destroyed a quarter of Tokyo and

with destroyers on radar picket duty

suffering very heavily. But the attacks

cost the lives of around 1,900 Japanese

between the fleet and the air bases

pilots. On land. American soldiers

fought a savage struggle to clear

bunkers, caves, and tunnels. Using

flamethrowers or grenades to clean

everyone inside, including civilians.

General Buckner was among those

who died in a bloodbath that lasted

into July. General Ujishima and other

senior Japanese commanders committed

ritual suicide before resistance ceased.

Sailors on the battleship West Virginia

watch for Japanese aircraft off the coast of

Okinawa. The ship was damaged in a

kamikaze attack that killed four men.

KEEPING WATCH

out strongpoints, they often killed

On 6 and 9 August B-29s from Tinian island dropped atom bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki, destroying the cities and incurring massive loss of life. Japan surrendered on 15 August.

"We call upon the government of Japan to proclaim now the unconditional surrender of all Japanese armed forces...



Levte Gulf



LOCATION Around the

FORCES Allies: 35 carriers, 177 other ships; Japanese: 4 carriers, 62 other ships CASUALTIES Allies: 3 carriers, 4 other ships; Japanese: 4 carriers, 21 other ships

DATE 23-26 October 1944

The decision by the US to invade the Philippines in October 1944 owed much to the personal agenda of General MacArthur, who in 1942 had famously promised to "return". He chose Leyte, one of the smaller islands, as the site for the first landings. The Japanese navy decided to contest the invasion, despite a lack of naval aircraft after their defeat at the Philippine Sea. They devised a complex plan in which a decoy force would draw away US carriers, thus enabling Japanese

rest of the Allied fleet. Aircraft flying from airfields in the Philippines would provide air cover. However, Japanese resources were inadequate to carry out this ambitious plan effectively. Two cruisers from Admiral Kurita's Centre Force, moving north from Brunei, were sunk by a US submarine on 23 October and the next day the massive battleship Musashi was destroyed by US naval aircraft in the Sibuyan Sea. The Japanese decoy force drew away much of Admiral William Halsey's Third US Fleet, but on 25 October Admiral Thomas Kinkaid's Seventh US Fleet shattered a force of Japanese warships in the Surigao Strait. The remaining battleships and cruisers of Japanese Centre Force slipped through to engage the escort carriers and destroyers protecting the landing beaches. The Allies lost two of their carriers and three destrovers, but two of Kurita's cruisers were also sunk and he withdrew to save his remaining battleships.

battleships and cruisers to engage the





NORTHERN FORCE

ON THE BEACH Some of the 130,000 US troops landed on Leyte Island take up position on a beach.

The conquest of the island took two months.

PACIFIC WAR

# Iwo Iima



24 March 1945 Americans: 70.000: Japanese: 22,000 CASUALTIES Americans: 28,700; Japanese: 1,000

DATE 19 February-

prisoner, 20,000 dead

Ocean, 1,000km (625 miles) se of Tokyo

The tiny volcanic island of Iwo Jima was targeted by the United States as a stepping stone to the invasion of Japan, and a potential base for escort fighters. Guessing the intentions of the US, Japan reinforced the island's defences in the winter of 1944-45. General Kuribayashi Tadamichi made Iwo Jima into a

fortress of pillboxes, bunkers, tunnels, trenches, and fortified caves, densely defended by an array of artillery. Rejecting suicidal charges, Tadamachi instructed his men to fight from cover and hold out as long as humanly possible. Aware of the strength of Iwo Jima's defences, American military leaders planned to use poison-gas shells fired from warships to flush out the Japanese, but President Roosevelt flatly refused to authorize this. Still, the conventional bombardment of the island in the weeks prior to the landings was prolonged and heavy. It had little effect. The first wave of Marines approached the beaches at 8.30am on 19 February, the lead landing craft strafing the beaches with rocket and cannon fire while supporting air and naval forces battered Japanese positions. But when amphibious vehicles came

ashore, they quickly bogged down in the steep volcanic sand. The Marines were pinned on increasingly crowded beaches, exposed to fire from artillery on the heights of Mount Suribachi and machine guns in pillboxes just inshore. Sheltering in shallow foxholes amid the wreckage of burning vehicles, the Marines suffered almost 2,500 casualties on the first day - but 30,000 of them got ashore. By the morning of 23 February they had fought their way to the top of Mount Suribachi, where they twice planted a flag, the second time for the camera. It was not until late March that resistance in the tunnels and caves was finally subdued. Only 1,000 Japanese surrendered, mostly those too badly wounded to kill themselv

GLORY FLAG US Marines raise the Stars and Stripes on Mount Suribachi, Iwo Jima, to create a potent symbol of US triumph.

PACIFIC WAR

Okinawa

LOCATION Okinawa

and Ryukyu Islands

After Iwo Jima, the seizure of the

rugged island of Okinawa was the

Ushijima Mitsuru, created similar

logical next step towards an invasion of

Japan. The island's commander, General

fortifications to those on Iwo Jima in

mountainous terrain in the south of

the island. He intended to hold out

DATE 1 April-

1,300 ships

FORCES Japanese:

130,000; Americans:

250,000, Allied fleet:

CASUALTIES Americans:

Japanese: 120,000 dead

38,400 (land forces);

# PACIFIC WAR

## Bombing of Japan

for as long as possible while Japanese

Japan battered the Allied fleet. The

Tenth Army, a force of army and

landings on 1 April 1945 by the US

marines under General Simon Bolivar

Buckner, were unopposed. American

soldiers swiftly occupied the island's

to overcome resistance in the north.

But Ushijima's forces in the southern

mountains slowed American progress

to a crawl. Meanwhile, on 6 April the

Japanese began mass air attacks on the

Allied fleet off Okinawa. Raids by up

to 700 aircraft in a day overwhelmed

the fleet air defences. Many Japanese

pilots were committed to kamikaze

missions, using their aircraft as flying

bombs to crash onto the decks of US

warships. American losses were heavy.

centre and took a relatively short time

aircraft based in Formosa and southern



FORCES American: up to 500 bombers per raid American: up to 512 aircraft lost;

In June 1944 the introduction of B-29 bombers, with twice the range of B-17s, brought Japan within range of US air bases in China. At first raids did not go well, with substantial losses to mechanical failure. From late November 1944 B-29s began flying from bases in the Marianas, but still their high-altitude daylight raids were relatively ineffectual. In March 1945, under General Curtis LeMay, new tactics were adopted. B-29s were sent in at low altitude by night, carrying a

The mushroom cloud rises over Nagasaki. The lowest estimates of the immediate death tolls from the atom bombs are 140,000 at Hiroshima and 80,000 at Nagasaki.



DEATH CLOUD

Since most areas of Japanese cities consisted of close-packed wooden buildings, fire-bombing was

killed around 80,000 people. As city

The alternative for Japan is prompt and utter destruction."

Potsdam Declaration issued by Allied leaders, 26 July 1945

SINCE THE END OF WORLD WAR II there has been no return to full-scale conflict between major powers, but nor has there been a single day without a war going on somewhere around the globe. Weapons systems of great destructive power and technological sophistication have been developed, a whole category of which nuclear weapons - has not been used since 1945.

## THE COLD WAR

From the late 1940s to the late 1980s, the two superpowers the United States and the Soviet Union (the USSR) - continuously prepared for a Third World War that never happened. From the 1950s they engaged in a nuclear arms race that led within a decade to the era of "mutually assured destruction" (MAD), a strategic deadlock in which nuclear war was prevented by the certainty that both sides would suffer an unacceptable level of damage if one broke out. While this balance of fear prevented a world war, an American-led struggle against the spread of communism was instead fought out in a series of local wars. Whereas in the first half of the 20th century "total war" had seemed to develop almost naturally, with combatants using as much destructive power as they could muster, the Korean War of 1950-53 in contrast set the pattern for "limited war": limited in scope, with US

soldiers fighting Chinese troops in Korea but no American attacks on

China itself, and limited in weaponry, since the United States did not use the atom bombs it possessed. Many of the wars fought in the nuclear age - for example, in Vietnam - were, even so, massively destructive, partly because the limits on the conduct of war made it difficult to achieve a swift, decisive result.

A Soviet poster celebrates its space programme, which was closely linked to its development of military missiles.

## THE COLD WAR

Intil the 1990s, annual May Day parades in Moscow were a regular occasion for the Soviet Union to how off its military hardware.



# NICAR AGUA HONDURAS FL SALVADOR GUATEMALA 1954 ATLANTIC BASUTOLAND COLD WAR ALLIANCES As confrontation mounted, the US, allies, and satellite states USSR and US sought security US and original NATO 1949 in alliance networks. The danger later NATO of nuclear conflict led to a spread

of wars in areas where they did not face each other directly.

NATO dependencies 1960 other nations allied to the Western Bloc by treaty

An intercontinental ballistic missile (ICBM) in its hardened silo, ICBMs formed the core of America's nuclear armoury from the 1960s.



## NUCLEAR TESTING

US troops witness an tomic test at close range in the Nevada desert. Almost 100 such tests were carried out in Nevada in 1951–62.

# **GUERRILLA WARFARE**

Guerrilla tactics proved a consistently effective counter to the technological superiority of major powers. Evolved from the theory and practice of Mao Zedong's communist forces in China in the 1930s and 1940s and of anti-Nazi partisans in Europe in World War II, guerrilla struggle was, until the 1970s, principally a form of revolutionary warfare practised by those fighting colonialism and imperialism. Guerrillas sought to avoid battle except on their own terms, denying their enemy targets for his superior firepower while inflicting a steady stream of losses through hit-and-run attacks. Counter-insurgency techniques varied between trying to beat the guerrillas at their own game and seeking high-tech solutions, from exploiting the rapid mobility of helicopters to the area-bombing of jungles and mountains by B-52s.

## NUCLEAR CARRIER

USS Enterprise was the world's first nuclear-powered carrier when commissioned in 1961. Carriers have become a crucial

## WEAPONS DEVELOPMENT

The development of nuclear weapons dominated military budgets in the Cold War era. Until the 20th century it had been impossible to kill someone you could not see. Once ballistic missiles, developed from the German V-2 rocket of World War II. were combined with nuclear warheads, everywhere on the planet was vulnerable to a nuclear strike at the touch of a button on a different continent. The evolution of conventional weapons was less dramatic. Although jet aircraft had replaced propellor-driven planes, and missiles were used alongside guns.

the battles between Israel and its Arab neighbours in the 1960s and 1970s were not fundamentally different from those of World War II. The radical areas of development came in computerized command and control, "smart" guidance systems, and electronic countermeasures. By the 1980s it was superiority on the electronic battlefield, rather than the possession of greater numbers of tanks, aircraft, or missiles, that won wars.



## VIETNAM WAR

US soldiers enter a Vietnamese village in May 1967. Much of America's war in Vietnam was fought by infantry operating on foot, with little technological advantage over the guerrilla enemy.

## THE NEW WORLD ORDER

The end of the Cold War in the late 1980s removed the immediate threat of a nuclear holocaust, but a "new world order" proved elusive. The new era was characterized by wars of intervention by the United



## THE CHINESE CIVIL WAR

THE CHINESE CIVIL WAR OF 1945-49 was the culmination of a lengthy struggle for control of the country that had started in 1911, when the Manchu dynasty of emperors was overthrown and China was declared a republic. As the country descended into chaos during the 1920s, two main political groups fought for power: the Nationalist Kuomintang led by Jiang Jieshi

(Chiang Kai-Shek) and the Chinese Communist Party and its People's Liberation Army, led by Mao Zedong. The necessity of suppressing the Japanese invasion of China after 1937 brought the two factions together in an uneasy alliance for the duration of World War II, but Japan's defeat by the Allies in August 1945 soon re-opened the domestic conflict.

THE CHINESE CIVIL WAR THE CHINESE CIVIL WAR

## Opening Campaign



10 January 1946 FORCES

Eastern China and Manchuria

Nationalists: 110.000 CASHAITIES Communists: c.45,000; Nationalists: unknown

Japan's defeat left a power vacuum in many parts of China, as the Japanese had previously controlled most of the east coast, the populous river valleys of the interior, and the northern province of Manchuria, As Nationalist forces retook the coastal cities, the Communists occupied Manchuria, supplied with enough arms for 600,000 soldiers. These weapons were taken from the Japanese by the Soviet army, which had invaded the province at the very end of the war. After peace talks between the two sides broke down in October 1945, a Nationalist army moved into the province and forced the Communists northwards. Their defeat was avoided only after US-led talks agreed a ceasefire on 10 January 1946.

## Manchuria



Manchuria

north-east China

CASHALTIES Unknown The halt in fighting in Manchuria gave both sides time to regroup. Five



west and south. By the end of 1946 the Nationalists had captured 165

Communist-held towns, taking



MAO ZEDONG

Mao Zedong was born in Shaoshan,

#### SHENYANG

The Communist Fourth Field Army took the strategic city of Shenyang on 1 November 1948, a major defeat for Nationalist forces.

their capital, Yan'an, in March 1947.

But while the Nationalists won the

won the small-scale clashes, killing or

capturing 400,000 Nationalist troops

major offensives, the Communists

during 1947 and acquiring some

the process. In December 1947 the

Communists sent the 600,000-strong Fourth Field Army under Lin Piao on

the offensive in Manchuria. Isolating

the Nationalist armies from each

other, they completed the conquest

of the province in November 1948.

much-needed heavy artillery in

## THE CHINESE CIVIL WAR

## Xuzhou

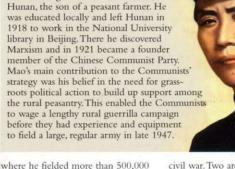


10 January 1949 FORCES Communists: 500 000 Nationalists: 500,000

September 1948-

CASUALTIES Communists: unknown Nationalists: 200,000

The decisive battle in the campaign for eastern China - and the biggest formal battle of the civil war - took place in the winter of 1948-49. In September the Communists' Third Field Army under Ch'en Yi pushed east from Shaanxi province into Shandong, the province south of Beijing. The Nationalist Seventh Army led by General Du Yuming was overwhelmed and its troops driven south towards the Huai He river. Du Yuming halted at the key railway junction of Xuzhou,



men. His position was immediately broken when four divisions in the centre of his line defected to the Communists. This was consistent with the Nationalist failure to command and support its troops, 800,000 of whom deserted to the Communists during the

Communist soldiers captured at Xuzhou are shown here with their weapons. This group was unlucky, as by this stage of the war, most prisoners were Nationalists. civil war. Two arduous battles against the exposed wings of the Nationalist army took place during November and December as the Communists cut the Nationalists' communications, encircled their troops, and bombarded them into submission, eventually taking Xuzhou on 10 January. Faced with large amounts of equipment falling into Communist hands, Jiang Jieshi ordered his air force, which had had total air superiority during the battle, to bomb his own formations, killing many of his own troops.



THE CHINESE CIVIL WAR

## Seizure of Tianjin and Beijing



CASHALTIES No reliable estimates As a result of their victory at Xuzhou, the Communists had broken the stalemate with the Nationalists. From then on, their momentum was

Communists

c.500.000: Nationalists: unknown

irresistible. Their firepower was now immense, their troops were far more mobile than those of the Nationalists -

Banners bearing photographs of Mao Zedong and slogans were carried in parades to create enthusiasm for the Communist authorities.

whose numbers they now exceeded and most importantly their motivation and political commitment was total. The Nationalists were increasingly weak, divided, and overstretched. The Communists now controlled all northern and eastern China with the exception of the isolated cities of Tianjin and Beijing. Lin Piao's Fourth Field Army captured Taijan on 15 January and then took Beijing unopposed seven days later. Marching with sound trucks blaring continuous revolutionary refrains, the Communist troops entered the city "in high spirits. As they marched up the streets, the crowds lining the sidewalks... burst into applause," as one western observer recorded in his diary. Here and elsewhere, civilians tired of years of Japanese occupation and civil war welcomed the Communists as the one force that could end the fighting and unite the country. After the capture of Beijing, the Communists could now strike south towards Shanghai and the Nationalist capital at Nanjing

## "Welcome to the People's Army on its arrival in Beijing! Congratulations to the people of Beijing on their liberation!"

Communist slogans broadcast by troops entering Beijing, 22 January 1949

## THE CHINESE CIVIL WAR

## Yangtze Incident



20 April 1949 FORCES British: unknown Chinese: unknow CASUALTIES British: 117 killed

LOCATION 224km (139 miles) up the Yangtze river, eastern China

One of the oddest incidents of the civil war occurred on the Yangtze river. On 20 April 1949 Communis guns fired on the frigate HMS Amethyst as it sailed up river from Shanghai with supplies for the British community in Nanjing; 17 soldiers were killed and another 30 wounded. Three other British naval vessels attempted but failed to rescue the ship, resulting in 70 further casualties. HMS Amethyst remained off an island in the river for more than 14 weeks, its crew suffering extreme hardship in the hot summer weather, until the night of 30-31 July, when Lieutenant Commander J. S. Kerans broke free and sailed the 224km (139 miles) down to the sea at a speed of more than 22 knots to avoid the gunfire from five lines of forts along the river. It is not clear why the Communists attacked and detained the ship, other than a suspicion that it might be carrying arms for the Nationalists, but the incident served notice on the international community that the Communists would aggressively assert Chinese sovereignty over the entire nation, including what had previously been recognized as an international waterway.

## THE CHINESE CIVIL WAR Conquest of



the South

LOCATION Southern China

unknown: Nationalists unknown

FORCES

April 1949-April 1950

Following their successes in the north

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates and east, Communist troops moved

capital, fell without a fight on 24 April and Shanghai in May. The Nationalists held a supreme council on 16 July, at which they decided to evacuate to the island of Taiwan, taking the national gold reserves and art collection with them. As the Communist army prepared to enter Guangzhou, the last remaining major Nationalist city in the south, Mao Zedong stood on top of the Gate of Heavenly Peace in Beijing on 1 October 1949 to announce the formation of the People's Republic of China. Facing defeat and capture, Jiang Jieshi fled on 10 December to Taiwan, giving up control by April 1950 of all but this and some small islands to the Communist victors.





propaganda posters rom 1949 showed ubilant crowds cheering Mao Zedong, the new Communist leader of the People's Republic

in Shanghai, seen here parading along the Bund waterfront on 12 November 1948, imposed martial law on the city as they prepared to defend it from Communist attack. In the event, the Communists easily took the city the following May.

# THE KOREAN WAR

AFTER 1945 KOREA WAS DIVIDED between a Soviet-backed North and an American-backed South. A North Korean invasion of the South in summer 1950 brought a US-led UN intervention in which 15 other countries took part, while Chinese troops entered the war after UN forces invaded the North. By the end of the war in 1953, over 39,000 US and other UN forces, around a million Chinese, and 3-4 million Koreans had died.



# US offensives 15 Sep-24 Oct 1950 Chinese offensives Oct 1950 - - front line 34 Nov 1950 - = front line 25 Jan 1951 \*\*\*\* ceasefire line 27 Jul 1953 US navy

## THE KOREAN WAR

North Korea's invasion of the South in June 1950 was seen as a test of US global credibility. The front lines in the war moved sharply across the peninsula but, after three years of bitter conflict, stabilized nore or less where they had begun.

## THE KOREAN WAR

## Inchon



LOCATION Inchon and Seoul, Korea

15-27 September 1950 FORCES North Korean: 20.000: UN/South Korean: 40,000 CASUALTIES North Korean: 14,000;

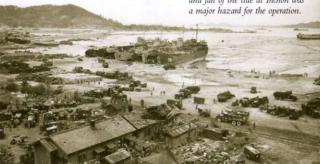
UN/South Korean: 671 killed, 2.758 wounded

MacArthur devised an amphibious landing at Inchon, 320km (200 miles) north of the Pusan perimeter, to capture Seoul and cut the enemy's communications. This operation, entrusted to X Corps under General Edward Almond, was hazardous, for the approach to Inchon lay along a

barely navigable seaway dotted with uncharted rocks and reefs. After preliminary air and naval bombardment. US Marines began the assault at 6.15am on 15 September, securing the port defences and part of the town by midnight. Casualties in the landings were light, but the same was not true of the subsequent capture of Seoul, where North Korean troops fought to the death, although outnumbered and outgunned. On 26 September UN and South Korean forces driving north from the Pusan perimeter met up with X Corps. North Korean forces had been captured, melted into the hills, or retreated pell-mell into the North.

## INVASION TIDE

UN forces pour into Inchon after the US landing. The huge rise and fall of the tide at Inchon was a major hazard for the operation.



## THE KOREAN WAR

## The Pusan Perimeter



DATE 1 August-15 September 1950 FORCES (End August): North Korean 98 000 UN/South Korean: 180,000 CASUALTIES US: 3,600 killed

On 25 June 1950 North Korean forces invaded South Korea, capturing the capital, Seoul. The US secured a resolution in the UN Security Council - which it was able to do as the Soviet Union was boycotting it - authorizing intervention to counter the aggression. General Douglas MacArthur was appointed commander of UN forces in Korea. The first US troops were rushed into South Korea on 1 July,



## NORTH KOREAN SOLDIER

A North Korean People's Army soldier handles Soviet-supplied munitions. The North Koreans fought with World War II-vintage Soviet equipment, including T-34 tanks.

but they were thrown into headlong retreat by the North Koreans, who included veterans of the Chinese Civil War. At the start of August, under General Walton Walker, American and South Korean troops succeeded in stabilizing a defensive perimeter around the port of Pusan. Walker's forces were too limited to man the whole perimeter, but intelligence gave him warning of the location of North Korean attacks and allowed him to concentrate men at crucial points. North Korean ruler Kim Il-Sung ordered General Kim Chaik to take Pusan by 1 September at all costs, but UN forces received constant reinforcements, including the first British troops at the end of August.

Meanwhile extended North Korean supply lines were pulverized from the air and by naval bombardment. By early September MacArthur was confident that Pusan was safe and he could take the offensive.

## MORTAR CREW

US troops (left) fire a heavy mortar against North Korean positions. The perimeter they held at Pusan was just 130km 80miles) from north to south.



THE KOREAN WAR

## The Invasion of the North

9 October

24 December 1950

FORCES Chinese/North



North Korea

Korean: 300,000-400,000; UN: 250,000 CASUALTIES Chinese: 40,000 killed; US 11,700 (718 killed)

By October 1950 North Korean forces had been cleared out of South Korea. Instead of standing on the defensive. MacArthur requested permission to press on into the North Although worried about provoking a Chinese intervention, US president Harry Truman gave authorization,

stipulating that troops should not advance to the Yalu river, the border with China. The US Eighth Army headed up the west coast, taking the northern capital, Pyongyang, on 12 October and continuing northwards almost unopposed, while X Corps was shifted to the east coast of North Korea, landing at Wonsan. The movement of X Corps proved a tortuous operation, and it was not established ashore until 26 October. By then, the first reports were coming in of clashes with Chinese soldiers who had infiltrated northern Korea, After some hesitation, MacArthur decided not to take the Chinese threat seriously and, on 24 November, ordered a final drive to the Yalu river, which he believed would end the war Within two days of beginning this advance, the Eighth Army came under attack from Chinese infantry, hundreds of

IET COMBAT

The F-86 Sabre was America's latest jet fighter at the time of the Korean War, Sabres fought air battles with Soviet MiGs over the Yalu river, the first aerial combats





thousands of whom were concealed in the mountains. On 28 November the Eighth Army was ordered to withdraw, but the Chinese had taken up position on the road behind them. UN troops had to fight their way southwards through ambushes and roadblocks, suffering heavy losses of men and equipment. In the east, US Marines had advanced through the mountains to the Chosin reservoir. Coming under attack from Chinese



A US machine-gun squad lies exhausted after combat against communist forces. Korea's winter was harsh and troops on both sides suffered from frostbite and exposure.

SOVIET MIG-15 The Soviet Union supplied MiG-15 jet

fighters and pilots to back the Chinese in North Korea. According to US estimates, 792 MiGs were shot down in the war.

and North Korean forces, they fought their way back along a narrow road to the coast at Hungnam, suffering as much from the cold as from enemy action. Marine General Oliver Smith put a brave face on it, telling the press his men were not retreating but "just attacking in a new direction". But the UN forces had suffered a serious reverse. X Corps had to be evacuated by sea to Pusan while the Eighth Army retreated into South Korea.

## THE KOREAN WAR

## Ridgway's Meatgrinder



LOCATION Korea, to the north and south of Seoul

In January 1951 a renewed communist offensive drove UN forces back south of Seoul. The US considered evacuating its forces from Korea, or using atom bombs to halt the Chinese. However, General Matthew Ridgway, field commander after the death of Walton Walker, stopped the rout. He set up a UN line from coast to coast and began an advance up the peninsula, using air and artillery bombardment to destroy the enemy without infantry assaults. The Chinese responded to Ridgway's "meatgrinder" with costly "human wave" attacks, attempting to swamp the firepower with sheer numbers. In three months of slaughter

21 April 1951

FORCES (Spring 1951

No reliable estimates

Chinese: 542,000;

North Korean:

197 000-UN: 270.000

CASUALTIES



VETERANS MEMORIAL For many years Korea was "the forgotten

Ridgway pushed the front line back to the border between North and South. In April he was promoted to UN commander, after MacArthur's dismissal for advocating attacks on China. In summer 1951 the war settled down to a stalemate, lasting

## NIGHT FIRE

A US 155mm howitzer fires at night. This was the kind of weapon Ridgway used to grind down the Chinese infantry.



# NUCLEAR SUBMARINE

NAUTILUS WAS THE WORLD'S FIRST NUCLEAR-POWERED SUBMARINE, ITS ADVENT DURING THE EARLY PART OF THE COLD WAR MARKED A REVOLUTIONARY NEW STEP IN NAVAL WARFARE.

The brainchild of a US Navy team headed by Hyman G. Rickover, Nautilus came into service in 1954. Its nuclear power plant meant that it could operate for long periods without refuelling or surfacing. In January 1955 Nautilus demonstrated its strengths by making a recordbreaking underwater voyage of 2,222km (1,381 miles) in 90 hours. In 1958, after several failed attempts, it became the first submarine to travel under the ice cap to the North Pole. Nautilus was, however, a transitional technology. It was not outstandingly fast under water and it was armed with conventional torpedoes. Apart from its power plant, its major novelties were having no gun on deck and having a bunk for



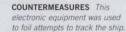
SPECIFICATION Date of launch 1954 Crew 116 Tonnage 4,092 tonnes Length 67m (219ft) Max speed 23 knots Max depth 213m (700ft) Armament 6 x 53cm (21in) torpedo tubes

each crew member, instead of the shift system for use of bunks found on earlier submarines. By 1959 it was already being superseded by submarines that, through improved hull design and the use of new materials, could travel faster under water and at far greater depths than before. Whereas Nautilus had been designed for the same role as earlier submarines (to attack surface shipping), its immediate successors were primarily built as part of America's strategic nuclear forces. Armed with Polaris missiles, their function was to make nuclear deterrence a reality, providing a platform for nuclear missiles that was both mobile and hard to track and attack. In conventional warfare, nuclear-powered submarines found other new roles, including missile attacks on surface vessels and hunting down enemy submarines. Nautilus retired in 1980 and is preserved in Connecticut.

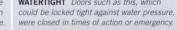
#### LAUNCH

Draped with flags and bunting for its maiden launch in January 1954, Nautilus plunges into the Thames





HYDROPLANE CONTROLS Located on the port side of the submarine WATERTIGHT Doors such as this, which and operated by three men facing towards the bow, these are the main controls for steering and diving. The gauges show depth, trim, and course.





WATER LEVELS These dials indicated the amount of water





ALARMS These colour-coded alarms were sounded when the submarine was about to dive or when there was a danger of collision with another undersea object, warning the crew to shut the watertight doors.





# POST-COLONIAL WARS

THE ECONOMIC WEAKNESS OF MANY NATIONS after World War II. and international pressure for colonial self-determination, led to the gradual break-up of the European empires after 1945. Most colonies achieved independence through increasing selfgovernment and negotiation, but both Portugal and to a lesser extent France tried to retain their empires, resulting in costly

WIETNAMESE INDEPENDENCE Dien Bien Phu



LOCATION

13 March-7 May 1954 French: 16.000: Vietminh: 80,000 CASHAITIES French

8.500 killed, 10.000 taken prisoner; Vietminh: 23,000

The fight for Vietnamese independence from French rule that began in 1946 reached its climax in the siege of Dien Bien Phu. In an attempt to break the stalemate in the war, the

French commander-in-chief Henri Navarre decided

to entice the Vietminh guerrillas to a battle in which French firepower could decimate their largely peasant army. In this aim, he underestimated the skill and resourcefulness of the Vietminh commander, General Giap. French airborne troops seized Dien Bien Phu, a strategic village deep in Vietminh territory, but were in turn besieged by the Vietminh, who fortified the surrounding hills with heavy artillery to stop the French flying in supplies. After eight weeks of heavy bombardment, the French garrison surrendered, only 3,300 of its troops surviving the siege and subsequent imprisonment. The defeat led, within two months, to an armistice that ended French colonial

rule in Vietnam and the rest of Indochina, and seriously weakened the prestige of France.



liberation wars in, among other places, Indochina, Algeria, and

Congo by Belgium left both new countries ill equipped to cope

conceived colonial boundaries caused numerous problems after

independence, notably in Nigeria and the Indian subcontinent.

Angola. Rapid decolonization of Angola by Portugal and the

with independence, resulting in lengthy civil wars, while ill-

Giap joined the Communist Party in 1933 but fled to China when the French colonial government banned the party in 1939. There he became an aide to Ho Chi Minh, the Vietnamese Communist leader, and from 1942-45 helped him organize Vietminh resistance to Japanese occupation. In 1946 Giap took command of the Vietminh, leading them to victory against the French and then, from 1965, the Americans, his use of guerrilla tactics enabling him to defeat two technologically superior forces.

NGUYEN GIAP



CELEBRATING VICTORY

Fifty years on, Vietnamese soldiers march to celebrate the victory over the French at Dien Bien Phu, one of the key moments in the fight for independence.

and alleys afforded

## CONGO CRISIS Congo Crisis



DATE 30 June 1960-25 November 1965 FORCES Congolese and mercenaries: unknown; UN peacekeepers: 19,828

CASHAITIES Congolese: unknown rovince of Katanga UN peacekeepers: 250

The Belgian government's rushed decision to grant independence to the Congo created a series of crises. Within days of independence, the province of Katanga declared its independence and sought help from mercenaries, forcing the UN to send in troops to keep the peace. UN forces regained control in anuary 1963, only for the north and east of the country to break away in 1964. Peace was eventually restored n 1965 by a coup led by General Mobutu, whose corrupt government remained in power until 1997.

## MERCENARY FORCE

Rebel Katanga employed these Belgian ercenaries, many of whom had previously een employed by the colonial government



Algiers

ALGERIAN INDEPENDENCE



DATE 30 September 1956-September 1957 FORCES French army: 40,000; FLN: 36,000 CASUALTIES French army: 83 000: FI N: 153,000: civilians: 80,000 (all minimum figures, 1954-62)

The failure of the French government to grant Algerians independence led nationalists to form the guerrilla Front Libération de Nationale (FLN) in 1954. At first the FLN's 800 fighters were heavily outnumbered by the

## "INDICT MASSU!"

General Iacques Massu's us of torture and kidnap made im a war criminal in the eyes of freedom fighters.

20,000-strong French army and concentrated on isolated terrorist attacks in rural areas. These met with a violent response from the French, but helped the FLN to increase its strength and unite the Algerian Arabs and Berbers behind it. In

1956 the FLN switched its campaign a general strike in 1957. As the to Algiers, hoping that its many streets violence escalated, General Massu,

etter protection than open countryside. On 30 September the FLN planted bombs

at three sites, including the offices of Air France. The FLN then launched a campaign that saw more than 8,000 bombings and shootings a month, including the assassination of the mayor of Algiers in broad daylight

## "France without Algeria would be no France."

Pierre Mendès-France, Prime Minister of France, 1954

commander of the French Tenth Parachute Division, acquired police powers in early 1957. These he used with savage effect, torturing FLN suspects to acquire information and kidnapping and killing others to intimidate the population. By September Massu had shattered the FLN in Algiers. Despite this success, French army plots against their own government and international pressure forced the French to grant Algerian independence in July 1962.



## Biafra War



LOCATION Southeast Nigeria

INDO-PAKISTAN WAR

LOCATION West

India; Kashmir

and East Pakistan;

Indo-Pakistan War

The partition of British India in

West Pakistan and East Pakistan,

1.760km (1.094 miles) of Hindu

Pakistan flared into violence

in 1947-48 and again

in 1965. The third

1947 created new Muslim-majority

two disconnected areas separated by

India. Relations between India and

CASUALTIES Vigerians: 100,000: Riafrans: 100 000: civilians 1 million

3-16 December 1971

FORCES Bangladeshis:

100.000: Pakistanis:

80,000 (in Bengal)

Pakistanis: unknown

93,000 taken prisoner

CASHAITIES

Indians: 7.000:

DATE 30 May 1967-

Nigerians: 250,000;

Biafrans: 150,000

15 January 1970

FORCES

The Ibo of southeast Nigeria had dominated the central government and military since independence in 1960 but felt threatened when proposals to strengthen the government in 1966 led to anti-Ibo massacres in the north. After efforts to reach a settlement failed, Colonel Odumegwu Ojukwu, Ibo governor of the southeast region,



HUMANITARIAN CRISIS

declared its independence as the

Republic of Biafra. The French and Rhodesians supported the rebels, the Soviet Union the Nigerians. Fear of genocide kept the Biafrans fighting until superior Soviet weaponry, a naval blockade, and starvation led to Biafra's unconditional surrender in 1970.

war erupted after a political crisis in

Pakistan's eastern province of Bengal.

they had nothing in common with

Pakistanis in the west. Their political

and economic grievances came to a

Mujibur Rahman's Awami League,

military overturned the result and

a general strike and on 26 March

1971 declared Bengal independent

as Bangladesh. In the violence that

followed, more than 6 million Bengalis

fled for safety to India, some pursued

arrested Rahman, whose party called

head in December 1970, when Sheikh

which sought Bengali autonomy, won

a massive election victory. The Pakistani

Although the Bengalis were Muslims,



LOCATION

The main casualties of the Biafran war were civilians, caught up in the fighting and killed by malnutrition and disease.



West-central Africa

10 November 1975-17 February 1976 MPLA: 40,000: LINITA: 30 000 FNLA: 20.000: Cubans: 20,000

CASUALTIES Unknown

Alone among the European nations, Portugal had fought hard to retain control over its African empire and granted its five colonies independence only after a military coup in Portugal in April 1974. Since 1961 the Portuguese had been fought in Angola by three independence movements: the left-wing Popular Movement for

the Liberation of Angola (MPLA), the Angola National Liberation Front (FNLA), and the National Union for the Total Independence of Angola (UNITA). On national independence in November 1975, the MPLA seized control, backed by Cuban forces armed with Soviet tanks, and attacked the other two groups. MPLA troops soon defeated the FNLA and secured control over most of the country by February 1976, receiving widespread international recognition as the legitimate government. However, Cuban involvement in the war prompted the US and South Africa to step up their support for UNITA. resulting in a vicious conflict that continued until the assassination of the UNITA leader, Jonas Savimbi, and a ceasefire in April 2002, which lasts precariously to this day.

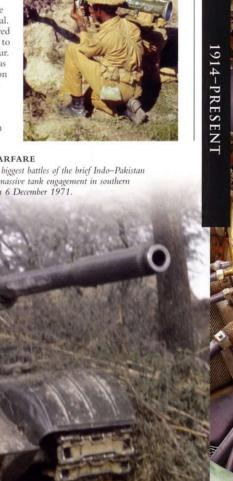
## FRONT LINE COMBAT

Pakistani troops aim a bazooka at Indian lines as Indian troops threaten their lines in East Pakistan, now Bangladesh.

across the border by the Pakistani army. As India prepared to defend itself, the Pakistanis launched a pre-emptive air strike against the Indian air force on 3 December. The Indians responded by invading Bengal Tank battles also broke along the shared western border as both sides sought to readjust the border in their own favour. Pakistan's resistance soon collapsed, as it could not maintain communication lines between the two halves of the country across a hostile India. The East Pakistan army unconditionally surrendered to the Indians after 13 days' fighting. Bangladesh was now independent.



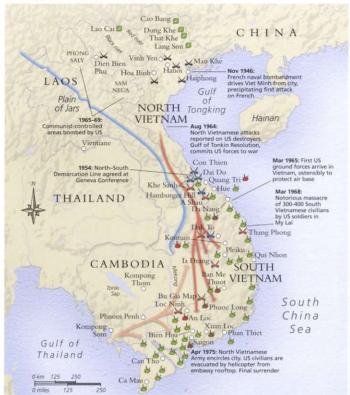
One of the biggest battles of the brief Indo-Pakistan war was a massive tank engagement in southern Kashmir on 6 December 1971.



## THE VIETNAM WAR

IN THE 1960s THE UNITED STATES became committed to defending the government of South Vietnam against communist-led guerrillas and allies in the North Vietnamese regular army. By 1969 over half a million US military personnel had been despatched to

Vietnam. The war proved too costly for the American public to stomach and a US withdrawal in early 1973 was followed two years later by victory for North Vietnam. The conflict cost the lives of 58,336 Americans and over a million Vietnamese.



## The First Vietnam War. 1946-54 French border posts, captured by Viet Minh 1951 The Second Vietnam War, 1964-75 Major battles with US i 1967-69 western limit of Pathet Lao areas, 1967 Tet offensive 1968 Viet Cong Eastertide offensive, 1972 Final offensive, 1974–75 Communist supply lines Ho Chi Minh trail Sihanouk trail

## VIETNAM WAR

Although Vietnam's independence was proclaimed at the end of World War II. it took three decades of bloody struggle before the French, and then the Americans who replaced them, were evicted from Vietnam. The war also spilled over into neighbouring Cambodia and Laos, both of which saw successful communist revolutions.

## THE VIETNAM WAR

## Cedar Falls



8-26 January 1967 US and Vietcong no reliable estimates CASUALTIES US: 409; South Vietnamese: 19;

LOCATION Viet Cong: 750 killed. northwest of Saigon 280 prisoners

Operation Cedar Falls was designed to clear communist forces out of their long-established base area in the "Iron Triangle" outside Saigon, A blocking force was put in place as an "anvil", while helicopter and ground assaults provided a "hammer" against which to crush the enemy. The operation started spectacularly on 8 January with a fleet of 60 helicopters flying in troops to seize the village of Ben Suc. Over the following weeks US troops searched the encircled zone, destroying tunnel complexes used by the guerrillas, But relatively few enemy were engaged. most slipping away through the US cordon. The 19-day operation ended with the destruction of Ben Suc and the forced evacuation of its population.



ON PATROL

US Marines on a combat reconnaissance patrol wear jungle camouflage. Radio cation was crucial to such missions.

## THE VIETNAM WAR Rolling Thunder



DATE 2 March 1965-31 October 1968 FORCES US: 306,380 sorties 643,000 tonnes of hombs dropped CASHALTIES LIS- 938

aircraft, 1.084 crew:

North Vietnam: 118

aircraft, 52,000 killed

LOCATION North Vietnam

After a number of earlier "retaliatory raids", the United States initiated a systematic air campaign against North Vietnam in March 1965. Operation Rolling Thunder lasted for over 3 vears. US Navv and Marine aircraft launched raids from carriers in the Gulf of Tonkin and from Marine airbases in South Vietnam; the US Air Force operated out of bases in Thailand; and B-52s of US Strategic Air Command flew in from Okinawa and Guam, US airmen encountered formidable air defences. North Vietnam had Sovietsupplied SA-2 surface-to-air missiles (SAMs) and anti-aircraft guns, plus



MiG-17 and MiG-21 fighters. Areas

along the Chinese border and around

these sanctuaries. The Americans soon

major cities were off limits, and MiG

fighters operated from safe bases in

learned that low-level raids incurred

heavy losses from anti-aircraft guns,

and so flew higher, relying on electronic countermeasures to jam radar and on Shrike missiles to take out the SAMs. The missilearmed F-4 Phantom fighters that escorted the strike aircraft initially had no guns and were flown by pilots trained for interceptor missions rather than dogfights. The strike aircraft had difficulty hitting precision targets because they were armed with conventional free-fall bombs or with Bullpup missiles that had to be guided onto a target with a joystick - no easy task under combat conditions. The political aim of the air offensive

was to persuade the North Vietnamese to stop promoting the war in the south by punishing them. In this, it patently failed.

#### GROUND FIRE

North Vietnamese anti-aircraft pattery guns such as these were very effective against nv-flying attack aircraft.

THE VIETNAM WAR

## Tet Offensive



LOCATION South Vietnam

DATE 31 January-2 March 1968 FORCES Viet Cong/North Vietnamese: 84,000; US: 500,000; South Vietnamese: 350.000

CASUALTIES Viet Cong/ 45,000; US: 9,000; South Vietnamese: 11,000

In early 1968 General Vo Nguyen Giap, defence minister of North Vietnam, launched an offensive intended to win the war. Simultaneous attacks on towns and cities throughout South Vietnam by Viet Cong guerrillas and North Vietnamese Army (NVA) troops were to promote a popular uprising and undermine the American position in South Vietnam militarily and politically. As a prelude to the main offensive, on 21 January the NVA laid siege to the American Marine base at Khe Sanh. near the demilitarized zone that separated North and South Vietnam. threatening the Americans with a repeat of Dien Bien Phu (see p338).

#### BAZOOKA

The Viet Cong used bazookas during the Tet Offensive, although the US no longer employed them in the Vietnam War.

holiday, when many South Vietnamese soldiers would be on leave. Communist forces seized key positions in over 100 towns or cities, including the capital. Saigon, and the former imperial capital, Hue. In Saigon a Viet Cong platoon shot their way into the US embassy compound, although they were killed before they could enter the building itself. Within a few days most urban areas had been reclaimed by American and South Vietnamese forces the latter fighting with impressive commitment and determination. Scattered fighting continued in Saigon until early March, but it was Hue that saw the heaviest and most prolonged combat. The imperial citadel was captured by NVA troops on 31 January and then held against a South Vietnamese counterattack. In February US Marines became engaged in a house-to-house battle to retake the city, supported by naval gunfire. By the time Hue was retaken on 2 March, half of the city's buildings had been damaged or destroyed and the US had suffered 1,500 casualties. The siege of Khe Sanh lasted until 8 April, also

the Americans used new smart bombs

The main offensive followed on 31

January, timed to coincide with the Tet

the offensive - taking place in a US presidential election year - dealt a mortal blow to the US intervention. convincing the American public and politicians that the war could not be won. On 31 March President Johnson announced he was seeking to open peace negotiations with North Vietnam.

PURPLE HEART

The Purple Heart is a decoration given to wounded US servicemen, Around 200,000 were awarded during the Vietnam War.

although Quang Tri was not retaken

## THE VIETNAM WAR

## Eastertide Offensive



South Vietnam

DATE 30 March-11 July 1972 FORCES North Vietnam: 200 000: South Vietnam: 500,000

CASUALTIES North South Vietnam: 50,000

By 1972 US ground forces had ceased combat operations and were pulling out of Vietnam. The South Vietnamese Army had taken over the fighting. although still with American air and naval support. Abandoning guerrilla tactics for open warfare, on 30 March the North Vietnamese Army (NVA) launched a full-scale invasion of South Vietnam with Soviet T-54 tanks and 130mm artillery. The offensive was launched on three axes: from the north towards Quang Tri and Hue, through the Central Highlands to Kontum, and in the south towards An Loc. President Richard Nixon responded by resuming bombing of North Vietnam. In Operation Linebacker,

## KOREAN SUPPORT

A South Korean soldier kneels beside a Vietnamese woman. Some 4,400 Koreans died fighting on the US side in Vietnam.



AIR CAVALRY

US 1st Cavalry Division troops

lurino a reconnaissance mission

ending in defeat for the

offensive was a military

disaster for the communist

guerrillas had emerged

from hiding into open

battle, and as a result had

been slaughtered. There was

no popular uprising in their

month the NVA made good progress.

support and the South Vietnamese

troops held firm. But politically

NVA. Altogether, the

forces. The Viet Cong

leap from their Bell UH-1 helicopter

Date 2004

Main rotor diameter 14.6m (48ft)

Cruise speed 140 knots

## AH-64 ATTACK HELICOPTER

THE AH-64 ATTACK HELICOPTER, DESIGNED FOR AN ANTI-TANK ROLE, USES MANY OF THE SOPHISTICATED OFFENSIVE AND DEFENSIVE TECHNOLOGIES THAT DOMINATE THE MODERN BATTLEFIELD.

The first American attack helicopter, the AH-1 Cobra, was introduced by the US Army during the Vietnam War to give fire support to assault helicopters landing troops in hostile territory. By the time the AH-64 Apache entered service in 1984, attack helicopters had found a new role as tank-busters. Developed by McDonnell Douglas (now Boeing), the AH-64 performed effectively in Operation Desert Storm in 1991 and has since been used in the American invasion of Afghanistan in 2001 and the American and British invasion of Iraq in 2003. The version shown here is an AH-64D Longbow.

## ATTACK AND DEFENCE

The AH-64 is a twin-engined helicopter with a crew of two. The co-pilot/gunner sits in front with the pilot above and behind. Firepower includes a chain gun and 70mm rockets, but the primary armament consists of up to 16 Hellfire anti-armour missiles. Using the helicopter's sophisticated target-acquisition and fire-control systems, the crew have only to select targets and fire; the missiles will lock onto the targets and do the rest. This "fire and forget" capacity means the

helicopter can take evasive action as soon as it has fired. It was once feared that the slow-moving helicopter would be too vulnerable in battle, but the AH-64D benefits from a variety of defensive systems for example, suppressing infra-red radiation so the helicopter is not located by heat-seeking missiles, and giving warning of incoming missiles so that countermeasures can be deployed. Using thermal imaging, the Apache



CHAIN GUN AND FEED MECHANISM The

f ammunition at 625 rounds per minute.

30mm chain gun can fire up to 1,200 rounds

are mounted under the helicopter's wings.

are placed at strategic points on the helicopter's airframe to cut through any wires - such as power or telephone cables - that threaten to bring the craft down.





MAIN ROTOR DRIVE The fully articulated main rotor blades are

attached to the hub by stacks of laminated steel straps. They can



launchers.







Mast-mounted

radar dome

AH-64D LONGBOW

This AH64-D Longbow

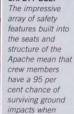
attack helicopter was built

by the American military

for the British army.



tail wheel



SPECIFICATION

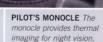
Overall height 4.95m (16ft 3in)

Origin USA

Armour-protected

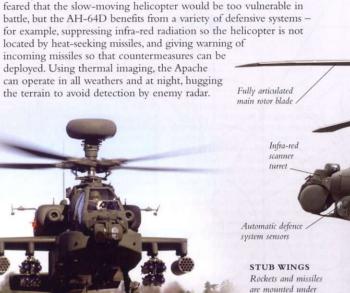
turbo engine

CANOPY JETTISON The armoured canopy covering the pilot and co-pilot monocle provides thermal can be iettisoned in an emergency.



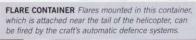












THE DECISION TO CREATE THE independent Jewish state of Israel out of the former British mandate of Palestine in 1948 led to five major wars in the region and a long-running intifada ("uprising") by Palestinians fighting for their own homeland. The continuing animosity between the Jews and the Arabs has destabilized the region for more than half a century and shows little sign of abating in the near future.



ISRAELI INDEPENDENCE

## Israeli Independence

FORCES



Arabs: 22,500-25,500; Israelis: c.30,000

CASUALTIES Arabs: 8.000-15.000; Israelis: 4.000: Palestinian mandate in Palestine

refugees: 700,000 On the day the last British troops left Palestine, 14 May 1948, Israel declared its independence. The next day, armies

from Egypt, Transjordan (Jordan), Svria, Lebanon, and Iraq attacked. Although outnumbered, the Israeli forces were better trained and armed. The Israelis also had a unified command and shorter supply lines, unlike the overextended Arabs. Above all, the Israelis were fighting for their survival, while their opponents had no common strategy. The initial Arab attacks had taken place by June and thereafter were slowly reversed, the Israelis eventually occupying the entire British mandate apart from the West Bank and the Gaza Strip. Ceasefires eventually brought the conflict to a close in July 1949.

## SINAI CAMPAIGN

# Sinai Campaign



peninsula between srael and Egypt

29 October 7 November 1956 FORCES Israelis vs Egyptians; Anglo-French forces,

UN peacekeepers

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates

Tension between Egypt and Israel escalated from 1955 after a series of terrorist raids against Israel were launched from the Gaza Strip. The new president of Egypt, Gamal Abdel Nasser, closed the Gulf of Agaba and sealed Eilat, Israel's only port on the Red Sea. In July 1956 he nationalized the Suez Canal Company; its shares were owned mainly by the British government and French investors. Fearful of an Arab attack, Israel struck first and invaded Sinai. It had first secretly agreed its strategy with the

PORT SAID

A small boy stands bewildered in the ruins of Port Said in November 1956 as a British tank crew look on.

British and French, who then issued an ultimatum for a halt to military action. When both sides refused.

British and French planes attacked Egyptian bases and airborne troops landed at Port Said on 31 October in order to seize the canal. Pressure from the UN and US forced a ceasefire on 7 November and the withdrawal of the Anglo-French forces. Israeli troops evacuated Sinai in March 1957, having lifted the blockade of Eilat and reduced the threat of attacks from Gaza. UN peacekeepers were then stationed to keep Israel and Egypt apart.

## CLOSE-QUARTERS COMBAT

An Israeli soldier in a trench prepares to throw a hand grenade against Syrian lines on the disputed territory of the Golan Heights during the Six-Day War.



SA-6

Egypt's surface-to-air missiles (SAMs) posed a considerable threat to Israeli planes during the Yom Kippur War, SA-6 missile launchers supplied by the Soviet Union shot down over 100 Israeli aircraft in the early days of the war, largely because Israeli pilots were not aware that their radar made them visible to the enemy. Once their radar warning receivers were reprogrammed, the threat from the missiles was reduced considerably.

The warhead itself veighs 56kg (123lb)



SPECIFICATION

Origin Soviet Union Date 1973 Weight 600kg (1,320lb) Top speed Mach 2.8 Max altitude 12,000m (39,370ft)

territory. Egypt, in particular, felt humiliated by Israeli military superiority and its loss of the Sinai Meir of Israel sought peninsula, and waged a three-year

campaign of bombardments and raids across the Suez Canal, known as the War of Attrition, which ended only in August 1970. Under its new leader, Anwar Sadat, in alliance with Svria. Egypt planned a surprise attack on Israel for 6 October 1973, the Day of Atonement, or Yom Kippur, one of the holiest days of the Jewish calendar. The Israelis were caught unawares as Egyptian forces crossed the Suez Canal and headed into Sinai, supported by surface-to-air

YOM KIPPUR WAR

LOCATION

Sinai peninsula

Golan Heights

Yom Kippur War

Despite its military success in the

Six-Day War, Israel did not win a

defeated Arab states were prepared

to make peace in return for their

political victory as none of the

DATE 6-24 October 19

Israelis: unknown

FORCES

CASUALTIES

Israelis: 2.688

314 taken pris

Arabs: 19,000 ki

8,783 taken priso

aid from the Americans who were slow to respond until the Soviet Union began to resupply the Egyptians and Syrians. President Nixon of the US then set up an emergency supply line of arms to Israel. Despite their initial success, the Egyptians outreached their defensive cover and had ground to a halt by 9 October. The Israelis then turned the tables on 16 October. A helicopter assault disabled the Egyptian air defences, allowing General Ariel Sharon of Israel to break through between two Egyptian

armies and cross the canal on to the

West Bank, there encircling the Third

ISRAELI COUNTERATTACK

On 16 October 1973 Israeli tanks rush to engage the Egyptian armies in Sinai - ten days after the outbreak of the war.

Egyptian Army. In the north, the Syrians attacked the Golan Heights. but despite their numerical weakness, Israeli defenders managed to knock out almost 900 Syrian tanks and advanced to within 40km (25 miles) of Damascus, the Syrian capital. A ceasefire established by the UN ended the conflict on 24 October.



## Invasion of Lebanon



DATE 6 June 1982-10 June 1985 FORCES Israelis and Christian Phalangists vs PLO. Syrians, and Muslim Lebanese CASUALTIES Israelis: 675; Arab troops and

civilians: 17,825

fled north to Lebanon. The Palestinian Liberation Organization (PLO) moved its headquarters to Lebanon in 1970 and by the 1980s represented a militant community of more than 300,000 refugees. The Palestinian presence so destabilized Lebanon that in 1975 it erupted in civil war. As Christian and Muslim communities fought for power, a Syrian force intervened in 1976 to support the Muslims. The

missile batteries and portable

anti-tank missiles that respectively

reduced Israeli air effectiveness and

After the creation of Israel in 1948,

more than 110,000 Palestinian refugees

immobilized its tanks, Prime Minister

PLO had been using Lebanon as a base from which to launch rocket attacks on northern Israel since 1968: Israel therefore invaded in 1982 to create a buffer zone between itself and the Palestinians, as well as to counteract growing Syrian influence in the country. Israeli tanks advanced towards the

YASSER ARAFAT Yasser Arafat was

chairman of the PLO from 1969 until his death in 2004. Israeli intervention forced him out of Lebanon in 1983.

capital and besieged strongholds in West Beirut. Although many Palestinians were evacuated in late August to friendly countries, Christian militias allied to the Israelis attacked two Palestinian refugee

camps at Sabra and Chatila in West Beirut on 18 September, killing 800 people. International outrage at this massacre and huge protests in Israel led to an Israeli withdrawal from West Beirut by the end of the month. After lengthy diplomacy, Israel withdrew most of its troops from Lebanon in June 1985, leaving a residual force and an Israeli-supported militia in a small buffer zone. Israel finally withdrew from this zone in 2000.

AFTERMATH OF AN EXPLOSION

West Beirut suffered constant bombardment from land, sea, and air during the 10-week siege of 1982, which caused great loss of life.







Six-Day War DATE 5-10 June 1967 FORCES Israelis: 264,000; Egyptians,

LOCATION West Bank, Golan Heights, and the Sinai peninsula

CASUALTIES No reliable estimates Palestinian refugees: 300,000

Syrians: 410,000

Egyptian pressure led to the withdrawal in May 1967 of UN peacekeepers installed after the Sinai campaign, followed swiftly by a renewed Egyptian naval blockade of Eilat and a massing of Egyptian, Jordanian, Iraqi, and Syrian troops along Israel's borders. Once again, Israel took the initiative. Its air force launched a devastating series of raids against the Egyptian air force, destroying four-fifths of it on the ground and giving Israel total air superiority. Similar action was taken against Iordan and Svria, Israeli troops then invaded Sinai and reached the Suez Canal on 8 June. At the same time, Israeli tanks and paratroopers entered Jordanian-held East Jerusalem and occupied the entire West Bank of the Jordan river. Israel also retaliated against 20 years of Syrian shelling by

occupying the Golan Heights and advancing 48km (30 miles) into Syria. By the time fighting stopped on 10 June, Israel had doubled its territory, reduced the length of its borders, and

removed its cities from the range of enemy guns. However, it now had 600,000 extra Palestinians under its control, and the likelihood of more

retaliatory action in the future.

STERLING L2A3 SUBMACHINE GUN

gun and the American M3 were widely used in World War II.

folded under barrel

The Sten was replaced by the Sterling in the 1950s, but the US Army largely abandoned submachine guns. Models such as the German MP5 continue to equip specialist forces, for whom its small size is a distinct advantage.

SOVIET GRENADE

This RPG7 round was made for use by Soviet "shaped charge" warhead can punch a hole in a tank.

GENERAL-PURPOSE MACHINE GUN, BRITISH ARMY ISSUE held, so bipod aids firing ALL-PURPOSE Most armies carry a General-Purpose Machine Gun, or GPMG, which can be used with a bipod or tripod, or Pistol of M60 MACHINE GUN mounted on vehicles and helicopters.

## HEAVY MACHINE GUNS

Despite the high rate of fire of assault rifles, armies still need heavier belt-fed machine guns - distinguished by their larger calibre ammunition, longer range, and higher volume of fire. The belt feed means these weapons require two men to operate them, and their weight necessitates them being disassembled and carried by several soldiers.

## RIFLE GRENADE

This US M16 assault rifle is fitted with an M203 grenade launcher, Such launchers are of limited range but can be effective anti-personnel weapons

Carrying handle

STANDARD ISSUE

The M60 machine gun was

the standard US Army squad

machine gun during the Vietnam

War. Although in service for over 30

years, it was never a popular weapon.

Plastic stock

M16 A1 ASSAULT RIFLE

AL-NASIRIYAH ROCKET LAUNCHER

## MASKED FIGHTERS

Iraqi insurgents brandish RPGs in front of a burning US vehicle. The man on the left carries more grenades for reloading.

SOVIET PG-7 ROCKET-PROPELLED GRENADE

## **GRENADE LAUNCHERS**

Rifle grenades are fired from ordinary rifles or from shotgun-style grenade launchers. The most famous grenade launcher is the Soviet-developed RPG7, which has become a familiar feature of guerrilla warfare and terrorist activity. Its warhead, which propels a jet of molten metal onto the target, can penetrate almost any tank armour.

Rocket exhaust

. . . . . .

EVENTS SUCH AS THE CHINESE CIVIL WAR, the Vietnam War, and Castro's victory in Cuba established the practice of guerrilla warfare as a revolutionary activity peculiar to communist or anti-colonialist groups, although in the 1980s US-backed Contras in Nicaragua and mujahideen in Afghanistan showed it was a strategy that could serve any political cause. Terrorism

could be an adjunct to guerrilla activity - for example, through assassination or sabotage - but beginning in the 1960s terrorism developed into a form of warfare in its own right. Terrorist groups ranged from those pursuing local causes and limited ends to those envisaging nothing less than the downfall of international capitalism, from a Marxist or Islamicist viewpoint.

CASTRO AND CUBA

## Castro and Cuba



1 January 1959 FORCES Guerrillas: 300; 30,000 (May 1958)

CASHAITIES

Cuban armed forces:

Fidel Castro was arrested for his part in an uprising against Cuban dictator Fulgencio Batista in 1953. Released from jail two years later, Castro went to Mexico, where he gathered a band of armed followers. On 2 December 1956 he landed in Cuba with 81 men, but this flimsy force was swiftly dispersed by the Cuban army. Castro took refuge in the Sierra Maestra mountains with a

including the unit's doctor, Ernesto "Che" Guevara. Reinforced by anti-Batista elements from Cuban cities, they embarked on hit-and-run attacks against army outposts. In summer 1958 Batista launched a large-scale military operation to clear the guerrillas out of the sierra, but his poorly led forces were repeatedly outfought and retreated in disarray. Batista had by now lost the support of the United States and was facing strikes, mutinies,

many Vietnams flourish REBEL BAND throughout the world with Fidel Castro in June 1957 with nembers of his ouerrilla band. their share of deaths and including "Che" Guevara (seated, second from left).

their immense tragedies, their everyday heroism and their repeated blows against imperialism."

## WITNESS TO WAR ERNESTO "CHE" GUEVARA

In his message to the Tricontinental Conference in January 1966, the rebel leader Guevara painted a vision of guerrilla wars springing up around the world that would overwhelm the capacity of the 'American imperialists' to respond.

and sabotage in urban areas. Castro's

men began to occupy towns without

fled the country on 1 January 1959

"How close we could

should two, three, or

look into a bright future

and Castro assumed power.

encountering serious resistance. Batista

ERA OF WORLD WARS

BAY OF PIGS

## Bay of Pigs



DATE 17-19 April 1961 FORCES Cuban exiles: 1,300 men; Castro's forces:

Cuban exiles: 120 killed, La Playa Girón, 1,180 taken prisoner; Castro's forces: 3.000 south coast of Cuba

The United States quickly decided that Castro had to be overthrown. The CIA organized a brigade of Cuban exiles and trained them to fly B-26 bombers. Preparations were far advanced when John F. Kennedy, who was keen to avoid direct US involvement, became US president. Initial B-26 strikes intended to take out the Cuban air force were scaled down and failed. The invasion force then went ashore at the Bay of Pigs without air cover. US naval and air forces did not intervene as the Cuban exiles, pummelled from the air, were overwhelmed by Castro's numerically superior troops.



EXILE MEMORIAL

A monument erected by Cuban exiles in Miami, Florida, commemorates those who died in the Bay of Pigs invasion.

# Bolivia



guerrillas: 50; Bolivian Rangers: 600 CASUALTIES

All guerrillas killed, captured, or dispersed In November 1966 Argentine-born

3 November 1966-

FORCES Guevara's

9 October 1967

Ernesto "Che" Guevara, one of Fidel Castro's closest associates, entered Bolivia in disguise and set up a guerrilla camp with a small band of followers. Including as many Cubans as Bolivians, the group had no support from the local population. In

#### FALLEN HERO

The Bolivian armed forces proudly display Guevara's body to the world's press after his execution on 9 October 1967.

March 1967 the camp was overrun by government forces; from then on the guerrillas were constantly on the move. They outfought the Bolivian army in small engagements, but were short of food and other essential supplies. Once Bolivian Rangers trained by the US were deployed from late July, Guevara's men suffered serious casualties. On 8 October the surviving guerrillas were surrounded by Rangers. After a two-hour firefight, most were dead or taken prisoner. A wounded Guevara was among those captured: he was shot the following day.



M DAWSON'S FIELD

## Dawson's Field

6-12 September 1970

Terrorists:

unknown;

CASUALTIES

hostages: 313

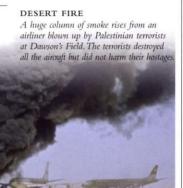


LOCATION Jordanian desert

Terrorists: On 6 September 1970 the Popular Front for the Liberation of Palestine (PLFP) seized three airliners bound for New York. The hijacking of a fourth aircraft was foiled.

Two aircraft were flown to Dawson's Field in Jordan, an airstrip under Palestinian control. The third was flown to Cairo

and there blown up. The following day, vet another airliner was hijacked to Dawson's Field. Holding the passengers and crew hostage, the PFLP lemanded the release of terrorist prisoners. Tension was increased by the attitude of the Iordanian government, bent on a military showdown. On 12 September all the aircraft were destroyed. The release of the hostages was, however, negotiated in return for a release of prisoners.



RAID ON ENTEBBE Raid on Entebbe

Entebbe, Uganda

27 June-4 July 1976 FORCES Terrorists: 6-10; Israelis: over 100 CASUALTIES Terrorists: 6-10 killed; Ugandans: 45 killed: Israelis: 1 killed: hostages: 3 killed

On 27 June 1976 an airliner en route from Israel to France was hijacked by members of the Popular Front for the Liberation of Palestine (PFLP) and the German Baader-Meinhof terrorist group. The aircraft was taken to Entebbe, Uganda, as Ugandan dictator Idi Amin Dada supported the PFLP cause. Non-Jewish passengers were allowed to leave, but Israelis were held hostage in the airport's old terminal building as the hijackers demanded the release of imprisoned terrorists. The Israeli government authorized a bold operation to free the hostages. An hour before midnight on 3-4 July, four Israeli air force Hercules transports flew into Entebbe airport, following in behind a scheduled cargo



#### WELCOME HOME

Jubilant Israelis welcome back freed hostages and their rescuers at Lod Airport, Tel Aviv, after the raid on Entebbe, Uganda,

flight, and disgorged an assault group and vehicles. Achieving complete surprise, they killed the terrorists and a number of Ugandan troops defending the airport buildings. The entire raid took two hours from start to finish

# 9/11



New York City and Washington, DC

On the morning of 11 September 2001 four airliners, two flying out of Boston and the others from Newark and Washington, DC, were hijacked by Islamic terrorists armed with knives. In each case, the hijackers took over from the pilots. Heavily loaded with flammable aviation fuel. the aircraft were to be used as flying firebombs in suicide attacks on buildings symbolic of American financial, military, and political power.

At 8.46am one of the aircraft, a Boeing

civilians and other

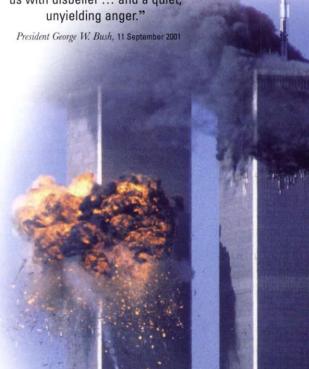
victims: 2,973 killed

767, crashed into the north tower of the World Trade Center in New York City. A quarter of an hour later another Boeing 767 struck the building's south tower. Next to be hit was the Pentagon building in Washington DC: a Boeing 757 crashed on the US military headquarters at 9.40am. The final hijacking failed when passengers bravely tackled the terrorists. During the struggle, the aircraft went out of control and crashed outside Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania. By 10.30am both towers of the World Trade Center had collapsed. President George W. Bush responded to the attacks by declaring a "war on terror". Osama bin Laden's al-Oaeda network was named as the prime mover behind the operation and bin Laden became the objective of a worldwide American manhunt.

## SECOND STRIKE

The second airliner explodes on striking the World Trade Center's south tower. The terrorists had turned aircraft into human-ouided missiles.

"The pictures of airplanes flying into buildings, fires burning, huge structures collapsing, have filled us with disbelief ... and a quiet, unvielding anger."



## OSAMA BIN LADEN

The son of a Saudi billionaire, Osama bin Laden came to prominence in the 1980s as an organizer of recruitment and funding for American-backed Islamic guerrillas fighting Soviet forces in Afghanistan. In the 1990s he established a financial network to fund Islamic extremists around the globe, as well as running his own training camps in Sudan and then Taliban-ruled Afghanistan. His al-Qaeda network is believed to have been involved in the bombing of US embassies in Kenva and Tanzania in 1998 and attacks on US forces in Saudi Arabia and Yemen, as well as the 9/11 operation.

# WARS SINCE 1980

THE DECADE AFTER 1980 MARKED the final years of the Cold War, with conflicts in Afghanistan, Nicaragua, and elsewhere adding to the tension between the United States and the Soviet Union. This situation changed in 1985, when Mikhail Gorbachev became leader of the Soviet Union and began to reform its monolithic structure. As the Soviet Union weakened

its hold on eastern Europe, and itself collapsed entirely in 1991, the Cold War came to an end. In its place, long-buried ethnic conflicts resurfaced in Chechnya and Yugoslavia, while the threat posed by the Iraqi dictator Saddam Hussein led to three major wars in the Middle East. Since 2001 Islamic fundamentalist terrorism has become a main contributor to world instability.

SOVIETS IN AFGHANISTAN

## Soviets in Afghanistan



DATE 25 December 1979-February 1989 FORCES Soviets: 175,000; Mujahideen: unknown CASUALTIES Soviets: 97.000: Afghans: 180 000 civilians 1.5 million killed.

6 million refugees

The conflict in Afghanistan that lasted almost the entire length of the 1980s had its genesis in July 1973, when the country's monarchy was overthrown and a republic established under Muhammad Daoud, Islamic leaders opposed to his modernizing government fled to neighbouring Pakistan, where in 1975 they set up the mujahideen ("holy warriors") to overthrow Daoud's regime. The assassination

and his replacement with a communist -led government, prompted the US to support the mujahideen the following July. Alarmed by American-armed instability on its southern border, the Soviet Union sent in 85,000 troops to support the Afghan government in December 1979. The Afghan army swiftly disintegrated as soldiers deserted, leaving Soviet troops to fight a mujahideen familiar with the mountainous terrain and largely

supported by the local population. As a result, the Soviets could hold only the major towns, while their attempts to subdue the countryside through aerial bombardment and siege tactics sent millions of refugees fleeing to Pakistan and other neighbouring countries. By 1985

guerrilla warfare was being

convincing the new Soviet

government of Mikhail

conducted in every province,

Gorbachev to cut its losses and leave. A phased withdrawal of Soviet troops began in May 1988 and was finally completed the following February. Within three years the mujahideen took control and an Islamic

republic was set up, but civil war between rival groups broke out in December 1992, allowing the extremist Taliban regime to seize power in September 1996.

#### STINGER POWER

American-supplied Stinger surface-to-air missiles proved effective in downing Soviet helicopter gunships and transport planes.

IRAN-CONTRA AFFAIR

of Daoud in April 1978 by

the Revolutionary Council.

## Contras in Nicaragua



ON PATROL

Nicaragua

FORCES CASHAITIES

government, the US under Ronald January 1984-Reagan armed the opposing National 25 February 1990 Democratic Front - the "Contras". Although the Sandinistas' Daniel Contras: 15,000: Ortega won the presidential election Nicaraguans: unknown in November 1984, the US continued to support the Contras, even after No reliable estimates Congress cut off their funding. A secret US plan to sell arms to Iran and pass the revenues on to the Contras caused a scandal in November 1986, but US A group of guerrilla Contra rebels patrols support continued until the Sandinistas were defeated in elections in 1990.

The Sandinista Liberation Front

overthrew dictator Anastasio Somoza

of Nicaragua in 1979. Alarmed by the

arrival of a left-wing Central American

## IRAN-IRAQ WAR Iran-Iraq War



DATE 22 September 1980-8 August 1988 FORCES Iragis: unknown; Iranians: unknown

CASUALTIES Tranis: unknown: Iranians: 1.5 million (100.000 Iranians and Kurds killed by poison gas)

In July 1979 Saddam Hussein seized power as president of Iraq. Kurds, Shi'as, and others opposed his Sunni regime, while neighbouring Iran was still in turmoil after the revolution that had just overthrown the shah. rag viewed this event with concern. as it feared revolution might spread across the border. Saddam therefore took the opportunity to unify his own country by attacking Iran, using as a pretext a dispute about the ownership of the strategic Shatt al-Arab waterway between the two countries. Saddam attacked in September 1980, expecting an easy victory against a disorganized enemy, but the Iranians resisted fiercely, the war settling into a stalemate with huge loss of life on both sides. An uneasy peace ended the war in 1988.



TROUBLE ON THE HORIZON Iraai soldiers at Khorramshahr in southwest Iran watch as smoke rises in the distance

in 1981 during the Iran-Iraq War.

FALKLANDS WAR

## Falklands War



Falkland islands South Atlantic

FORCES British: 28,000; Argentines: unknown CASUALTIES British: 982 killed or wounded: Argentines 13,113 killed, wounded or taken prisoner

DATE 19 March-

Argentina had long claimed the remote British colony of the Falkland Islands in the southern Atlantic Ocean as its own. In 1982 Argentina took advantage of the British willingness to negotiate the islands' future (and a consequent reduction of British naval strength in the region) to invade. On 19 March 1982 a group of Argentine civilians posing as scrap-metal dealers landed on the dependency of South Georgia and claimed it for Argentina. As Britain prepared to evict them, Argentine troops invaded the Falklands. Britain then sent a recovery task force to the islands, retaking South Georgia on 25 April and then attacking Argentine positions on the Falklands. Argentina had the better of the naval campaign, using air-launched Exocet missiles to sink a total of six British ships, although the British generally got the better in the skies. On 21 May British troops landed on East Falkland and took the capital, Port Stanley, on 14 June, liberating the islands.



GULF WAR

## Gulf War



Kuwait and Iraq

DATE 2 August 1990-3 March 1991 FORCES International coalition: 680,000; Iragis: unknown

CASUALTIES Coalition troops: 1,378; civilians: 2,300

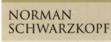
The ending of the Iran-Iraq war in 1988 left Iraq impoverished. One of its biggest creditors was neighbouring Kuwait, where high oil production was

keeping the price of Iraqi oil exports depressed, making it difficult for Iraq to repay its debts. In August 1990 Saddam Hussein invaded and easily occupied Kuwait, which Iraq had long claimed as its 19th province, seizing its massive oil industry. With one-fifth of the world's oil reserves in the hands of a ruthless dictator, the international community feared what Iraq might do next. The UN imposed sanctions on Iraq to force it to withdraw from Kuwait, while the US put together a coalition of 29 nations, including Saudi Arabia and the Gulf States, to oppose Iraq. After a six-week air attack, the coalition attacked Iraqi forces on the ground on

24 February 1991. After four days of fighting, the coalition liberated Kuwait, the war formally ending on 3 March. High-tech weaponry - notably "smart" cruise missiles capable of hitting targets with almost pinpoint accuracy and American F-117 "stealth" bombers able to evade radar detection - helped the coalition to achieve a swift victory, while Iraq's largely conscript army was no match for the wellequipped and well-trained coalition forces. The war also marked the use of environmental warfare, as Iraq set fire to three-quarters of Kuwait's oil wells, causing massive ecological damage throughout the Gulf region.

## SMOKE SCREEN

American troops watch as Kuwaiti oil fields burn in the distance, the fires creating massive smoke screens as black as night



General Norman Schwarzkopf served two combat tours in Vietnam, later rising through the ranks to become commander-inchief of US Central Command and commander of operations of Desert Storm, the campaign to liberate Kuwait. "Storming Norman" Schwarzkopf was an inspirational leader, and under his command allied forces speedily retook Kuwait while sustaining only minimal casualties. He retired from military service in

-PRESENT





Chechnya southern Russia

DATE 11 December 1994-29 August 1996; 23 September 1999-FORCES Chechens and Russians: unknown CASUALTIES Chechens: 400,000 refugees; Russians: 10,000 killed

The break-up of the Soviet Union in 1991 brought previously suppressed nationalist tensions to the surface in the new Russian Federation. In November 1991 the province of Chechnya in the northern Caucasus declared its independence, a move ignored by the Russians, who tried to negotiate a settlement. When fighting broke out in the capital, Grozny, between pro- and anti-independence

WAR IN FORMER YUGOSLAVIA

DATE 2 March 1992-

21 November 1995

FORCES Yugoslavians:

unknown; NATO-led

peacekeepers: 60,000

CASUALTIES Bosnians:

refugees; Serbs and

100.000 killed, 1.3m

Croats: 50,000

Yugoslavia

campaigners, Russian troops invaded Chechnya in December 1994. After considerable loss of life and the death of the Chechen leader, both sides agreed to end the conflict in August 1996; Russia withdrew its ment on the future status of

troops but both sides postponed Chechnya. In 1999 a series of bombs exploded in Russian cities. The Russians blamed the separatists, although many thought the Russian security services, aiming to ensure the election of Vladimir Putin as Russian president, were responsible. Russian forces reinvaded the province in September 1999; the conflict continues to this day with considerable loss of life.

#### RUSSIAN FIREPOWER

A Russian Grad missile launching system fires at rebel positions on the outskirts of the war-torn Chechen capital, Grozny.

In 1980, after the death of Yugoslavia's

Communist leader, Yosip Broz Tito,

the country's constituent republics began to break away from each other.

Tensions rose after the election to

the Serbian leadership in 1987 of

Slobodan Milosevic, who campaigned

for a Greater Serbia that would unite

all Serbs in Yugoslavia. In June 1991,

fearing total Serbian domination of

declared their independence, quickly

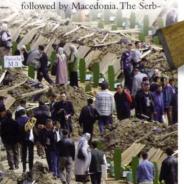
Yugoslavia, Slovenia and Croatia

"Belligerents target civilians in order to expel or eradicate segments of the population, or for the purpose of hastening military surrender."



gun was used in the Bosnian conflict.





nated Yugoslav army fought brief wars against both Slovenia and Croatia before peace was restored in anuary 1992. Multi-ethnic Bosnia eared that it would then be divided between Croatia and Serbia and declared its independence in March. A three-way conflict broke out, with the Sosnian Muslims - the biggest single

## WAR CRIMES

Bosnian Muslims bury the 8,000 Muslims massacred by Serb forces in the so-called "UN safe haven" of Srebrenica on 11 July 1995.

or expelling all non-Serbs hrough a new policy of "ethnic cleansing". The UN imposed sanctions against Serbia and set up six Muslim "safe havens". These, however, were poorly defended, allowing the Serbs to overrun them in 1995, killing 8,000 Muslims in Srebrenica. After NATO stepped in to enforce a peace settlement by bombing Serb positions, a deal was reached in November 1995 between Serbia, Croatia, and Bosnia, setting up two separate states within Bosnia - a Serb republic and a Muslim-Croat federation.

ethnic group -

summer 1993 the Serbs were

of the country, killing

in control of 70 per cent

defending themselves against

both Croat and Serb forces. By

## Kosovo



southern Serbia

10 June 1999 FORCES Serbs and Croats: unknown NATO forces: unknown CASUALTIES 940,000 refugees

In March 1989 Serbian leader Slobodan Milosevic removed the autonomy of the province of Kosovo, largely inhabited by Albanians, and suppressed any dissent. The Albanians formed the Kosovo Liberation Front (KLA), confronting Serb troops for the first time in January 1998. In March

Serbia sent in thousands of troops to flush out the militants, attacking villages and massacring inhabitants. Peace talks in Paris proposed full autonomy with the possibility of independence after three or five years. When Serbia refused to accept this, NATO intervened and bombed Serbia in an 11-week campaign. The Serbs responded with a renewed policy of ethnic cleansing, forcing 640,000 Kosovans to flee their homes. In June 1999 Milosevic eventually capitulated; Serb troops left the province to be replaced by NATO peacekeepers. The future of the province remains to be decided.

highlands of Albania and Macedonia.





## Afghanistan



WAR ON TERROR"

LOCATION

Invasion of Iraq

As part of the US-led "war on

terror" launched after the al-Oaeda

attacks of 11 September 2001, US

president George W. Bush stepped

up international pressure against

Saddam Hussein of Iraq, accusing

terrorism and developing chemical,

him of supporting international

DATE 20 March-14 April 2003

CASUALTIES

FORCES Coalition forces:

345,000: Iragis: 350,000

Coalition forces: 13,543

Iraqi troops: c.21,000

killed or wounded:

killed or wounded

6 December 2001 FORCES Afghans: forces: unknown

CASUALTIES Coalition forces: 219: Afghan troons: unknown: Afghan civilians: 1,300

Following the al-Oaeda terrorist attacks on New York and Washington on 11 September 2001, the US government accused Afghanistan's Taliban government of sheltering al-Qaeda and its leader, Osama bin Laden. After the Taliban refused to surrender bin Laden to the US, American and British forces invaded

Afghanistan. Other countries provided troops and equipment. Pakistan, Uzbekistan, and Tajikistan provided air bases from which US aircraft

biological, and nuclear weapons of

mass destruction (WMDs). UN

weapons inspectors arrived in the

country in November 2002, backed

by a UN mandate warning the Iraqi

government of severe consequences

inspector, Hans Blix, reported to the

UN on 7 March 2003 that Iraq was

complying with the search but that

inspection. The US and Britain

refused to accept this and began a

bombing campaign against Iraq on

20 March to force it to comply with

UN resolutions. The US-led coalition

then invaded Iraq in a hi-tech "shock

Tikrit, Hussein's home town and the

last major target, on 14 April. A US-

and awe" campaign, capturing the

capital, Baghdad, on 9 April and

he needed more time to complete his

if it failed to co-operate. The chief

killers of innocents, they have become outlaws and murderers themselves. And they will take that lonely path at their own peril."

"If any government sponsors the outlaws and

US President George W. Bush in his address to the nation, 7 October 2001

which had been fighting the Taliban

launched bombing missions, while special services ground troops worked with the Afghan Northern Alliance,

FIRE POWER

Anti-Taliban Pashtun soldiers, loyal to the post-war interim governor of Kandahar, patrol the city on 16 December 2001.

since 1996. The Taliban quickly collapsed in the north, leading to defections in the south and successes for anti-Taliban militias. The capital, Kabul, fell on 18 November and the city of Kandahar - the Taliban power base - on 6 December. Despite this success, neither bin Laden nor the Taliban leadership were captured, while resistance still continues in the mountains in the centre of the country and along the frontier with Pakistan.

#### SPY IN THE SKY

The US military made use of its unmanned Predator spy planes for surveillance and reconnaissance in the war against the Taliban



led provisional government then took power until free elections for a new parliament and government could be held in January 2005, Saddam Hussein was captured on 13 December 2003 and awaits trial for war crimes. Subsequent weapons inspections have revealed that there

were no WMDs in Iraq. The prime reason for the invasion was the removal of the Iraqi

TOPPLING SADDAM Across Iraq, statues of the

dictator Saddam Hussein were toppled from their pedestals and his image eradicated from public buildings and hoardings.

dictator. The invasion sparked international protests against the US and Britain in particular, and also began a major insurrection inside Iraq against the coalition occupation, which cost many more US and British lives than the invasion itself.



## WAR IN FORMER YUGOSLAVIA



During the Kosovan war thousands of Kosovo Albanians fled for safety into the

355

# INDEX

Illustrations are shown in italic except where there are battle entries for the subject on the same page.

Abbasids 72 73 76 93 Abd al-Malik ruler of Morocco, 140 Abd ar-Rahman, governor of Muslim Spain, 66 Abd el-Krim, 290 Abd el-Qadir, revolt (1832-47), 240,

Abe Sadato samurai 101 Aboukir Bay, battle (1799), 200 Abu Bakr, 1st Caliph, 72 Achilles, HMS, 304 Acre: siege and capture by Crusaders

(1191), 86; retaken by Muslim forces (1291), 87; siege (1799), 200 Actium, battle (31 BCE), 47 Adam, Cilliers de l'Isle, 129 Adhemar, bishop of le Puy, 80 Adowa, battle (1896), 240 Adrianople, battle (378), 51 Aggospotami battle (405 BCE) 25 Aemilius Paullus, Lucius, 40 Aemilius Paullus Macedonicus. Lucius, 31

Aethelred II, king of England, 70 Aetius, 51 Afghanistan: Anglo-Afghan wars, 236, 237; Chandragupta's wars (322-303 BCE), 56, 142; Soviet intervention (1979-89), 267, 350 United States and allies invade

(2001), 342, 353 Afonso Enriques, king of Portugal, 89 Africa: empires, 140-1; European imperialism, 240-5; post-1945 onflicts, 267, 339; Slave Wars, 141 Afrikaners: Anglo-Boer wars, 234, 244-5: voortrekkers (Blood River,

Agade, 12, 13 Aghlabid Arabs, 75 Agincourt, battle (1415), 114 Agricola, Gnaeus Julius, Roman governor of Britain, 49 Agrippa, 47 inaldo, Emilio, Philippine rebel

1838) 242

leader, 246 Ahab, king of Israel, 17 Ahmad Shah Durrani, invasion of India (1757), 137

Ahmed al-Mansur, ruler of Morocco, 141 Ahmed Gran, Sultan of Adal, 140 Ain Jalut, battle (1260), 93 air warfare, 183; air power, 266-7, 291: Allied bomber offensive (1942-45), 310-13; balloon reconnaisance, 199; defeat of Japan, 321; Edirne (Adrianople) (1913). 263: "kamikaze" tactics. 321, 329; Midway (1942), 325; Norden bombsight, 311, 312: Pear Harbor (1941). 322: Rolling Thunder (Vietnam) (1965-68), 340; Spanish Civil War (1936-39), 291, 294,

295; World War I, 276, 286, 287;

World War II. 297, 300-1, 304. 307, 321, 322 aircraft: AH-1 Cobra helicopter, 342 AH-64 Apache attack helicopter, 342-3; Aichi dive-bombers, 322; Avro Lancaster bomber, 310; Bell UH-1 helicopter, 341; Boeing B-17 Flying Fortress, 310, 312-13; Boeing B-29, 321, 329; Boeing B-52 Stratofortress, 340: Consolidated B-24 Liberator oomber, 311; De Havilland Mosquito, 311; Devastator torpedo-bombers, 325: Douglas Dauntless torpedo-bombers, 325 326: early development, 254, 269 F-4 Phantom, 340; F-86 Sabre jet 335; F-117 "stealth" bombers, 351 Fairey Swordfish, 304; Focke-Wulf 190. 310: Fokker D.VII. 269: Hawker Hurricane, 300; Heinkel HE-51, 295: Heinkel HE-111, 295; helicopters (Vietnam war),

340, 341, 342; Ju-87 (Stuka), 295,

299; Junkers Ju-52, 294; Me262, 297: Messerschmitt Bf109 291 294, 300, 310: MiG-15 fighter. 335; MiG-17 fighter, 340; MiG-2 fighter, 340; Nakajima torpedoombers, 322; P-51 Mustang, 311 Predator "spy" planes, 353; Savoia-Marchetti, 294; Sea Harrier, 351; Supermarine Spitfire 300-Vought F4U Corsair fighter, 327; Wildcat

ighters, 325; Zero fighter, 322, 325 ships, Zeppelin, 255 Aisne, First Aisne (1914), 272 Ains HMS 304 Akbar, Mogul emperor, 128, 136, 137 Akechi Mitsuhide, 174

Akkad see Agade l-Oaeda network, 349, 353 Alamein see El Alamein Alamo, battle (1836), 222 Alans, 51 Alaric II. 66

Alaric, chief of Visigoths, 51 Alba, Duke of, 146 Albazin, battle (1685-86), 179 Albert, Archduke of Austria, 257 Albert Duke of Saxe-Teschen, 198 Albigensians (1209-1255), 110 Albret, Charles d', 114 Alcazarquivir, battle (1578), 140

Alemanni confederation, 50 Aleppo, 81, 95 Alesia, battle (52 BCE), 33, 45, 46 Alexander the Great, 11, 15, 21, 21,

26-9, 28, 56 Alexander, king of Romania, 263 Alexander Nevski, 120 Alexius I, Byzantine emperor, 82 Alexius III, Byzantine emperor, 86

Alexius IV, Byzantine emperor, 86 Alexius V. Byzantine emperor, 86 Alfonso I (the Battler), king of Aragon, 88 Alfonso VI, king of Leon and Castile. 88 Alfonso VIII, king of Castile, 89 Alfred the Great, king of Wessex, 69

Algeria, France and, 240, 338 Ali, son-in-law of the prophet Muhammad, 75 Allenby General Sir Edmund, 283 Allia battle (390 BCF) 36 Alma battle (1854) 260 Almagro, Diego de, 167

Almond, General Edward, 334 Almoravids, 73, 88 Alp Arslan, 73, 77 Algama, 75 Alvintzy, General Josef, 199

American War of Independence (1775-83), 182, 190-6 mericas, 11, 216-33; European impact, 165-9; pre-Columbian period. 164, see also North America; South America; individual countries methyst, HMS, 333 Amin Dada, Idi, 349 Ammianus Marcellinus 51

Anang-Pal, 76 Anatolia see Turkey Anders, General Wladyslaw, 303 Andrea Doria, Genoese admiral, 133 Andrew de Moray, 111 Andronicus III. Byzantine emperor, 122

Angevin-Flanders war, 109 Angkor, sack of (1177), 100 inglo-Saxons, 69, 70, 71 Angola, independence war (1975-76) 339

Ankara, battle (1402), 95 Annam, wars with China, 100 Ansar, 241 Antietam, battle (1862), 227 Antigonus, 30

Antioch (1097-1098), 80, 83 Antiochus I 30 Antiochus III (the Great), 30, 31, 39, 41 Antony (Marcus Antonius), 47 antwerp, 68; siege of (1584-

1585), 147 Apamea (Anatolia), 30 Appius Postumius, 36 Aquae Sextae, battle (102 BCE), 43 Arabi Pasha, revolt (1882), 240 Arabs: expansion, 60, 63, 72, 74-5; revolt against Ottoman empire

(1016-18) 283 Arafat, Yasser, 345, 345 Aragonese-French wars, 109 Araucanians 165 Arausio, Roman defeat (104 BCE), 43 Archimedes 41 41 Arcole, battle (1796), 199 Ardennes, battle of the Bulge (1945).

Argentina, 220, 221; Falklands War (1982), 351; rebellion against Rosas (1852), 221 Argobast, 51 Arius 66 Ark Royal, HMS, 304

armies: American Civil War, 224, 224-5, 228, 232-3; ancient world (before Rome), 12-30; Arab, 72; Army of Africa (Spanish Civil War) 294 citizen armies 183 conscription, 184, 254; development (18th & 19th centuries), 182-3; foreign recruits. 234, 240, 257, 294; Garibaldi's Red

Shirts 257: International Brigades (Spain, 1936-39), 294; Japanese developments, 172, 251, 252; mass armies, 268; medieval Europe, 106; Mongol, 90, 98: native soldiers, 235, 240; New Model Army, 154; North Vietnamese Army (NVA). 341: professional/paid (ancient world), 11, 16, 35, 42, 43, 56;

professionalism (17th & 18th centuries), 153, 184; recruitmen 162, 163; Rome, 11, 34-5, 42, 43; Russian "soldiers' soviets", 285 uniforms 184 205 208 215 221 224, 251, 271, 299, see also mercenary troops

15, 17, 20, 27, 33, 35, 38;

French (16th-century), 147:

27; helmets (16th & 17th

German Gothic, 61, 116, 116-17;

centuries), 144, 150, 155; helmets

(19th century), 235, 258; horse

armour 55 143 143 iron 43.

Islamic, 72: Korean helmet (16th-

medieval footsoldiers, 107: medieva

century), 177; Macedonian, 27;

knights, 106, 106, 112, 115, 116,

116-17; Mogul, 139; Mongol, 90;

Mycenaean, 15: Ottoman jewelled

helmet 132 plate armour 61, 61,

(19th-century), 258; Roman, 11,

35, 38, 43; Samurai, 97, 102, 103,

Arrow war (China) (1856-60), 249

arrows and arrowheads, 11, 14, 71,

115; crossbow bolt, 107; Japanese,

173: Native (North American), 219:

105, 173; Sumerian, 13; Viking, 63,

116. 116-17: Prussian helmet

68 70 see also shields

arms factories 255, 291

Arnhem (1944), 303, 316

Timurid quiver, 94

Arsuf, battle (1191), 86

The Art of War (Sun-Tzu), 54

Arthasastra, military manual, 56

artillery: 10-pound mountain gun

(British) 283: 76-mm anti-tank

(Soviet), 307; 88-mm anti-tank

278, 340; Bazooka, 341; Big

(German), 302; anti-aircraft guns,

Bertha, 270; catapults, ballistas, and

mangonels, 41, 42, 47, 69, 98, 107,

Ferdinand self-propelled, 307; field

cannon (19th-century), 182, 260;

French (Napoleonic), 196, 198;

horse artillery, 184; Katyusha

rockets "Stalin Organs" 318-

319; rockets used at Panipat

Panzerfaust (anti-tank artillery)

(1399), 94; supply train (Hundred

Years War), 115; trebuchet, 61, 107,

108; Congreve rockets, 210, 217;

explosive shells, 254, 266, 270;

Arnold, General, 193, 193

gorgets, 208; Greek, 15, 20, 20, 23,

(1914-18), 268 Armistead, Major George, 217 ustrian Succession, War of the armour: Aztec, 165; breastplate (French cuirassier), 213; bronze, 11, (1740-48), 158 Austro-Hungarian army, World War 1, 279, 284 Avars, 62, 63, 67 Carthaginian, 40; Celtic helmets, Awazu, battle (1184), 102 33, 36; chain mail, 70, 72, 84, 116, 116; Chinese, 52; Crusader, 81, 84; axes, 10, 11, 14, 32, 70, 139 English Civil War, 155: Frankish, 67: Avacucho battle (1824) 221

> Avub Khan, Afghan governor of Herat, 237 Avyubid caliphate, 84 Aztecs, 164, 166, 168-9

 $m B_{aader-Meinhof\ group,\ 249}$ Babur, Mogul emperor, 136, 138 Babylon, 12, 13, 18, 19 Bach Dang, battle (938), 100 Badajoz, battle (1812), 209 Baden Powell, Mai Gen Robert, 245 Baghdad: Abbasid caliphate, 72, 93,

107 115 see also cannon missiles

(rocketry); mortars and howitzers;

siege weapons: weaponry artois/Loos, battle (1915), 273

Ascalon, siege of (1153), 81

Achanti wars (1870s) 240

-Ashraf Khalil. 87

Aston, Sir Arthur, 155

Persians 22 23

Attila the Hun, 51, 51

I 278 279 282

Years War (1756-

Assassins, 93 Assaye, battle (1803), 236

Ashingdon, battle (1016), 70

Asoka, Mauryan emperor, 53, 56

Assyrians, 11, 12, 13, 16, 17–18, 18

Atahualpa, Inca emperor, 167, 167

(431-404 BCF), 24-5; wars with

Atlantic, battle of the (1940-43), 305

Ataturk see Mustapha Kemel

atom bombs, 267, 321, 329

Auerstadt hattle (1806), 205

Austerlitz, battle (1805), 202

198, 201, 202-3, 205, 213;

Attalus, king of Pergamum, 31

Auchinleck General Claude 302

Augustus, Roman emperor, 42, 47,

Aurangzeb, Mogul emperor, 136, 137

Australian army (Anzacs), World War

Austria: French wars (1792-1815),

Ottomans and, 133, 1332; Prussian

war (1866), 255, 257, 258; Seven

63), 184, 186; war with Piedmont

and France (1848 & 1859), 256

Austria-Hungary, war with Serbia

Athens, 20; Peloponnesian War

Asculum, battle (280 BCF), 37

see also Iraq Bagration, Prince Peter I, 203 Bagration, Operation (1944), 318 Baibars, Ruk ad-Din, 78, 87, 90, 93 Baichu, Mongol general, 93 Balaclava, battle (1854), 260 Al-Baladhuri, 74 Balbi, Francisco, 133 Baldwin of Edessa, 81

Baldwin III, king of Jerusalem, 81 Balkan wars, Edirne (Adrianople) (1913), 263 allistas see artillery balloons, aerial reconnaissance, 199 Baltimore, battle (1814), 217 Bangladesh, 339 Bannockburn, battle (1314), 118 Baratieri, General Oreste, 240 Barbaro Nicolo 123 Barbarossa (Khair ad-Din), 133 Barons' War, Second (1264-67), 111 Basil II, Byzantine emperor, 65, 65 Basques, at Roncesvalles, 67 Batu, Mongol commander 92 Bay of Pigs (Cuba) (1961), 348 Bayan Mongol general, 98 Bayeux Tapestry, 71 Bayezid I, Ottoman ruler, 95, 95, 122 onets, 127, 150, 188, 214

Bazaine, Marshal François, 258

Beachy Head, battle (1690), 158

Beatty Admiral Sir David, 277 Beijing, 98, 178, 333, see also Zhongdu Belgium: Congo Crisis (1960-65). 338: World War 1, 268, 270: World

War II 299 Belisarius, 62, 64, 64 Belleau Wood, battle (1918), 286 Below, General Otto von, 279 Benedek, General Ludwig von, 258 Benevento battle (1266) 109 Beneventum, battle (275 BCE), 37 Bengal, falls to British (1757), 187 Bennigsen, General Count Levin

Berbers, 73, 240 Berezina River hattle (1812) 212 Berlin 205 297 311 319 Bernadotte, Marshal, 205 Bernard of Weimar, 151 Beyers, General C F, 245 Biafra (1967-70), 339 Bindusara, Mauryan emperor, 56 Birhtnoth, Saxon earl of Essex, 70

Bismarck, Count Otto von. 258-9. Bismarck, sinking of (1941), 304 Black Death (1346-50), 113 "Black Flag Pirates", 251 Blenheim, battle (1704), 159 Blitzkrieg, 291, 296, 297, 298-301 Blix, Hans, Weapons Inspector, 353 Blood River, battle (1838), 242 Blücher, General Gebhard von. 213.

214, 214, 215 Boeotia 24, 25 Boer War, see also South Africa,

Republic of Boer wars, 234, 244-5 Bohemia, Thirty Years War, 150 Bohemond, prince of Antioch, 80, 81 Bokhara, Russian conquest (1868),

Bolívar, General Simón, 220, 221, 221 Bolivia, attempted revolution (1966-67) 348

Bonhomme Richard, duel with Serapis, 191.194 Borodino, battle (1812), 197, 212 Boshin War (1868-69), 252 Bosnia, fights for independence (1992-93), 352

Boston (Massachussetts), 190, 192 Bosworth Field battle (1485), 111 Botha General Louis 244 245 Boudicca, queen of Iceni, 49 Bouvines, battle (1214), 109 bowmen see archers and bowmen

bows, 11; composite, 12, 13, 14, 16, 43 73: crossbows 52 54 62 100 107 109 116 longbows 62 107 107, 112, 113, 114, 114; Native North American, 171, 219 Boxer Rebellion (China) (1900-01),

248, 251 Boyacá, battle (1819), 220 Boyne battle (1690), 127, 158 Bozeman Trail, 217 Braddock, General Edward, 185 Bragg, General Braxton, 224 Bran/Brennus Celtic chief 36 Brazil, war with Paraguay, 221 Breda, siege of (1624–25), 149 Bredow, Colonel von, 258

Breitenfeld, battles (1631 & 1642) 151, 152 Brest-Litovsk, peace of (1918), 285 Brian Boru, High King of Ireland, 70 Brill, battle (1572), 146 Britain: Anglo-Boer wars, 234, 244-5; Battle of Britain (1940),

300; Blitz (1940-41), 300-1; Burma war (1823-26), 246: Crimean War (1854-56), 237 260-1, 260-1: Falklands War (1982), 351; French revolutionary/Napoleonic wars (1792-1815), 143, 182, 183, 197-201, 204, 206, 206-7, 208-9. 214-15; imperialism in Africa 240-45; Jacobite rebellion (1745) 161; Korean War (1950-53), 334; Maori Wars (1845-47 & 1860-72), 247; Roman, 42, 49; Seven Years War (1756-63), 184, 185,

World War 1, 268; World War II, 296, 297, 298, 299-305, 310-11, 314-17: Zulu wars (1879), 235, 238 British army, World War I: Gallipoli, 282; Sappers, 278; Western Front, 268 270 272-5 278 279-81

187: Suez campaign (1956), 344:

British army, World War II: Burma campaign (1942-45), 327; Chindits, 327; D-Day to the Rhine (1944-45) 314-17 Dunkirk (1940), 299; North Africa (1942), 302; Sappers, 302; Sicily and Iraly (1043-44) 303 British Fast India Company 127 236 237 246 249 British India, 236-7

British Indian army, Mesopotamia and Palestine (1915-16), 283 British Legion (volunteers), South American independence struggle 220, 221 Broglie, Duc de, 187 Brueys, Admiral Paul d', 200

Brunswick, Duke of, 198, 205 Brusilov General Alexei 284 Brusilov Offensive (1916) 284 Brutus, Marcus Iunius, 47 Buckner, General Simon Bolivar, 329 Budapest, falls to Soviet army (1945), 318

Buddhism: conversion of Asoka, 53. 56: Dhamek Stupa, 56 Budenny, Semyen, Bolshevik cavalry leader, 292

Bulgars, 63, 65, 74 Buller, General Sir Redvers, 244 Bülow Bernhard, Fürst von. 270, 281 Bunker Hill battle (1775) 192 Bureau, Jean and Gaspard, 115 Burgovne, General "Gentleman

Johnny", 192, 193 Burgundians, 115, 119 Burma: Japanese invasion and expulsion (1942-45), 327; war with British India (1823-26), 246; war with China (1277), 100 Burnside, General Ambrose, 227

Bush, George W, President of the US. 349, 353 Byng, General Sir Julian, 278 Byron, Lord George, 262, 262

Byzantium: army of, 42, 62, 64; Fourth Crusade, 86: Islamic incursions, 74, 77; loss of Sicily, 75 survival of, 62, 64-5; threats from raiders, 60; Varangian Guard, 69; wars with Bulgars, 65: wars with Ottomans 122: wars with Persia.

64-5 see also Rome Cadiz, English raid (1587), 147 Cadorna, General Luigi, 279 Caesar Inlins 44-5 46 47 47 Cajamarca, battle (1532), 167 Calais, siege of (1346-47), 61, 113 Calcutta, "Black Hole of", 187 Caledonians, battles with Rome, 49 Calgacus, 49 Calinicus, Greek fire, 64 Calvinus, Titus Veturius, 36

Cambodia, 56, 100 Cambrai, battle (1917), 279 Camden, battle (1780), 194 Camillus Marcus Furius 36 Campanians, versus Rome, 36 Campbell, General Archibald, 246 Campbell, General Sir Colin, 237 Campo Formio, Peace of (1797), 199

Canada, 170, 185 Canadian army, World War I, 273, 275 278 Cannae, battle (216 BCE), 40

cannon, 156, 156-7; development o 62; dragon (Burmese), 245; falconet, 155; fall of Constantinople (1443), 123; hand cannon (Korean), 176: Hundred Years War, 115: in India, 126: medieval China, 99; Mysorean gun, 157; Napoleonic wars, 197, see also artillery; mortars and

howitzers

Carrhae, battle (53 BCE), 43

Cao Cao Han general 55 55 Cape St Vincent, battle (1797), 199 Caporetto, battle (1917), 279 133, 144, 145, 167 Carabobo, battle (1821), 221 Cardigan, General Lord, 260 Cardona, Ramon de, 144 Carlo Alberto king of Piedmont 256 162, 163 Carnot, Lazare, 198 Carolingian dynasty (Franks), 62,

Carthage, 37, 38-41, 64 Caseros hattle (1852), 221 Casilinum, battle (552), 64 Casimir IV, king of Poland, 121 Cassius, Gaius see Longinus castles: Crusader, 78, 82-3, 87; Japan 172; medieval period, 61, 62, 106, 107 111: motte and bailey 62.

Norman, 63: Van castle (Anatolia) 72, see also fortifications Castro, Fidel, 348 Catalaunian Plains, battle (451), 51 cataphracts, 62, 62 catapults see artillery Cathars see Albigensian Crusade Cato the Elder, Roman senator, 41 Caucasus, Shamyl's uprising (1817-59), 261

Caudine Forks battle (321 BCF) 36 cavalry: American Civil War 225 226, 231; ancient world, 11, 16, 17 anti-cavalry devices (caltrop), 118; Arab, 72, 75; Asian nomads, 53, 60; at Omdurman, 241; carnel warriors. 72. 75; caracole, 142; Carthaginian, 39, 40: cataphracts, 42, 62, 64: cavalry carbine (17th-century), 152: Celtic, 32; Charge of the Light Brigade (1854), 260; China, 52, 54,

96; Cromwell's "Ironsides", 154; with firearms, 127: Franco-Prussia War 258 259 Frankish 62. gunpowder evolution, 127, 142: orse armour, 143, 143: Macedonian, 21, 26, 27; medieval knights, 62, 67, 79; medieval period, 60-1; Mongol, 93, 98; Norman, 71; Omdurman (1898), 241: Chippenham (Wilts), 69 Chnodomar Alemanni king, 50

Ostrogoths, 64: Ottoman singhis. 122, 122; Parthian, 43; Prussian death ride (1870), 258; Roman, 31 40, 41, 47, 49; Russian/Bolshevik civil war. 292: saddles. 60, 63, 219: Seleucid. 31: stirrups. 60, 63: swords (18th-century), 184; swords (Napoleonic era), 211: Theodore

Roosevelt's "Rough Riders", 247; Viking, 63, 69 Celts, 32-3, 36, see also Gauls Cerignola, battle (1503), 144 Cervera, Admiral Pascual, 247 Cetshwayo Zulu king 243

Chacabuco, battle (1817), 220 Chaeronea, battle (328 BCE), 26 Chaldiran, battle (1514), 129 Chalons battle (451) 51 Champa, war with Angkor (1170s).

Chancellorsville, battle (1863), 227 Chandragupta I, Gupta emperor, 57 Chandragupta Maurya, Mauryan emperor, 56 Chandragupta's Wars (322-303 BCE), 56

Chang Chih-tung, General, 251 Changping, battle (260 BCE), 54 chariots and charioteers; ancient world, 11, 12-15; Celtic/Gaulish 32, 37; China, 52, 54; Egyptian, 12, 19: Mahabharata wars, 56 Mauryan, 53: Palestine and Mesopotamia, 13-14, 15, 16, 16, 17, 18, 19; Persian, 27, 28;

Seleucid, 31 Charlemagne, 60, 62, 66, 67 Charles d'Anion 109 109 Charles, Archduke, at Wagram (1809), 205

Charles the Bald, king of Franks, 68 Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, 119 Charles Edward Stuart, Prince, 161 Charles the Fat, Frankish emperor, 69 Charles I, king of England, 149, 154,

Charles Martel, 66, 67 Charles Prince of Lorraine 186 Charles V. Holy Roman Emperor. Charles V, king of France, 114 Charles VII, king of France, 112, 115 Charles VIII, king of France, 144 Charles XII, king of Sweden, 162,

Charles III, Frankish king, 67

Châtillon, battle (1453), 115 Chechnya, fights for independence (1994-96 & 1999-), 352

Chelmsford Lt General Lord 243 Constantine I. Roman emperor, 50, 50 | Dorylaeum, battles (1097 & 1147), chemical warfare 273 see also gas Constantine XI. Byzantine emperor. 123 Ch'en-liang emperor of China 99 Arabs (717-718), 74; falls to

Ch'en Yi, General, 332 Cheng, king of Chu, 54 Chengpu, battle (632 BCE), 54 Chiang Kai-Shek see Jiang Jieshi Chile 165 220 China, 11, 52-5, 60, 96-9; 19thcentury conflicts, 248, 249-51; allied against Japan (1941-45), 321: Annamese war (938) 100:

Chognice (Conitz), battle (1454), 121

Chongzhen, Ming emperor, 178

Chonju, battle (1592), 176

Corps, 335

El Cid, 88, 88

Cleopatra, 47

193 195

Chosin Reservoirs, US Marine

Chosroes I, king of Persia, 57

Christian of Anhalt, 150

Chosroes II, king of Persia, 65

Christian IV, king of Denmark, 150

Christianity, Constantine and, 50

Chuikov Marshal Vacili 308 319

282 297 300 301 301

Civitate, battle (1053), 71

Claudius Nero Gains 41

Clausevitz, Karl von, 254

Clement III, Pope, 86

Clive, Robert, 187, 187

(1858-62) 246

Cold War 267, 330

Colombia, 220

Colt, Samuel, 223

(1631), 151

338 340-1

(1900), 245

Clontarf, battle (1014), 70

Claudius Pulcher, Appius, 38

Claudius, Roman emperor, 49, 49

Clinton, General Sir Henry, 192,

Clovis, king of Salian Franks, 66

Cnut, Danish king of England, 70

Cochrane, Admiral Thomas, 220

Coligny, admiral Gaspard de, 146

mmandos, Boer War. 244

ommunications, telegraph,

ombined arms, at First Breitenfeld

telephone, radio, and railroad, 183,

mmunism: Cambodia and Laos.

to, 330; Soviet Russia, 267, 285,

290, 292; Spain, 294-5; Vietnam,

oncentration camps, Boer War

oncord, battle (1775), 190, 192

Condé, Prince Louis de, 146

Conflans, Marshall de, 187

Condor Legion Spain 294 295

Congo Crisis (1960-65), 331, 338

Conrad, III, Holy Roman emperor, 81 | Dorsetshire, HMS, 304

Congress of Vienna (1815), 254

340; China, 293, 332-3; opposition

Colenso, battle (1899), 244

Cochrane, Admiral Sir Alexander, 217

Codrington, Admiral Sir Edward, 263

Cochinchina, French conquest

Chungju, battle (1592), 176 Churchill, Sir Winston S, 241, 241.

Contras, in Nicaragua (1984-90), 350 Copenhagen, battle (1801), 201 Coral Sea battle (1942) 326 Burmese war (1277) 100: Civil Córdoba José Maria de 221 War (1945–50), 332–3: Great Wall. Córdova, Admiral José de, 199 52-3, 53, 54, 99; gunpowder Cordova, caliphate, 72 weapons, 62, 96, 98, 99; Han empire, 52; invasion of Vietnam Cornwallis, General Lord, 192, 194, 195 (1405), 100; Islamic expansion Cortés, Hernán, 165, 166, 166, 168-9 and, 76, 96: Japanese invasion Corunna battle see La Coruña (1937-38), 293: Li Zicheng Cossacks, 163, 183 rebellion, 178; Long March Courtrai, battle (1302), 118 (1934-35), 293; Manchu wars, Coutelle, Charles, 199 172, 173, 178-9; Mongol threat Coutras, battle (1587), 147 and conquest, 91, 96-9; Covadonga, battle (c.718), 75 Nationalist forces 332-3: Onium Cowpens, battle (1781), 195 Wars (1839-42 & 1856-60), 249: Crassus, Marcus Licinius, 43, 47 Red Turban revolt (1356-68), 99: Crazy Horse, 218, 219 Spring and Autumn period, 52, Crécy, battle (1346), 62, 107, 112 54; threats from steppe nomads, Crema, siege of (1160), 108 53 55 60 91 96 98 Three Crete, battle for (1941), 302 Fendatories war (1673-81) 179-Crimean War (1854-56) 237 254 war with Japan (1597), 177; war 260-1, see also Russowith Japan (1894-95), 251; warring Turkish wars (18th & 19th states period, 52, 54 centuries Chinju, siege of (1592), 176 Chios, battle (201 BCE), 31

Cristovao da Gama, 140 Croatia, independence, 352 Cromwell, Oliver, 154, 155, 155 Crusader states, 73, 84 Crusades, 78-87, 122 Ctesiphon, campaign (363), 50 Cuba: Angola and, 339; Bay of Pigs (1961) 348: revolution (1956-59) 348: US victory (1898), 247

Culloden, battle (1745), 161

nople, 50, 62; besieged by

Ottomans (1453), 123; raided by

Vikings (860), 69; sack of (Fourth

Constantius II. Roman emperor, 50

Contades, Marquis de, 187

Crusade) 86

Cuman peoples, 92 Curius Dentatus, Manius, 37 Custer, Lt Colonel George, 219 Custoza, battles (1848 & 1866), 256. Cyaxares 18

Cynoscephalae, battle (197 BCE), 31 Cyrus the Great, Persian king, 19, 19

Dacia, Roman campaigns (101-106 CE) 49 Dai Viet, Lam Son uprising (Tot Dong) (1426), 100 Damascus, 72, 74, 81, 95 Dambusters (1943), 310 Dan no Ura, battle (1185), 102 Dandangan, battle (1040), 76 Dandolo Enrico Doge of Venice 86 Daoud, Muhammad, 350 Dara, battle (530), 64 Darius I, Persian king, 16, 22 Darius III, Persian king, 27, 28-9 Dayout Marshal 205 Dawson's Field hijackings (1970), 349 De Kalb, Johann de, 194, 194 De La Rey, General Jacobus H, 245 De Moray, Andrew, 111 De Wet, General Christiaan, 245 Decebalus 49 Decius Mus. Publius, 37 Defenestration of Prague (1618), 142 Delhi, siege (1857), 237 Delium, battle (424 BCE), 24 Delphi, 22 Demetrius Poliorcetes, 30 Demosthenes, 24 Denikin, General Anton, 292

Denmark, 150, 162, 201, 298 Dessau, battle (1626), 150 Dettingen, battle (1743), 161 Diaz. Bernal, 168, 169 Diaz Porfirio 216 223 Diaz de Vivar, Rodrigo (El Cid), 88 Dien Bien Phu, battle (1954), 338 Dietrich, General Joseph "Sepp", 317 Dingiswayo, Zulu chief, 242 Diocletian, Roman emperor, 50 Divala River battle (693 BCF) 18 Dmitri, Prince, at Kulikovo, 121

Don Juan of Austria, 134, 134

Dönitz, Admiral Karl, 305

80.81 Dowding, Air Marshal Sir Hugh, 300 Downs, battle of the (1639), 149 Drake, Sir Francis, 147, 147, 148 Drepana, battle (249 BCE), 38 Dresden, raids by RAF/LISAAF 311 Dreux battle (1562) 146 drill 127 153 Drogheda, battle (1649), 155 Du Guesclin, Bertrand, 114 Du Yuming, General, 332 Ducrot Marshal Auguste 259 Dumouriez General Charles 198 Dunant, Henri, 257 Dunbar battle (1650), 155

Dunkirk (1940), 299 Dyrrachium, battle (48 BCE), 47  $E_{
m astertide}$  Offensive, Vietnam War (1972), 341 Ebro, battle (1938), 295 Ecnomus, battle (256 BCE), 38 Edessa, 50, 81 Edington (Wilts), battle (878), 69 Edirne (Adrianople), siege (1913), 263 Edmund Ironside, king of England, 70 Edward, the Black Prince, 112, 112, 113, 114

Edward I, king of England, 111 Edward II, king of England, 118 Edward III, king of England, 112, 113 Egypt: alliance with Assyria, 18; Arabi Pasha revolt (1882), 240: conquered by Alexander, 27; Crusader attacks, 86, 87: defeat of Mongols (1260), 93; Egyptian-Ottoman war (1832). 263; Fatimid caliphate, 72; French invasion (1798), 200; Ottoman conquest, 129; wars with Israel (1948-73), 344-5 Egypt, ancient, 10, 12, 14, 18, 19, 30

isenhower, General Dwight D. 303. 314, 315, 315, 316, 319 El Alamein, battle (1942), 302-3 El Cid see Diaz de Vivar, Rodrigo (El Cid) Flam, attacked by Assyria (693 BCF), 18

Eleazar ben Yair, 48 elephants, 21, 27, 30, 31, 37, 39, 41, 56, 76, 94, 100

Elgin, General Lord, 249 Elizabeth I, queen of England, 147 Enghien Duc d' 153 England: Civil War (1642–1651). 154-5; conquest of by Normans,

63; Spanish Armada (1588), 126, 148; Viking raids and settlement, 68, 69, 70; wars with Scotland, 111. 118; warships, 127, see also Britain Enola Gay (Atom Bomber), 321 Entebbe, Israeli raid (1976), 349 Enterprise, USS, 325, 330-1 Enver Pasha, 263 Epaminondas, 25, 26

Eshnunna 137 Freez USS 326 Estaing, Admiral Valerie d', 194 Ethiopia, 140, 240, 290, 291 Etruscans, 34, 37 Eudo, Duke of Aquitaine, 66

Eugène, prince of Savoy, 159, 160 Fugene of Savov 133, 133 Eugenius III. Pope, 81 Eugenius IV, Pope, 122

Eugenius, western Roman emperor, 51 Euphemius, 75 Europe: dynastic wars (17th & 18th centuries), 158-61; growth of State power, 142, 143; gunpowder technology, 126-7; invaders, 60,

62-3; Islamic expansion, 75; knights, castles, and bowmen, 106-9: Mongol invasion, 91: nationalism and modernization 254-5; Northern wars (1700-21) 162-3; Northern wars (medieval period), 120-1; Thirty Years War (1618-48), 142, 143, 150-3; Viking

raids, 68, see also World War I and

World War II Evesham, battle (1265), 111 Exeter, HMS, 304

explosives, 183; Ketchum grenade, 231: shells, 254, 266

35

Evlau, battle (1807), 205 Ezel battle (1719) 163

Fabius Maximus, 40 Fairfax, Sir Thomas, 154, 154 Fakhr ad-Din 87 Falaise pocket (1944), 316 Falkenhayn, General Erich von, 276 Fancheng, falls to Mongols, 98 Farnese, Alexander see Parma Fascist movement: Italy 290, 291 294 Spain 291 294-5 Fastolf, Sir John, 115 Fatimids, 72, 84 Fei River, battle (383), 54, 55 Feisal ibn Hussein, Arab revolt (1916) 283 Ferdinand II, Holy Roman Emperor,

Fu Rong, Chinese general, 55 Fuller, Colonel John, 279 150, 151, 153 Ferdinand (the Catholic), king of Gage, General Thomas, 185, 192 Galdan, Mongol leader, 179 Aragon and Spain, 89 Ferdinand, Count of Flanders, 109 Gallieni, General Joseph, 272 Ferdinand Prince of Brunswick 187 Gallipoli campaign (1915-16), 282, Ferguson, Major Patrick, 194 Gambetta, Léon, 259 Fetterman Fight, The (1866), 217

Finland, war with Soviet Union (1940 & 1941), 298, 307 fire weapons: flame-throwers, 269; Greek fire, 63, 64, 74, 80; naphtha, 94 firearms see cannon; gunpowder weapons: handguns: machine guns:

First Bull Run, battle (1861), 226 Firuz, Shah of Persia, 57 flags see standards and flags Flamininus Titus Ouinctius, 31 Flanders, French-Flemish war (14thcentury), 118

Flavius Silva, Roman governor of Judaea, 48 Fletcher, Admiral Frank, 326 Fleurus, battle (1794), 199 FLN, Algierian independence

movement, 338 FNLA, Angolan independence movement, 339 Foch, Marshal Ferdinand, 286 Foix Gaston de 144 144 Fontenov battle (1745), 161

War (1854-56), 260: French-

Huguenot wars, 146, 147, 149;

299: Italian wars (16th-century).

colonial wars (1954 & 1957), 338:

144-5; Mexican expedition

(1862-67), 223; Napoleon's

defence of (1814), 213; post-

Resistance (1940-45), 299;

(1792-1815), 143, 182, 183,

(1756-63), 184, 185, 186, 187;

153; Vichy government, 299;

Sinai campaign (1956), 344; taxes

for war, 143; Thirty Years War, 152

Viking raids, 68; war with Austria

Alliance (1688-97), 158-9; wars

with China, 249, 251; wars in

North America, 170; warships,

Franco-Prussian War (1870-71),

assassination (1914), 268

Frederick II, Holy Roman emperor,

255, 257, 258-9

86, 106

(1859), 256, 257: War of the Grand

196-215: Seven Years War

George II, king of Great Britain, 161 Forbes, John, at First Breitenfeld Gerhard von Malburg, 120 fortifications, 62, 158, see also castles Germaine, Lord George, 193 German airforce (Luftwaffe), 297, France: in Algeria, 240, 338; American War of Independence 191, 193, 195: Armies of National

300-1,308 erman army: Afrika Korps, 302-3; Defence (1871), 259; Battle of the panzer divisions, 298, 299, 302-3, Frontiers (1914), 270: Crimean 306 307 308 316 317-Stormtroopers 279: World War I Flemish war (14th-century), 118; 268-89: World War II. 298-319 German navy: Jutland (1916), 277; imperialist wars, 235, 246; invaded mutiny (1918), 287 and occupied by Germany (1940),

Frederick II (the Great), king of

Prussia, 161, 184, 184, 186

French army:

Fredericksburg, battle (1862), 227

French, Field Marshal Sir John, 272

revolutionary/Napoleonic period

World War I. 270, 272, 273, 276,

196, 197, 198, 201, 214, 215;

French Foreign Legion, 240, 257

Friedland, battle (1807), 205

Fu Jian, Tibetan war leader, 55

Frigidus, battle (394), 51

Gandhi, Mohandas, 244

Garcia of Toledo, 133

gas masks, 269, 273

Gaston de Béarn, 88

Gatling, Richard, 238

46 see also Celts

Gavius Pontius, 36

Gatling gun, 238, 238-9

Gaul, 44-5, see also France

Gazala, battle (1942), 302

Gempei wars (Japan), 101-2

Genghis Khan, 73, 90, 91, 91, 98

Genoese mercenaries, 112, 120

Gelimer, Vandal king, 64

Geneva Convention, 183

Gate Pa, battle (1864), 247

gas, 269, 273

Gao Xianzhi, Korean general, 76

Garibaldi, Giuseppe, 256, 257, 257

Gates, General Horatio, 193, 194

Gaugamela, battle (331 BCE), 27

Gaulle, General Charles de, 270, 299

Gauls, 34, 37; in Hannibal's army, 39

rebellion against Rome (53 BCE).

277, 278, 281, 282

Frere Sir Bartle 243

Froissart, 112

ermanic tribes, wars with Rome, 43 48 Germany: defeat in the East, 318-19 defeat in the West, 316-17: expansion eastwards (medieva period), 120; hyperinflation (1923), 290; Nazi movement, 287 290 291 294 295-6 rise of German empire, 258-9; Spanish Civil War, 291, 294, 295; World War 1, 268-89; World War II,

296-319, see also Prussia Settysburg, battle (1863), 228-9 Ghana, Ashanti wars (1870s), 240 Ghazi Mollah 261 Ghaznavids, 73, 76 Ghent, Treaty of (1814), 217 Ghibellines, 108

Gibbon, Edward, 64 Gibraltar, 160 Gibson, Wing Commander Guy, 310 Glyndwr, Owain, rebellion

François I, king of France, 145 Franks, 42, 51, 62; empire of, 66–7 Franz-Ferdinand, Archduke, Go Daigo, Japanese emperor, 103 Godfrey of Bouillon, 80 Golden Horde, 94, 121 Franz Josef, Emperor of Austria, 257, Goncourt, Edmond de, 259 Frederick I (Barbarossa), Holy Gorbachev, Mikhail, 350 Gordon, General Charles George, Roman emperor, 86, 108, 108

241, 241, 250, 250

127: World War 1, 268, 270; World Ghurids, 76 War II, 299, see also French army; Giap, General Vo Nguyen, 338, 338, Gaul: Napoleonic wars; Normand Francis II, king of Naples, 256, 257 Franco, General Francisco, 294, 295 (1400-1409), 111 Gneisenau, General August von. 214

Gough, General Sir Hubert, 278 Gough General Sir Hugh 236 Gozelin, bishop, defence of Paris, 69 Graf Spee (German), 304 Grammont Marshall de 161 Granada, fall of (1482-92), 89 Grand Alliance, War of (1688-97), 159\_0 Granicus, battle (334 BCE), 26

Grant, General Ulysses S, 226, 231 Grasse, Admiral de, 195 Gratian, western Roman emperor, 51 Great Britain see Britain Greece independence war (1825–27), 262, 263 Greeks, ancient. 10, 11, 20, 21;

armour, 15, 20, 20, 23, 27; cavalry (Macedonian), 21, 26, 27; city state wars, 20, 24-5; mercenary soldiers, 16, 26, 29; Peloponnesian War (431-404 BCE) 24-5: Persian wars 22-3, 26-9; siege of Trov. 15; Theban wars, 25; wars with Rome, 31; warships, 11, 20, 23, 25, see also Hellenic world

Greene, General Nathanael, 195 grenades: grenade launchers RPG. 346-7: Ketchum grenade, 231 Grengam, battle (1720), 163 Gribeauval, General Jean Baptiste de,

Grouchy, Marshal Emmanuel de, 214 Guadalajara, battle (1937), 294 Guadalcanal, battle (1942-43), 326 Guai Ling, battle (341 BCE), 54 Guandi, Confucian god of war, 55 Guderian, General Heinz, 298, 299 Guelfe 108

querilla warfare: Afghanistan 350 Algeria, 240: anti-imperialist, 234. 240; Boer wars, 234, 245; Bolivia. 348; Caucasus (19th-century), 261; Cuba, 348; Franco-Prussian War (1870-71), 259: Garibaldi and, 257: Maori wars 247: Mexico 223; since World War II, 331, 348-9; Spain (Peninsular War), 208; Vietnam War, 340, 341

Guernica, aerial bombardment, 295 Guevara, Ernesto "Che", 348 Guihert Comte de 196 Guise Duc de 146 Guistavus II Adolphus, king of

Sweden, 150 Gulf War (1990-91), 351 Gundestrup Cauldron, 32

unpowder weapons, 62, 89, 126-7; Africa (16th-century), 140-1: China, 62, 96, 98, 99; French wars in Italy, 144; Hindu powder flask, 138; India, 126, 138; Japan, 126; Ottoman empire, 126, 132, see also cannon; explosives; weaponry Guptas 53, 57

Gurkha troops, 282 Gustavus II Adolphus, king of Sweden, 143, 143, 150, 151, 151 Guthrum, Danish king, 69 Guy de Lusignan, king of Jerusalem, 84 86

Gvulai, Count Franz von, 256, 257  ${
m H}_{
m adadezer,\,Syrian\,\,king,\,17}$ Hadrian's Wall, 42

Hague Peace Conference (1899 & 1907) 183 255 Haig, Field Marshal Sir Douglas, 273, 274, 275, 278, 279, 281 halberds, 119 Haldighati, battle (1576), 137 Halidon Hill, battle (1333), 118 Halsey, Admiral William, 328 Hamburg, raid by RAF/USAAF raid (1943), 310 Hamilcar Barca, 39 Hamilton, Duke of, 155 Hamilton General Sir Ian 282

Hammurahi 13 13 Han dynasty/empire (China), 52, 53, 55 Han Gaozu, Chinese (Han) emperor, 55 handguns, 62, 116, 119; arquebus, 127, 173, 174, 188; blunderbuss, 211: carbines (Napoleonic era). Hulegu, Khan of Persia, 319 210 210-11 cartridge case (Russian), 212: cavalry carbine

223, 223; development of modern firearms, 188-9: flintlock, 127: Japanese (16th century) 173matchlock, 127, 146; muskets, 142. 146, 146, 173, 183, 186, 188-9; muskets (Napoleonic era), 210, 210-11; Nambu 8-mm pistol (Japan), 323; pistols (America. 18th-century), 193; pistols (flintlock and wheel-lock), 127, 188-9, 196; pistols (Napoleonic era), 210, 210-11; small arms (European), 142; small arms (Ottoman), 130, 130, see also machine guns: rifles Hangzhou, falls to Mongols (1276), 98

Hannibal, 38, 39-41 Hanover, 163 Hansando, battle (1592), 176 Harald III (Hardrada), king of Norway 71 Harbivah, battle (1244), 87 Harold II (Godwinson), king of

England, 71 Harran, battle (1104), 81 Harris Air Marshall Sir Arthur, 310. Harrison, Major General William, 217 Harwood Commodore Henry 304 Hasdrubal, 41 Hastings, battle (1066), 71 Hattin, battle (1187), 83, 84, 84-5

Hauteville, Robert de, 71 Hawke, Admiral Sir Edward, 187 Hellenic world: warfare after Alexander, 30-1, see also Greeks Henry, Duc de Rohan, 149 Henry, Duke of Saxony, 69 Henry III, Holy Roman Emperor, 7

Henry III, king of England, 111 Henry III, king of France, 147 Henry IV, king of England, 111 Henry of Navarre (later Henry IV of France), 147, 147, 149 Henry V, king of England, 111, 114 Henry VI, king of England, 115 Henry VII (Tudor), king of England,

Hephthalites see White Huns Heraclea, battle (280 BCE), 37 Heraclius, Byzantine emperor, 65, 74 Herod, king of Judaea, 48 Herodorus 22 Heyn, Piet, 149 hijackings: Palestinian, 349, see also

Hindenburg, General Paul von, 271, Hindenburg Line, 277, 287

Hipper, Admiral Franz von, 277 Hippocrates, 24 oshima (1945), 267, 321, 329 Hitler, Adolf, 266, 271, 291, 297, 297, 307, 308, 309, 316: assassination plot, 302, 316: "no retreat" order, 318; suicide, 319 Hittites, 12, 14, 15 Ho Chi Minh, 338

Holy League: Lepanto (1671), 134; to fight French (16th-century), 144

Holy Roman Empire - wars with papacy, 108-9 Homer Iliad, 15 Hong Kong, 249, 323 Honorius, western Roman emperor Hood, Admiral Alexander, Viscount Bridport, 198 Hood, General John B, 231

Hood HMS 304 Hooker, General Joseph, 227 Hornet USS 325 Hospitallers, 79, 86, 87, 122 Hoth, General Hermann, 307, 308 Houston, Sam, 222 Howard of Effingham, Lord, 148 Howard, General O.O., 219 Howe General William, 192, 193 Hsiung-Nu see Xiongnu Huayna Capac, Inca emperor, 167 Hue (1968), 341 Huerta, Victoriano, 223 Huguenot wars, 146, 147, 149 Hui Zong, emperor of China, 98

Humayun, Mogul emperor, 136

(17th-century), 152; Colt revolver, Hundred Years War (1337-1453),

106 112-15 Hung Hsiu-chuan, Taiping uprising,

Hungary, 63, 122; falls to Soviet army (1945), 318; Mohacs (1526). 132-3; support for Nazi Germany, Huns 11 51 64

Hunyadi, John (János), 122, 122 Husayn, son of Ali, 75 Hussein ibn Ali, Arab revolt (1916), Hussein, Saddam, 350, 353

Hussite wars (1419-1434), 119 Hutier, General Oskar von. 279 Hydaspes, battle (326 BCE), 27

bn abi-Waqqas, Saad, 74, 75 Ibn Jehhaf, ruler of Valencia, 88 Ibn Zabul 129 Ibrahim Lodi, Sultan, 136 Ibrahim Pasha, 262, 263 Iceni, revolt against Rome (60 CE), 42.49

Ichinotani, battle (1184), 102 ideology, and global war, 266, 267 imperial conflicts, 234-47; postcolonial wars, 338-9 Incas 164, 165, 167, see also Peru Inchon landings (1950), 334 India: Alexander's campaign (326 BCE), 27; British presence in, 236-7: Buddhist pacifism, 56: early warfare in, 11, 52, 53, 56-7; gunpowder technology, 126; Indo-Pakistan War (1971), 339: invaded by Timur, 94; legendary wars (Mahabharata), 56: Muslim invasions, 73, 76; Raiput resistance to Islam, 73: Seven Years War (1756-63), 187; weapons and armour (Mogul period), 136, 138-9, see also Mogul empire Indian Mutiny/Rebellion (1857), 237 Indo-Pakistan War (1971), 339 Indus valley warfare in 11

infantry: ancient world, 11, 13, 19; bayonets, 127, 150, 188, 214; Celtic, 32; hoplites, 20, 21, 24; hypaspists, 26, 27; Landsknechte 144 145: medieval Europe, 62 107 118-19: neltasts 21: phalanx formation, 21, 34, 36, 144; schiltron formation, 118: Swis pikemen, 144, 145, 146; tercios, 126-7, 142, 144, 144, 151, 151, 153: uniformed professional, 143 Inkerman, battle (1854), 260

Innocent III, Pope, 86, 89, 110 intelligence: ENIGMA machine, 305; "Lucy" spy ring, 307; Midway success (1942), 325; Pearl Harbor failure (1941), 322; telescope, 191; Ultra code breakers, 305 Ipsus, battle (301 BCE), 30

Iran: war with Iraq (1980-88), 350 Iraq: anti-British unrest, 290; attack on Israel (1948), 344; Gulf War (1990-91) 342 351 invasion of (2003), 342, 353; war with Iran (1980-88), 350

Ireland, Viking settlement, 70 roquois wars (1640-98), 170 Isabella (the Catholic). Queen of Castile and Spain, 89 Isandhlwana, battle (1879), 243

Isfahan, sack of (1387), 94 Islam: Arab expansion, 60, 63, 74-5; battle of Karbala (680), 75; empires, 128-9; impact of, 76-7; Sunnis and Shi'ites, 72, 75; warriors of, 72-3, see also Ottoman Turks

Ismail I, Safavid emperor, 129 Israel: Entebbe raid (1976), 349; wars (1948-85), 344-5; wars (ancient), Issus barrle (333 BCF) 28-9

Italy: Adowa (1896), 240; colonial wars (20th-century), 290; Fascist movement, 290, 291, 294; French revolutionary/Napoleonic wars, 199, 200: French wars in (16thcentury), 144-5: Independence wars (1848-61), 256-7; Normans, 71; Spanish Civil War, 291, 294; wars of the Lombard League, 108; World War I, 268, 279; World War

II. 297, 299, 302, 303, 304, 306, 308, see also Ro-Daye Iwo Iima, battle (1945), 328

ackson General Andrew 217, 217 Jackson, General Thomas "Stonewall", 226, 226, 227 James II, king of England, 158 ameson Raid (1895), 244 Jan Sobieski, king of Poland, 133 missaries 123 128 129 lankov battle (1645), 153 lao Modo battle (1696), 179 Japan: 19th-century conflicts, 248, 252-3; bombing of (1944-45), 267, 321, 329; feudal wars, 174-5 Go-Daigo's rebellion (1336), 103: gunpowder technology, 126; honourable suicide sennuku 101. industrialization, 248, 252; invasion of China (1937-38), 293; invasions of Korea and China, 174, 176-7; Meiji Restoration 248 252militarism (20th-century) 290 291: Mongol invasions (1274 & 1281), 103; Russo-Japanese War (1904-05), 252, 253; Samurai, 97, 101-3 101-5 104 248 252 321 Satsuma revolt, 252; Sengoku period (1468-1615) 172-7: Shoomate 97 101 248-Sino-Japanese War (1894-95). 251, 252; war aims (1941), 320; warfare (medieval period), 101-3 western influences, 248; World War 11 320-9 ingen, battle (1568), 146

ayayarman VII. Khmer king, 60, 100 lean II, king of France, 113, 113 lellico, Admiral Sir John, 277 emappes, battle (1792), 198 lena battle (1806) 205 erusalem: Assyrian siege (c.701 BCE), 17: besieged by Titus (70 CF), 48:

capture by Saladin (1187), 86; Crusader siege and capture (1099 79, 80, 83; Dome of the Rock, 73 falls to Babylon (586 BCF), 18: Muslim capture of (638), 74, 82: regained by Crusaders, 86; World

ervis, Admiral Sir John, 199 lews: Nazi movement and, 291, 297; rebellion against Rome, 48 lhelum river see Hydaspes Jiang Jieshi (Chiang Kai-Shek), 293, 332, 333

Jin dynasty (China), 96, 98 loan of Arc, 115, 115 Joffre, Marshall Joseph, 272, 273, 276, 281, 281

logaila of Lithuania, 121 ohn, king of Bohemia, 112 John, king of England, 109 John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, French raid (1373), 114, 114 John George, Elector of Saxony, 151, 153

ohnson, Lyndon B, President of the US. 341 ohnston, General Albert S, 226 Johnston, General Joseph E, 231 lones John Paul 191 194 194 lordan: Dawson's Field hijackines (1970), 349; Six-Day War with

Israel (1967), 344 oscelin II, king of Edessa, 81 oseph Bonaparte, king of Spain, 208, 209

osiah, king of Judah, 19 lourdan, Marshal Jean-Baptiste, Juárez, Benito, President of Mexico, 223

Judah wars 17, 18, 19 ulian, Roman emperor, 50 ulius II, Pope, 144 ung Wu, emperor of China, 99 mot Marshal 208 urchen federation, 96, 97, 98 lustinian, Byzantine emperor, conquests, 64 utland, battle (1916), 277

Kabul. British retreat from (1842), 236 Kadesh, battle (1300-1275 BCF), 14 Kaidu, Mongol leader, 92

Kaiserschlacht Offensive (1918), 286 Kalinga Wars (c.265 BCE), 53, 56 Kalka river, battle (1223), 92 Kandahar, siege of (1880), 237 Kangxi, Qing emperor, 179 Kara Mustafa, 133 Kawasaki, battle (1057), 101 Kellermann General Christophe 198 Kellog-Briand Pact (1928) 290 Kennedy, John F, President of the Kerans, Lt-Commander J S, 333

Kerboga, Emir of Mosul, 80 Kerenski, Alexander, 285 Kerenski Offensive (1917), 285 Kesselring, Field Marshal Albert, 303 Khair ad-Din (Barbarossa), 133 Khalifa al-Taashi, 241 Khan Krum, Bulgar king, 65 Khartoum, siege of (1884-85), 241 Khe Sanh, siege (1968), 341 Khitan federation, 96, 97 Khiva Khanate, Russian conquest (1868), 261 Khmer, 100

Kaifeng, 98

Katanga, 338

US. 348

Karbala, battle (680), 75

Keegan, Sir John, 278

Kilii Arslan, sultan of Rum, 80 Kim Chaik General 334 Kim Il-Sung, President of North Korea, 334 King George V, HMS, 304 King Philip's War (1675-76), 171 King's Mountain, battle (1780), 194 Kinkaid, Admiral Thomas, 328

Kitbuga, Mongol general, 93 Kitchener, Field Marshal Lord Horation Herbert, 241, 245, 268 Kornilov, General Lavr. 285 Kleidion, battle (1014), 65 Kluck, General Alexander von. 270, 272 knights: Frankish, 62, 67: manner of fighting, 62, 106, 109, 113; military orders, 79, 86, 87, 129

Kofi Karikari, Ashanti king, 240 Kolchak, Admiral Alexander, 292 Komorowski, General Tadeusz Bor. 318 Koney Marshal Ivan, 319 Konya, battle (1832), 263 Korea: invasions by Japan (16th century), 172, 176-7; Mongol threats, 97; occupied by Japan (1895), 251; warships, 12

Korean War (1950-53), 267, 330, Kosovo: KLA versus Serbia (1998-99), 352; Ottoman-Serbian war (1389), 122, 131

Koxinga (Zheng Chenggong), takes Taiwan (1661-62), 178, 178 Kruger, Paul, President of Transvaal, Krupp armament factories, 255, 259

Kufah, 75 Kulikovo battle (1380) 121 Kurikara, battle (1183), 102 Kurita, Admiral, 328 Kursk offensive (1943), 307 Kushan tribes, in India, 57 Kut, siege (1915-16), 283 Kutna Hora battle (1421) 119 Kutuzov, General Mikhail I, 201, 202, 212, 262, 262

Kuwait, Iraq invades (1990), 351

Kublai Khan, 91, 96-8, 98, 100, 103

a Coruña battle (1809) 208 La Rochelle, siege (1627-1628), 149 Lachish, siege of (701 BCE), 17 Laden, Osama Bin, 349, 349, 353 Ladislas II Jagiello, king of Poland, 121 Ladislas III, king of Poland and ruler of Hungary, 122

Lake Trasimene, battle (217 BCE), 39

lances 11 63 67 109 109

Langsdorff, Captain Hans, 304

Ladysmith, siege (1899), 244 Laevinus, Publius Valerius, 37 Macedonian Greeks, 20, 21; later Lafayette, 195 wars with Greeks and Romans, Lagash, defeat of Umma (c.2525 31, see also Alexander the Great nachine guns, 266; Bren gun, 316; BCF) 13 Lake Erie, battle (1813), 217 Gatling gun, 238, 238-9; M72 Lake Peipus, battle (1242), 120 light machine gun, 352: Maxim gun, 234, 238; Mitrailleuse, 258; Lake Regillus, battle (between 509 and 493 BCE), 36 modern assault weapons, 346-7;

Lannes Marshal 205 205 Latins, versus Rome, 36 Laulewasikau (the Prophet), 217 Lawrence, Sir Henry, 237 Lawrence, T. E. "of Arabia", 283, 283 Lazar Tsar of Serbs 122 Le Cateau battle (1914), 270 Le Loi. Vietnamese rebel leader, 10 League of Nations, 290, 291 Lebanon, 344, 345 Lechfeld, battle (955), 67 Lee, General Robert E, 224, 224, 227 228-9 231 Legnano, battle (1176), 108 Leignitz, battle (1241), 92 Leipzig, battle (1813), 213 LeMay, General Curtis, 329 Lenin, Vladimir 1, 285, 285 Leningrad, siege (1941-44), 307 Leo I. Pope, 51 Leo III, Byzantine emperor, 74 Leo III, Pope, 67 Leo IX, Pope, 71 Leonidas, Spartan king, 23, 23 Leopold I Duke of Austria (Habsburg) (1290-1326), 118 Leopold V. Duke of Austria (Babenberg) (1157-1194), 79 Leopold William, Archduke of Austria (1614-1662), 152 Lepanto battle (1571) 134 134-5

Leslie, General David, 155 Leuctra, battle (371 BCE), 25 Leuthen, battle (1757), 186 Leven, Earl of, 154 Lexington and Concord, battle (1775), 190, 192 Lexington USS 326 Levte Gulf, battle (1944), 328 Li Zicheng, Chinese rebellion, 178 Libyans, in Hannibal's army, 39 Ligny, battle (1815), 214 Lin Piao General 332 333 Lin Zexu opium official 249 250 Lincoln, Abraham, President of the US 225 225 231

Luan Zhi, Chinese general, 54

Lucknow, siege of (1857), 237

Lützen, battle (1632), 151

uxembourg-Montmorene

Marshall, duc de, 159, 159

Lysander Spartan admiral 25

323, 328, 334, 335

Macedonia (Yugoslav)

independence, 352

286, 287, 287

Ludendorff General Frich von 271

Lyautey, Marshal Louis-Hubert, 235

MacArthur, General Douglas, 323,

Schwarzlose 8-mm, 284; Vickers

(WWI), 268, see also handguns

Mack von Lieberich General

Macdonald, Marshal Jacques, 205

Manteuffel, General Erich von, 317 Mantinea, battle (362 BCE), 25 Lincoln, General Benjamin, 194 Manzikert, battle (1071), 77, 82 Lindisfarne (793), 68 Mao Zedong, 54, 293, 331, 332, 333 Lisbon, siege of (1147), 89 Maori people, 10 Maori Wars (1845–47, 1860–72), 247 Lithuania medieval wars 120 121 Little Bighorn, battle (1876), 219 Maratha confederacy, 137, 137, 236 Liu Bei, warlord, 55 Marathon, battle (490 BCE), 22 Liu Hung-tsao, Chinese general, 100 Marcellus, Marcus Claudius, 41 Livonian Brethren of the Sword, Marco Polo, 100 campaigns, 120 Mardonius, 23 Marengo, battle (1800), 196, 201 Livy 36 39 Lloyd George, David, 278, 281 Maria Theresa, Empress of Austria, 186 Marignano, battle (1515), 126, 145 Lombard League, wars (12th-Marius, Gaius, 35, 43 century), 108 ombards, 42, 62 Mark Antony see Antony Longinus, Gaius Cassius, 47

Marlborough, John Churchill 1st Duke of, 159-60, 160 Loos/Artois battle (1915), 273 Lopéz, Francisco, 221 Marmont, Marshal August, 209 Louis IX, king of France, 78, 87, 87 Marmora, Alfonso La, 257 Louis, king of Hungary, 132 Marne, 1st & 2nd Marne (1914 & Louis-Napoleon, French President, 256 1918), 272, 286 Louis, Prince of Nassau, 146 Maroto, General Rafael, 220 Louis VII, king of France, 81 Mars-la-Tour battle (1870), 258 Marston Moor, battle (1644), 154 Louis XIII, king of France, 149 Louis XIV, king of France, 158, 160 Lu Wenhuan, Sung general, 98

Martí, José, Cuban rebel leader, 247 Masada, siege of (73-74 CE), 48 Masaharu Homma, General, 323 Maslama, 74 Massena Marshal 205 Massu, General Jacques, 338 Masud, Ghaznavid general, 76

Maurice of Nassau, 142, 149 Mauryans, 53, 56 Mauser, Peter and Wilhelm, 245 Mayentius Roman emperor 50 Maximilian, emperor of Mexico, 223 Mazepa, Cossack hetman, 163 Mazzini, Giuseppe, 256 McClellan, General George, 227

US. 247 McNaghten, Sir William, 236 Meade, General George, 228, 229 medals and awards: ancient Egyptian,

McDowell, General Irvin, 226

McKinley William President of the

14; Crimea medal, 261; Egypt medal (British), 240: Gallipol (Turkish), 282; George Cross, 302; Order of the Red Star (Soviet Union), 307: Order of the Rising Sun, 323; Peninsular War, 209; Polish Cross of Valour, 318: Purple

Heart, 341; Queen's South Africa medal. 244: Spanish Merit medal. 295; Star of India. 237:Victoria Cross, 241, 243; Waterloo medal, 196 Medes, 16, 18, 19 medieval warfare, 60-91 Medina Sidonia, Duke of 148 Mediterranean region, 10-11 Megasthenes 56

120: Greeks, 16, 26, 29: Hessians.

191: Hundred Years War 106, 112

Madison, James, President of the US, Madrid, defence of (1936), 294 Megiddo, battles, 14, 19, 283 Mael Morda, king of Leinster, 70 Mehmed IV, Ottoman Sultan, 133 Mafeking, siege and relief, 245 Mehmet II. Ottoman Sultan, 123 Magdeburg, battle (1631), 150 Meir Golda Prime Minister of Magenta, battle (1859), 256 Israel 345 Melander, Marshall, 153 Magnesia, battle (190/189 BCF), 31, Melas, Michael, Baron, 201 Melo, Don Francisco de, 153

Magruder, General John, 227 Magyars, 62, 63, 67 Menelik II, emperor of Ethiopia, 240 Maha Bandula Burmese mercenary troops: Congo Crisis (1960-65), 338; Genoese, 112. commander 246 Mahabharata, 56, 56 Mahdi see Muhammad Ahmad (the Mahdi) Mahdist revolt 241

Karl 201 201

MAD - mutually assured

Madero Francisco 223

destruction, 330

Mackensen, General August von, 284

Macmahon, General Patrice de, 256.

Swiss, 62, 89, 144, 145, 146 Mercer, Captain Alexander, 210, 215 Mahmud of Ghazni, 76, 76 Merovingian dynasty (Franks), 62 Maldon battle (991) 70 Merrill General Frank 327 Mali Empire, 141 Merrill's Marauders 327 Malplaquet, battle (1709), 160 Mesopotamia, 10-13 Malta, Ottoman siege (1565), 133 Messines, battle (1917), 278 Mamai, Mongol general, 121 Metaurus, battle (207 BCE), 41 Mamelukes 73 78 87 90 93 95 Metz battle (1870) 258 129 200 263 Mexico: French intervention

Manchu, conquest of China (1640s), (1862-67), 223; revolution (1911-20), 216, 223; Texas and the Manchuria, 251, 332 Alamo (1836), 222; war with US, Manco Capac, Inca emperor, 167 216, 223, see also Aztecs Manfred, king of Sicily, 109 Miaia, General José, 294

Mangin, General Charles, 286 Michael Offensive (1918) 286 Middle Ages, warfare in, 60-91 mangonels see artillery Manhattan Project, 321 Midway, battle (1942), 325 Mannerheim, Marshal Carl, 298 Mihirakula, White Hun king, 57 Mansfeld, Ernst von, 150 military academies, 127, 163 Manstein, General Erich von 299, 307 Milosevic, Slobodan, 352 Mansurah battle (1250) 87 Milriades 22

Milyian Bridge, battle (312), 50 Minamoto clan, samurai, 97, 101-2.

Minatogawa, battle (1336), 103 Minden, battle (1759), 187 minefields 302-3 mines, naval warfare, 266 Ming dynasty (China), 97, 99, 100,

172, 178, 178 Mir Jafar, Nawab of Bengal, 187, 187 missiles (rocketry), 267; AH-64 attack helicopter systems, 342-3; Al-Nasirah rocket launcher (RPG), 346-7; cruise missiles, 351 Exocet, 351: Grad (Russian), 352: ICBMs, 331; Polaris, 336; Rapier missile launcher, 267; SAMs, 340, 345; Shrike, 340; Stinger (SAM),

350;V1, 297;V2, 297, 331 Missolonghi, siege (1825-26), 262 Missouri, USS, 321 Mitscher, Admiral Marc, 327 Mobutu Sese Seko, General, 338 Model General Walther 307

Modesto, General Juan, 295 Modu, Xiongnu leader, 55 Mogul empire, 128, 136-9 Mohacs, battle (1526), 132 Möhne and Eder dams, RAF raid

(1943) 310 Mola, General Emilio, 294, 295 Moltke, General Helmut von (1800-91), 258, 259 Moltke, General Helmut von

(1848-1916), 272 Möngke, Great Khan, 98 Mongolia, war with China (1696), 179 Mongols, 78, 90-3, 96-9, 101, 103 Monongahela river, battle (1755), 185 Mons, battle (1914), 270 Mons Graupius, battle (84 CE), 49 Montcalm, Marquis de, 185

Monte Cassino, battle (1944), 303 Montecuccoli, General, 153 Montgomery, General Bernard Law, 302-3, 303, 314, 316, 317 Moore, General Sir John, 208 Morgan, Brigadier Daniel, 193, 195

Morgarten, battle (1315), 118 Morillo, General Pablo, 221 Morocco, 140, 141, 290 mortars and howitzers, 156, 161,

191, 191: Boer war, 244: Korean

War. 334, 335; Minenwerfer 76-mm bomb-thrower), 273; mortar shell, 195: World war 1, 270, 280: World War II 326 see also artillery: cannot Mortimer Sir Edmund, 111 Moscow: German siege (1941-42), 306; Napoleon's retreat from (1812), 212Mount Gilboa, battle (c.1100 BCE), 15 MPLA, Angolan independence movement 339 Mu'awiyah, Umayyad caliph, 75 Muhammad Ahmad (the Mahdi), 241 Muhammad al-Mutawakkil, 140 Muhammad Ali, ruler of Egypt, 263 Muhammad Bakhriyar 76 Muhammad of Ghur 76 Muhammad, prophet of Islam, 72 Mukden, battle (1905), 253 Mulberry floating harbours (1944), 316 munitions factories, 255, 291 Murad I, Ottoman Sultan, 122, 131 Murad II, Ottoman Sultan, 122 Murat, Marshal Joachim, 200, 205 Muret, battle (1213), 110 Murten, battle (1476), 119 Musa ibn Nusair, 75 Musashi (Japan), 328 Mussolini, Benito, 291, 291, 299 Mustafa II, Ottoma Sultan, 133 Mustafa Pasha, siege of Malta (1565). Mustapha Kemel Pasha (Ataturk) 282, 283, 283 Mustapha Pasha, Aboukir Bay (1799), 200 al-Mustasim, Abbasid caliph, 93 Muwatalli, Hittite king, 14 Myanmar see Burma Mycenae, 15 Mylae, battle (260 BCE), 38

Myongyang, battle (1597), 177 Nabonidus, king of Babylon, 19 Nabopolassar, king of Babylon, 18, 19 Nadir Shah, invasion of India (1738-39), 137, 137 Nagasaki (1945), 267, 321, 329 Nagashino, battle (1575), 174 Nagumo Chuichi, Admiral, 322 Nahayand battle (641), 74 Najera battle (1367), 114 Namur siege of (1695), 158 Napoleon Bonaparte, 196-215, 196, 198, 199, 201, 210 Napoleon III, king of France, 223, 246, 256, 257, 258, 259 Narathihapte, king of Burma, 100 Narva, battle (1700), 162, 163 Naseby, battle (1645), 154 Nasser, Gamal Abdel, 344 nationalism, 234, 254, 283 Native Americans, 165; conflicts with settlers 170-1: Pontiac's rebellion (1763), 185: United States "Indian" wars, 216, 218-19. see also Aztecs: Incas: individual peoples' names ilus, USS, 336-7 naval warfare: Albazin (1685-86) 179: American Civil War, 224, 225; American War of Independence, 191, 194; Ancient Egypt, 15; Dutch 143: Arabs versus Byzantium 74: blockade (World

War I), 269, 276, 287;

Cambodia/Vietnam (1170s), 100;

(WWII), 305; D-Day (1944), 314;

China, 96, 97, 98, 99; convoys

Dunkirk (1940), 299; England

Falklands (1982), 351; French

197 198 199 200 201 204-

fire 64 74: Greeks 23 31:

revolutionary/Napoleonic wars,

Gallipoli (1915-16), 282; Greek

gunpowder technology, 126, 127;

Japan (medieval), 102, 102, 173,

(1571) 134 134-5: medieval

period, 109, 112; mines, 266;

176-7; Jutland (1916), 277; Lepanto

Navarino (1827), 263: Netherlands

v. Spain, 146, 149; Pacific theatre

(WWII), 322, 324-9; Roman, 38,

versus Spain, 147, 148; Ezel and

Grengam (1719 & 1720), 163, 163;

47; Russo-Japanese War (1904-05), | Omdurman, battle (1898), 241 252, 253: Seven Years War (1756-63) 187: Sino-Japanese War (1894-95), 251; Spanish-American war (1898) 246, 247; steam powered ironclads 183: Tenochtitlan lake (1521), 166: Tonkin war (1883-85), 251: War o the Grand Alliance (1690), 158: World War II. 304-5 Navarino, battle (1827), 263 Javarro Pedro, 144 Navas de Tolosa, Las (1212), 89 Nazi movement, Germany, 287, 290, 201 204 205 Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, 18 19 Neerwinden (Landen), battle (1693), 143, 159 Nelson Horatio Viscount of the Nile 199 200 201 204 204 206 Nerchinsk, Treaty of (1689), 179 Netherlands: occupied by Germany (1940), 299; Republic recognized by Spain, 153; revolt against Spain 146, 147, 149; warships, 127, 143 Neva battle (1240), 120 New Granada 220 New Orleans, battle (1815), 217 New World Order 267 New Zealand, Maori Wars (1845-47 & 1860-72) 247 New Zealand Army (Anzacs), World War I 278 282 Nev. Marshal Michel, 197, 205, 214, 215 Ngo Quyen, Annamese general, 100 Nicaragua, Contras (1984-90), 350 Nicomedia, siege of (1333-37), 122 Nigeria, Biafra war (1967-70), 339 Spanish (1520), 166 ightingale, Florence, 254 Nile (Aboukir Bay), battle (1798), 200 Nogi Maresuke, General, 252, 252 Jomonhan incident (1939), 293, 319

Nez Percé War (1877), 219 Vgasaunggyan, battle (1277), 100 Nicaea, Crusader siege, 80 Nicephorus, Byzantine emperor, 65 Nicephorus Xiphias, 65 Nicholas II, Tsar of Russia, 285 Nicias, Athenian general, 24 Nicopolis crusade of (1396) 122 Night of Sorrows, Aztecs defeat Nimitz Admiral Chester 325 326 9/11 terrorist attacks, 331, 349 Vineveh. 18, 65 Nivelle, General Robert, 277, 281 Nivelle offensive (1917), 277 Nixon, Richard, President of the LIS 341 345 Nördlingen, battle (1634), 152 Normandy, D-Day and after (1944), 297, 302, 303, 314-16 Jormans see Northmer North Africa, World War II, 297, 302 North America: Europeans versus Native Americans, 170-1; French and Indian War (1758-63), 185, see also Canada: United States of America North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), 315, 352 lorthmen (Normans), 63, 68, 71, 75, see also Vikings Norway, German invasion and Allied response (1940), 298, 301

Novara, battle (1513), 144

bombs, 267, 321, 329;

development of, 331

uclear weapons, 267, 330; atom

nuclear deterrant, 336

Novgorod, 120

Numidians, 39, 41 Nur ed-Din, of Aleppo, 81 Octavian (later Augustus), 47, 47, see also Augustus Octavius Mamilius, 36 Oda Nobunaga, 167, 172, 174, 174 Odo, Count, defence of Paris, 69 Ogodei, Great Khan, 91, 92 O'Higgins, Bernardo, 220 Ojukwu, Colonel Odumegwu, 339 Okehazama, battle (1560), 174 Okinawa (1945), 329 Olaf Tryggvason, king of Norway, 70

Operation Bagration (1944), 318 Operation Barbarossa (1941), 306-Operation Cedar Falls (Vietnam, Operation Desert Storm (1991), 342 351 Operation Goodwood (1944), 316

Operation Linebacker (Vietnam, 1972) 341 Operation Market Garden (1944), 316 Operation Overlord (1944), 314-15 Operation Rolling Thunder (Vietnam) (1965-68) 340 Opium Wars (1839–42 & 1856–

60) 249 Orléans, siege of (1428-1429), 115 Ormonde, Marquis of, 155 Ortega, Daniel, Contra leader, 350 Osaka, siege of (1615), 172 Osama bin Laden, 349, 349, 353 Osceola, Seminole chief, 217 Oseberg ship, 69 Osman I, Ottoman Sultan, 73, 122,

122 Osman Pasha 263 Ostrogoths 51 64 Otto I (the Great), Holy Roman Emperor, 62, 66, 67 Otto IV, Holy Roman Emperor, 109 Ottoman empire, 126, 128-35; Arab Revolt (1916-18) 283 decline 262-3; war with Egypt (1832), 263: war with France (1798-99) 200; World War 1, 268, 269, 282-3. Ottoman Turks, 72, 79, 12-3 Otumba, battle (1520), 166 Oudinot, General Nicolas, 256

Paardeberg, battle (1900), 245 Pacific War (1941-45), 320-9 Pakenham, General Sir Edward, 209,

Pakistan, Indo-Pakistan War (1971), 339 Palermo, siege of (831), 75 Palestinian liberation movement 345, 349 Pan Chao, Han general, 52 Pang Juan, Wei general, 54

Panipat: Ahmad Shah defeats Marathas (1761), 137: battle (1399), 94; Mogul victories (1526 & 1556), 136 papacy, wars with Holy Roman

Empire, 108-9 appenheim, Marshall Gottfried. 150, 151

Paraguay, war with Argentina (1865-70) 221 Paris, 68, 69, 259, 286 Parker, Admiral Sir Hyde, 201 Parma Duke of 147 Parthians 43 53 57 Parvataka see Porus

Passchendaele, battle (1917), 274-5, 278 Patton, General George, 303, 316, 317 Paul I, Tsar of Russia, 262 Paula Santander, General de, 220 Paullus Macedonicus, Lucius

Aemilius 31 Paulus, General Friedrich, 308–9 Pavia, battle (1525), 145 Pearl Harbor (1941), 296, 321, 322 Pedro (the Cruel), king of Spain, 114 Pelavo Visigoth nobleman, 75 Pélissier, Marshal Aimable Iean-

Jacques, 261 Peloponnesian War (431-404 BCE),

Peninsular war (1808-13), 197, 208-9 Pépin, Carolingian king, 67 Pequot war, with British (1637), 170 Percival, General Arthur, 323 Pergamum, wars, 31 Pericles, Athenian statesman, 25 Perry Commodore Matthew 248 Perry, Commodore Oliver, 217, 217

Persepolis, 27 Perseus, Macedonian king, 31 Pershing, General John, 286, 286 Persia, 16, 19, 22-3, 26-9, 50, 74, 128 see also Iran

Peru: independence struggle (1824), 221, see also Incas Pescara, Marchese di, 145 Peshawar, battle (1009), 76 Pétain, General Henri-Philippe, 276, | Qin dynasty (China), 54

Peter I (the Great), Tsar of Russia, 127 162 163 163 Peter II, king of Aragon, 110 Petersburg, siege of (1864-65), 231 Perlyara Simon 292 Petrograd, seized by Bolsheviks (1918), 285

52.54

Quintus Fabius, 37

Outb ud-Din. 76

Rama Raja, 136

115 350

Rashid ad-Din, Universal History, 93

Ravenna battle (1512) 144

Raymond d'Aguilliers, 82

Red Cliffs, battle (208), 55

Sioux chief, 217

Red Cross, 255, 257

Raydaniya, battle (1517), 129

Raymond IV of Toulouse, 80

Raymond VI of Toulouse, 110

Raymond of Tripoli, Count, 84

Reagan, Ronald, President of the

Red Cloud (Makhpiya-Luta), Lakota

Red Horse Lakota Sions chief 219

Regensburg, USAAF raid (1943), 310

Protestant, 126, 142, 146-53;

Remarque, Erich, All Quiet on the

Rhineland, Allied invasion (1945), 317

Rhodes: ancient wars, 31; Ottoman

Richard I (the Lion-Heart), king of

Richard III, king of England, 111

Richelieu, Cardinal, Duc de, 149

Ridgeway, General Matthew, 335

Richthofen, General Wolfram von, 295

rifles: AK-47 assault rifle 346: Baker

Dreise needle-gun (German), 258

Enfield rifle, 237; Krag Jørgensen

tank). 298: Lebel 8-mm. 277: Lee-

245: Mauser 7.92-mm "Gewehr"

277; Minié bullet, 183, 225, 237,

257: modern assault rifles, 346-7

Mosin Nagant 7, 62-mm, 309;

Mosin-Nagant Model 1944

carbine 332 Mosin Nagant

(Russo-Japanese War), 253;

Napoleonic era, 210, 210-11;

War I 277 see also handouns

Riviere Captain Henri Laurent, 251

Roberts General Sir Frederick, 237, 245

Rocroi, battle (1643), 142, 143, 153

Roderick, king of Visigothic Spain, 7

Roger de Lauria, Aragonese admiral, 109

Romanus IV, Byzantine emperor, 77

Rome, 11; army, 11, 34-5, 42, 43;

civil wars, 35, 42, 47; decline and fall,

50-1; early battles, 36-7; Imperial

Rome, 42-51; legions, 34-5, 42, 43;

Punic Wars, 38-41: republican, 34-7

River Plate battle (1939), 304

Roatta, General Mario, 294

Robert I (the Bruce), king of

Robert Guiscard, 71

Scotland, 118, 118

Rochambeau, general, 195

Rojo, General Vicente, 295

Roland at Roncesvalles, 67

Ottoman rifle, 263; Prussian (19th

century), 255; rapid-fire, 266; World

Enfield 303 277: Mauser, 244, 245

rifle. 210. 214: Boer rifles. 245:

Chassenot (French), 258, 259;

rifle 245, 245; Lahti L39 (anti-

Christian states and Islam, 60, see

Red River War (1874-75), 217

Regulus, Marcus Atilius, 38

also Crusades: Islam

Western Front, 290

Reshid Pasha, 262, 263

siege (1522), 129

Rhodes, Sir Cecil, 244

England, 79, 79, 83, 86

Rickover, Hyman G, 336

Repulse, HMS, 323

Revere, Paul, 192

religious wars: Catholic and

Ragnar 68

Pharsalus, battle (48 BCE), 47 Philip, Duke of Anjou, 159, 160 Philip II, king of France, 79, 86, 109 Philip II, king of Macedon, 21, 26 Philip II, king of Spain, 140, 146, 146, 147, 148, 148 Philip V, king of Macedonia, 31 Philip VI, king of France, 112, 113 Philippi, battles of (42 BCE), 47 Philippine Sea, battle (1944), 327 Philippines, 246, 323 Philistines, 15 Phoenicians, 16

Picton, Sir Thomas, 209 Piedmont, war with Austria (1848 & 1859) 256 Pilsudski, Marshal Josef, 292, 292 Pius IX. Pope. 256 Pius V, Pope, 134 Pizarro, Francisco, 165 Plassey, battle (1757), 187, 236 Plataea battle (479 BCF), 23

Plevna siege (1877), 263 Pliska, battle (811), 65 Ploesti oilfield, USAAF raid (1944), 311 Plumer, General Sir Herbert, 278 poison gas see gas Poiriers: hattle (732), 66: hattle (1356), 113

Poland: exiled forces (WWII), 300. 303; invasion and defeat by Germany (1939), 296, 298; war with Bolsheviks (1920), 292; wars with Tentonic Knights, 121: Warsaw Uprising (1944), 318 Polk, James, President of the US, 223 Poltava, battle (1709), 126, 162, 163 Polybius, 4, 30, 33, 38

Magnus), 47 ontoon bridges 98 317 Port Arthur, siege (1904-05), 252 Portugal, 89, 216, 339 Powhatan Confederacy Virginia attack (1622), 170 Pratap Singh, of Mewar, 137, 137

Pompey (Gnaeus Pompeius

Preston battle (1648), 155 Pretorius, Andries, Afrikaner leader, 242 Prevosky, General, 261 Prince of Wales, HMS, 304, 323 Princeton, battle (1776), 192 Princip, Gavrilo, 268 Prinz Eugen (German), 304

prisoners of war: American Civil War, 225, 233; Czech in Siberia (1918), 292; German (WWII), 317; Japanese mistreatment, 321, 323: Pontiac's rebellion (1763). 185: Russian (WWI), 271; ship of bones model, 199 Prithviraj III, of Ajmer, 76 Prittwitz, General Max von, 271

Procopius, 57 propaganda, 199, 201, 268 Prussia 163: French wars (1792-1815), 198, 205, 213, 214-15; military modernization, 254 Seven Years War (1756-63), 184, 186; wars with Austria and France (1866 & 1870-71), 255, 257, 258, see also Germany Ptolemy I (Soter), 30

Ptolemy IV, 30 Pueblo revolt, against Spanish (1680), 171 Punic Wars, 38-41 Pusan (1950), 334 Putin Vladimir, 352 Pydna, battle (168 BCE), 31

Pyramids, battle (1798), 200 Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, 37 OR Dadisiyya, battle (637), 74 l-Qaeda network, 349, 353 Qarqar, battle (853 BCE), 17

Pylos (425 BCE), 24

Oin Shi Huangdi. Chinese emperor. siege of (1849), 256; siege of by Ostrogoths (537-538), 64; wars with Qing dynasty (China), 178-9, 248, Greece, 31; wars with Macedonians, 31: weaponry, 42, 43 Ouatre Bras, battle (1815), 214 Rommel General Frain, 299 302 Onebec battle (1759), 185 Roncesvalles, battle (778), 67 Ouiberon Bay, battle (1759), 187 Roosevelt, Franklin D. President of the US, 297, 321, 323 Roosevelt, Theodore, President of Qutuz, Saif ad-Din, Egyptian Sultan, 93 the US 246 247 247 Rorke's Drift battle (1879) 243 Radetsky General Josef, 256 Raelan General Lord 260 Rosas, Juan Manuel de. 221 Roses, Wars of the (1455-1485), 111 Rahman, Sheikh Mujibur, 339 Rossbach, battle (1759), 186 railways, mobilization and, 183, 256, Royal Air Force, World War II, 300, 310-11 Rajputs, 57, 73, 76, 137 Royal Navy: Jurland (1916) 277-Napoleonic period, 204, 206. Ramesses II. Pharaoh, 14, 14 Ramesses III, Pharaoh, 15 Ramillies, battle (1706), 160 Raphia, battle (217 BCE), 30

206-7: World War II, 304-5 Rozhdestvesnsk, Admiral Zinovi, 253 Rupert of the Rhine, Prince, 154 Rupprecht, Crown Prince, 270, 278 Russell William Howard war correspondent (The Times), 260 Russia: 13th-century wars, 120; Bolshevik civil war (1918-20), 290, 292; Bolshevik Revolution (1917), 285: Caucasus and Central Asian conflicts 261 352. Chechnya and (1994-96 & 1999-), 352; cost of maintaining military forces, 127; Crimean War (1854-56), 237, 260-1; Mongol invasion and wars, 91, 92, 121 Napoleonic war 197 202 205 212; Northern War (1700-21). 162-3; Peter the Great's navy, 163; war with China (1685-86), 179-

World War L 268 269 271 284-5 Russo-Japanese War (1904-05), 252, 253 Russo-Turkish wars (18th & 19th centuries), 262, 263, see also Crimean War

Rystad, Treaty of (1721), 163

Sabines, 34 Sadat, Anwar, President of Egypt, 345 Sadowa, battle (1866), 258 Safavid empire, wars with Ottomans, 128, 129 Saigo Takamori, (samurai), 252 St Arnaud, Marshal, 260

St Bartholomew's Day Massacre (1572), 142 James of Compostela, 88 St John, Knights of, 129, 133, 133 Saladin, 78, 78, 79, 84, 84, 86 Salamanca battle (1812) 209 Salamis battle (480 BCF) 23 Samnites, wars and alliances with

Rome, 34, 36-7 amsonov, General Alexander, 271 Samudragupta, Gupta emperor, 57 Samuel, Bulgar king, 65 San Martin José de 220 220 Sanders, General Liman von. 282, 283 Sandinista Liberation Front, 350 Santa Anna, General Antonio López de, 222, 222, 223

Saracens, 62 Saratoga battle (1777) 193 Sardis (546 BCE), 19 Sargon of Agade, 13 Sasanian Persia, 50, 57, 74 Saul, King of Israel, 15 Saule battle (1236) 120 Savannah, battle (1779), 194 Savimbi, Jonas, UNITA leader, 339 Saxons, 42, 67, 68 Scheer Admiral Reinhard 277 Schiller Friedrich 152 Schlieffen Plan 268 270 271 Schneider armaments, 255 Schuldner, General, 263 Schwarzenberg, General Karl

Philipp, 213 Schwarzkopf, Norman, 351, 351 Schweinfurt, raid (1943), 310 Scipio Aemilianus, 41 Scipio Africanus (Publius Cornelius [the younger]), 31, 41 Scipio, Lucius Cornelius, 31, 41 Scipio, Publius Cornelius, 39 Scotland: allied to English Royalists. 155: Jacobite rebellion (1745)

161; wars with England, 111, 118, | South Africa, Republic of: support see also Britain tott, General Winfield, 223 cythians, 16, 27, 53, 57 Sea Peoples, invasion of Egypt (c.1190 BCF), 15 sea warfare see naval warfare Sebastian, king of Portugal, 140 Sedan, battle (1870), 259 Seguntum, siege of (219 BCE), 39 Selencus 30 56 Selim I. Ottoman emperor 12 129 Seljuk Turks, 72, 73, 76-7, 80, 82 eminole War (Second) (1835-36), 217 Sennacherib, Assyrian king, 17, 18 Senones (Celtic tribe), 36 Sentinum, battle (295 BCF) 37 Serbia: Balkan wars (1913) 263 Kosovo Liberation Front and (1998-99), 352; war with Austria-Hungary and Germany (1914-18) 268 284 Serbs, wars with Ottomans (1389), 122 Sevastopol, siege (1854-55), 261 Seven Days Battles, American Civil War (1862), 227 even Weeks War (1866), 258 Seven Years War (1756-63), 161, 182, 184\_7 Seymour, Admiral Sir Michael, 249 Shah Abbas, 128 Shaka, Zulu chief, 235, 242 Shalmaneser III, Assyrian king, 17 Shamyl, Imam, 261, 261 Shang dynasty (China), 52 Shanghai falls to Communists 333 Shapur II, king of Persia, 50 Sharon, General Ariel, 345 Sheridan, General Philip, 231 Sherman, General William T, 231 Shibata Katsuie, 175 shields: Celtic. 33: Ethiopian. 140 India Hindu and Muslim 139-Mahdist, 241; Native North American, 171, 216; pre-Columbian American, 164; Roman, 43; Zulu, 242 Shiloh battle (1862) 226 Shiugatake, battle (1583), 175 Shivaji Maharaj, campaigns (1646-80), 137, 137 Sicilian Vespers, War of the (1284), 109 Sicily: Allied invasion (1943), 303; Arab invasion (827-831), 75: conquest of by Normans 63 75-Rome versus Carthage 38 iege warfare: Assyria and Babylon, 13, 15, 17-18; the Crusades, 78,

79, 80-3, 86-7; gunpowder

Roman, 41, 48; Spanish

Reconquista, 88-9

technology and, 126; medieval

China, 98; medieval period, 62;

siege weapons: medieval China, 98:

medieval Europe, 78, 107, 107;

Roman, 41, 48, see also artillery

Sigismund Holy Roman Empero

and king of Hungary, 119, 122

Sikh Wars (1845-46 & 1848-49), 236

Simon IV de Montfort (1168-1218).

Simon de Montfort (1208-1265), 111

Singapore, falls to Japan (1941-42), 323

Simpson, General Sir James, 261

Sitting Bull, Sioux chief, 21, 219

Skandagupta, Gupta emperor, 57

Slim, General William (Bill), 327

Smith-Dorrien, General Sir H L, 270

Somme, battle (1916), 274, 276, 281

Soult Marshal Nicolas, 202-3, 208

Sinai Campaign (1956), 344

Sioux nation, 217, 218-19

Six-Day war (1967), 344

Slave war (73-71 BCE), 43

Slave Wars, West Africa 141

Slovenia, independence, 352

Smith, General Oliver, 335

Solferino, battle (1859), 257

Sluys, battle (1340), 112

Smuts, General Ian, 245

Somoza, Anastasio, 350

Sophronius, Patriarch, 82

Songhai Empire, 141

Skylitzes, John, 65

Mesopotamian, 11, 15, 17;

igtrygg, king of Dublin, 70

Silhs 137 138

110

Finland (1940 & 1941), 298, 307: World War II, 296, 297, 298, 300, 306-9, see also Russia Spaatz, General Karl, 311 Spain: allied to France (1796-1805) 199 204: in the Americas 126, 165, 166-9, 171: Civil War (1936-39), 291, 294-5; Fascist movement, 291, 294-5; loss of American colonies, 216, 220-1; Moorish invasion (711), 75: Muslim State 63 73: Netherlands revolt, 146, 147, 149. Peninsular War (1808-13), 197, 208-9; Reconquista, 73, 75, 88-9; Spanish-American War (1898-1902), 246: Thirty Years War, 152, 153; warships, 127 Spanish Armada (1588) 126 148 spanish Foreign Legion, 294 spanish Succession, War of the (1701-13), 158, 159-60 parta, 20, 23, 24-5 partacus, 43 spears and javelins 11 24 32 68 70 130-1, 172 pinola, Ambrogio, 149 pion Kop, battle (1900), 244 pring Offensives (1918), 286 pruance, Admiral Raymond, 327 purius Postumius 36 Stalin, Josef, 297, 297, 306, 308, 319 Stalingrad (1942-43), 297, 308-9 Stamford Bridge, battle (1066), 71 standards and flags: American Confederate flag, 228; French Eagles, 202: Iwo lima flag, 328: Japanese naval ensign, 320: Nazi eagle, 319; prayer flag (Japanese). 326; Red Flag over the Reichstag, 319; the Standard of Ur, 12 Stanislaus, king of Poland, 162 Stilicho, 51, 51 Stilwell, General Joseph W, 327 tirling Bridge, battle (1297), 111 Stockholm, Peace of (1720), 163 ormtroopers, 279, 286 Strasbourg, Rome versus Germani tribes (357) 50 Stuart, General James (Jeb), 226, 228 Student, General Kurt, 302 submarines, 266, 268; nuclear submarine, 336-7; U-boats, 276, 277, 297, 305, see also warships Subotai 98 Sucre, Antonio Iosé de la 221 Sudan, 241, 331 Suetonius Paulus, 49 Suez campaign see Sinai Campaign (1956)Suleiman I (the Magnificent), 129, 132, 133 Sumerians, 10, 12, 13 Sun Ping, military tactician, 54 Sun-Tzu, The Art of War, 54 Sung dynasty (China), 61, 96, 98 Surai ud-Daula, Nawah of Bengal 187 Suvorov, General Alexander, 200, 262 Sweden: against Napoleon (1813-14), 213; Russian wars, 120, 162-3; Thirty Years War, 150-3 Sweyn Forkbeard, Danish king, 70 Swiss Confederation, 118, 119 Swiss mercenaries, 62, 89, 144, 145, 146 swords and daggers: American (19thcentury), 226; cavalry (18th and 19th century), 184, 208; Celtic, 32; Chinese (19th-century), 251; Cossack, 163: Crusader, 81: Egyptian, 14: Europe (17th-century) 142, 151; Frankish, 67; India (Mogul period), 136, 138-9, 138-9; marine (Napoleonic French), 200; Napoleonic era, 211, 211; Ottoman,

for UNITA, 339, see also Boer

outh America, 164, 165, 167, 220-1

(1979-89), 350: Cold War, 267

330: German invasion (Barbaross:

incident (1939), 293; occupies East

(1941), 300, 306-7; Nomonhan

programme, 330; Spanish Civil

War and 291 294 war with

Soviet Union: in Afghanistan

Poland (1939), 298; Space

War; Zulu wars

Soviet airforce, 307

Torrington, Admiral the Earl of, 158 131, 131; samurai, 101, 104, 104-5; Torstennson, General Lennart, 152, thrusting sword (medieval). 115: twohanded (medieval), 121;Viking, 70 152 153 yracuse, 24, 37, 41 Tot Dong, battle (1426), 100 yria, wars with Israel (1948-73). Toulon, siege of (1793), 198 344-5 Toulouse, siege (1217-18), 110 Tourville, Comte de, 158 Szumborski Bernard 121 Townshend, General Sir Charles, 283 Taginae, battle (552), 64 Tovotomi Hideyori, 175 Taiping uprising (China) (1850-64). Toyotomi Hideyoshi, 172, 174-5, 176 Trafalgar, battle (1805), 204 Taira clan, feud with Minamoto, Trajan, Roman emperor, 49 101-2, 103 Trajan's Column, 42, 49, 49 Taira Munemori 102 Trastamara, Enrique of, 114 Taiwan 178 179 251 333 Trebia, battle (218 BCE), 39 Trémoille, Marshall Louis de la. 126. Taizong, emperor of China, 96 Takeda Katsuyori, 174 144, 145 Takeo Tagaki, Admiral, 326 rench warfare, 231, 233, 261, 268 Talas, battle (751), 76 269, 272, 274-5 Talayera battle (1809) 208 Trenton and Princeton, battles Talbot John Farl of Shrewshury 115 (1776) 192 Taliban, in Afghanistan, 350, 353 Tricamarum battle (533) 64 Talikot, battle (1565), 136 Trifanum, battle (338 BCF), 36 Trochu, General Louis, 259 Tang dynasty (China), 61, 96 tanks: anti-tank helicopters, 342-3; Tromp, Admiral Martin, 149 anti-tank weapons, 298, 302, 307, Trotsky, Leon, 285, 292 319 341- Indo-Troy, siege of (c.1250 BCE), 15 Pakistan War (1971), 339; Mark IV Truman, Harry S. United States tank (British), 288, 288-9; mini-President, 335 tanks (Italian), 295; North Africa Tsushima, battle (1905), 253 Tukhachevsky, General Mikhail, 292 campaigns (1942), 302-3; Operation Barbarossa, 306-7 Tuman Bey, Mameluke Sultan, 129 Panther (German), 307: Spanish Tunis, taken and lost by Ottomans Civil War (1936-39), 294, 295; T-(1535) 133 34 (Soviet), 307; Tupac Amaru, Inca emperor, 167 T-54 (North Vietnam), 341; Tiger Turenne, Henri, Vicomte de, 153 (German), 307; World War I, 279, Turkestan, 261 286 288 288-9 Turkey, 73, 77, 253, see also Ottoman Cannenberg, battle (1914), 271

Tarain, battle (1192), 76

Taranto, raid (1940), 304

Tarketon, Colonel Banestre, 195

Taylor, General Zachary 223

Tel el-Kebir, battle (1882), 240

Temujin see Genghis Khan

Tennoji, battle (1615), 175

Terek, battle (1395), 94

Terentius Varro, Gaius, 40

Terry, General Alfred, 219

Teruel, battle (1938), 295

Tet Offensive (1968), 341

Texel, battle (1673), 143

emperor, 51

143 150-3

Thucydides 24 25

Tianjin (1949), 333

Terracotta Warriors, 52, 54

terrorism, 267, 331, 349, see also

testudo, Roman formation, 48

Teutonic Knights, 92, 120, 121

Texas, the Alamo (1836), 222

Teutoberg Forest battle (9 CF) 48

Thebes (Greek city state), 24, 25, 26

Thermopylae battle (480 BCF) 23

Thirteen Years War (Poland), 121

Thirty Years War (1618-48), 142.

Tianiin, assault on Taku fort, 249

Tilly, Count Johannes, 150, 151

Tippecanoe battle (1811) 217

Titus, Roman emperor, 48

Tiglath-pileser III, Assyrian king, 16, 17

Timur, conquests of, 94-5, 95, 122

Tito, Yosip Broz, Yugoslav leader, 352

Theodoric, king of Visigoths, 51

Theodosius, eastern Roman

Thurmosis III Pharaoh 14

Tarascans, 165

Tecumseh, 217

166, 168-9

hijackings

Templars, 79, 86, 87

Tarentum, 37

Turks: fighters for Islam 72 73 cm also Ottoman Turks: Seliuk Turks Tutankhamen, Pharaoh, 12 Tzaki, battle (1862), 250 Uii, first battle (1180), 101 Ukraine, Polish-Bolshevik war (1920), 292 Ulm, battle (1805), 201 Ulrich von Jungingen, Teutonic Grand Master, 121 Tenochtitlan, siege by Cortés (1521). Ulsan, siege of (1597), 177 Ultra code breakers 305 Umar, Umayyad general, 75 Umayyad caliphate, 72, 75 UNITA, Angolan independence movement, 339 United Nations: Congo Crisis (1960-65), 338: Korean War (1950-53), 334-5; peacekeepers, 344 Jnited States of America: Chinese Civil War involvement (1945-46), 332; Civil War (1861-65), 183, 216, 224-33, 237; Cold War, 267 330: Gulf War (1990-91), 351: Indian Wars (19th-century), 216 218-19; intervention in Boxer Rebellion (1900-01), 251; Japan and, 248; Japanese expansionism and, 320; Korean War (1950-53) 334-5: Mexican war 216, 223-Revolutionary War (1775-83) 182, 190-5; Spanish-American War (1898-1902), 246; support for Nicaraguan Contras, 350; support for UNITA, 339; Vietnam Wa (1960s-1973), 267, 330, 331, 340-1: war with Britain (1812-15), 216. 217; "war on terror" (2001-), 331 349, 353; World War I, 268, 276, 286, 287; World War II, 296, 297 303, 305, 310-17 United States Army: "Buffalo Soldiers". 247: Merrill's Marauders, 327; "Rough Riders". 247, 247, see also campaigns and wars by name

Titus Aebutius, 36 Tobruk (1942), 302 Todleben, Colonel Franz, 261, 263 Toghril Beg, 73, 76 United States Army Airforce Togo, Admiral, at Tsushima, 253 (USAAF), 310-11 ojo Hideki, General, 320 United States Marine Corps, 326 Tokhtamysh, 94 327, 328, 334, 335, 340, 341 Tokugawa Ieyasu, Shogun, 127, 172, United States Strategic Air 172, 173, 174, 175, 175 Command, 340 Toledo, siege of (1084-85), 88 Unur, Emir of Damascus, 81 Tonkin War (1883-85) 251 Ur. the Standard of Ur. 12 Toramana, White Hun king, 57 Uranus, Operation, 308 Torquatus, Titus Manlius, 3 Urban II, Pope, 80, 82 Torre, General Miguel de la, 221 Urban IV, Pope, 109

INDEX

360

Urban V, Pope, 122 Urquiza, General lusto losé de. 221 Ushijima Mitsuru, General, 329

Valencia, siege of (1093–1094), 88 Valens, eastern Roman emperor, 51 Valentinian II. Roman emperor, 51 Valerian, Roman emperor, 50 Valley Forge (1777–78), 191 Valmy, battle (1792), 198 Vandals, 51, 64 Varna, crusade of (1444), 122 Varro, Gaius Terentius, 40 Varus Publius Oninctilius 48 Vauban, Sébastien, 158, 158 Vendôme, Duke of, 160 Venezuela, 220

Venice, aid to France at Marignano (1515), 145 Veracruz campaign (1847), 223 Verbiest Ferdinand (Jesuit missionary), 179 Vercingetorix, 33, 44, 46, 46 Verdun, battle (1916), 276, 281

Versailles peace treaty (1919), 290 Vespasian, Roman emperor, 48 Victory, HMS, 206, 206-7 Vienna, 133, 202 Viet Cong guerillas, 341 Vietminh, 338

Vietnam: French conquest (1858-62), 246; independence war (1954) 338- Lam Son unrising (Tot Done) (1426), 100: Tonkin War (1883-85), 251 Vietnam War (1960s-1973), 267,

Vijayanagar empire, 73, 136 Vikings 62 63 63 68-70 Villa, Francisco "Pancho", 216, 223 Villeneuve, Admiral

330, 331, 340-1

Pierre-Charles 204 Vimeiro, battle (1808), 208 Vimy Ridge, battle (1917), 278 Vitiges, 64 Vittoria, battle (1813), 209 Vittorio Emanuele II, king of Piedmont 256, 257

Vlad Dracula, Count of Wallachia, 122 Vladimir, Mongol conquest (1238), 92 Volquin Schenk, 120

Vouillé, battle (507), 66 Wagram, battle (1809), 205 Al-Walid, Khalid, 74 Walker, General Walton, 334 Walker, Sir Edward, Naseby (1645), 154

Wallace, William, 111, 111 Wallenstein, Albrecht von, 150, 151, 152 Wallis Sir Barnes 310 Wang Tong, Chinese general, 100 Ward, General Artemas, 192 Ward, General Frederick, 250 Warren, General Sir Charles, 244 Warsaw Uprising (1944), 318 warships: aircraft-carriers, 325-8. 330-1: battleships, 320: British Man O'War (1805), 206, 206-7;

British (WWI), 277; Chinese junk 173: Chinese (of Zheng He), 99: Greek, 11, 20, 23, 25; ironclad (steam), 254: Korean, 127: medieval cogs, 112; Mississippi ironclad, 225; with mounted cannon, 146, 148: nuclear powered, 330-1, 336-7; Roman, 47; Sea People, 15; ship of bones model, 199; Spanish galleon, 149: steam powered ironclads, 183: triremes, 31, 31; turtle ships (Korean), 176, 177:Viking longships, 63, 68, 69, 69

Washington, George, 185, 191, 191, Wirz, Captain Henry, 225, 233 192, 193, 195, 195 Waterloo, battle (1815), 197, 210, 211, 215

veaponry: Aztec, 165, 165, 166: Celtic bronze and iron, 32–3; Chinese, 52, 52, 54, 55, 179; computerized "smart" systems 331, 341, 351, 353; Egyptian, 14, 14; Frankish, 67, 67; Greek, 20, 21 24; Japanese (16th century), 173; Japanese (samurai), 97, 101, 104 104-5; mace and war hammer. 145: modern, 346-7: Mogul empire, 136, 138-9, 138-9; Mongol, 90, 91; Native North American, 171, 185; Ottoman

empire, 130-1, 130-1; primitive missiles 11 42: Roman 42 43: use of bone, 11, 12; Viking, 68, 70, 70 Weapons of Mass Destruction, 353 Wellesley Richard Governor-General of India, 236 Wellington, Arthur Wellesley, Duke of 208-9 214-15 215 236

Wen Duke of lin 54 Westphalia, Treaty of (1648), 153 White Huns, invasion of India (450-530), 53, 57, 142 White Mountain, battle (1620), 150 Wilhelm II, Emperor of Germany, 259 Wilhelm II Kaiser 269

William, Duke of Cumberland, 161 William I of Orange Prince of Netherlands, 146 William I, (the Conqueror) king of England, 71

William II, king of Prussia, 205 William III (of Orange), king of England, 158, 158 Wimpffen, Emmanuel de, 259

Witoldof Lithuania, Duke, 121 Wingate, Brigadier General Orde, 327 Wolfe, General James, 185 Wolseley General Sir Garnet 240 Sarsuma Revolt (1877), 252: Spanish

Civil War (1936), 294 Worcester, battle (1651), 155 World War I (1914-18), 266. 268-89; casualties, 269, 272; Eastern front, 271, 284-5; gas casualties, 273: Ottoman empire 268, 269, 282-3: Western front, 270, 272-81, 286-7

World War II (1939-45), 266 296-329; Bagration to Berlin 318-19: Battle of Britain, 300: Romber offensive 310-13: D-Day to the Rhine 314-17: France (1940), 299; invasion of Soviet Union, 300, 306-9; Japan, 320-9 Mediterranean theatre (1940-44) 302-3; war at sea, 304-5

Wounded Knee, battle (1890), 219 Wrangel General Peter, 292 Wu Ling, king of Zhao, 52 Wu Sangui, Ming general, 178, 179

XYZ

Xerxes, Persian king, 22 Xianfeng, Emperor of China, 249 Xiangvang, falls to Mongols (1268-73), 98

(201-200 BCE), 55 Xu Chen, Chinese general, 54 Xuzhou, battle (1948-49), 332 Yagi Siyan, governor of Antioch, 80 Yamamoto, Admiral Isoruku, 320, 325 Yamashiro (Japan), 320 Yamazaki, battle (1582), 174

Yangtze Incident (1949), 333 Yangtze river, naval battles, 96, 99 Yangzhou, siege of (1645), 178 Yarmuk, battle (636), 74 Yazid, Umayyad caliph, 75 Yi Song-gye, Korean general, 97 Yi Sun-shin, Korean admiral.

Yom Kippur War (1973), 345 Yorktown campaign (1781), 195 Varletown LISS 325 326 Vochioiro Umezo General 321 Ypres: 1st & 2nd Ypres (1914 & 1915), 272, 273; 3rd Ypres

Yugoslavia, break up of (1992-95), 352. Zama barrle (202 BCE) 41 Zapata, Emiliano, 223 Zaragoza, General Ignacio, 223 Zaragoza, siege of (1118), 88 Zedekiah, king of Judah, 18 Zen Buddhism, samurai and, 104 Zengi, atabeg of Aleppo, 81 Zenta, battle (1697), 133

Xiongnu nomads, invasion of China

(Passchendaele), 278 Yuan dynasty (China), 91, 98, 99 Zeppelin airship, 255 Zheng He, 99 Zhongdu (Beijing): falls to Mongols (1215), 98 Zhou dynasty (China), 52 Zhou Yu, Chinese general, 55 Zhu Yuanzhang, Red Turban leader, 99 Zhukov, Marshal Georgi, 306, 307, 308-9.319.319 Ziyadat Allah I, Aghlabid ruler, 75 Zizka, Jan, 119, 119 Zohyo Monogatari, 174 Zonaves 235, 257 Zuikaku (Japan), 326

## **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

Dorling Kindersley would like to thank Peter Smithurst, Philip Abbott, and Rod Joyce at the Royal Armouries Leeds: Eleanor Holmes at The Imperial War Museum: Natalie Finnigan at Duyford Les Smith Mark Sheriff and Marthew Buck at Firepower, the Royal Artillery Museum jor Tim David of the MOD; Staff Sargent Carl Bird at RAF Dishforth.

**Key:** a = above b = below <math>c = centrel = left, r = right, t = top, f = far, s = sidebar

akg-images: 13acl, 15cl, 15bc, 17cr, 19tr, 19acr, 37bl, 38bl, 39tc, 41tc, 48br, 48bcl. 55hr 57c 66tr 67cr 79h 80hl 86h 86t 87tl 87tr. 88bl. 92b. 94tr. 96b. 108bl. 108br. 109cfl. 110c. 110bl. 114bl. 118br. 119tr. 119cr. 119bl 134 143bl 143br 144bl 144ac 150bl 151cfl 58bl, 163b, 165b, 184bl, 186br, 186acr, 191br, 198br 202b 258tr 258b 258bcr 263c 285bl. 290ac, 292tr, 297crb, 305b, 311b, 321br, 326c Alamy Images: 19tl, 39b, 49ac, 68b, 72t, 111cfr. 121bl. 147br. 170t. 182br. 199acr. 201tr 219br 222b 227cl 243tr Archivi Alinari: 25tr Altitude: 158br. Ancient Art & Architecture Collection: 34acl, 51bl, 51bl, 51acl, 62tr, 64tr, 64c 67b 72bl 73tr 81r 92cl 92c 94b 95c 95t 103r 132bl. Associated press: 333b. Artothek:152t. Aviation Picture Library: 335cr Bibliothèque Nationale De France, Paris:

85. Bildarchiv Preußischer Kulturbesitz,

Berlin: 77tr www.bridgeman.co.uk: 11bc

69hr 72hr 78h 79rl 80r 82rr 91rr 91cl 95h

97b, 98t, 100c, 101br, 107cra, 120br, 133br, 136hr 137rr 138c 143rl 150hr 151hr 153h 155cra, 155cbr, 158crb, 158cfl, 159tr, 159b, 173crb 174cfl 179bl 187tr 196br and bl p197 199ber, 201b, 208cl, 222tc, 234cl, 237bl, 262t /MAR CEL ANDR F Bischer © ADAGP Paris and DACS, London, 2005 235c. British Library, London: 75tr. © The British Museum: 28tr, 37tc. Corbis: 4b, 6bc, 7tl, 7bc 10bl, 11br, 16bl, 16br, 18br, 19br, 23acl, 25b, 27tc, 27c, 32cr, 34Across 34-5, 39bcr, 40tc, 41bl. 42bl, 45b, 47br, 48tr, 48acr, 50bl, 52r, 53bcl, 54bl 55rr 56rd 56hr 60hl 63rr 66 71cr 73h 74hr 5br, 76c, 76b, 77b, 79tr, 87cr, 89b, 89t, 90tl, 90kl 97r 99k 100k 100r 102r 113rr 115rl 116bl, 122br, 123b, 127bl, 127br, 129b, 134bl, 137ca, 140bl, 141rc, 141b, 142br, 148bl, 154cb, 158cra, 163tr, 167b, 168b, 171br, 172b, 175cra,

1905 191d 193rd 193h 198r 2045 210rd

211tr. 215b. 216bcr. 217br. 217bcr. 217t. 218br. 218t, 220acr, 221tr, 222cr, 24b/p225 b, 224bcr, 225tl. 225acr. 225bcfl. 226tr. 226cl. 227bl. 227br. 230tr, 230bl, 231tr, 231bl, 232tr, 233b, 235t, 238 v. 1 240bl 242er 242br 248er 248br 240br 250tc, 251bl, 251bcr, 254br, 255bl, 257tl, 259br, 61acr, 267bl, 267br, 268tl, 269br, 271cr, 272acl 173acl, 274tr, 275b, 276acl, 278br, 279tc, 279br, 282b, 283tr, 285br, 286cr, 287tr, 288b, 290tr, 190bl. 290br. 291tl. 291tr. 291bc. 293tr. 293bl. 297tl, 297tr, 297br, 298cra, 302bl, 302t, 303tl, 303hr 312rl 314rr 3 14h 316r 317cr 319cl 320tr. 320c. 321tl. 321bl. 321b. 321cbl. 322tr. 324, 327br. 328c. 328br. 329tr. 329cb. 329bl 330cl 330bl 330b 331tl 331cr 331tl 332bl 33tl, 334cr, 334bl, 335tr, 335cl, 335br, 335bcl. 336-1 337: 338-1 338h 339cr 339-1 339h 340cr. 341tr. 341b. 342tl. 344tr. 344br. 344ar. 345cl, 345bl, 345cbr, 347b, 348tl, 348bl, 348b 349rl, 349rr, 349bl, 349br, 350bl, 350br, 351br, 352cl, 352t, 353c, 353, 353b. Defence Picture Library: 7br, 351bl. DK Images: Dave King c) Dorling Kindersley, Courtesy of Warwick Castle, Warwick 211bfr: / 61tr. 62CR: /Courtesy the Wallace Collection London 39cr; /Alistair Duncan 78rl, 82b, 87b; American Museum of Natural History 170tr. 70tr, 170cr, 170cr; /Andy Crawford 90cr, 197c Andy Crawford/Imperial War Museum 319cr: Ashmolean museum 69bl; /British Museum 8, Obr. 14tr. 14cr. 14bc, 14br, 14frbc, 17tc, 18acl, 9bl. 20bl. 25frbc. 42br. 52bl. 52bl. 54cl. 55tc. 55bl, 67br, 90br, 114br; /Capitoline Museums, Rome 50rr / Collection of Jean-Pierre Verney 71cal, 272br, 273ac, 273acr, 277bc, 277b, 284tl; Collection of the University Museum of Newcastle 11bl; /Conacultinah-mex 164bl; Confederate Memorial Hall 224cl. 230cfr. Courtesy Michael Butler Collection 296cl rtesy od the National Museum, Delhi 128hr /Courtesy of 95th Rifles and Reactments, Living History Unit 146bl; Courtesy of Churchill College Archive Cambridge University 94tl; /Courtesy of David Edge 205ac, 205t, 208cr; /Courtesy of H. Keith Melks Collection 299br; /Courtesy of the Board of the Trustees of the Royal Armouries 109tr; Courtesy of the Board of Trustees of the mouries 104tr, 104clb, 104car, 105tr, 105bcr, 105cfr 115bc 142bl 152cr 176car 184br 84bfr, 186c, 188ac, 188t, 189bc, 189b, 196tr, 200c, 208b, 210bc, 210acr, 210b, 211bl, 211br. 211bfl, 213c, 214c, 241tr, 244bcr, 245br,

347th /Courtesy of the Ministry of Defence

Pattern Room Nottingham 347c: /Courtesy of the Ministry of Defence Pattern Room Nottingham 298cb, 347b; /Courtesy of the National Army Museum, London 202t Courtesy of the National Museum, New Dell 36bl; /Courtesy of the Order of the Black Prince 107bl, 119br: /Courtesy of the Pitt of the Pirt Piners Museum University of Oxford 138tr, 138bc, 139tl, 139br; /Courtesy the Powell-Cotton Museum Kent 140cr Courtesy of The Royal Green lackets Mus Winchester 209c, 244bl; /Courtesy of the University Museum of Newcastle 34cl: Courtesy of the University of Newcastle 35flac: /Courtesy of the Wallace Collection London 122cr; /Courtesv of Warwick Castle 154ct; /Courtesy of Warwick Castle, Warwick 188c: /Courtesy of the Wallace Collection London 138cr, 138bvl, 139tr; /Courtesy the Williage Collection London 138b: /Courte Warwick Castle, Warwick 145bcr, 146bc: Courtesy of Robin Wigginton, Arbour Antiques Ltd. Stratford upon Avon 189tr. 189cr. Coutesy of Robin Wigington, Arbour Antique Ltd, Stratford upon Avon 146cbl; /Danish National Museum 63cr, 70tl, 70tr, 70tcr; /Dave King 144br: /Dave King, Confederate Memo Hall, New Orleans 183bl: /Dave King, courtes of Gettysburg National Military Park 198bl; Dave King/Confederate Memorial Hall, New Orleans 228tr; /Dave Kingle 219bl; /English Heritage 42acr /Frmine Street Guard 38br. 43c 43bl, 43bel, 43bfl, 43flac, 43flac, 43flbe: Firepower 156, 180, 191cr, 238bl, 238br, 238bcfr, 238bfl, 238bfr, 270bc, 273br, 307tr; Gary Ombler 182bl, 182br, 206bl, 206br, 206cbl 207bc 207br 207bcfl 207cbfr 207cb 07cbr, 207t, 300tl; /Geoff Dann 61br, 63b, 15cr 215c: /Geoff Dann / Dorling Kindersli Scottish United Services Museum, Edinburgh Castle (c) National Museums of Scotland 161cbr: /Geoff Dunn, courtesy of the Royal reen Jackets 240br; /Geoff Dunn/Nationa Museums of Scotland 260bcr: /Gettysburg Sational Military Park 230ac, 231tc; /Imperia War Museum 209cla: /Imperial War Museum 63c, 288tr, 289tl, 289tr, 289bc, 289br, 289acfr, 289acr. 289bcfl. 289bcfr. 289bcl. 289bcr. 302cl 05cfl; /Imperial War Museum, London 311c /IWM 266bl, 270tl, 273acr, 273frac, 278tr 191ac 311tc 311br 323tl: /loe Cornish 23tr press of Civil War Museum, Bardsrown Kentucky 182cl; /Judith Miller/Cooper Owen 43bc: /ludith Miller/Wallis and Wallis 196cl 235bl; /Kate Clow 78c; /Kim Saver 81b; vnton Garceiner, Courtesy of the Natura

History Museum 216r /Max Alexander 46bl.

75bl, 88cr; /Museum of London 32tr, 32cl, 32hc 32acl 32acr 32h 32hrc 33c 33hcl 70rc Itl: /Museum of Mankind 219t: /National Assirime Museum 69tr 69sr 99tr /Nick Save 88tr; /Nigel Hicks 20tl; /Paul Kenwood 115cfl; Peter Chadwick/Museum of Artillery 246tr. Pitt Rivers Museum Oxford 101c, 102r; /Rob keichenfeld 112br; /Robin Wigginton, Arbour Anriques Ltd. Stratford upon Avan 138tl: /R ova Armouries 173tr, 173tr, 173tr, 173tr, 173tr, 73ac 178rc: /Scorrich United Services Museum, Edinburgh © National Museums of scotland 323cr: /Scottish United Services Museum, Edinburgh Castle, C National The Wallace Collection 112c: /The Wallace ollection, London 188ber, 189bel; /Tony outer 123r or /Teneral of the Nationa Museums of Scotland 153cla, 237br: /US Arms Ailitary Institute 223acr; /US Military Institute 26br: /Wallace Collection 58, 106c, 119bc. 19ber, 121br, 130, 131, 143era, 143eal, 143ear, 43rer 145br 146ch 147c 150rr 150chl 151ca 60car, 212acr, 263tl, 269ber; /Wallis & Wallis 10cr; /Warwick Castle 81c, 112cb; ? 123ca 23ctl. 126bcl: Andrew Chernack 341cr: Andy rawford/Imperial War Museum 318bl Auseum of Artillery The Rotunda Woolwich ondon 190er; Collection of Jean-Pierre Verne 71cafl, 272bfr: Conacultinah-mex 165tr, 166b Courtesy of Robin Wigginton, Arbour Antique td, Stratford upon Avon 109cfr; Courtesy of he Board of Trustees of the Armouries 332tr. 46abc, 347tc, 347t, 352cr; Courtesy of the Bradbury Science Museum, Los Alamos 329bcr Courtesy of the Old Flying Machine Company 27cr; Courtesy RAF Wittering, Cambridgeshire 351t; Gary Ombler 342cr. 42bl, 342be, 342acl, 342acr, 342bel, 342ber, (43b) 343bc 343bc 343act 343bct 343bct 343t; Geoff Dan 60tr; Imperial War Museum 09tl, 326tr; Joe Cornish 211tl; Martin Plome 26cl: Museum of London 70c: Royal Artillers Auseum Woolwich 99tl: Scottish United Services Museum, Edinburgh Castle, Copyrigh itional Museums of Scotland 155bcl; US Army Military History Institute 225ch The Art Archive: 0, 2, 6tc, 6tr, 6br, 7tc, 7tr, 0bc, 11tr, 12c, 12b, 13tr, 13bl, 13br, 15tr, 16flac 7bl, 18tr, 21b, 24bc, 26bl, 26frbc, 27bl, 28bl, dps, 30tr, 31bl, 34c, 35cr, 36cl, 36bl, 40b, 41bl Bacr, 45flac, 46Main picture, 49h, 52c, 53hr. 2cr, 62bc, 65b, 65t, 67tl, 70br, 71b, 73cl, 74bl, 60h 93h 93r 98hr 101hl 102h 103cl 105car 7br, 109br, 110tr, 110br, 112tr, 113b, 114c, 18c 121d 126hr 126 127hr 128d 128hl

29tl, 129tr, 132r, 133tr, 133bl, 140br, 142cl.

43clb, 144cra, 145cbl, 145t, 146cra, 147bl, 147

148d 148b 149bl 149t 153tr 153cbr 154bl

154t, 155br, 156tr, 161b, 162cra, 165tcr, 166tc 166bl, 166br, 167tr, 167tcl, 168t, 170br, 175cal, 82bc, 183tr, 183br, 184tr, 185c, 191tr, 192ac, 94rc 194bl 195rc 195b 196bc 196acc 197d 97cfr, 199tr, 200ac, 201tl, 204tr, 205acl, 205b, 908rr 212r 212h 213h 213r 214hl 215rr 216bcl, 219c, 220tr, 220, 221tl, 221bl, 221br 223b, 225tr, 230cb, 231br, 234bl, 235br, 236bc 238rr 240rr 241rl 241hr 241hrr 243rl 243h 244tr, 245tr, 245acl, 246br, 247tl, 247cr, 247b. 248b 240ee 240e 250re 250b 251re 251be 252tr, 252c, 252bl, 253tr, 253b, 254bl, 255tr, 255cl, 255cr, 255ac, 256tr, 256bl, 257tr, 257bl 257bc, 259tl, 259bl, 260tc, 260b, 261acl, 262bc 262br, 263tr, 263br, 266br, 268b, 269tl, 269tr, 70tr. 270cb. 271b. 272tr. 273bl. 276bl. 277tc. 77tr, 278tl, 279bl, 281tr, 282tr, 283tl, 284tr, 985 2866 2875 2925 2925e 2945e 300 302cra, 317tr, 317br, 322b, 333cr; /@ Successio so/DACS, 2005-295ac. Mary Evans Picture Library: 21tr. 23bl. 111t. 114tr. 130cl. 31tr, 131tr, 152br, 171tl, 199bl, 209bl, 209t, 214t 236t 263bc Werner Forman Archive: 6bl. 33r. 54ac. 55acl. 98bc. 104ca. 140c, 172cfl. 73tl, 175b. GreatBuildings.com: Ronald soong 22b. Getty Images: 22tr. 116tl. 28b/p229 b, 236br, 237tr, 244bc, 245bl, 280, 295h 296h 338cr 338ac 340bcl 346t 350t oler, 353ber. John Hamill: 177b. Robert Harding Picture Library: 175bl. @ Michael Holford: 96. Robert Hunt Library: 277cl, 79tr, 294tr, 294bl, 298, 304cb, 304, 306cla 306b, 307d, 308d, 311bl, 317b, 318cb, 319b, , 323cl, 323bl, 323br, 326br, 327 The Kobal Collection: 290cl Korean War Academy: 177cfl. Lonely Planet Images: 76b. The Military and Historical Image Bank: 185br. 193cr. 195acl. 217bl. 234cr. 261te 282acl 286c 295tc © National Maritime Museum, London: 149br. 200bl. 206tr. National Portrait Gallery, London: 187br The National Trust: 70tl Peter Newark's Military Pictures: 170bl, 190tr, 194br, 218b 23bcr. 228cl. National Museums & Art Galleries On Mersevside: © National time Museum 69c. Novosti (London 7bl 92rr 120bl 121rr 126cl 162b 163cb 261b 62tl, 285tr, 293br, 307b, 308b. Ann & Bury Peerless: 136h 137cfl 137cfr Photolibrary Wales: 111b. popperfoto.com: 302bl, 305tr. 340cb. Rex Features: 266tr, 324br, 332cbr, 45tl. 352b. Royalty Free Images: Corbis 2bl. Science & Society Picture Library c Stadt Pohlheim: 50bl Texas Historical nmission: 216b. Thomas Mallon McCorgray: 57bc. Tokugawa Reimeikai: 74r. Topfoto.co.uk: 34cfl. TRH Pictures: 9cl. 283bc. 286bl. 287tc. 298cal. 299tc. 301ti 310cl. 318c. 332c. Ullstein Bild: 276br.

Zulus, 235, 242-3 Zusmarshausen, battle (1648), 153

# BAITIE

"War is the continuation of politics by other means."

KARL VON CLAUSEWITZ

"Whoever wishes for peace, let him prepare for war." VEGETIUS

EGYPTIAN WARFARE • CHARIOTS • KADESH • ALEXANDER THE GREAT • SIEGE ENGINES • JULIUS CAESAR • ALESIA • ROMAN LEGIONS • VISIGOTHS • VIKINGS LONGSHIPS • NORMANS • WARS OF ISLAM • GUNPOWDER • CRUSADES LONGBOWS • MONGOL CONQUESTS • KUBLAI KHAN • SAMURAI • CASTLES KNIGHTS • AGINCOURT • OTTOMAN WARFARE • FALL OF CONSTANTINOPLE MOGUL WARLORDS • CHINESE WARFARE • THIRTY YEARS' WAR • CRÉCY MUSKETS AND PISTOLS • ENGLISH CIVIL WAR • STANDING ARMIES CONQUISTADORES • SEVEN YEARS' WAR • NAPOLEON • AUSTERLITZ MAN O' WAR • NATIVE AMERICAN WARFARE • CRIMEAN WAR • AMERICAN CIVIL WAR • GETTYSBURG • GATLING GUN • ZULU WARS • BOER WAR WORLD WAR I • TRENCH WARFARE • TANKS • VERDUN • GAS ATTACKS SPANISH CIVIL WAR • WORLD WAR II • BLITZKRIEG • BATTLE OF BRITAIN EL ALAMEIN • STALINGRAD • MIDWAY • BOMBER OFFENSIVE • ATOM BOMB GUERRILLA WARFARE • GULF WAR • AFGHANISTAN • SHOCK AND AWE



